

CLASSICAL WORKS.

LATIN TEXT-BOOKS.

Harkness's Introductory Latin Book, intended as an Elementary Drill-Book on the Inflections and Principles of the Language.

———— **Latin Grammar**, for Schools and Colleges. Revised Edition.

———— **Elements of Latin Grammar**, for Schools.

———— **Latin Reader**, with References, Suggestions, Notes, and Vocabulary.

———— **Practical Introduction to Latin Composition**, for Schools and Colleges. Part I. Elementary Exercises, intended as a Companion to the Reader. Part II. Latin Syntax. Part III. Elements of Latin Style, with special Reference to Idioms and Synonymes. (Just published.)

———— **Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War**, with Notes, Dictionary, Life of Cæsar, Map of Gaul, Plans of Battles, etc.

———— **Cicero's Select Orations**, with Notes, etc.

Arnold's First and Second Latin Book and Practical Grammar.* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 359 pages.

———— **Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition**.* Revised and corrected. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 356 pages.

Cornelius Nepos,* with Questions and Answers, and an Imitative Exercise on each Chapter. With Notes by E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in University of New York. New edition, enlarged, with a Lexicon, Historical and Geographical Index, etc. 12mo. 350 pages.

Beza's Latin Version of the New Testament. 12mo. 291 pages.

Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. With English Notes, Critical and Explanatory; a Lexicon, Geographical and Historical Indexes, and a Map of Gaul. By J. A. SPENCER, D. D. 12mo. 408 pages.

Cicero's Select Orations. With Notes for the use of Schools and Colleges. By E. A. JOHNSON, Professor of Latin in the University of New York. 12mo. 459 pages.

Cicero de Officiis. With English Notes, mostly translated from Zump and Bonnell. By THOMAS A. THACHER, of Yale College. 12mo. 194 pages.

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

- Horace, The Works of.** With English Notes, for the use of Schools and Colleges. By J. L. LINCOLN, Professor of Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 575 pages.
- Livy.** Selections from the first five books, together with the twenty-first and twenty-second books entire. With a Plan of Rome, and a Map of the Passage of Hannibal, and English Notes for the use of Schools. By J. L. LINCOLN, Prof. of the Latin Language and Literature in Brown University. 12mo. 329 pages.
- Quintus Curtius:** Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great. Edited and illustrated with English Notes, by WILLIAM HENRY CROSBY. 12mo. 385 pages.
- Sallust's Jugurtha and Catilina.** With Notes and a Vocabulary. By BUTLER and STURGEON. 12mo. 397 pages.
- It is believed that this will be found superior to any edition heretofore published in this country.
- The Histories of Tacitus.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER, Professor of Latin and Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 453 pages.
- Tacitus's Germania and Agricola.** With Notes for Colleges. By W. S. TYLER. 12mo. 193 pages.
- Virgil's Æneid.*** With Explanatory Notes. By HENRY FRIEZE, Professor of Latin in the State University of Michigan. (Recently published.) 12mo. 598 pages.
- The type is unusually large and distinct. The work contains eighty-five engravings, which delineate the usages, customs, weapons, arts, and mythology of the ancients, with a vividness that can be attained only by pictorial illustrations.

GREEK TEXT-BOOKS.

- A First Greek Book* and Introductory Reader.** By A. HARKNESS, Ph.D., author of "Arnold's First Latin Book." "Second Latin Book," etc. (Recently published.) 12mo. 276 pages.
- Acts of the Apostles,** according to the text of AUGUSTUS HAHN. With Notes and a Lexicon by JOHN J. OWEN, D.D., LL.D. With Map. 12mo.
- Arnold's First Greek Book,*** on the Plan of the First Latin Book. 12mo. 297 pages.
- Arnold's Practical Introduction to Greek Prose Composition.*** 12mo. 297 pages.
- **Second Part to the above.*** 12mo. 248 pages.



SEE END OF THIS VOLUME.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2008 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation





A

LATIN GRAMMAR

FOR

SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

ALBERT HARKNESS, PH. D.,

PROFESSOR IN BROWN UNIVERSITY.

REVISED EDITION,

EMBRACING

IMPORTANT RESULTS OF RECENT PHILOLOGICAL RESEARCH.

NEW YORK:

D. APPLETON AND COMPANY,

1, 3, AND 5 BOND STREET.

LONDON: 16 LITTLE BRITAIN.

1880.

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1864, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern
District of New York.

EDUCATION LIBR.

ENTERED, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1874, by
D. APPLETON & COMPANY,
In the Office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

PA 2087

H37

1874

Educ.

Lib.

P R E F A C E.



THE work now offered to the public had its origin in a desire to promote the cause of Classical study. It has long been the opinion of the author, in common with numerous classical teachers, that the subject of Latin Grammar, often regarded as dry and difficult, may be presented to the learner in a form at once simple, attractive, and philosophical. It is the aim of this manual to aid the instructor in the attainment of this most desirable end.

That the present is a favorable time for the production of a Latin Grammar scarcely admits of a doubt. Never before were there such facilities for the work. The last quarter of a century has formed an epoch in the study of language and in the methods of instruction. During this period some of the most gifted minds of Germany have been gathering the choicest treasures in the field of philology, while others have been equally successful in devising improved methods of instruction. In our own country too, the more enterprising teachers have caught the spirit of improvement, and are calling loudly for a better method than has hitherto prevailed in classical study.

The present work has been prepared in view of these facts. To explain its general plan, the author begs leave to specify the following points.

1. This volume is designed to present a systematic arrangement of the great facts and laws of the Latin language; to exhibit not only grammatical forms and constructions, but also those *vital principles* which underlie, control, and explain them.

2. Designed at once as a text-book for the class-room, and a book of reference in study, it aims to introduce the beginner easily and pleasantly to the first principles of the language, and yet to make adequate provision for the wants of the more advanced student. Accordingly it presents in large type a general survey of the whole subject in a brief and concise statement of facts and

M577024

laws, while parallel with this, in smaller type, it furnishes a fuller discussion of irregularities and exceptions for later study and for reference.

3. By brevity and conciseness in the choice of phraseology and compactness in the arrangement of forms and topics, the author has endeavored to compress within the limits of a convenient manual an amount of carefully selected grammatical facts, which would otherwise fill a much larger volume.

4. He has, moreover, endeavored to present the whole subject in the light of modern scholarship. Without encumbering his pages with any unnecessary discussions, he has aimed to enrich them with the *practical results* of the recent labors in the field of philology.

5. In the regular paradigms, both of declension and of conjugation, the stems and endings have been distinguished by a difference of type, thus keeping constantly before the pupil the significance of the two essential elements which enter into the composition of inflected forms.

6. Syntax has received in every part special attention. An attempt has been made to exhibit, as clearly as possible, that beautiful system of laws which the genius of the language—that highest of all grammatical authority—has created for itself. The leading principles of construction have been put in the form of definite rules, and illustrated by carefully selected examples. To secure convenience of reference and to give completeness and vividness to the general outline, these rules, after being separately discussed, are presented in a body at the close of the Syntax.

7. The subdivisions in each discussion are developed, as far as practicable, from the leading idea which underlies the whole subject. Thus in the treatment of cases, moods, and tenses, various uses, comparatively distinct in themselves, are found to centre around some leading idea or thought, thus imparting to the subject both unity and simplicity.

8. Topics which require extended illustration are first presented in their completeness in general outline, before the separate points are discussed in detail. Thus a single page often foreshadows all the leading features of an extended discussion, imparting a completeness and vividness to the impression of the learner, impossible under any other treatment.

9. Special care has been taken to explain and illustrate with

the requisite fulness all difficult and intricate subjects. The Subjunctive Mood—that severest trial of the teacher’s patience—has been presented, it is hoped, in a form at once simple and comprehensive. The different uses have not only been carefully classified, but also distinguished by characteristic and appropriate terms, convenient for the class-room.

For the benefit of those who prefer to begin with a more elementary manual in the study of Latin, it is in contemplation to publish a smaller Grammar on precisely the same plan as the present work, and with the same mode of treatment. This will be especially adapted to the wants of those who do not contemplate a collegiate course of study.

A Latin Reader, prepared with special reference to this work and intended as a companion to it, will be published at an early day.

In conclusion the author cheerfully acknowledges his indebtedness to other scholars, who have labored in the same field. The classification of verbs is founded in part on that of Grotendorf and Krüger, a mode of treatment generally adopted in the recent German works on the subject, and well exhibited by Allen in his *Analysis of Latin Verbs*.

In Prosody much aid has been derived from the excellent works of Ramsay and Habenicht.

On the general subjects of Etymology and Syntax, his indebtedness is less direct, though perhaps no less real. His views of philology have been formed in a great measure under the moulding influence of the great German masters; and perhaps few Latin Grammars of any repute have appeared within the last half century, either in this country, England, or Germany, from which he has not received valuable suggestions. In the actual work of preparation, however, he has carried out his own plan, and presented his own modes of treatment, but he has aimed to avoid all untried novelties and to admit only that which is sustained by the highest authority, and confirmed by the actual experience of the class-room.

The author is happy to express his grateful acknowledgments to the numerous Instructors who have favored him with valuable suggestions; especially to his esteemed friend and colleague, Professor J. L. Lincoln, of this University.

P R E F A C E

TO THE REVISED EDITION.

PARTS First and Second in this edition have been entirely rewritten. The recent researches in Comparative Philology have thrown new light upon Latin forms and inflections, and have revealed many important facts in the development and growth of the language. Accordingly, in the present revision, it has been the constant aim of the author to secure for the learner the full benefit of all the practical results which these labors in the field of philology have brought within the proper sphere of the school. The general plan and scope of the work, however, remain the same as in former editions. Only such changes and additions have been made as seemed to promise desirable aid to the learner. Care has been taken to exclude from the work every thing which might divert his attention from the one object before him—the attainment of a full and accurate knowledge of the language.

In this connection, the author desires to express anew his grateful acknowledgments to the teachers and educators whose verdict of approval has contributed so largely to the success of his works. To their hands this new edition is now respectfully committed.

A. HARKNESS.

BROWN UNIVERSITY, *July*, 1874.



CONTENTS.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet,	1
English Method of Pronunciation,	2
Roman Method,	5
Continental Method,	7
Quantity, Accentuation,	7
Euphonic Laws,	8
I. Changes in Vowels,	8
II. Changes in Consonants,	9

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

Gender,	11
Person, Number, and Case,	12
Declension,	12
First Declension,	13
Greek Nouns,	14
Second Declension,	15
Greek Nouns,	17
Third Declension,	18
Class I.—Consonant Stems,	18
Stems in a Labial,	18
Stems in a Dental,	19
Stems in a Guttural,	20
Stems in a Liquid,	20
Stems in S,	22
Class II.—I-Stems,	22
Special Paradigms,	26
Greek Nouns,	27
Synopsis of the Third Declension,	28
Gender,	34
Fourth Declension,	36
Fifth Declension,	38
Comparative View of Declensions,	39
General Table of Gender,	40

	Page.
Declension of Compound Nouns,	41
Irregular Nouns,	41
I. Indeclinable,	42
II. Defective,	42
III. Heteroclitics,	44
IV. Heterogeneous,	44

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions,	46
Third Declension,	48
Irregular Adjectives,	51
Comparison,	52
I. Terminational Comparison,	52
II. Adverbial Comparison,	54
Numerals,	55

CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns,	60
Possessive,	61
Demonstrative,	62
Relative,	64
Interrogative,	65
Indefinite,	66

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

Voices, Moods,	67
Tenses,	68
Numbers, Persons,	69
Conjugation,	69
Paradigms of Verbs,	70
Verbal Inflections,	88
Synopsis of Conjugation,	90
Verbs in <i>io</i> : Conjugation III.,	93
Deponent Verbs,	96
Periphrastic Conjugation,	99
Contractions and Peculiarities of Conjugation,	100
Comparative View of Conjugations,	101
Analysis of Verbal Endings,	103
I. Tense-Signs,	103
II. Mood-Signs,	103
III. Personal Endings,	104
Formation of Stems,	106
I. Present Stem,	106
II. Perfect Stem,	107
III. Supine Stem,	108
Euphonic Changes,	109

	Page.
Classification of Verbs,	110
First Conjugation,	110
Second Conjugation,	112
Third Conjugation,	115
Fourth Conjugation,	125
Irregular Verbs,	127
Defective "	133
Impersonal "	135

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

Adverbs,	137
Prepositions,	138
Conjunctions,	139
Interjections,	140

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

Derivation of Words,	141
Derivative Nouns,	141
Derivative Adjectives,	145
Derivative Verbs,	147
Derivative Adverbs,	149
Composition of Words,	151
Compound Nouns,	152
Compound Adjectives,	153
Compound Verbs,	153
Compound Adverbs,	153

PART THIRD.

SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences,	154
II. Simple Sentences,	156
III. Complex Sentences,	158
IV. Compound Sentences,	159

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

I. Agreement of Nouns,	160
Predicate Nouns,	160
Appositives,	161
II. Nominative,	162

Section.	Page.
III. Vocative,	163
IV. Accusative,	163
I. Direct Object,	164
Two Accusatives,	165
II. Subject of Infinitive,	167
III. Agreement of Accusative,	167
IV. Accusative in an Adverbial sense,	168
With or without Prepositions,	168
Accusative of Time and Space,	168
Accusative of Limit,	168
Accusative of Specification,	169
V. Accusative in Exclamations,	169
V. Dative,	170
I. Dative with Verbs—Indirect Object,	170
Dative of Advantage,	171
Dative with Compounds,	172
Dative of Possessor,	173
Dative of Agent,	173
Ethical Dative,	174
Two Datives,	174
II. Dative with Adjectives,	175
III. Dative with Nouns and Adverbs,	176
VI. Genitive,	176
I. Genitive with Nouns,	177
II. Genitive with Adjectives,	180
III. Genitive with Verbs,	182
Predicate Genitive,	182
Genitive of Place,	183
Genitive in Special Constructions,	183
Genitive and Accusative,	186
IV. Genitive with Adverbs,	187
VII. Ablative,	187
I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means,	188
Ablative of Price,	190
Ablative with Comparatives,	190
Ablative of Difference,	191
Ablative in Special Constructions,	192
II. Ablative of Place,	193
Ablative of Source and Separation,	195
III. Ablative of Time,	196
IV. Ablative of Characteristic,	197
V. Ablative of Specification,	198
VI. Ablative Absolute,	198
VII. Ablative with Prepositions,	199
VIII. Cases with Prepositions,	199

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives,	201
Use of Adjectives,	202
Comparison,	203

CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

	Page.
Agreement of Pronouns,	204
Personal and Possessive Pronouns,	206
Reflexive Use,	206
Demonstrative Pronouns,	208
Relative Pronouns,	209
Interrogative Pronouns,	210
Indefinite Pronouns,	211

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Section.		
I. Agreement of Verbs,		212
II. Use of Voices,		214
III. Tenses of the Indicative,		215
IV. Use of the Indicative,		219
V. Tenses of the Subjunctive,		219
Sequence of Tenses,		220
VI. Use of the Subjunctive,		223
I. Potential Subjunctive,		223
II. Subjunctive of Desire,		225
III. Subjunctive of Purpose or Result,		226
IV. Subjunctive of Condition,		232
V. Subjunctive of Concession,		236
VI. Subjunctive of Cause and Time,		238
VII. Subjunctive in Indirect Questions,		242
VIII. Subjunctive by Attraction,		244
IX. Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse,		245
Moods and Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua,		246
Pronouns, Adverbs, etc., in Oratio Oblique		248
VII. Imperative,		248
I. Tenses of the Imperative,		248
II. Use of the Imperative,		249
VIII. Infinitive,		250
I. Tenses of the Infinitive,		251
II. Subject of the Infinitive,		252
III. Predicate after the Infinitive,		253
IV. Construction of the Infinitive,		254
IX. Subject and Object Clauses,		258
X. Gerund,		262
Gerundive,		263
XI. Supine,		266
XII. Participles,		267

CHAPTER VI.

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

Adverbs,	270
Prepositions,	271
Conjunctions,	271
Interjections,	274

CHAPTER VII.

Rules of Syntax,	Page. 274
----------------------------	--------------

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

Section.

I. Arrangement of Words,	281
II. Arrangement of Clauses,	285

PART FOURTH.

PROSODY.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

I. General Rules of Quantity,	287
II. Special Rules of Quantity,	289
I. Quantity of Final Syllables,	289
II. Quantity in Increments,	292
III. Quantity of Derivative Endings,	295
IV. Quantity of Stem Syllables,	297

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

I. General View of the Subject,	300
I. Metrical Feet,	300
II. Verses,	302
III. Figures of Prosody,	304
II. Varieties of Verse,	305
I. Dactylic Verse,	305
II. Anapaestic Verse,	308
III. Trochaic Verse,	308
IV. Iambic Verse,	309
V. Ionic Verse,	312
VI. Choriambic Verse,	312
VII. Logaeodic Verse,	313
VIII. Miscellaneous Verses,	315
III. Versification of Virgil, Horace, Ovid, and Juvenal,	315

APPENDIX.

Figures of Speech,	320
Latin Authors,	322
Roman Calendar,	323
Roman Money, Weights, and Measures,	325
Abbreviations,	327
Index of Verbs,	328
Index of Subjects,	336
Table of corresponding articles in the two editions,	356

LATIN GRAMMAR.

1. LATIN GRAMMAR treats of the principles of the Latin language. It comprises four parts :

I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

III. SYNTAX, which treats of the construction of sentences.

IV. PROSODY, which treats of quantity and versification.

PART FIRST.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

ALPHABET.

2. THE Latin alphabet is the same as the English with the omission of *w*.

1. *U* supplies the place of *w*.

2. *H* is only a breathing, and not strictly entitled to the rank of a letter.

3. Originally *i* and *u* were used both as vowels and as consonants, and accordingly supplied the place of *j* and *v*.

4. *K* is seldom used, and *y* and *z* occur only in words of Greek origin.

3. CLASSES OF LETTERS.—Letters are divided into two classes :

I. VOWELS, a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. CONSONANTS :

1. *Liquids*, l, m, n, r.

2. *Spirants*, h, f, v, j, s.

3. *Mutes*: 1) Labials—*lip-letters*, b, p, f, v.

2) Dentals—*teeth-letters*, d, t.

3) Gutturals—*throat-letters*, c, g, k, q, h.

4. *Double Consonants*, x, z.

4. COMBINATIONS OF LETTERS.—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are—*ae, oe, au*.

2. *Double Consonants*—*x = cs or gs ; z = ds or sd*.

3. *Ch, ph, th* are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c, p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

5. PRONUNCIATION.—Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, three distinct *Methods* are recognized, generally known as the *English*, the *Roman*, and the *Continental*.¹ For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

ENGLISH METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

6. Vowels generally have their long or short English sounds. But

1. These sounds in Latin, as in English, are somewhat modified by the consonants which accompany them.

2. Before *r*, *final*, or followed by another consonant, *e, i*, and *u* are scarcely distinguishable from each other, as in the English *her, fir, fur*, while *a* and *o* are pronounced as in *far, for*.

3. Between *qu* and *dr*, or *rt*, *a* approaches the sound of *o*: *quar'-tus*, as in *quarter*.

7. LONG SOUNDS.—Vowels have their long English

¹ Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the Continent of Europe has its own method.

sounds—**a** as in *fate*, **e** in *mete*, **i** in *pine*, **o** in *note*, **u** in *tube*, **y** in *type*—in the following situations :

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel : *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables, before a vowel or diphthong : *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.¹

3. In penultimate² syllables before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r* : *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*.

4. In unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r* : *do-lo'-ris*, *a-gric'-o-la*.

1) **A** *unaccented* has the sound of *a* final in *America* : *men'-sa*.

2) **I** and **y** *unaccented* in any syllable except the first and last generally have the short sound : *nob'-i-lis* (*nob'-e-lis*), *Am'-y-cus* (*Am'-e-cus*).

3) **U**, etc.—**U** has the short sound before *bl* ; and the other vowels before *gl* and *tl* : *Pub-lic'-o-la*, *Ag-la'-o-phon*, *At'-las*.

4) **I**.—Between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and another vowel, *i* sometimes stands for *j*. It is then pronounced like *y* in *yet* : *A-cha'-ia* (*A-ka'-ya*), *Pom-pe'-ius* (*Pom-pe'-yus*), *La-to'-ia* (*La-to'-ya*), *Har-py'-ia* (*Har-py'-ya*).

5) **U**.—After *q* and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w* : *qui* (*kwi*), *qua* ; *lin'-gua* (*lin'-gwa*), *lin'-guis*. Sometimes also after *s* : *sua'-de-o* (*swa'-de-o*).

6) COMPOUND WORDS.—When the first part of a compound is entire and ends in a consonant, any vowel before such consonant has generally the *short* sound : *a* in *ab'-es*, *e* in *red'-it*, *i* in *in'-it*, *o* in *ob'-it*, *prod'-est*. But those final syllables which, as exceptions, have the *long* sound before a consonant (8, 1), retain that sound in compounds : *post'-quam*, *hos'-ce*. *E'-ti-am* and *quo'-ni-am* are generally pronounced as simple words.

8. SHORT SOUNDS.—Vowels have their short English sounds—**a** as in *fat*, **e** in *met*, **i** in *pin*, **o** in *not*, **u** in *tub*, **y** in *myth*—in the following situations :

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant : *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys* : except *post*, *es* final, and *os* final in plural cases : *res*, *di'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants ex-

¹ In these rules no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing : hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel. for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes ; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

² Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

cept a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3 and 4): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex'-e-runt*, *bel-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables, not penultimate, before one or more consonants: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-r-i-bus*.

1) **A**, **e**, or **o**, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) **U**, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

3) Compounds. See 7, 6.)

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

9. **Ae** like *e*: *Cae'-sar*, *Daed'-ä-lus*.¹

Oe like *e*: *Oe'-ta*, *Oed'-i-pus*.¹

Au, as in author: *au'-rum*.

Eu, . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.

1. **Ei** and **oi** are seldom diphthongs, but when so used they are pronounced as in height, coin: *hei*, *proin*. See Synaeresis, 669, II.

2. **Ui**, as a diphthong with the long sound of *i*, occurs in *cui*, *hui*, *huic*.

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English, but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C**, **G**, **S**, **T**, and **X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus

1. **C** and **g** are *soft* (like *s* and *j*) before *e*, *i*, *y*, *ae*, and *oe*, and *hard* in other situations: *ce'-do* (*se'-do*), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-pi*, *a'-ge* (*a'-je*), *a'-gi*; *ca'do* (*ka'-do*), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*. But

1) *Ch* is hard like *k*: *Cho'-rus* (*ko'-rus*), *Chi'-os* (*Ki'-os*).

2) *G* has the soft sound before *g* soft: *ag'-ger*.

2. **S** generally has its English sound, as in son, this: *sa'-cer*, *si'-dus*.

1) *S* final, after *e*, *ae*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, *r*, is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

2) In a few words *s* has the sound of *z*, because so pronounced in English words derived from them: *Cae'-sar*, Caesar; *cau'-sa*, cause; *mu'-sa*, muse; *mi'-ser*, miser, etc.

¹ The diphthong has the *long sound* in *Cae'-sar* and *Oe'-ta* according to 7, 3, but the *short sound* in *Daed'-ä-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*) and *Oed'-i-pus* (*Ed'-i-pus*) according to 8, 3, as *e* would be thus pronounced in the same situations.

3. **T** has its regular English sound, as in time: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. **X** has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (*rek'-si*). But at the beginning of a word it has the sound of *z*: *Xan'-thus*.

12. C, S, T, X—Aspirated.—Before *i* preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c*, *s*, *t*, and *x* are aspirated—*c*, *s*, and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (*so'-she-us*), *Al'-si-um* (*Al'-she-um*), *ar'-ti-um* (*ar'-she-um*), *anx'-i-us* (*ank'-she-us*). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo* preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (*ca-du'-she-us*), *Sic'-y-on* (*Sish'-e-on*).

1. **T** loses the aspirate—(1) after *s*, *t*, or *x*: *Os'-ti-a*, *At'-ti-us*, *mix'-ti-o*:—(2) in old infinitives in *ier*: *flec'-ti-er*:—(3) generally in proper names in *tion* (*tyon*); *Phi-lis'-ti-on*, *Am-phi'-ty-on*.

4. SYLLABLES.

13. In Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: *mo'-re*, *per-sua'-de*, *men'-sae*.

14. In the division of words into syllables:

1. After a vowel (or diphthong), with the *Long Sound* (7), consonants are joined to the following vowel: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *a-gro'-rum*, *au-di'-vi*.

2. After a vowel with the *Short Sound* (8),

1) *A single or double consonant* is joined to such vowel, except after *i* unaccented: *gen'-e-ri*, *rex'-i*, *dom'-i-nus*.

2) *Two consonants* are separated: *bel'-lum*, *men'-sa*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But *x* following a consonant is joined to the preceding syllable: *Xerx'-es*.

3) *Of three or more consonants*, the last, or, if a mute with *l* or *r*, the last two are joined to the following vowel: *emp'-tus*, *tem'-plum*, *claus'-tra*.

3. But compound words are separated into their component parts, if the first of those parts is entire, and ends in a consonant: *hos'-ce*, *post'-quam*.

ROMAN METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

1. SOUNDS OF THE VOWELS.

15. The vowel sounds are the following:

LONG.		SHORT.	
\bar{a} like <i>a</i> in father:	$\bar{a}'-r\bar{i}s$.	\check{a} like <i>a</i> in fast:	$\check{a}'-m\check{e}t$.
\bar{e} <i>a</i> made:	$\bar{e}'-\bar{d}\bar{i}$.	\check{e} <i>e</i> net:	$r\check{e}'-g\check{e}t$.

LONG.				SHORT.			
ī	like <i>e</i>	in <i>me</i> :	<i>ī'-rī.</i>	ĭ	like <i>i</i>	in <i>divert</i> :	<i>vĭ'-dĕt.</i>
ō	<i>o</i>	<i>rode</i> :	<i>ō'-rās.</i>	ŏ	<i>o</i>	<i>romance</i> :	<i>mŏ'-nĕt.</i>
ū	<i>o</i>	<i>do</i> :	<i>ū'-nō.</i>	ŭ	<i>u</i>	<i>full</i> :	<i>sŭ'-mŭs.</i>

1. When a short vowel is lengthened by position (21, 2), it retains its short sound: *sunt*, *u* as in *sŭ'-mŭs*.

2. **ȳ**, found only in Greek words, is in sound intermediate between the Latin *u* and *i*: *Nȳ'-să.*

3. **Ĳ**.—Between an accented *a*, *e*, *o*, or *y*, and another vowel, *i* generally stands for *j*. It is then pronounced like *y* in *yet* (17): *A-chă'-iă* (*A-ka'-ya*).

4. **Ů**.—After *q*, and generally after *g*, *u* has the sound of *w*: *quī* (*kwe*), *lin'-guă* (*lin'-gwa*). So also in *cuī*, *huī*, *huic*, and sometimes after *s*: *suă'-dĕ-o* (*swa'-de-o*).

2. SOUNDS OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

16. In diphthongs each vowel retains its own sound :

ae (for *ai*) like the English *aye* (yes) : *men'-sae*.¹

au like *ow* in *how* : *cau'-să.*

oe (for *oi*) like *oi* in *coin* : *foe'-dŭs.*

1. **Ei**, as in *veil*, and **eu**, with the sounds of *e* and *u* combined, occur in a few words: *dein*, *neu'-tĕr*.

3. SOUNDS OF THE CONSONANTS.

17. Most of the consonants are pronounced nearly as in English, but the following require special notice :

c like *k* in *king* : *cĕ'-lĕs* (*kalas*), *cĭ'-vĭ* (*kewe*).

g *g* *get* : *gĕ'-nŭs*, *rĕ'-gĭs*.

j *y* *yet* : *jă'-cĕt* (*yaket*), *jŭs'-sŭm*.

s *s* *son* : *să'-cĕr*, *sŏ'-rŏr*.

t *t* *time* : *tĭ'-mŏr*, *tŏ'-tŭs*.

v *w* *we* : *vă'-dŭm*, *vĭ'-cĭ*.

4. SYLLABLES.

18. In dividing words into syllables

1. Make as many syllables as there are vowels and diphthongs : *mŏ'-rĕ*, *per-suă'-dĕ*, *men'-sae*.

¹ Combining the sounds of *a* and *i*.

2. Join to each vowel as many of the consonants which precede it—one or more—as can be conveniently pronounced at the beginning of a word or syllable:¹ *pă'-těr*, *pă'-trēs*, *gě'-ně-rĩ*, *dō'-mĩ-nūs*, *no'-scīt*, *si'-stīs*, *clau'-stră*, *men'-să*, *bel'-lŭm*, *jŭs'-sŭm*, *tem'-plŭm*, *emp'-tŭs*. But

3. Compound words must be separated into their component parts, if the first of these parts is entire and ends in a consonant: *ăb'-ēs*, *ōb-ĩ'-rě*.

CONTINENTAL METHOD OF PRONUNCIATION.

19. The Continental Method, as adopted in this country, is almost identical with the Roman, except in the pronunciation of the consonants, in which it more nearly coincides with the English. See 15, 16, 10, 11, 12, and 18.

QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are in quantity or length either long, short, or common.²

21. LONG.—A syllable is long in quantity

1. If it contains a diphthong: *hacc*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. SHORT.—A syllable is short, if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dĩ'-ēs*, *vi'-ae*, *nĩ'-hĩl*.³

23. COMMON.—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *a'-grĩ*.

1. The signs ¯, ˇ, ˘ are used to mark quantity, the first denoting that the syllable over which it is placed is *long*, the second that it is *short*, and the third that it is *common*: *ă-grō-rŭm*.

ACCENTUATION.

24. Words of two syllables are always accented on the first: *men'-sa*.

¹ By some grammarians a mute and a liquid are always joined to the following vowel, as also any combination of consonants which can begin a Greek word: *ĩ'-gnĩs*, *o'-mnĩs*, *ĩ'-psē*, but there is little evidence that the ancient Romans divided words in this way.

² Common, i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short. For rules of quantity see Prosody. Two or three leading facts are here given for the convenience of the learner.

³ No account is taken of the breathing *h* (2, 2).

25. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the *Penult*¹ if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *Antepenult*:² *hǒ-nō'-rĭs*, *con'-sǔ-lĭs*.

1. Genitives in *i* for *ii* and vocatives in *i* for *ie* retain the accent of the full form: *in-gě'-nĭ* for *in-ge'-ni-i*; *Mer-cŭ'-rĭ* for *Mer-cu'-ri-e*.

2. Penults common in quantity take the accent when used as long.

3. Compounds are accented like simple words; but

1) The enclitics, *quě*, *vě*, *ně*, throw back their accents upon the last syllable of the word to which they are appended: *hǒm'-ĭ-ně'-quě*, *men-sǎ'-quě*.

2) *Făcio*, compounded with other words than prepositions, retains its own accent: *căl-ě-fă'-cĭt*.

4. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity, otherwise on the third: *mǒn'-u-ě'-runt*; *mǒn'-u-ě-ră'-mŭs*; *in-stau'-ră-vě'-runt*.

5. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hǒn'-ō-rĭf'-ĭ-cen-tis'-sĭ-mŭs*.

EUPHONIC LAWS.

26. Latin words have undergone important changes in accordance with certain euphonic laws.

I. CHANGES IN VOWELS.

27. Vowels are often lengthened, especially in compensation for the dropping of consonants: *servoms*, *servōs*; *rēgems*, *rēgēs*.

28. Vowels are sometimes changed through the influence of the consonants which follow them. Thus *e* is the favorite vowel before *r*, *i* before *s*, *u* before *l*, especially before *l* followed by another consonant: *cĭnĭs*, *cĭnĕrĭs* for *cinisis* (35), ashes; *vult* for *volt*, he wishes.

1. **E** *final* is a favorite vowel: *servĕ* for *servo*, O slave: *mǒnĕrĕ*, for *monĕri*, for *monĕris*, you are advised. See 34.

2. **E** is also a favorite vowel for *ĭ*,

1) Before *x* or two or more consonants, especially in final syllables: *jŭdex* for *judix*, judge; *mĭlĕs* for *milet* for *milit*, soldier.

¹ In the subsequent pages the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

² Penult, the last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

2) In accented syllables before *a*, *i*, *o*, or *u*: *ea* for *ia*, this; *eī* for *iī*, these; *eo* for *io*, I go; *eunt* for *iunt*, they go.

29. Vowels are sometimes shortened, regularly so in final syllables before *m* and *t*; *ērām* for *erām*, I was; *ērāt* for *erāt*, he was.

30. Vowels are often weakened, i. e., changed to weaker vowels, in consequence of the lengthening of the word by inflection, composition, etc.

The order of the vowels from the strongest to the weakest is as follows:

a, o, u, e, i:

conficio for *confacio*, I accomplish; *servūs* for *servos*, slave; *fructibūs* for *fructūbus*, with fruits; *carmīnīs* for *carmēnis*, of song.

1. Diphthongs are also sometimes weakened:

ae (for *ai*) to **ī** or **ē**: *incēdīt* for *incaedit*, he cuts into.

oe (for *oi*) to **ū** or **ī**: *pūnīrē* for *poenire*, to punish.

au to **ū** or **ō**: *exclūdo* for *exclaudio*, to shut out.

31. Vowels are often dropped in the middle or at the end of words, sometimes even at the beginning: *tempūlūm*, *templūm*, temple; *pātērīs*, *patrīs*, of a father; *ānīmālē*, *ānīmāl*, an animal; *ēsūm*, *sūm*, I am.

32. Two successive vowels are sometimes contracted

I. Into a DIPHTHONG: *mensā-ī*, *mensae*, tables.

II. More frequently into a LONG VOWEL. In this case the second vowel generally disappears. Thus **e** and **i** often disappear after *a*, *e*, and *o*; *āmāvērāt*, *ama-ē-rat*, *āmārāt*, he had loved; *āmāvissē*, *ama-isse*, *āmāssē*, to have loved. But

1. The first vowel disappears in the following endings:

1) In **a-is**, in Declension I.: *mensa-is*, *mensīs*, with tables.

2) In **o-is**, and **o-i**, in Declension II.: *servo-is*, *servīs*, for slaves, *servo-i*, *servī*, slaves. But in the Dative Singular, **o-i** becomes **ō**; *servo-i*, *servō*, for the slave.

3) In **a-o** in Conjugation I.: *āmā-o*, *āmo*, I love.

2. **A-i** becomes **ē** in the Subjunctive of Conjugation I.: *āmā-īs*, *āmēs*, you may love.

3. **O-ā** becomes **ā** in neuters of Declension II.: *templo-ā*, *templā*, temples.

II. CHANGES IN CONSONANTS.

33. **S** uniting with a preceding *c* or *g* forms *x*: *dux* for *ducs*, leader; *rex* for *regs*, king.

34. **S** final is often dropped: *mōnērě* for *monēri* for *monēri*, you are advised. See 28, 1.

35. **S** standing between two vowels is generally changed to *r*: *flōrēs* for *floses*, flowers.

36. **D** and **t** are generally dropped before *s*: *lāpīs* for *lapids*, stone; *aetās* for *aetats*, age; *mīlēs* for *milet*, *milits*, soldier.

PART SECOND.

ETYMOLOGY.

37. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

38. The Parts of Speech are—*Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

CHAPTER I.

NOUNS.

39. A Noun or Substantive is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōmā*, Rome; *dōmūs*, house.

1. A PROPER NOUN is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicēro*; *Rōmā*.

2. A COMMON NOUN is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vīr*, a man; *ēquūs*, horse. Common nouns include

1) *Collective Nouns*—designating a collection of objects: *pōpūlus*, people; *exercītūs*, army.

2) *Abstract Nouns*—designating properties or qualities: *virtūs*, virtue; *justītiā*, justice.

3) *Material Nouns*—designating materials as such: *aurūm*, gold; *lignūm*, wood; *āquā*, water.

40. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

I. GENDER.

41. There are three genders¹—*Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

1. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

42. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicēro*; *vīr*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnūs*, Rhine; *Nōtūs*, south wind; *Martiūs*, March.

II. FEMININES.

1. Names of *Females*: *mūliēr*, woman; *leaeṇā*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptūs*, Egypt; *Rōmā*, Rome; *Dēlōs*, Delos; *pīrūs*, pear-tree.

III. NEUTERS.

1. *Indeclinable Nouns*: *fās*, right; *nihil*, nothing.

2. *Words and Clauses* used as *indeclinable nouns*: *tristē vālē*, a sad farewell.

43. REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. EXCEPTIONS.—The endings² of nouns sometimes give them a gender at variance with these rules. Thus

1) The names of rivers—*Albūlā*, *Alliā*, *Lēthē*, *Styx*, and sometimes others, are feminine by ending.

2) Some names of *countries*, *towns*, *islands*, *trees*, and *animals*, take the gender of their endings. See 53, 1.

2. MASCULINE or FEMININE.—A few personal appellatives applicable to both sexes and a few names of animals are sometimes *masculine* and sometimes *feminine*, but when used without distinct reference to sex they are generally *masculine*: *cīvīs*, citizen (man or woman); *bōs*, ox, cow.

3. EPICENE NOUNS have but one gender, but are used for both sexes. They apply only to the inferior animals, and usually take the gender of their endings: *ansēr*, goose, masculine; *āquīlā*, eagle, feminine.

¹ In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction according to grammatical rules.

² Gender as determined by the endings of nouns will be noticed in connection with the several declensions.

II. PERSON AND NUMBER.

44. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker ; the second, the person spoken to ; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

III. CASES.¹

45. The Latin has six cases :

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

1. OBLIQUE CASES.—The Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, are called the Oblique Cases.

2. LOCATIVE.—The Latin has also a few remnants of another case, called the Locative, denoting the *place in which*.

DECLENSION.

46. STEM AND ENDINGS.—The process by which the several cases of a word are formed is called Declension. It consists in the addition of certain endings to one common base called the stem.

1. MEANING.—Accordingly, each case-form contains two distinct elements—the *stem*, which gives the general meaning of the word, and the *case-ending*, which shows the relation of that meaning to some other word. Thus in *rēg-īs*, of a king, the general idea, *king*, is denoted by the stem *rēg*, the relation *of*, by the ending *is*.

2. CASES ALIKE.—But certain cases are not distinguished in form.

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative* in *neuters* are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

¹ The *case* of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words ; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike, except in the singular of nouns in *us* of the second declension (51).¹

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

47. FIVE DECLENSIONS.—In Latin there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the endings of the Stem, or of the Genitive Singular, as follows:

DEC.	I.	STEM-ENDINGS.	GENITIVE ENDINGS.
	II.	a	ae
	III.	o	ī
	IV.	i or consonant.	īs
	V.	u	ūs
		e	ēī

1. The five declensions are only five varieties of one general system of inflection, as the case-endings are nearly identical in all nouns.

2. But these case-endings appear distinct and unchanged only in nouns of the Third Declension, while in all others they are seen only in combination with the final vowel of the stem.

FIRST DECLENSION: A NOUNS.

48. Nouns of the first declension end in

ā and ē,—feminine ; ās and ēs,—masculine.²

Nouns in *a* are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			
	Example.	Meaning.	Case-Endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	mens ā ,	<i>a table,</i>	ā
<i>Gen.</i>	mens ae ,	<i>of a table,</i>	ae
<i>Dat.</i>	mens ae ,	<i>to, for a table,</i>	ae
<i>Acc.</i>	mens am ,	<i>a table,</i>	am
<i>Voc.</i>	mens ā ,	<i>O table,</i>	ā
<i>Abl.</i>	mens ā ,	<i>with, from, by a table,</i>	ā
PLURAL.			
<i>Nom.</i>	mens ae ,	<i>tables,</i>	ae
<i>Gen.</i>	mens arūm ,	<i>of tables,</i>	arūm
<i>Dat.</i>	mens is ,	<i>to, for tables,</i>	is
<i>Acc.</i>	mens as ,	<i>tables,</i>	as
<i>Voc.</i>	mens ae ,	<i>O tables,</i>	ae
<i>Abl.</i>	mens is ,	<i>with, from, by tables.</i>	is.

¹ And in some nouns of Greek origin.

² That is, nouns of this declension in *a* and *e* are feminine, and those in *as* and *es* are masculine.

1. STEM.—In nouns of the First Declension, the stem ends in **a**.

2. In the PARADIGM, observe

1) That the stem is *mensa*, and that the Nominative Singular is the same.

2) That the several cases are distinguished from each other by their case-endings.

3) That these case-endings contain the stem-ending **a** (47, 2), which disappears in the ending **is**, contracted from *a-is*, in the Dative and Ablative Plural. See 32,1,1).

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *mensa* decline:

Ala, wing; *āqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortūna*, fortune.

4. LOCATIVE.—Names of towns and a very few other words have a Locative Singular in **ae**: *Rōmae*, at Rome; *mīlītiaē*, in war.

5. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.—*Hadria*, Adriatic Sea, is masculine; sometimes also *dāma*, deer, and *talpa*, mole. See also 43, 1.

6. ARTICLE.—The Latin has no article. A noun may therefore, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated either without any article, with *a* or *an*, or with *the*: *cōrōna*, crown, a crown, the crown.

49. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **As**, an old form for *ae*, in the Genitive of *fāmīlia*, in composition with *pāter*, *māter*, *fīliūs*, and *fīlia*: *paterfamiliās*, father of a family.

2. **AI** for the genitive ending *ae*, in the poets: *aulāi* for *aulae*, of a hall.

3. **Um** for *arum* in the Gen. Plur.: *Dardānīdūm* for *Dardanidārum*, of the descendants of Dardanus.

4. **Abūs**, the original form for *is*, in the Dat. and Abl. Plur., especially in *dea*, goddess, and *fīlia*, daughter, to distinguish them from the same cases of *deūs*, god, and *fīliūs*, son: *deābūs* for *deis*, to goddesses.

50. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **e**, **as**, and **es** are of Greek origin, and are declined as follows:

Epitōme, *epitome*. Aenēas, *Aeneas*. Pyrītes, *pyrites*.

SINGULAR.

N. epitōm ē	Aenē ās	pyrīt ēs
G. epitōm ēs	Aenē ae	pyrīt ae
D. epitōm ae	Aenē ae	pyrīt ae
A. epitōm ēn	Aenē ām, ān	pyrīt ēn
V. epitōm ē	Aenē ā	pyrīt ē, ā
A. epitōm ē	Aenē ā.	pyrīt ē, ā

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> ěpitōma ae	<i>pŷritae</i>
<i>G.</i> epitōm ārŭm	<i>pyritārŭm</i>
<i>D.</i> epitōm is	<i>pyritis</i>
<i>A.</i> epitōm ās	<i>pyritās</i>
<i>V.</i> epitōma e	<i>pyritae</i>
<i>A.</i> epitōm is.	<i>pyritis.</i>

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1) That in the Plural and in the Dative Singular, Greek nouns are declined like *mensa*.

2) That the stem-ending **a** is changed into **e** in certain cases of nouns in *e* and *es*.

2. Many Greek nouns assume the Latin ending *a*, and are declined like *mensa*. Many in *e* have also a form in *a*; *epitōme*, *epitōma*, epitome.

SECOND DECLENSION: O NOUNS.

51. Nouns of the second declension end in

ēr, ir, ūs, and **os**—*masculine*; **ŭm**, and **on**—*neuter*.

Nouns in *er, ir, us*, and *um*, are declined as follows:

Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> serv ŭs	<i>puēr</i>	<i>āgēr</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>G.</i> serv i	<i>puēri</i>	<i>āgri</i>	<i>templi</i>
<i>D.</i> serv ō	<i>puērō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>templō</i>
<i>A.</i> serv ŭm	<i>puērŭm</i>	<i>agrŭm</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>V.</i> serv ē	<i>puēr</i>	<i>agēr</i>	<i>templŭm</i>
<i>A.</i> serv ō	<i>puērō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>templō</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> serv i	<i>puēri</i>	<i>āgri</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>G.</i> serv ōrŭm	<i>puerōrŭm</i>	<i>agrōrŭm</i>	<i>templōrŭm</i>
<i>D.</i> serv is	<i>puēris</i>	<i>agris</i>	<i>templis</i>
<i>A.</i> serv ōs	<i>puērōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>V.</i> serv i	<i>puēri</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>A.</i> serv is.	<i>puēris.</i>	<i>agris.</i>	<i>templis.</i>

1. STEM.—In nouns of the Second Declension, the stem ends in **o**.

2. In the PARADIGMS, observe

1) That the stems are *servo*, *puēro*, *agro*, and *templo*.

2) That the stem-ending **o** becomes **u** in the endings *us* and *um*, and **e** in *serve*,¹ that it disappears by contraction in the endings *a*, *i*, and *is* (for *o-a*, *o-i* and *o-is*),² and is dropped in the forms *puer* and *ager*.

¹ See 30, and 23, 1.

² See 32, II. 1 and 3.

3) That the case-endings, including the stem-ending *o* (47, 2), are as follows:

SINGULAR.	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ūs, — ¹	ŭm
<i>Gen.</i> ī	ī
<i>Dat.</i> ō	ō
<i>Acc.</i> ŭm	ŭm
<i>Voc.</i> ě, — ¹	ŭm
<i>Abl.</i> ō	ō
PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i> ī	ă
<i>Gen.</i> ōrŭm	ōrŭm
<i>Dat.</i> īs	īs
<i>Acc.</i> ōs	ă
<i>Voc.</i> ī	ă
<i>Abl.</i> īs.	īs.

4) That *puer* and *ăger* differ in declension from *servus* in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the *Nom.* and *Voc.*; *Nom. puer* for *puĕrus*, *Voc. puer* for *puĕre*.

5) That *ăger* inserts *e* before *r* in the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*²

6) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the *Nom.*, *Accus.*, and *Voc.* alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 46, 2, 1).

3. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.—Like *SERVUS*: *dōmīnus*, master.—Like *PUER*: *gĕner*, son-in-law.—Like *AGER*: *măgister*, master.—Like *TEMPLUM*: *bellum*, war.

4. NOUNS IN *er* AND *ir*.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *ăger*, but the following in *er* and *ir* are declined like *puer*.

1) Nouns in *ir*: *vir*, *vīri*, man.

2) Compounds in *fer* and *ger*: *armăger*, *armăgĕri*, armor-bearer; *signăfer*, *signăfĕri*, standard-bearer.

3) *Adulter*, adulterer; *Celtăber*, Celtiberian;³ *gĕner*, son-in-law; *Iber*, Spaniard;³ *Liber*, Bacchus; *lībĕri*, children; *Mulcăber*, Vulcan;³ *presbĭter*, elder; *sōcer*, father-in-law; *vesper*, evening.

5. *DEUS*.—Declined thus: *Sing. deŭs, deī, deō, deŭm, deŭs, deō*: *Plur. N. and V. deī, dīi, dī*; *G. deōrŭm, deŭm*; *D. and A. deīs, dīs, dīs, Acc. deōs*.

¹ The endings of the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.* are wanting in nouns in *er*.

² In *puer*, *e* belongs to the stem, and is accordingly retained in all the cases; but in *ăger* it is inserted in the *Nom.* and *Voc. Sing.*, as *agr* would be difficult to pronounce.

³ *Celtăber* and *Iber* have *e long* in the *Gen.*, and *Mulcăber* sometimes drops *e*.

6. LOCATIVE.—Names of Towns and a few other words have a Locative Singular in **i**: *Cōrinthi*, at Corinth; *Ephēsi*, at Ephesus; *hūmi*, on the ground.

52. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **I** for *ī* by contraction in the Gen. Sing., without change of accent: *ingē'nī* for *ingē'nīi*, of talent.

2. **I** for *ie*, common in proper names in *ius*, without change of accent: *Mercū'rī* for *Mercū'rie*, Mercury. Also in *fīlī* for *fīlie*, son; *gēnī* for *gēnie*, guardian spirit.

3. **Us** for *e* in the Voc. of *deus*, god, rare in other words.

4. **Um** for *ōrūm*, common in a few words denoting money, weight, and measure: *tālentūm* for *tālentōrum*, of talents; also in a few other words: *deūm* for *deōrum*; *libērūm* for *libērōrum*; *Argīvūm* for *Argīvōrum*.

53. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Feminine*.—(1) See 42, II., but observe that many names of *countries, towns, islands, and trees*, follow the gender of their endings. (2) Most names of gems and ships are feminine: also *alvus*, belly; *carbāsus*, sail; *cōlus*, distaff; *hūmus*, ground; *vannus*, sieve. (3) A few Greek feminines.

2. *Neuter*.—*pēlāgus*, sea; *vīrus*, poison; *vulgus* (rarely masc.), common people.

54. GREEK NOUNS.—Nouns of this declension in **os** and **on** are of Greek origin, and are declined in the singular as follows:

Delos, F.,¹ *Delos*. Androgeos, *Androgeos*. Ilion, *Ilium*.

SINGULAR.

N. Del ōs	Andrōge ōs	Ili ōn
G. Del ī	Androge ō, ī	Ili ī
D. Del ō	Androge ō	Ili ō
A. Del ōn	Androge ōn, ō	Ili ōn
V. Del ē	Androge ōs	Ili ōn
A. Del ō .	Androge ō .	Ili ō .

1. The Plural of nouns in *os* and *on* is generally regular, but certain Greek endings occur, as *oe* in the Nom. Plur., and *ōn* in the Gen.

2. Most Greek nouns generally assume the Latin forms in *us* and *um*, and are declined like *servus* and *regnum*. Many in *os* or *on* have also a form in *us* or *um*.

3. Greek nouns in *eus*. See 68 and 68, 1.

4. *Panthus* has Voc. *Panthū*; *pēlāgus*, Acc. Plur., *pēlāgē*.

¹ M stands for masculine, F for feminine, and N for neuter.

THIRD DECLENSION: CONSONANT AND I NOUNS.

55. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, and x.

56. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes :

I. Nouns whose stem ends in a *Consonant*.

II. Nouns whose stem ends in **I**.¹

CLASS I.—CONSONANT STEMS.

57. STEMS ENDING IN A LABIAL : **B** or **P**.

Princeps, M.,² a leader, chief. Case-Endings.

SINGULAR.

N. princeps,	a leader,	s
G. principis,	of a leader,	is
D. principi,	to, for a leader,	i
A. principem,	a leader,	em
V. princeps,	O leader,	s
A. principē,	with, from, by a leader,	ē

PLURAL.

N. principēs,	leaders,	ēs
G. principūm,	of leaders,	ūm
D. principibūs,	to, for leaders,	ibūs
A. principēs,	leaders,	ēs
V. principēs,	O leaders,	ēs
A. principibūs,	with, from, by leaders.	ibūs.

1. STEM AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In this Paradigm observe

1) That the stem is *principē*, modified before an additional syllable to *principi*. See 30 and 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are appended to the stem without change. See 47, 2.

2. VARIABLE RADICAL VOWEL.—In the final syllable of dissyllabic consonant stems, short **e** or **i** generally takes the form of *ē* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and that of *ī* in all the other cases. Thus *princeps*, *principis*, and *jūdex*, *jūdicis* (59), both alike have *e* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and *i* in all the other cases, though in *princeps*, the original form of the radical vowel is **e** and in *jūdex*, **i**. For a similar change in the radical vowel, see *mīlēs*, *mīlitis* (58) and *carmēn*, *carmīnis* (60). See also *ōpūs*, *ōpēris* (61).

¹ For Gender see 99–115.

² See foot-note p. 17.

3. In monosyllables in *bs* the stem ends in *i*. See *urbs*, 64.

4. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 86, 88.

58. STEMS ENDING IN A DENTAL: **D** OR **T**.

Lapis, *M.*, *stone*. Aetas, *F.*, *age*. Miles, *M.*, *soldier*.

SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> lăpīs	actās	mīlēś
<i>G.</i> lapīdīs	actātīs	militīs
<i>D.</i> lapīdī	actātī	militī
<i>A.</i> lapīdēm	actātēm	militēm
<i>V.</i> lapīs	actās	mīlēś
<i>A.</i> lapīdē	actātē	militē
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> lapīdēs	actātēs	militēs
<i>G.</i> lapīdūm	actātūm	militūm
<i>D.</i> lapīdībūs	actatībūs	militībūs
<i>A.</i> lapīdēs	actātēs	militēs
<i>V.</i> lapīdēs	actātēs	militēs
<i>A.</i> lapīdībūs.	actatībūs.	militībūs.

Nepos, *M.*, *grandson*. Virtus, *F.*, *virtue*. Caput, *N.*, *head*.

SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> nēpōś	virtūs	căpūt
<i>G.</i> nepōtīs	virtūtīs	capītīs
<i>D.</i> nepōtī	virtūtī	capītī
<i>A.</i> nepōtēm	virtūtēm	capūt
<i>V.</i> nepōś	virtūs	capūt
<i>A.</i> nepōtē	virtūtē	capītē
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capītă
<i>G.</i> nepōtūm	virtūtūm	capītūm
<i>D.</i> nepotībūs	virtutībūs	capitībūs
<i>A.</i> nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capītă
<i>V.</i> nepōtēs	virtūtēs	capītă
<i>A.</i> nepotībūs.	virtutībūs.	capitībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In these Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *lăpīd*, *actāt*, *mīlit*, *nēpōt*, *virtūt* and *căpūt*.

2) That *mīlēś* has the variable vowel, *ē*, *ī*, and *căpūt*, *ŭ*, *ī*. See 57, 2.

3) That the dental *d* or *t* is dropped before *s*: *lăpis* for *lapids*, *actās* for *actats*, *mīlēś* for *mīlets*, *virtūs* for *virtuts*. See 36.

4) That the case-endings, except in the *neuter cǎpūt* (46, 2), are the same as those given above. See 57.

5) That the *neuter, cǎpūt*, has no case-ending in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing., *ǎ* in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur., and the case-endings of masculine and feminine nouns in the other cases.

2. NEUTER STEMS IN **at** drop **t** in the Nom. Sing. and end in *ǎ*: Nom., *poēma*, Gen., *poemātis*; Stem, *poēmāt*. These nouns sometimes have *īs* for *ībūs* in the Dat. and Abl. Plur.: *poemātīs* for *poematībūs*.

3. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 69, 78–84.

59. STEMS ENDING IN A GUTTURAL: **C** OR **G**.

Rex, M., <i>king.</i>	Judex, M. & F., <i>judge.</i>	Radix, F., <i>root.</i>	Dux, M. & F., <i>leader.</i>
--------------------------	----------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. rex	jūdex	rādx	dux
G. rēgīs	judīcīs	radīcīs	dūcīs
D. regī	judīcī	radīcī	ducī
A. regēm	judīcēm	radīcēm	ducēm
V. rex	judex	radix	dux
A. regē	judīcē	radīcē	ducē

PLURAL.

N. regēs	judīcēs	radīcēs	ducēs
G. regūm	judīcūm	radīcūm	ducūm
D. regībūs	judīcībūs	radīcībūs	ducībūs
A. regēs	judīcēs	radīcēs	ducēs
V. regēs	judīcēs	radīcēs	ducēs
A. regībūs.	judīcībūs.	radīcībūs.	ducībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *rēg*, *jūdīc*, *rādīc* and *dūc*—*jūdīc* with the variable vowel—*ī*, *ē*. See 57, 2.

2) That the case-endings are those given in 57.

3) That **s** in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. unites with *c* or *g* of the stem and forms *z*. See 33.

2. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION.—See NOUNS IN **x**: 92–98.

60. STEMS ENDING IN A LIQUID: **L**, **M**, **N**, OR **R**.

Sol, M., <i>sun.</i>	Consul, M., <i>consul.</i>	Passer, M., <i>sparrow.</i>	Pater, M., <i>father.</i>
-------------------------	-------------------------------	--------------------------------	------------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. sōl	consūl	passēr	pătēr
G. solīs	consūlīs	passērīs	pătērīs
D. solī	consūlī	passērī	patrī

<i>A. solēm</i>	<i>consulēm</i>	<i>passērēm</i>	<i>patrēm</i>
<i>V. sōl</i>	<i>consul</i>	<i>passēr</i>	<i>patrēr</i>
<i>A. solē</i>	<i>consulē</i>	<i>passērē</i>	<i>patrē</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. solēs</i>	<i>consulēs</i>	<i>passērēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>consulūm</i>	<i>passērūm</i>	<i>patrūm</i>
<i>D. solībūs</i>	<i>consulībūs</i>	<i>passerībūs</i>	<i>patrībūs</i>
<i>A. solēs</i>	<i>consulēs</i>	<i>passērēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>V. solēs</i>	<i>consulēs</i>	<i>passērēs</i>	<i>patrēs</i>
<i>A. solībūs.</i>	<i>consulībūs.</i>	<i>passerībūs.</i>	<i>patrībūs.</i>

<i>Pastor, m.,</i> <i>shepherd.</i>	<i>Leo, m.,</i> <i>lion.</i>	<i>Virgo, f.,</i> <i>maiden.</i>	<i>Carmen, n.,</i> <i>song.</i>
--	---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

SINGULAR.

<i>N. pastōr</i>	<i>leo</i>	<i>virgo</i>	<i>carmēn</i>
<i>G. pastōris</i>	<i>leōnīs</i>	<i>virgīnīs</i>	<i>carmīnīs</i>
<i>D. pastōri</i>	<i>leōni</i>	<i>virgīni</i>	<i>carmīni</i>
<i>A. pastōrēm</i>	<i>leōnēm</i>	<i>virgīnēm</i>	<i>carmēn</i>
<i>V. pastōr</i>	<i>leo</i>	<i>virgo</i>	<i>carmēn</i>
<i>A. pastōrē</i>	<i>leōnē</i>	<i>virgīnē</i>	<i>carmīnē</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. pastōrēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virgīnēs</i>	<i>carmīnā</i>
<i>G. pastōrūm</i>	<i>leōnūm</i>	<i>virgīnūm</i>	<i>carmīnūm</i>
<i>D. pastorībūs</i>	<i>leonībūs</i>	<i>virginībūs</i>	<i>carminībūs</i>
<i>A. pastōrēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virgīnēs</i>	<i>carmīnā</i>
<i>V. pastōrēs</i>	<i>leōnēs</i>	<i>virgīnēs</i>	<i>carmīnā</i>
<i>A. pastorībūs.</i>	<i>leonībūs.</i>	<i>virginībūs.</i>	<i>carminībūs.</i>

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *sōl*, *consul*, *passēr*, *pātēr*, *pastōr*, *leōn*, *virgōn*, and *carmēn*.

2) That *virgo* (*virgōn*) has the variable vowel, *ō*, *ī*, and *carmēn*, *ē*, *ī*.

3) That in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. *s*, the usual case-ending for masc. and fem. nouns, is omitted, and that in those cases the stem *pastōr* shortens *o*, while *leōn* and *virgōn* drop *n*.

2. HIEMS, the only stem in *m*, takes *s* in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. Also *sanguās* (for *sanguins*), blood, and *Sālāmīs* (for *Salāmins*), Salamis, which drop *n* before *s*.

3. PASSER, PATER.—Most nouns in *er* are declined like *passēr*, but those in *ter*, and a few others, are declined like *pātēr*. See 77, II.

4. LEO and VIRGO.—Most nouns in *o* are declined like *leo*, but those in *do* and *go*, with a few others, are declined like *virgo*. See 72 with exceptions.

5. FOUR STEMS IN **ŏr** change *o* to *u*. See 77, IV.

6. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 72, 75-77.

61. STEMS ENDING IN **S**.

Flos, M., <i>flower.</i>	Jus, N., <i>right.</i>	Opus, N., <i>work.</i>	Corpus, N., <i>body.</i>
-----------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. flōs	jūs	öpūs	corpūs
G. flōrīs	jūrīs	opērīs	corpōrīs
D. florī	jurī	opērī	corpōrī
A. florēm	jus	opūs	corpūs
V. flos	jus	opūs	corpūs
A. florē	jurē	opērē	corpōrē

PLURAL.

N. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
G. florūm	jurūm	opērūm	corpōrūm
D. florībūs	jurībūs	operībūs	corporībūs
A. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
V. florēs	jurā	opērā	corpōrā
A. florībūs.	jurībūs.	operībūs.	corporībūs.

1. STEMS AND CASE-ENDINGS.—In the Paradigms observe

1) That the stems are *flōs*, *jūs*, *öpēs*, and *corpōs*.

2) That *öpūs* has the variable vowel, *ē*, *ū*, and *corpūs*, *ō*, *ū*.

3) That **s** of the stem becomes **r** between two vowels: *flōs*, *flōris* (for *flōsis*). See 35.

4) That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. omit the case-ending. See 60, 1, 3).

2. SYNOPSIS OF DECLENSION. See 79, 80, 82-84.

CLASS II.—I STEMS.

62. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—Nouns in **is**,—Abl. Sing. in **i**, or in **i** or **ē**.

Tussis, F., <i>cough.</i>	Turris, F., <i>tower.</i>	Ignis, M., <i>fire.</i>	Case-Endings.
------------------------------	------------------------------	----------------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. tussīs	turrīs	ignīs	īs
G. tussīs	turrīs	ignīs	īs
D. tussī	turrī	ignī	i
A. tussīm	turrīm, ēm	ignēm	īm, ěm

V. tuss is	turr is	ign is	is
A. tuss i	turr i, ě	ign i, ě	i, ě

PLURAL.

N. tuss ēs	turr ēs	ign ēs	ēs
G. tuss iām	turr iām	ign iām	iām
D. tuss ībūs	turr ībūs	ign ībūs	ībūs
A. tuss ēs, is	turr ēs, is	ign ēs, is	ēs, is
V. tuss ēs	turr ēs	ign ēs	ēs
A. tuss ībūs.	turr ībūs.	ign ībūs.	ībūs.

I. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1. That the stems are *tussi*, *turri*, and *igni*.
2. That the case-endings here given include the stem-ending **i**, which disappears in certain cases.
3. That these Paradigms differ in declension only in the Acc. and Abl. Sing.

II. Like TUSIS—ACC. **īm**, ABL. **i**—are declined

1. *Bāris*, plough-tail; *rāvis*, hoarseness; *sītis*, thirst.
2. In the Sing. (1) Names of *rivers* and *places* in **is** not increasing in the Gen.: *Tībēris*, *Hispālis*. See 629. (2) Greek nouns in **is**, G. *is*, and some others.

III. Like TURRIS—ACC. **īm, ěm**; ABL. **i, ě**—are declined

Clāvis, key; *fēbris*, fever; *messis*, harvest; *nāvis*, ship; *puppis*, stern; *restis*, rope; *sēcūris*, axe; *sēmentis*, seed-time; *strīgīlis*, strigil.

1. *Pars*, part, sometimes has *partim* in the Acc.
2. *Arāris* or *Arār*, the Saône, and *Līgēr*, the Loire, have Acc. **īm, ěm**, Abl. **i, ě**.

IV. Like IGNIS—ACC. **ēm**, ABL. **i, ě**—are declined

Amnis, river; *anguis*, serpent; *āvis*, bird; *bīlis*, bile; *cīvis*, citizen; *classis*, fleet; *collis*, hill; *fīnis*, end; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *unguis*, nail, and a few others.

1. Adjectives in **ēr** and **is** used substantively have the Abl. generally in **i**: *Septembēr*, *Septembrī*, September;¹ *fāmīliaris*, *familiārī*, friend. But adjectives used as proper names, and *jūvēnis*, youth, have **ě**: *Jūvēnālis*, *Juvenāle*, Juvenal.

2. *Imbēr*, storm; *rūs*, country; *sors*, lot; *sūpellez*, furniture; *vespēr*, evening, and a few others, sometimes have the Abl. in **i**.

3. Many names of towns have a *Locative* in **i**: *Carthāgīni*, at Carthage; *Tībūri*, at Tibur. See 45, 2; 48, 4.

¹ Names of months are adjectives used substantively, with *mensis*, month, understood.

63. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—*Neuters in ě, al, and ar.*

Mare, <i>sea.</i>	Animāl, <i>animal.</i>	Calcar, <i>spur.</i>	Case-Endings.
----------------------	---------------------------	-------------------------	---------------

SINGULAR.

N. mǎř ě	ānīmāl	calcār	ě— ²
G. mar ĭs	animāl ĭs	calcār ĭs	ĭs
D. mar ĭ	animāl ĭ	calcār ĭ	ĭ
A. mar ě	ānīmāl	calcār	ě— ²
V. mar ě	ānīmāl	calcār	ě— ²
A. mar ĭ ¹	animāl ĭ	calcār ĭ	ĭ

PLURAL.

N. mari ā	animal ā	calcar ā	iā
G. mari ūm	animal ūm	calcar ūm	iūm
D. mari ībūs	animal ībūs	calcar ībūs	ībūs
A. mari ā	animal ā	calcar ā	iā
V. mari ā	animal ā	calcar ā	iā
A. mari ībūs.	animal ībūs.	calcar ībūs.	ībūs.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe

1) That the stem-ending **i** is changed to **e** in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. of *mǎře*, and dropped in the same cases of *ānīmāl* (for *animāle*) and *calcār* (for *calcāre*). See 28, 1; 31.

2) That the case-endings include the stem-ending **i**.

2. The following have **ě** in the Abl. Sing.:—(1) Names of towns in **ě**; *Praeneste*.—(2) Nouns in **al** and **ar** with **a** short in Gen.: *sāl, sāle*, salt; *nectār, nectāre*, nectar.—(3) *Fār, farre*, corn.—(4) Generally *rēte*, net, and in poetry sometimes *mǎře*.

64. STEMS ENDING IN **I**.—*Nouns in ĭs, es, and s (x) preceded by a Consonant,—Abl. Sing. in ě.*

Hostis, M. & F., <i>enemy.</i>	Nubes, F., <i>cloud.</i>	Urbs, F., <i>city.</i>	Arx, F., <i>citadel.</i>
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------	-----------------------------

SINGULAR.

N. host ĭs	nūb ēs	urb s	arx ³
G. host ĭs	nub ĭs	urb ĭs	arc ĭs

¹ Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

² The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting.

³ *x* in *arx*=*c3*,—*c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

<i>D.</i> host I	nub I	urb I	arc I
<i>A.</i> host ĕm	nub ĕm	urb ĕm	arc ĕm
<i>V.</i> host is	nub ĕs	urb s	arc x
<i>A.</i> host ĕ	nub ĕ	urb ĕ	arc ĕ

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> host ĕs	nub ĕs	urb ĕs	arc ĕs
<i>G.</i> host iŭm	nub iŭm	urb iŭm	arc iŭm
<i>D.</i> host ibŭs	nub ibŭs	urb ibŭs	arc ibŭs
<i>A.</i> host ĕs, is	nub ĕs, is	urb ĕs, is	arc ĕs, is
<i>V.</i> host ĕs	nub ĕs	urb ĕs	arc ĕs
<i>A.</i> host ibŭs.	nub ibŭs.	urb ibŭs.	arc ibŭs.

1. STEMS.—These Paradigms show a combination of *i*-stems and consonant stems: *hosti, host*; *urbi, urb*; *arci, arc*. The *i*-stem appears especially in the endings of the Gen. and Acc. Plur. **iŭm, ĕs, is**. The stem of *nubĕs* seems to be *nŭbĕs, nŭbi, nŭb*.

65. ENDINGS **iŭm, is**.—Like the preceding Paradigms, the following classes of words have *iŭm* in the Gen. Plur., and *is* with *ĕs* in the Acc. Plur.

1. Most nouns in **ns** and **rs**:¹ *cliens, clientium, clientes, is, client*; *ars, artium, artes, is, art*; *cohors, cohortium, cohortes, is, cohort*.

2. Monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant,² and a few in **s** and **x** preceded by a vowel:³ *urbs, urbium, urbes, is, city*; *arx, arcium, arces, is, citadel*; *nox, noctium, noctes, is, night*.

3. Many nouns not increasing in the genitive:

1) Most nouns in **ĕs** and **is** not increasing:⁴ *nŭbes, nubium, nubes, is, cloud*; *avis, avium, aves, is, bird*.

2) *Căro, flesh*; *imbĕr, storm*; *lĭntĕr, boat*; *ŭtĕr, leathern sack*; *ventĕr, belly*; and generally *Insŭbĕr, Insubrian*.

4. Many nouns in **ās** and **is** (Plur. *ātes* and *ites*). Thus

1) Names of nations: *Arpīnas, Arpinātium, etc.*; *Samnis, Samnĭtium, etc.*

2) *Optīmātes* and *Pĕnātes*, and occasionally other nouns in *as*.

¹ Some of these often have *ŭm* in poetry and sometimes even in prose, as *părens, parent*, generally has.

² Except (*ops*) *ōpis* and the Greek nouns, *gryps, lynx, sphynx*.

³ Namely, *fauz, glis, lis, mās, nix, nox, ōs* (ossis), *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mūs*.

⁴ But *cānis, jŭvĕnis, strues, vātes*, have *ŭm*; *āpis, mensis, sĕdes, vŏlŭcris, ŭm* or *iŭm*; *compes, iŭm*.

66. SPECIAL PARADIGMS.

Sus, M. & F., Bos, M. & F., Nix, F., Senex, M., Vis, F.,
swine. ox, cow. snow. old man. force.

SINGULAR.

N. sūs	bōs ¹	nix	sēnex	vīs
G. suīs	bōvīs	nīvīs	senīs	vīs ²
D. suī	bovī	nivī	senī	vī ²
A. suēm	bovēm	nivēm	senēm	vīm
V. sus	bos	nix	senex	vīs
A. suĕ	bovĕ	nivĕ	senĕ	vī

PLURAL.

N. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	vīrēs
G. suūm	{ bovīūm boūm	nivīūm	senūm	virīūm
D. { suībūs sūbūs	{ bōbūs ¹ būbūs ¹	nivībūs	senībūs	virībūs
A. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	virēs
V. suēs	bovēs	nivēs	senēs	virēs
A. { suībūs sūbūs	{ bōbūs būbūs.	nivībūs.	senībūs.	virībūs.

1. STEMS.—These are *su*; *bōv*; *nīg* (*nix* = *nigs*), *nīv*, *nīvi*; *sēnec*, *sēn*; *vis*, *vi* (sing.), *vīri* (for *visi*, plur.). See 35.

2. SUS, and GRUS (crane), the only **u** STEMS in this declension, are declined alike except in the Dat. and Abl. Pl., where *grūs* is regular: *gruībūs*.

3. JUPITER, *Jupiter*.—Declined thus: *Jūpītĕr*, *Jōvīs*, *Jovī*, *Jovēm*, *Jupītĕr*, *Jovĕ*. STEMS *Jūpītĕr* and *Jōv*.

67. CASE-ENDINGS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

CONSONANT STEMS.		I-STEMS.	
Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
N. s— ³	— ³	īs, ĕs, s	ĕ— ³
G. īs	īs	īs	īs
D. ī	ī	ī	ī
A. ĕm	—	īm, ĕm	ĕ—
V. s	—	īs, ĕs, s	ĕ—
A. ĕ	ĕ	ī, ĕ	ī

¹ *Bōs*=bovs, bous; *bōbus*, *būbus*=bovibus, boubus.

² The Gen. and Dat. Sing.—*vis*, *vi*—are rare.

³ The dash denotes that the case-ending is wanting.

PLURAL.			
N. ěs	ǎ	ēs	iǎ
G. ům	ům	iům	iům
D. ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs	ĭbŭs
A. ěs	ǎ	ēs, ĭs	iǎ
V. ěs	ǎ	ēs	iǎ
A. ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

1. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur :

- 1) **E**, for *i*, in the Dat. Sing. : *aerĕ* for *aeri*.
- 2) **Eis**, for *is*, in the Acc. Plur. : *cĭveis* for *civis*, *cives*.
- 3) GREEK ENDINGS. See 68.

GREEK NOUNS.

68. Most Greek nouns of the third declension are entirely regular, but a few retain certain peculiarities of the Greek. The following are examples :

Lampas, F., Phryx, M. & F., Heros, M., Case-Endings.
torch. *Phrygian.* *hero.*

SINGULAR.

N. lampǎs	Phryx	hērōs	s
G. lampǎdĭs, ōs	Phryġĭs, ōs	herōĭs	ĭs, ōs
D. lampǎdĭ	Phryġĭ	herōĭ	ĭ
A. lampǎdēm, ǎ	Phryġēm, ǎ	herōēm, ǎ	ēm, ǎ
V. lampǎs	Phryx	herōs	s
A. lampǎdĕ	Phryġĕ	herōĕ	ĕ

PLURAL.

N. lampǎdēs, ěs	Phryġēs, ěs	herōēs, ěs	ēs, ěs
G. lampǎdŭm	Phryġŭm	herōŭm	ŭm
D. lampadĭbŭs	Phryġĭbŭs	herōĭbŭs	ĭbŭs
A. lampǎdēs, ǎs	Phryġēs, ǎs	herōēs, ǎs	ēs, ǎs
V. lampǎdēs, ěs	Phryġēs, ěs	herōēs, ěs	ēs, ěs
A. lampadĭbŭs.	Phryġĭbŭs.	herōĭbŭs.	ĭbŭs.

Pericles, M., Paris, M., Dido, F., Orpheus, M.,
Pericles. *Paris.* *Dido.* *Orpheus.*

SINGULAR.¹

N. Pĕrĭclēs	Pārĭs	Didō	Orpheus ²
G. Periclĭs, ĭ	Parĭdĭs, ōs	Didŭs, ōnĭs	Orph-cos, ei, ĭ

¹ The Plural is of course wanting.

² *Eu* a diphthong in the Nom. and Voc. : *ei* sometimes a diphthong in the Gen. and Dat.

D. Pericl ī	Parīd ī	Didō, ōn ī	Orph-e ī , ī , eō
A. Pericl ēm , eā, ēn	{ Parīd ēm , ā Parī m , īn	Didō, ōn ēm	Orphe ā , eū m
V. Pericl ēs , ēs, ē	Parī	Didō	Orpheu
A. Pericl ē .	Parīd ē .	Didō, ōn ē .	Orpheō.

1. PARADIGMS.—Observe that these paradigms fluctuate in certain cases,—(1) between the Latin and the Greek forms: *lampādīs*, *ōs*; *lampādēm*, *ā*; *hērōēs*, *ās*,—(2) between different declensions: PERICLES, between Dec. I., *Periclēn*, *Periclē*, Dec. II., *Periclī* (Gen.), and Dec. III., *Periclīs*, etc.: ORPHEUS, between Dec. II., *Orpheī*, *Orpheō*, etc., and Dec. III., *Orpheōs*, etc.

2. NOUNS IN **ŷs** have Gen. **yōs**, **ŷs**, Acc. **ŷm**, **ŷn**: *Othrys*, *Othryōs*, *Othrym*, *Othryn*.

3. THE VOCATIVE SING. drops **s**,—(1) in nouns in **eus**, **ŷs** and in proper names in **ās**, Gen. *antis*; *Atlas*, *Atlā*,—(2) generally in nouns in **is** and sometimes in other words; *Pārī*.

4. GENITIVE PLUR.—The ending **ōn** occurs in a few titles of Books: *Mētāmorphōses* (title of a poem), *Metamorphoseōn*.

5. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLUR.—The ending **sī**, before vowels **šin**, occurs in poetry: *Troādes*, *Troasin*.

6. A few neuters used only in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. have **ōs** in the Sing. and **ē** in the Plur.: *mēlōs*, *melē*, song.

SYNOPSIS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. NOUNS ENDING IN A VOWEL.

69. Nouns in **ā**:¹ Genitive in **ātis**: Stem in **āt**:
poēmā, *poem*, poemātis, poēmāt.

70. Nouns in **ē**: Genitive in **is**: Stem in **ī**:
mārē, *sea*, māris, mārī.

71. Nouns in **ī**:¹ Genitive in **is**: Stem in **ī**:
šināpī, *mustard*, sināpis, sināpī.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **itis**,—compounds of **mēlī**: *oxymēlī*, *oxymelītis*, *oxymel*.

2. Many nouns in **i** are indeclinable.

72. Nouns in **ō**: Genitive in **ōnis**: Stem in **ōn**:
leo, *lion*, leōnis, leōn.

¹ These are of Greek origin.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ōnis**:—most national names: *Măcēdo*, *Macedōnis*, Macedonian.
2. **īnis**:¹—*Apollō*; *hōmo*, man; *nēmo*, nobody; *turbo*, whirlwind; and nouns in **do** and **go**: *grando*, *grandīnis*, hail; *virgo*, *virgīnis*, maiden; except—*harpāgo*, *ōnis*; *līgo*, *ōnis*; *praedo*, *ōnis*, also *cōmēdo*, *cūdo*, *mango*, *spādo*, *ūnēdo*, *ūdo*.
3. **nis**:—*cāro*, *carnis* (for *carīnis*¹), flesh. See 65, 3, 2).
4. **ēnis**:—*Anio*, *Aniēnis*, river Anio; *Nerio*, *Neriēnis*.
5. **ūs**:—few Greek feminines: *Dido*, *Didus*. See 68.

73. Nouns in **y**²: Gen. in **yis** (yos, *ys*): Stem in **ŷ**:
mīsy, *copperas*, *misyis* (yos, *ys*), *mīsy*.

II. NOUNS ENDING IN A MUTE OR LIQUID.

74. Nouns in **c**: only *ālēc*, *alēcis*, pickle; *lāc*, *lactis*, milk.

75. Nouns in **l**: Genitive in **lis**: Stem in **l**:
sōl, *sun*, *sōlis*, *sōl*.

1. *Fēl*, *fellis*, gall; *mēl*, *mellis*, honey.

2. Neuters in **āl**: Genitive in **ālis**: Stem in **ālī**:
ānīmāl, *animal*, *animālis*, *animālī*.

76. Nouns in **n**: Genitive in **nis**: Stem in **n**:
pacān, *paean*, *pacānis*, *pacān*.
flūmēn, *stream*, *flumīnis*, *flumēn*, *īn*.

1. Nouns in **ēn** have the variable radical vowel—*ē*, *ī*. See 60, 1, 2).

2. There are a few Greek words in **ōn**, Gen. in *ōnis*, *ontis*, St. in *ōn*, *ont*: *acēdōn*, *acēdōnis*, nightingale; *Xēnōphōn*, *Xenophontis*, Xenophon.

77. Nouns in **r**: Genitive in **ris**: Stem in **r**:
carcēr, *prison*, *carcēris*, *carcēr*.

I. Nouns in **ar**: (1) *ār*, G. *āris*, St. *ā-i*; *calcār*, *calcāris*, spur; but a few have G. *āris*, St. *ār*; *nectār*, *nectāris*, nectar: (2) *ār*, G. *āris*, St. *āri*: *lār*, *lāris*, house; *pār*, *pāris*, pair: (3) *Fār*, *farris*, corn; *hēpār*, *hepātis*, liver.

II. Nouns in **er**. Some drop **e** in the Genitive.

1. Those in **ter**: *pūtēr*, *patris*, father; except *lūtēr*, *latēris*, tile; *ītēr*, *itīnēris*, way; *Jūpūtēr*, *Jōvis*, and Greek nouns; *crātēr*, *cratēris*, bowl.

2. *Imbēr* and names of months in **bēr**: *imbēr*, *imbris*, shower; *Sep-tembēr*, *Septembris*, September.

¹ Stem in *ōn*, *īn*. See 60, 1, 2).

² Nouns in *y* are of Greek origin, and are often indeclinable.

III. Nouns in **ōr**: G. **ōris**, St. **ōr**: *pastor*, *pastōris*, shepherd; but a few have G. **ōris**, St. **ōr**: *arbor*, *arbōris*, tree; *aequor*, sea; *marmor*, marble. But *cōr*, *cordis*, heart.

IV. Four in **ūr**: G. **ōris**, St. **ōr**; *ēbur*, ivory; *fēmur*, thigh; *jēcūr*, liver; *rōbur*, strength; but *fēmur* has also *fēmīnis*, and *jēcūr*, *jēcīnōris*, *jēcīnēris*, and *jēcīnēris*.

78. Nouns in **ūt**: Genitive in **ītis**: Stem in **ūt**, **īt**:
 capūt, *head*, *capītis*, *capūt*, *īt*.

III. NOUNS ENDING IN **s** PRECEDED BY A VOWEL.

79. Nouns in **as**: Genitive in **ātis**: Stem in **āt**:
 aetās, *age*, *aetātis*, *aetāt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ātis**:—*ānās*, *anātis*, duck, and neuter Greek nouns.
2. **ādis**:—*vās*, *vādis*, surety; *Arcās*, Arcadian, and fem. Greek nouns; ¹
lampās, *lampādis*, torch.
3. **āris**:—*mās*, *māris*, a male;—stem, *mās*, *māri*. See 35.
4. **āsīs**:—*vās*, *vāsīs*, vessel.²
5. **assis**:—*ās*, *assis*, an as (a coin).
6. **antis**:—only masc. Greek nouns; *ādāmās*, *antiš*, adamant.

80. Nouns in **ēs**: Genitive in **īs**: Stem in **i**:³
 nūbēs, *cloud*, *nubis*, *nubi*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **edis**:—(1) **ēdis**: *hēres*, *herēdis*, heir; *merces*, reward.—(2) **ēdis**:
pes, *pēdis*, foot.
2. **aedis**:—*pracs*, *praedis*, surety.
3. **ēris**:—*Cēres*, *Cērēris*.⁴
4. **aeris**:—*aes*, *acris*, copper.⁴
5. **etis**:—(1) **ētis**: *quies*, rest, with compounds, *inquies*, *rēquies*, and
a few Greek words: *lēbes*, *tāpes*.—(2) **ētis**: *ābies*, fir-tree;
āries, ram; *pāries*, wall.
6. **essis**:—*bes*, *bessis*, two-thirds.

81. Nouns in **ēs**: Genitive in **ītis**: Stem in **ēt**, **īt**:
 mīlēs, *soldier*, *mīlītis*, *mīlēt*, *īt*.

¹ Greek nouns sometimes have *ādos* for *ādis*.

² *Vās* is the only stem in *s* which does not change *s* to *r* between two vowels
 See 61, 1, 3).

³ But see 64, 1.

⁴ See 61, 1, 3).

1. **Ētis**:—*interpres*, interpreter; *sēges*, crop; *tēges*, covering.
2. **Īdis**:—*obses*, hostage; *praeses*, president. See 57, 2.

82. Nouns in **is**: Genitive in **is**: Stem in **ī**:
 āvis, *bird*, avis, avī.

1. **Ėris**:—*cīnīs*, *cinėris*,¹ ashes; *cūcūmis*, cucumber; *pulvis*, dust; *vōmīs*, ploughshare.
2. **Īdis**:—*āpīs*, cup; *cassīs*, helmet; *cuspis*, spear; *lāpis*, stone; *prōmulsis*, antepast, and a few Greek² words: as *tīrannis*, *īdis*, tyranny. Sometimes *ībis*, and *tigris*.
3. **Īnis**:—*pollīs* or *pollėn*, flour; *sanguis*, blood.
4. **Īris**:—*glīs*, *glīris*,³ dormouse.
5. **Issis**:—*sēmīs*, *semīssis*, half an as: stem, *semīssī*, *semīss*.
6. **Itis**:—*tīs*,⁴ strife; *Dis*, *Quīris*, *Samnis*.

83. Nouns in **ōs** : Genitive in **ōris** : Stem in **ōs** :
 mōs, *custom*, mōris, mōs.

1. **Ōtis**:—*cos*, *cōtis*, whetstone; *dos*, dowry; *nēpos*, grandson; *sacer-*
dos, priest; and a few Greek words.
2. **Ōdis**:—*custos*, *custōdis*, guardian. See 36.
3. **Ōis**:—a few masc. Greek nouns: *hēros*, hero; *Mīnos*, *Tros*.
4. **Ōris**:—*arbos* or *arbōr*, tree.
5. **ossis**:—*ōs*, *ossis*, bone: stem, *ossi*, *oss*.
6. **Ōvis**:—*bos*, *bōvis*, ox. See 66.

84. Nouns in **us** : Genitive in **ĕris** or **ŏris** : Stem in **ĕs** or **ŏs**.

I. **Ēris**:—*lātūs, latēris*, side: stem, *lātēs*. So also: *ācūs, foedus, fūnus, gēnus, glōmus, mūnus, ōlus, ōnus, ōpus, pondus, rūdus, scēlus, sīdus, ulcus, vellus, Vēnus, viscus, vulnus*.

II. **Ōris**:—*corpūs, corpōris*, body: stem, *corpōs*. So also *dēcūs, dēdēcūs, fācīnus, fēnus, frīgus, lēpus, lītus, nēmūs, pectus, pēcus, pēnus, pignus, ster-cus, tempus, tergus*.

¹ Stem *cîn*is, *cîn*er for *cîn*es with variable vowel *i*, *e*. See 23, 35, and 57, 2.

² Greek nouns sometimes have *idos* or even *ios* for *idis*; *Sāldmīs* has *Salamīnis*; *Simois*, *Simoentis*.

³ Stem *glīs*, *glīri* for *glīsi*, 85.

* Stem *lāti*, *lāt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **uris**:—(1) **ūris**: *crūs*, leg; *jus*, right; *jus*, soup; *mus*, mouse; *pus*, pus; *rus*, country; *tus* (thus), incense; *tellus*, earth.
—(2) **ŭris**: *Līgūs*, *Ligŭris*, Ligurian. See 61.
2. **ūtis**:—*jūventūs*, youth; *sālus*, safety; *sēncctus*, old age; *servītus*, servitude; *virtus*, virtue. See 36.
3. **udis**:—(1) **ūdis**: *incūs*, anvil; *pālūs*, marsh; *subscus*, dovetail.—
(2) **ŭdis**: *pecūs*, *pecūdīs*, a head of cattle.
4. **audis**:—*fraus*, *fraudis*, fraud; *laus*, praise. See 65, 2, foot-note.
5. **uis**:—*grūs*, *gruis*, crane; *sus*, swine.
6. **untis**:—a few Greek names of places: *Trāpezūs*, *untis*.
7. **ōdis**:—Greek compounds in *pūs*: *trīpūs*, *tripōdis*, tripod.
8. **eos**:—Greek nouns in *eus*, when of this declension. See 68.

85. Nouns in **ŷs**:¹ Gen. in **yis, yos, ŷs**: Stem in **ŷ**:
Othrys, Othryos, Othrỹ.

IV. NOUNS ENDING IN **s** PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.

86. Nouns in **bs**: Genitive in **bis**: Stem in **bi**:²
urbs, *city*, urbis, urbi.

87. Nouns in **ms**: Genitive in **mis**: Stem in **m**:
hiems, *winter*, hiēmis, hiēm.

88. Nouns in **eps**: Genitive in **īpis**: Stem in **ēp, īp**.
princeps, *prince*, princēpis. princēp, īp.

1. But *auceps*, *aucūpis*, fowler.

2. Other nouns in **ps** retain the stem-vowel unchanged: *mērops*, *merōpis*, bee-eater.

3. *Gryps*, *grŷphis*, griffin.

89. Nouns in **ls**: Genitive in **ltis**: Stem **ltī**:
puls, *broth*, pultis, pultī.

90. Nouns in **ns**: Genitive in **ntis**: Stem in **ntī**:³
mens, *mind*, mentis, mentī.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

dis:—*frons*, *frondis*, leaf; *glans*, acorn; *jūglans*, walnut. See 65, 2.

¹ These are of Greek origin; a few of them have *ŷdis*: *chlāmys*, *chlāmŷdis*, cloak.

² Dissyllables have the stem in *b*.

³ Dissyllables have the stem in *t*.

91. Nouns in **rs** : Genitive in **rtis** : Stem in **rtī** :
ars, *art*. artis, arī.

V. NOUNS ENDING IN **x**.

92. Nouns in **ax** : Genitive in **ācis** : Stem in **āc** :
pax, *peace*, pācis, pāc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ācis** :—*fax*, *fācis*, torch ; and a few Greek nouns.
2. **actis** :—a few Greek names of men : *Astyānax*.

93. Nouns in **ex** : Genitive in **īcis** : Stem in **īc**, **ēc** :
jūdex, *judge*, jūdīcis, jūdīc, ēc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ecis** :—(1) **ēcis** : *ālex*, pickle ; *vervex*, wether.—(2) **ēcis** : *nex*, murder ; *fēnīsex*, mower.
2. **aecis** :—*faex*, *faecis*, lees.
3. **egis** :—(1) **ēgis** : *lex*, law ; *rex*, king, and their compounds.—(2) **өгis** : *grex*, flock ; *āquīlex*, water-inspector.
4. **ectīlis** :—*sūpellex*, *supellectilis*, furniture.¹
5. **īgis** :—*rēmex*, *remīgis*, rower. See 28, 2, 1).
6. **is** :—*sēnex*, *sēnis*, old man. See 66, 1.

94. Nouns in **ix** : Genitive in **īcis** : stem in **īc** :
rādix, *root*, radīcis, radīc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **īcis** :—*appendix*, appendix ; *cālix*, cup ; *fornix*, arch ; *pix*, pitch ; *sālix*, willow, and a few others.
2. **īgis** :—*strix*, screech-owl ; and a few Gallic names : *Dumnōrix*, *Orgētōrix*.
3. **īvis** :—*nix*, *nīvis*, snow. See 66.

95. Nouns in **ox** : only *vox*, *vōcis*, voice ; *nox*, *noctis*, night.

There are also a few national names in **ox**, Gen. in **ōcis** or **ōgis** : *Cappādox*, *Cappadōcis* ; *Allōbrox*, *Allobrōgis*.

96. Nouns in **ux** : Genitive in **ūcis** : Stem in **ūc** :
dux, *leader*, dūcis, dūc.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

1. **ūcis** :—*lux*, *lūcis*, light ; *Pollux*.

¹ Stem, *sūpellec*, *sūpellectīl*.

2. **aucis**:—*faux* (def.) *faucis*, throat.

3. **ugis**:—(1) **ūgis**: *frux*, *frūgis*, fruit.—(2) **ūgis**: *conjux*, *conjūgis*, spouse.

97. Nouns in **yx**: from the Greek, variously declined: *Eryx*, *Erȳcis*, Eryx; *bombyx*, *bombȳcis*, silkworm; *Styx*, *Stȳgis*, Styx; *coccyx*, *coccȳgis*, cuckoo; *ōnyx*, *onȳchis*, onyx.

98. Nouns in **x** preceded by a consonant:

Genitive in **cis**: Stem in **cĭ**:

arx, *citadel*, *arcis*, *arcĭ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Genitive in

gis:—A few Greek nouns: *phālanx*, *phalangis*, phalanx.

GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSION.

99. Nouns of the Third Declension in

o, **or**, **os**, **er**, and **es** *increasing in the genitive*,¹

are masculine: *sermo*, discourse; *dōlōr*, pain; *mōs*, custom; *aggēr*, mound; *pēs*, genitive *pēdis*, foot.

100. EXCEPTIONS IN **O**.—*Feminine*, viz.:

1. Nouns in **o**, Gen. *inis*, except *cardo*, *ordo*, *turbo*, masc., *cūpīdo* and *margo*, masc. or fem.

2. *Cāro*, flesh, and the Greek *Argo*, *ēcho*, an echo.

3. Most abstract and collective nouns in **io**: *rātio*, reason; *concio*, an assembly.

101. EXCEPTIONS IN **OR**:

1. *Feminine*:—*arbōr*, tree.

2. *Neuter*:—*ādōr*, spelt; *aequor*, sea; *cor*, heart; *marmor*, marble.

102. EXCEPTIONS IN **OS**:

1. *Feminine*:—*arbōs*, tree; *cos*, whetstone; *dos*, dowry; *ēos*, dawn.

2. *Neuter*:—*ōs*, mouth; *ōs*, bone; and a few Greek words: *chaos*.

103. EXCEPTIONS IN **ER**:

1. *Feminine*:—*līntēr*, boat (sometimes masc.).

2. *Neuter*:—(1) *cādāvēr*, corpse; *ūter*, way; *tūber*, tumor; *ūber*, udder; *vēr*, spring; *verber*, scourge,—(2) botanical names in **er**, Gen. *ēris*: *ācēr*, maple-tree; *pāpāver*, poppy.

¹ That is, having more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative.

104. EXCEPTIONS IN **ES**:

1. *Feminine*:—*compēs*, fetter; *mercēs*, reward; *mergēs*, sheaf; *quiēs*, rest (with its compounds); *sēgēs*, crop; *tēgēs*, mat; sometimes *alēs*, bird, and *quādrūpēs*, quadruped.
2. *Neuter*:—*aes*, copper.

105. Nouns of the Third Declension in

as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the genitive, and **s** preceded by a consonant,

are feminine: *aetūs*, age; *nāvīs*, ship; *chlāmŷs*, cloak; *pax*, peace; *nūbēs*, cloud; *urbis*, city.

106. EXCEPTIONS IN **AS**:

1. *Masculine*:—*ās*, an as (a coin), *vās*, surety, and Greek nouns in **as**, G. *antis*.
2. *Neuter*:—*vās*, vessel, and Greek nouns in **as**, G. *ātis*.

107. EXCEPTIONS IN **IS** and **YS**.—*Masculine*:

1. Nouns in **ālis**, **ollis**, **cis**, **mis**, **nis**, **guis**, **quis**: *nātālīs*, birthday; *ignīs*, fire; *sanguis*, blood. But a few of these are occasionally feminine: *cānīs*, *amnis*, *cīnis*, *fīnis*, *anguis*, *torquis*.
2. *Axis*, axle; *būris*, plough-tail; *callis* (f.), path; ¹ *ensis*, sword; *lāpis*, stone; *mensis*, month; *orbis*, circle; *postis*, post; *pulvis*, dust; *sentis*, brier; *torris*, brand; *vectis*, lever,² and a few others.
3. Names of mountains in **ys**: *Othrŷs*.

108. EXCEPTIONS IN **X**.—*Masculine*:

1. Greek masculines: *cōrax*, raven; *thōrax*, cuirass.
2. Nouns in **ex** and **unx**; except the feminines: *fuex*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, (*prex*), *sūpellex*.
3. *Cūlix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *phoenix*, phoenix; *trādūx*, vine-layer, and a few nouns in **yx**.
4. Sometimes: *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx.

109. EXCEPTIONS IN **ES**:

1. *Masculine*:—*ācīnācēs*, cimeter; sometimes *pāhumbēs*, dove; and *vēprēs*, thorn-bush.
2. *Neuter*:—a few Greek nouns: *cācoēthēs*, desire; *hippōmānēs*, hippomane.

110. EXCEPTIONS IN **S** PRECEDED BY A CONSONANT.—*Masculine*:

1. *Dens*, tooth; *fons*, fountain; *mons*, mountain; *pons*, bridge; generally *ādeps*, fat, and *rūdens*, cable.

¹ Sometimes feminine.

² For nouns in *is* masculine by signification, see 42, I.

2. Some nouns in **ns**, originally adjectives or participles with a masc. noun understood: *ōriens* (sol), east; *confluens* (amnis), confluence; *trīdens* (raster), trident; *quadrans* (ās), quarter.
3. *Chālybs*, steel; *hydrops*, dropsy, and a few other Greek words.
4. Sometimes: *forceps*, forceps; *serpens*, serpent; *stirps*, stock. *Animans*, animal, is masc., fem., or neuter.

111. Nouns of the Third Declension in

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, and us,

are neuter: *poēmā*, poem; *mārē*, sea; *lāc*, milk; *ānīmāl*, animal; *carmēn*, song; *cāpūt*, head; *corpūs*, body.

112. EXCEPTIONS IN **L** AND **AR**:—*Masculine*:

Mūgīl, mullet; *sāl*,¹ salt; *sōl*, sun; *lār*, hearth; *sālār*, trout.

113. EXCEPTIONS IN **N**:

1. *Masculine*:—*pectēn*, comb; *rēn*, kidney; *liēn*, spleen; and Greek masculines in **an, en, in, on**: *paēān*, paeon; *cānōn*, rule.
2. *Feminine*:—*aēdōn*, nightingale; *alcyōn* (halcyon), kingfisher; *icōn*, image; *sindōn*, muslin.

114. EXCEPTIONS IN **UR**.—*Masculine*:

Furfūr, bran; *turtūr*, turtle-dove; *vultūr*, vulture.

115. EXCEPTIONS IN **US**:

1. *Masculine*:—*lēpūs*, hare; *mūs*, mouse; and Greek nouns in **pus**.
2. *Feminine*:—*tellūs*, earth; *fraus*, fraud; *laus*, praise; and nouns in **us**, Gen. **utis** or **udis**: *virtūs*, virtue; *pālūs*, marsh.

FOURTH DECLENSION: **U** NOUNS.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

ūs,—*masculine*; **ū**,—*neuter*.

They are declined as follows:

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .	Cornu, <i>horn</i> .	Case-Endings.	
SINGULAR.			
<i>N.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>G.</i> fruct ūs	corn ūs	ūs	ūs
<i>D.</i> fruct ui	corn ū	ui	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ūm	corn ū	ūm	ū
<i>V.</i> fruct ūs	corn ū	ūs	ū
<i>A.</i> fruct ū	corn ū	ū	ū

¹ Sometimes *neuter* in the singular.

PLURAL.

N. fruct ūs	corn uǎ	ūs	uǎ
G. fruct uŭm	corn uŭm	uŭm	uŭm
D. fruct ībūs	corn ībūs	ībūs (ŭbūs)	ībūs (ŭbūs)
A. fruct ūs	corn uǎ	ūs	uǎ
V. fruct ūs	corn uǎ	ūs	uǎ
A. fruct ībūs.	corn ībūs.	ībūs (ŭbūs).	ībūs (ŭbūs).

1. STEM.—In nouns of the Fourth Declension the stem ends in ŭ: *fructŭ*, *cornŭ*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS.—The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending ŭ, weakened to ĭ in *ībūs*, but retained in *ŭbūs*. See 30.

117. IRREGULAR CASE-ENDINGS.—The following occur:

1. **Ūbūs** for *ībūs*, used regularly in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. of *Acus*, needle; *arcus*, bow; *artus*, joint; *lăcus*, lake; *partus*, birth; *pĕcu*, cattle; *quercus*, oak; *spĕcus*, den; *tribus*, tribe; *vĕru*, spit: occasionally in a few other words, as *portus*, *sĭnus*, and *tŏnĭtrus*.

2. **Ūis**, the uncontracted form for *us*, in the Gen.: *fructuis* for *fructus*.

3. **Ū** for *ui*, in the Dat. by contraction: *ĕquĭtatŭ* for *equitatuĭ*, cavalry.

118. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Feminine*:—(1) *ăcus*, needle; *cŏlus*, distaff; *dŏmus*, house; *mănus*, hand; *portĭcus*, portico; *tribus*, tribe,—(2) *ĭdus*, ides; *Quinquătrus*, feast of Minerva; generally *pĕnus*, store, when of this decl.; rarely *spĕcus*, den,—(3) see 42, II.

2. *Neuter*:—*sĕcus* (*sexus*), sex; rarely, *spĕcus*, den.

119. SECOND AND FOURTH DECLENSIONS.—Some nouns are partly of the fourth declension and partly of the second.

1. *Dŏmus*, *ŕ.*, house, has a Locative form *domĭ*, at home, and is otherwise declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

N. dŏm ŭs
G. dom ŭs
D. dom ui (domŏ)
A. dom ŭm
V. dom ŭs
A. domŏ (domŭ)

PLURAL.

dŏm ŭs
domuŭ m , domŏrŭ m
domĭb ŭs
domŏs, domŭs
dom ŭs
domĭb ŭs .

2. Certain names of trees in *us*, as *cupressus*, *ficus*, *laurus*, *pĭnus*, though generally of Decl. II., sometimes take those cases of the fourth which end in *us* and *u*: N. *laurus*, G. *laurus*, D. *lauro*, A. *laurum*, V. *laurus*, A. *lauru*, &c. So also *cŏlus*, distaff.

3. A few nouns, especially *senātus* and *tūmultus*, though regularly of Decl. IV., sometimes take the genitive ending *i* of the second: *senāti*, *tumulti*.

FIFTH DECLENSION: **E** NOUNS.

120. Nouns of the fifth declension end in **ēs**,—*femine*, and are declined as follows :

Dies, <i>day</i> .	Res, <i>thing</i> .	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.		
N. di ēs	r ēs	ēs
G. di ēi	r ēi	eī
D. di ēi	r ēi	eī
A. di ēm	r ēm	ēm
V. di ēs	r ēs	ēs
A. di ē	r ē	ē
PLURAL.		
N. di ēs	r ēs	ēs
G. di ērūm	r ērūm	ērūm
D. di ēbūs	r ēbūs	ēbūs
A. di ēs	r ēs	ēs
V. di ēs	r ēs	ēs
A. di ēbūs .	r ēbūs .	ēbūs.

1. STEM.—The stem of nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in **ē**: *die*, *re*.

2. CASE-ENDINGS.—The case-endings here given contain the stem-ending **ē**, which appears in all the cases. It is shortened (1) in the ending *eī*, when preceded by a consonant, and (2) in the ending *ēm*.

3. IRREGULAR ENDINGS:—*ē* or *i* for *ei* in the Gen. and Dat.: *acie* for *aciēi*; *pernicii* for *perniciēi*.

4. DEFECTIVE.—Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want the Gen., Dat., and Abl. Plur., and many admit no plural whatever.

121. EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.—MASCULINE: *Dies*, day, and *mēridies*, mid-day, though *dies* is sometimes feminine in the singular.

122. The Five Declensions, which are only varieties of one general system of inflection, have been produced by the union of the different final letters of the stem with the following:

CASE-ENDINGS FOR ALL NOUNS.

SINGULAR.	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> s —	m —
<i>Gen.</i> ĩs, ĩ ¹	ĩs, ĩ
<i>Dat.</i> ĩ	ĩ
<i>Acc.</i> m, ěm ²	m —
<i>Voc.</i> s —	m —
<i>Abl.</i> d, ěd ³	d, ěd
PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i> ěs, ĩ ⁴	ǎ
<i>Gen.</i> ům, rūm ¹	ům, rūm
<i>Dat.</i> bŭs, ĩbŭs, ĩs ⁴	bŭs, ĩbŭs, ĩs
<i>Acc.</i> ms, ems ²	ǎ
<i>Voc.</i> ěs, ĩ	ǎ
<i>Abl.</i> bŭs, ĩbŭs, ĩs ⁴	bŭs, ĩbŭs, ĩs.

123. The manner in which these endings unite with the different stems so as to produce the five declensions may be seen in the following

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF DECLENSIONS.

	I. Mensa.	II. Servo.	III. Reg.	IV. Fructu.	V. Re.
SINGULAR.					
<i>N.</i> {	<i>mensa-</i> mensǎ	<i>servo-s</i> servŭs	<i>reg-s</i> rex	<i>fructu-s</i> fructŭs	<i>re-s</i> rĕs
<i>G.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i> mensae	<i>servo-i</i> servĭ	<i>reg-is</i> rĕgĭs	<i>fructu-is</i> fructŭs	<i>re-i</i> rĕĭ
<i>D.</i> {	<i>mensa-i</i> mensae	<i>servo-i</i> servŏ	<i>reg-i</i> regĭ	<i>fructu-i</i> fructui	<i>re-i</i> rĕĭ
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-m</i> mensǎm	<i>servo-m</i> servŭm	<i>reg-em</i> reg-ěm	<i>fructu-m</i> fructŭm	<i>re-m</i> rĕm
<i>V.</i> {	<i>mensa-</i> mensǎ	<i>servo-</i> servĕ ⁵	<i>reg-s</i> rex	<i>fructu-s</i> fructŭs	<i>re-s</i> rĕs
<i>A.</i> {	<i>mensa-d</i> mensǎ	<i>servo-d</i> servŏ	<i>reg-ed</i> regĕ	<i>fructu-d</i> fructŭ	<i>re-d</i> rĕ

¹ The endings ĩ and rūm are used with stems in *a*, *o*, and *e*; ĩs and ům with other stems.

² The endings *m* and *ms* are used with vowel stems, *ěm* and *ems* (with connecting vowel *ĕ*) with consonant stems. The plural endings *ms* and *ems* are formed by adding *s* to the singular. *M* is then dropped, and the preceding vowel is lengthened in compensation; hence *ās*, *ōs*, *ēs*, etc. See 27.

³ The ending *d* was originally used with vowel stems, and *ěd* (with connecting vowel *ĕ*) with consonant stems. *D* was afterwards dropped, and the preceding vowel, if short, was lengthened, except *ĕ* in Dec. III., which was only a connecting vowel.

⁴ The endings ĩ and ĩs are used with stems in *a* and *o*; ěs with other stems; bŭs with stems in *u* and *e*; ĩbŭs (with connecting vowel ĩ) with consonant stems.

⁵ Nouns in *us* of Dec. II. change the stem-vowel *o* into *e*.

PLURAL.					
N.	{ mensa-i mensae	servo-i servī	reg-es regēs	fructu-es fructūs	re-es rēs
G.	{ mensa-rum mensārūm	servo-rum servōrūm	reg-um regūm	fructu-um fructuūm	re-rum rērūm
D.	{ mensa-is mensis	servo-is servīs	reg-ibus regībūs	fructu-bus fructībūs	re-bus rēbūs
A.	{ mensa-ms mensās	servo-ms servōs	reg-ems regēs	fructu-ms fructūs	re-ms rēs
V.	{ mensa-i mensae	servo-i servī	reg-es regēs	fructu-es fructūs	re-es rēs
A.	{ mensa-is mensis.	servo-is servīs.	reg-ibus regībūs.	fructu-bus fructībūs.	re-bus rēbūs.

124. GENERAL TABLE OF GENDER.

I. Gender independent of ending.¹ Common to all declensions.

Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
Names of MALES, of RIVERS, WINDS, and MONTHS.	Names of FEMALES, of COUNTRIES, TOWNS, ISLANDS, and TREES.	INDECLINABLE NOUNS, and WORDS and CLAUSES used as In- declinable Nouns.

II. Gender determined by Nominative Ending.²

DECLENSION I.		
Masculine. as, es.	Feminine. a, e.	Neuter.
DECLENSION II.		
er, ir, us, os.		um, on.
DECLENSION III.		
o, or, os, er, es in- creasing in the geni- tive.	as, is, ys, x, es not increasing in the ge- nitive, s preceded by a consonant.	a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.
DECLENSION IV.		
us.		ul.
DECLENSION V.		
	es.	

¹ For exceptions, see 43.² For exceptions, see under the several declensions.

COMPOUND NOUNS.

125. Compounds present in general no peculiarities of declension. But

1. If two nominatives unite, they are both declined: *respública* = *res publica*, republic, the public thing; *jusjūrandum* = *jūs jūrandum*, oath.

2. If a nominative unites with an oblique case, only the nominative is declined: *pāterfāmiliās* = *pāter familias* (49, 1), or *pāter familiae*, the father of a family.

126. PARADIGMS.

SINGULAR.

<i>N.</i> rēspūblicā	jūsjurandū	pāterfāmiliās
<i>G.</i> rēipublicae	jūrisjurandī	patrisfamilias
<i>D.</i> rēipublicae	jurijurandō	patrifamilias
<i>A.</i> rempublicām	jusjurandū	patremfamilias
<i>V.</i> respubicā	jusjurandū	paterfamilias
<i>A.</i> rēpublicā	jurejurandō	patrēfamilias

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> respublicae	jurajurandā	patresfamilias
<i>G.</i> rērumpublicārū		patrumfamilias
<i>D.</i> rēbuspublicīs		patrībusfamilias
<i>A.</i> respubicās	jurajurandā	patresfamilias
<i>V.</i> respublicae	jurajurandā	patresfamilias
<i>A.</i> rēbuspublicīs.		patrībusfamilias.

1. The parts which compose these and similar words are often and perhaps more correctly written separately: *res publica*; *pāter familias* or *familias*.

2. *Paterfamilias* sometimes has *familiārum* in the plural: *patresfamiliārum*.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

127. Irregular nouns may be divided into four classes:

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS have but one form for all cases.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS want certain parts.

III. HETEROCLITES (*hētērōclīta*¹) are partly of one declension and partly of another.

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS (*hētērōgēnea*²) are partly of one gender and partly of another.

¹ From *ἕτερος*, another, and *κλίσις*, inflection, i. e., of different declensions.

² From *ἕτερος*, another, and *γένος*, gender, i. e., of different genders.

I. INDECLINABLE NOUNS.

128. The Latin has but few indeclinable nouns:

1. *Fās*, right; *nēfās*, wrong; *īnstār*, equality; *mānē*, morning; *nihil*, nothing; *pondō*, pound; *scēus*, sex.
2. The letters of the alphabet, *a*, *b*, *c*, *alphā*, *bētā*, etc.
3. Foreign words: *Jācōb*, *Ilībērī*; though these are often declined.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

129. Nouns may be defective in *Number*, in *Case*, or in both *Number* and *Case*.

130. PLURAL WANTING.—Many nouns from the nature of their signification want the plural: *Rōma*, Rome; *justītia*, justice; *aurum*, gold.

1. The principal nouns of this class are:
 - 1) Most names of persons and places: *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.
 - 2) Abstract Nouns: *fīdēs*, faith; *justītia*, justice.
 - 3) Names of materials: *aurum*, gold; *ferrum*, iron.
 - 4) A few others: *mēridiēs*, midday; *spēcīmēn*, example; *sūpellex*, furniture; *vēr*, spring; *vespēra*, evening, etc.
2. Proper names admit the plural to designate *families*, *classes*; names of materials, to designate *pieces* of the material or *articles* made of it; and abstract nouns, to designate *instances*, or *kinds*, of the quality; *Scipiōnes*, the Scipios; *acra*, vessels of copper; *āvarītiāe*, instances of avarice; *ōdia*, hatreds.

In the poets, the *plural* of abstracts occurs in the sense of the singular.

131. SINGULAR WANTING.—Many nouns want the singular.

1. The most important of these are:
 - 1) Certain personal appellatives applicable to classes: *majōres*, forefathers; *postērī*, descendants; *gēminī*, twins; *libērī*, children.
 - 2) Many names of cities: *Athēnae*, Athens; *Thēbae*, Thebes; *Delphi*, Delphi.
 - 3) Many names of festivals: *Bacchānālīa*, *Olympīa*, *Sātūrnālīa*.
 - 4) *Arma*, arms; *divītiāe*, riches; *exsēquīae*, funeral rites; *exūviae*, spoils; *īdus*, ides; *indūtīae*, truce; *īnsīdiāe*, ambuscade; *mānes*, shades of the dead; *mīnae*, threats; *moenia*, walls; *mūnīa*, duties; *nuptīae*, nuptials; *rēliquīae*, remains.

2. An individual member of a class designated by these plurals may be denoted by *ūnus ex* with the plural: *ūnus ex libērīs*, one of the children, or a child.

3. The plural in names of cities may have reference to the several parts of the city, especially as ancient cities were often made up of separate

villages. So in the names of festivals, the plural may refer to the various games and exercises which together constituted the festival.

132. PLURAL WITH CHANGE OF MEANING.—Some nouns have one signification in the singular and another in the plural. Thus:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Aedēs, <i>temple</i> ;	aedes, (1) <i>temples</i> , (2) <i>a house</i> . ¹
Auxīlium, <i>help</i> ;	auxilia, <i>auxiliaries</i> .
Carcēr, <i>prison, barrier</i> ;	carcēres, <i>barriers of a race-course</i> .
Castrum, <i>castle, hut</i> ;	castra, <i>camp</i> .
Comītium, <i>name of a part of the Roman forum</i> ;	comitia, <i>the assembly held in the comitium</i> .
Cōpia, <i>plenty, force</i> ;	copiae, (1) <i>stores</i> , (2) <i>troops</i> .
Fācultās, <i>ability</i> ;	facultātes, <i>wealth, means</i> .
Finis, <i>end</i> ;	finēs, <i>borders, territory</i> .
Fortūna, <i>fortune</i> ;	fortūnae, <i>possessions, wealth</i> .
Grātia, <i>gratitude, favor</i> ;	gratiae, <i>thanks</i> .
Hortus, <i>garden</i> ;	horti, (1) <i>gardens</i> , (2) <i>pleasure-grounds</i> .
Impēdimentum, <i>hindrance</i> ;	impedimenta, (1) <i>hindrances</i> , (2) <i>baggage</i> .
Littēra, <i>letter of alphabet</i> ;	litterae, (1) <i>letters of alphabet</i> , (2) <i>epistle, writing, letters, literature</i> .
Lūdus, <i>play, sport</i> ;	ludi, (1) <i>plays</i> , (2), <i>public spectacle</i> .
Mōs, <i>custom</i> ;	mōres, <i>manners, character</i> .
Nātālīs (diēs), <i>birth-day</i> ;	natāles, <i>pedigree, parentage</i> .
Opēra, <i>work, service</i> ;	opērae, <i>workmen</i> .
Pars, <i>part</i> ;	partes, (1) <i>parts</i> , (2) <i>a party</i> .
Rostrum, <i>beak of ship</i> ;	rostra, (1) <i>beaks</i> , (2) <i>the rostra or tribune in Rome (adorned with beaks)</i> .
Sāl, <i>salt</i> ;	sāles, <i>witty sayings</i> .

133. DEFECTIVE IN CASE.—Some nouns are defective in case. Thus:

1. In the Nom., Dat., and Voc. Sing. : (Ops), ōpis, *help* ; (vix or vīcis), vīcis, *change*.

2. In the Nom. and Voc. Sing. : (Daps), dāpis, *food* ; (dītio), dītīōnis, *sway* ; (frux), frūgis, *fruit* ; (internēcio), internēcīōnis, *destruction* ; (pollis), pollinis, *flour*.

3. In the Gen., Dat. and Abl. Plur. : most nouns of the fifth declension. See 120, 4.

So also many neuters: *fār, fēl, mēl, pūs, rūs, tūs* ; especially Greek neuters in *ōs*, which want these cases in the singular also: *ēpos, mēlos*.

¹ *Aedes* and some other words in this list, it will be observed, have in the plural two significations, one corresponding to that of the singular, and the other distinct from it.

4. In the Gen. Plur.: many nouns otherwise entire, especially monosyllables: *nex, pax, pix*; *cōr, cōs, rōs*; *sāl, sāl, lux*.

134. NUMBER AND CASE.—Some nouns want one entire number and certain cases of the other: *fors*, chance, has only *fors* and *forte*; *lues*, pestilence, has *luēs, luem, lue*. Many verbal nouns in *u* have only the ablative singular: *jussu*, by order; *mandātu*, by command; *rōgātu*, by request.

III. HETEROCLITES.

135. Of DECLENSIONS II. and IV. are a few nouns in *us*. See 119.

136. Of DECLENSIONS II. and III. are

1. *Jūgērūm*, an acre; generally of the second Decl. in the Sing., and of the third in the Plur.: *jūgērūm, jūgēri*; plural, *jūgēra, jūgērūm, jūgeribus*.

2. *Vās*, a vessel; of the third Decl., in the Sing. and of the second in the Plur.: *vas, vāsīs*; plural, *vāsa, vasōrūm*.

3. Plural names of festivals in *alia*: *Bacchānālia, Sātūrnālia*; which are regularly of the third Decl., but sometimes form the Gen. Plur. in *ōrūm* of the second. *Ancile*, a shield, and a few other words have the same peculiarity.

137. Of DECLENSIONS III. and V. are

1. *Rēquies*, rest; which is regularly of the third Decl., but also takes the forms *requiem* and *requiē* of the fifth.

2. *Fāmēs*, hunger; regularly of the third Decl., except in the ablative, *famē*, of the fifth (not *famē*, of the third).

138. FORMS IN *ia* AND *ies*.—Many words of four syllables have one form in *ia* of Decl. I., and one in *ies* of Decl. V.: *luxūria, luxūries, luxury*; *mātēria, mātēries, material*.

139. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Many nouns derived from verbs have one form in *us* of Decl. IV., and one in *um* of Decl. II.: *cōnātus, cōnātum*, an attempt; *ēventus, ēventum*, event.

140. Many words which have but one approved form in prose, admit another in poetry: *jūventūs* (*ūtis*), youth; poetic, *jūventa* (*ae*): *sēnectūs* (*ūtis*), old age; poetic, *sēnecta* (*ae*): *paupertās* (*ātis*), poverty; poetic, *paupēries* (*ēi*).

IV. HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

141. MASCULINE AND NEUTER.—Some *masculines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

Jocus, m., jest;

plural *joci*, m., *joca*, n.

Locus, m., place;

“ *loci*, m., topics, *loca*, n., places.

142. FEMININE AND NEUTER.—Some *feminines* take in the plural an additional form of the neuter gender:

<i>Carbāsus</i> , f., linen;	plural <i>carbāsi</i> , f., <i>carbāsa</i> , n.
<i>Margārita</i> , f., pearl;	“ <i>margaritae</i> , f., <i>margarita</i> , n.
<i>Ostrea</i> , f., oyster;	“ <i>ostreae</i> , f., <i>ostrea</i> , n.

143. NEUTER AND MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—Some *neuters* take in the plural a different gender. Thus:

1. Some *neuters* become *masculine* in the plural:

<i>Caelum</i> , n., heaven;	plural <i>caeli</i> , m.
-----------------------------	--------------------------

2. Some *neuters* generally become *masculine* in the plural, but sometimes remain *neuter*:

<i>Frēnum</i> , n., bridle;	plural <i>freni</i> , m., <i>frena</i> , n.
<i>Rastrum</i> , n., rake;	“ <i>rastri</i> , m., <i>rastra</i> , n.

3. Some *neuters* become *feminine* in the plural:

<i>Epulum</i> , n., feast;	plural <i>epulae</i> , f.
----------------------------	---------------------------

144. FORMS IN *us* AND *um*.—Some nouns of the second declension have one form in *us* masculine, and one in *um* neuter: *clipeus*, *clipeum*, shield; *commentārius*, *commentārium*, commentary.

145. HETEROGENEOUS HETEROCLITES.—Some heteroclites are also heterogeneous: *cōnātus* (us), *cōnātum* (i), effort; *menda* (ae), *mendum* (i), fault.

CHAPTER II.

ADJECTIVES.

146. THE adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good: *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies: *bōnus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS : A AND O STEMS.

148. Bōnus, *good*.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bōn ūs	bōn ā	bōn ūm
<i>Gen.</i>	bōn I	bōn ae	bōn I
<i>Dat.</i>	bōn ō	bōn ae	bōn ō
<i>Acc.</i>	bōn ūm	bōn ām	bōn ūm
<i>Voc.</i>	bōn ē	bōn ā	bōn ūm
<i>Abl.</i>	bōn ō	bōn ā	bōn ō ;

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	bōn I	bōn ae	bōn ā
<i>Gen.</i>	bōn ōrūm	bōn ārūm	bōn ōrūm
<i>Dat.</i>	bōn īs	bōn īs	bōn īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bōn ōs	bōn ās	bōn ā
<i>Voc.</i>	bōn I	bōn ae	bōn ā
<i>Abl.</i>	bōn īs	bōn īs	bōn īs .

1. BONUS is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Decl. II. (51), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Decl. I. (48), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Decl. II. (51). The stems are *bōno* in the Masc. and Neut., and *bōna* in the Fem.

149. Līber, *free*.

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	līb ēr	līb ērā	līb ērūm
<i>Gen.</i>	līb ērI	līb ērae	līb ērI
<i>Dat.</i>	līb ērō	līb ērae	līb ērō
<i>Acc.</i>	līb ērūm	līb ērām	līb ērūm
<i>Voc.</i>	līb ēr	līb ērā	līb ērūm
<i>Abl.</i>	līb ērō	līb ērā	līb ērō ;

PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	līb ērI	līb ērae	līb ērā
<i>Gen.</i>	līb ērōrūm	līb ērārūm	līb ērōrūm
<i>Dat.</i>	līb ērīs	līb ērīs	līb ērīs
<i>Acc.</i>	līb ērōs	līb ērās	līb ērā
<i>Voc.</i>	līb ērI	līb ērae	līb ērā
<i>Abl.</i>	līb ērīs	līb ērīs	līb ērīs .

1. **LIBER** is declined in the Masc. like *puer* (51), and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

150. *Aeger, sick.*

SINGULAR.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aegēr	aegrǎ	aegrŭm
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrĭ	aegrac	aegrĭ
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrō	aegrac	aegrō
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrŭm	aegrām	aegrŭm
<i>Voc.</i>	aeger	aegrǎ	aegrŭm
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrō	aegrā	aegrō ;

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aegrĭ	aegrac	aegrǎ
<i>Gen.</i>	aegrōrŭm	aegrārŭm	aegrōrŭm
<i>Dat.</i>	aegrĭs	aegrĭs	aegrĭs
<i>Acc.</i>	aegrōs	aegrās	aegrǎ
<i>Voc.</i>	aegrĭ	aegrac	aegrǎ
<i>Abl.</i>	aegrĭs	aegrĭs	aegrĭs.

1. **AEGER** is declined in the Masc. like *äger* (51) and in the Fem. and Neut. like *bōnus*.

2. Most adjectives in *ēr* are declined like *aeger*, but the following in *ēr* and *ūr* are declined like *liber* :

1) *Asper*, rough ; *lācer*, torn ; *mīser*, wretched ; *prosper*, prosperous ; *tēner*, tender ; but *asper* sometimes drops the *e*, and *dexter*, right, sometimes retains it : *dexter*, *dextēra* or *dextra*.

2) *Sātur*, sated ; *satur*, *satūra*, *satŭrum*.

3) Compounds in *fēr* and *gēr* : *mortifer*, deadly ; *āliger*, winged.

151. IRREGULARITIES.—These nine adjectives have in the singular **iūs** in the genitive and **ī** in the dative :

Aliūs, *ā*, *ūd*, another ; *nullus*, *a*, *um*, no one ; *sōlus*, alone ; *tōtus*, whole ; *ullus*, any ; *ūnus*, one ; *altēr*, *-tērā*, *-tērŭm*, the other ; *ūter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, which (of two) ; *neuter*, *-tra*, *-trum*, neither.¹

1. The Regular Forms occasionally occur in some of these adjectives.

2. *I* in *iūs* is sometimes short ; generally so in *altērius*.

3. *Alius* contracts the genitive *āliius* into *ālius*.

4. Like *ūter* are declined its compounds : *uterquē*, *utērōis*, *uterlibēt*, *utercunquē*. In *altērūter* sometimes both parts are declined, as *altērius utrius* ; and sometimes only the latter, as *altērutrius*.

¹ For the Declension in full see *ūnus*, 175.

THIRD DECLENSION : CONSONANT AND I STEMS.

152. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms—one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms—the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form—the same for all genders.

153. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS in this declension have the stem in *i*, and are declined as follows :

Acer, sharp.

SINGULAR.

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>N.</i> ācēr	ācrīs	ācrē
<i>G.</i> acrīs	acrīs	acrīs
<i>D.</i> acrī	acrī	acrī
<i>A.</i> acrēm	acrēm	acrē
<i>V.</i> acēr	acrīs	acrē
<i>A.</i> acrī	acrī	acrī;

PLURAL.

<i>N.</i> acrēs	acrēs	acriā
<i>G.</i> acriūm	acriūm	acriūm
<i>D.</i> acribūs	acribūs	acribūs
<i>A.</i> acrēs, is	acrēs, is	acriā
<i>V.</i> acrēs	acrēs	acriā
<i>A.</i> acribūs	acribūs	acribūs.

1. Like ACER are declined :

1) *Alācer*, lively; *campester*, level; *cēlēber*, famous; *cēler*,¹ swift; *ēquester*, equestrian; *pāluster*, marshy; *pēdester*, pedestrian; *pūter*, putrid; *sālūber*, healthful; *silvester*, woody; *terrester*, terrestrial; *vōlūcer*, winged.

2) Adjectives in *er* designating the months: *Octōber*, *brīs*.²

2. The Masculine in *is*, like the Fem., also occurs: *sālūbris*, *silvestris*, for *salūber*, *silvester*.

¹ This retains *e* in declension: *cōler*, *celēris*, *celēre*; and has *um* in the Gen. Plur.

² See also 77, II. 2.

3. These forms in *er* are analogous to those in *er* of Dec. II. in dropping the ending in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. and in inserting *e* before *r*: *ācer* for *acris*, stem, *ācri*.

4. **ACER** is declined like *ignis* in the Masc. and Fem., and like *māre* (63) in the Neut., except in the Nom. and Voc. Sing., Masc. where it ends in *er*, and in the Abl. Sing. where it ends in *i*.

154. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS are declined as follows :

Tristis, sad.

Tristior, more sad.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. tristī ^s	tristĕ	N. tristīōr	tristiūs
G. tristī ^s	tristī ^s	G. tristīōrī ^s	tristiōrī ^s
D. tristī	tristī	D. tristīōrī	tristiōrī
A. tristĕm	tristĕ	A. tristīōrĕm	tristiūs
V. tristī ^s	tristĕ	V. tristīōr	tristiūs
A. tristī	tristī;	A. tristīōrĕ (ī)	tristiōrĕ (ī);

PLURAL.

N. tristĕs	tristiā	N. tristīōrĕs	tristiōrā
G. tristīūm	tristiūm	G. tristīōrūm	tristiōrūm
D. tristībūs	tristībūs	D. tristīōribūs	tristiōribūs
A. tristĕs, īs	tristiā	A. tristīōrĕs	tristiōrā
V. tristĕs	tristiā	V. tristīōrĕs	tristiōrā
A. tristībūs	tristībūs.	A. tristīōribūs	tristiōribūs.

1. **TRISTIS** and **TRISTE** are declined like *ācris* and *ācre*.

2. **TRISTIOR** is the comparative (160) of *tristis*.

3. **STEMS**.—The stem of *tristis* is *tristi*; that of *tristior* was originally *tristiōs*, but it has been modified to *tristiūs* (61, 1) in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. Neut., and to *tristiōr* in the other cases (35).

4. Like **TRISTIOR**, comparatives, as consonant stems, generally have the Abl. Sing. in *e*, sometimes in *i*, the Nom. Plur. Neut. in *a*, and the Gen. Plur. in *um*. But

5. **COMPLURES**, several, has Gen. Plur. *complūrium*; Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. Neut. *complūra* or *complūria*. See *Plūs*, 165, 1.

6. **ABLATIVE IN e**.—In poetry, adjectives in *is*, *e*, sometimes have the Abl. Sing. in *e*: *cognōmīne* from *cognōmīnis*, of the same name.

155. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings.

156. Audax, *audacious*.Fēlix, *happy*.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. audax	audax	N. fēlix	fēlix
G. audācīs	audācīs	G. felicīs	felicīs
D. audācī	audācī	D. felicī	felicī
A. audācēm	audax	A. felicēm	felix
V. audax	audax	V. felix	felix
A. audācī (ĕ)	audācī (ĕ);	A. felicī (ĕ)	felicī (ĕ);

PLURAL.

N. audācēs	audaciā	N. felicēs	feliciā
G. audaciūm	audaciūm	G. feliciūm	feliciūm
D. audaciībūs	audaciībūs	D. felicībūs	feliciībūs
A. audācēs (īs)	andaciā	A. felicēs (īs)	feliciā
V. audācēs	audaciā	V. felicēs	feliciā
A. audaciībūs	audaciībūs.	A. felicībūs	feliciībūs.

1. STEMS.—Most Adjectives of One Ending are combinations of *i*-stems and consonant stems—the former appearing in the Abl. Sing. and in the Plural. The stems of *audax* and *felix* are *audāci*, *audāc*, and *fēlici*, *felic*.

157. Amans, *loving*.Prūdens, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. āmans	āmans	N. prūdens	prūdens
G. amantīs	amantīs	G. prudentīs	prudentīs
D. amantī	amantī	D. prudentī	prudentī
A. amantēm	amans	A. prudentēm	prudens
V. amans	amans	V. prudens	prudens
A. amantē (ī)	amantē (ī);	A. prudentī (ĕ)	prudentī (ĕ);

PLURAL.

N. amantēs	amantiā	N. prudentēs	prudentiā
G. amantiūm	amantiūm	G. prudentiūm	prudentiūm
D. amantiībūs	amantiībūs	D. prudentiībūs	prudentiībūs
A. amantēs (īs)	amantiā	A. prudentēs (īs)	prudentiā
V. amantēs	amantiā	V. prudentēs	prudentiā
A. amantiībūs	amantiībūs.	A. prudentiībūs	prudentiībūs.

1. The stems are *āmanti*, *āmant*; *prūdenti*, *prudent*.

2. The participle *āmans* differs in declension from the adjective *prūdens* only in the Abl. Sing., where the participle usually has the ending *ē*, and the adjective, *ī*. Participles used adjectively may of course take *ī*. A few adjectives have only *e* in general use:—(1) *pauper*, *paupēre*, poor;

pābes, pubēre, mature;—(2) those in *ēs*, G. *ītis* or *īdis*: *ales, dēscs, dīves, sospes, superstes*;—(3) *caelebs, compōs, impōs, princeps*.

158. *Vētus*, *old*.*Mēmōr*, *mindful*.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	NEUT.	M. and F.	NEUT.
N. <i>vētūs</i>	<i>vētūs</i>	<i>mēmōr</i>	<i>mēmōr</i>
G. <i>vetērīs</i>	<i>vetērīs</i>	<i>memōrīs</i>	<i>memōrīs</i>
D. <i>vetērī</i>	<i>vetērī</i>	<i>memōrī</i>	<i>memōrī</i>
A. <i>vetērēm</i>	<i>vetūs</i>	<i>memōrēm</i>	<i>memōr</i>
V. <i>vetūs</i>	<i>vetūs</i>	<i>memōr</i>	<i>memōr</i>
A. <i>vetērē (ī)</i>	<i>vetērē (ī)</i> ;	<i>memōrī</i>	<i>memōrī</i> ;

PLURAL.

N. <i>vetērēs</i>	<i>vetērā</i>	<i>memōrēs</i>
G. <i>vetērūm</i>	<i>vetērūm</i>	<i>memōrūm</i>
D. <i>veterībūs</i>	<i>veterībūs</i>	<i>memōrībūs</i>
A. <i>vetērēs</i>	<i>vetērā</i>	<i>memōrēs</i>
V. <i>vetērēs</i>	<i>vetērā</i>	<i>memōrēs</i>
A. <i>veterībūs</i>	<i>veterībūs</i> .	<i>memōrībūs</i> .

1. NEUTER PLURAL.—Many adjectives like *mēmōr*, from the nature of their signification, want the Neut. Plur.: *ūbēr*, fertile, has *ubēra*, like *vētūs*, *vetēra*; all others have the ending *ia*, as *fēlicia*, *prūdētia*.

2. GENITIVE PLURAL.—Most adjectives have *ium*, but the following have *um*.

1) Adjectives of one ending with only *e* in the ablative singular (157, 2): *pauper*, *paupērum*.

2) Those with the genitive in *ēris*, *ōris*, *ūris*: *vētus*, *vetērum*, old; *mēmōr*, *memōrum*, mindful; *cicūr*, *cicūrum*, tame.

3) Those in *ceps*: *anceps*, *ancipitum*, doubtful.

4) Those compounded with substantives which have *um*: *īnops* (ops, *ōpum*), *inōpum*, helpless.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

159. Irregular adjectives may be

I. INDECLINABLE: *frūgī*, frugal, good; *nēquām*, worthless; *millē*, thousand. See 176.

II. DEFECTIVE: (*cētērus*) *cētēra*, *celērum*, the other, the rest; (*lūdīcer*) *lūdīcra*, *ludicrum*, sportive; (sons) *sontīs*, guilty; (*sēmīnex*) *sēmīnēcis*, half dead; *pauci*, *ae*, *a*, used only in the Plur. See also 158, 1.

III. HETEROCLITES.—Many adjectives have two distinct forms, one in *us*, *a*, *um*, of the first and second declensions, and one in *is* and *e* of the third: *hīlārus* and *hīlāris*, joyful; *exānīmus* and *exānīmis*, lifeless.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms, called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree : *altus*, *altior*, *altissimŭs*, high, higher, highest. These forms denote different degrees of the quality expressed by the adjective.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison :

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON—by endings.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON—by adverbs.

I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings :

COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iŏr, iŏr, iŭs.			issimŭs, issimă, issimŭm : ¹		

Altus, *altior*, *altissimŭs* : *high, higher, highest.*

lĕvis, *levior*, *levissimŭs* : *light, lighter, lightest.*

1. VOWEL STEMS lose their final vowel : *alto*, *altior*, *altissimŭs*.

163. IRREGULAR SUPERLATIVES.—Many adjectives with regular comparatives have irregular superlatives. Thus :

1. Adjectives in **er** add **rĭmus** to the positive :¹ *acer*, *acrior*, *acerrĭmus*, sharp.

Vĕtus has *veterrĭmus* ; *mătŭrus*, both *maturrĭmus* and *maturissimŭs* ; *dexter*, *dextrĭmus*.

2. Six in **ĭlis** add **lĭmus** to the stem :¹

Făcilis, *difficĭlis* ; *easy, difficult.*

sĭmilis, *dissĭmilis* ; *like, unlike.*

grăcilis, *hŭmilis* ; *slender, low :*

facĭlis, *facilior*, *facillĭmus*. *Imbĕcillis* has *imbecillĭmus*.

¹ The superlative ending *is-simŭs* is probably compounded of *is* for *ios*, the original comparative ending (154, 3), and *simŭs* for *rimŭs* ; *ios-rimŭs*=*ios-simŭs*=*is-simŭs*. After *l* and *r*, the first element is omitted, and *s* assimilated : *făcilis*, *facil-simŭs*, *facillĭmus* ; *acer*, *acer-simŭs*, *acerrĭmus*.

3. Four in **rus** have two irregular superlatives :

Extērus,	exterior,	extrēmus	and	extimū,	outward.
infērus,	inferior,	infimū	and	imus,	lower.
sūpērus,	superior,	suprēmus	and	summus,	upper.
postērus,	posterior,	postrēmus	and	postūmus,	next.

164. Compounds in **dīcus**, **fīcus**, and **vōlus** are compared with the endings **entior** and **entissimū**, as if from forms in **ens** :

Mālēdīcus,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimū,	slanderous.
mūnīfīcus,	munificentior,	munificentissimū,	liberal.
bēnēvōlus,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimū,	benevolent.

1. *Egēnus* and *prōvīdus* (needy and prudent), form the comparative and superlative from *ēgens* and *providens* : hence *egentior*, *egentissimū*, etc.

2. *Mīrifīcissimū* occurs as the superlative of *mīrifīcus*, wonderful.

165. SPECIAL IRREGULARITIES OF COMPARISON.

Bōnus,	mēlior,	optimū,	good.
mālus,	pejor,	pessimū,	bad.
magnus,	major,	maximū,	great.
parvus,	mīnor,	mīnimū,	small.
multus,	plūs,	plūrīmū,	much.

1. *Plūs* is neuter, and has in the singular only N. and A. *plus*, and G. *plūris*. In the plural it has N. and A. *plūrēs* (m. and f.), *plūrē* (n.), G. *plurium*, D. and A. *pluribus*.

2. Divēs,	{ divitior,	divitissimū,	} rich.
	{ ditior,	ditissimū,	
frūgī,	frugālior,	frugalissimū,	frugal.
nēquām,	nequior,	nequissimū,	worthless.

166. POSITIVE WANTING.

Citērior,	citīmū,	nearer.	prior,	prīmū,	former.
dētērior,	dētērimū,	worse.	prōprior,	proxīmū,	nearer.
intērior,	intīmū,	inner.	ultērior,	ultīmū,	farther. ¹
ōcior,	ōcissimū,	swifter.			

167. COMPARATIVE WANTING.

1. In a few participles used adjectively: *mērītus*, *meritissimū*, deserving.

2. In these adjectives :

¹ These adjectives are formed from *citrā*, *dē*, *intrā*, Greek *ώκvs*, *prae* or *pro*, *prēpē*, *ultrā*.

Diversus, diversissimus, <i>different.</i>	nŏvus, novissimus, <i>new.</i>
falsus, falsissimus, <i>false.</i>	săcer, sacerrimus, <i>sacred.</i>
inclŭtus, inclutissimus, <i>renowned.</i>	vĕtus, veterrimus, <i>old.</i>
invitus, invitissimus, <i>unwilling.</i>	

168. SUPERLATIVE WANTING.

1. In most verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*: *dŏcilis*, *docilior*, *docile*.
2. In many adjectives in *alis* and *ilis*: *căpĭtălis*, *capitalior*, *capital*.
3. In *ălăcer*, *alacrior*, *active*; *caecus*, *blind*; *diŭturnus*, *lasting*; *longinquus*, *distant*; *ŏpĭmus*, *rich*; *prŏclĭvis*, *steep*; *prŏpinquus*, *near*; *sălŭtăris*, *salutary*, and a few others.
4. Three adjectives supply the superlative thus:

Adŏlescens,	ădolescentior,	mĭnimus nătu, ¹	<i>young.</i>
jŭvĕnis,	junior,	mĭnimus nătu,	<i>young.</i>
sĕnex,	senior,	maxĭmus natu,	<i>old.</i>

169. WITHOUT TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

1. Many adjectives, from the nature of their signification, especially such as denote *material*, *possession*, or the relations of *place* and *time*: *aureus*, *golden*; *păternus*, *paternal*; *Rŏmănus*, *Roman*; *aestĭvus*, *of summer*.
2. Most adjectives in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those in *quus*: *idŏneus*, *suitable*; *noxius*, *hurtful*.
3. Many derivatives in *alis*, *ăris*, *ilis*, *ilus*, *icus*, *inus*, *ŏrus*: *mŏrtălis* (*mors*), *mortal*.
4. *Albus*, *white*; *claudus*, *lame*; *fĕrus*, *wild*; *lassus*, *weary*; *mĭrus*, *wonderful*, and a few others.

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison, form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *măgis*, *more*, and *maxĭme*, *most*, to the positive: *arduus*, *măgis arduus*, *maxĭme arduus*, *arduous*.

1. Other adverbs are sometimes used with the positive to denote different degrees of the quality: *admŏdum*, *valde*, *oppĭdŏ*, *very*; *imprimĭs*, *apprimĕ*, in the highest degree: *valde magna*, *very great*. *Pĕr* and *prae* in composition with adjectives have the force of *very*; *perdiffĭcilis*, *very difficult*; *praeclărus*, *very illustrious*.

2. Strengthening Particles are also sometimes used,—(1) With the comparative: *ĕtiăm*, *even*, *multŏ*, *longĕ*, *much*, *far*: *ĕtiăm diligentior*, *even more diligent*; *multo diligentior*, *much more diligent*.—(2) With the superlative: *multŏ*, *longĕ*, *much*, *by far*; *quăm*, *as possible*: *multo* or *longe diligentissĭmus*, *by far the most diligent*; *quăm diligentissĭmus*, *as diligent as possible*.

¹ Smallest or youngest in age. *Natu* is sometimes omitted.

NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes :

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS : *ūnus*, one ; *duō*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS : *prīmus*, first ; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES : *singŭlī*, one by one ; *bīnī*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

173. To these may be added :

1. MULTIPLICATIVES.—These are adjectives in *plex*, G. *plīcis*, denoting so many fold : *simplex*, single ; *dūplex*, double ; *trīplex*, threefold.

2. PROPORTIONALS.—These are declined like *bōnus*, and denote so many times as great : *dūplus*, twice as great ; *trīplus*, three times as great.

174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. ūnus, una, unum,	prīmŭs, ² <i>first</i> ,	singŭlī, <i>one by one</i> .
2. duō, duae, duo,	secundus, ² <i>second</i> ,	bīnī, <i>two by two</i> .
3. trēs, triā,	tertius, <i>third</i> ,	terni (trīnī).
4. quattuōr,	quartus, <i>fourth</i> ,	quāterni.
5. quinquē,	quintus, <i>fifth</i> ,	quīni.
6. sex,	sextus,	sēni.
7. septēm,	septīmus,	septēni.
8. octō,	octāvus,	octōni.
9. nōvēm,	nōnus,	nōvēni.
10. dēcēm,	dēcīmus,	dēni.
11. undēcīm,	undēcīmus,	undēni.
12. duōdēcīm,	duōdecīmus,	duōdēni.
13. trēdēcīm, ¹	tertius decīmus, ²	terni dēni.
14. quattuordēcīm,	quartus decīmus,	quāterni dēni.
15. quindēcīm,	quintus decīmus,	quīni dēni.
16. sēdēcīm or sexdēcīm, ¹	sextus decīmus,	sēni dēni.
17. septendēcīm, ¹	septīmus decīmus,	septēni dēni.

¹ Sometimes with the parts separated : *decem et tres* ; *decem et sex*, etc.

² *Prior* is used instead of *prīmus* in speaking of two, and *alter* is often used for *secundus*.

³ Sometimes *decīmus* precedes with or without *et* : *decīmus et tertius* or *decīmus tertius*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
18. duōdēvigintī, ¹	duōdēvicēsīmus, ⁵	duōdēvicēni.
19. undēvigintī, ¹	undēvicēsīmus, ⁵	undevicēni.
20. vīgintī,	vīcēsīmus, ⁶	vīcēni.
21. {viginti ūnus, ūnus ēt viginti, ²	vicesīmus prīmus, ūnus et vicesīmus ² ,	vicēni singūli. singūli et vicēni.
22. {viginti duo, duo ēt viginti,	vicesīmus secundus, alter et vicesīmus,	vicēni bīni. bīni et vicēni.
30. trīgintā,	trīcēsīmus, ⁶	trīcēni.
40. quādrāgintā,	quādrāgēsīmus,	quādrāgēni.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsīmus,	quinquāgēni.
60. sexāgintā,	sexāgēsīmus,	sexāgēni.
70. septuāgintā,	septuāgēsīmus,	septuāgēni.
80. octōgintā,	octōgēsīmus,	octōgēni.
90. nōnāgintā,	nōnāgēsīmus,	nōnāgēni.
100. centū,	centēsīmus,	centēni.
101. {centum ūnus, centum et ūnus, ³	centesīmus prīmus, centesīmus et prīmus	centēni singūli. centēni et singūli.
200. dūcentī, ae, ā,	dūcentēsīmus,	dūcēni.
300. trēcentī,	trēcentēsīmus,	trēcēni.
400. quādringenti,	quādringentēsīmus,	quādringēni.
500. quingenti,	quingentēsīmus,	quingēni.
600. sexcentī,	sexcentēsīmus,	sexcēni.
700. septingenti,	septingentesīmus,	septingēni.
800. octingenti,	octingentesīmus,	octingēni.
900. nongenti,	nongentesīmus,	nongēni.
1,000. millē,	millēsīmus,	singūla millia.
2,000. duo millia, ⁴	bīs millesīmus,	bīna millia.
10,000. dēcem millia,	dēciēs millesīmus,	dēna millia.

¹ Literally two from twenty, one from twenty, by subtraction; but these numbers may be expressed by addition: *decem et octo*; *decem et novem*; so 28, 29; 88, 89, etc., either by subtraction from *trīgintā*, etc., or by addition to *vīginti*; *duodetrīginta* or *octo et vīginti*.

² If the tens precede the units, *et* is omitted, otherwise it is generally used. So in English cardinals, twenty-one, one and twenty.

³ In compounding numbers above 100, units generally follow tens, tens hundreds, etc., as in English; but the connective *et* is either omitted, or used only between the two highest denominations: *mille centum vīginti* or *mille et centum vīginti*, 1120.

⁴ Sometimes *bīna millia* or *bīs mille*.

⁵ Sometimes expressed by addition, like the corresponding cardinals: *octāvus decīmus* and *nonus decīmus*.

⁶ Sometimes written with *g*: *vigeēsīmus*; *trigeēsīmus*.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
100,000. centum millia,	centiēs millesīmus,	centēna millia.
1,000,000. dēciēs centēna mil- lia, ¹	decies centies mil- lesīmus,	dēciēs centēna millia.

1. ORDINALS with *Pars*, part, expressed or understood, may be used to express fractions: *tertia pars*, a third part, a third; *quarta pars*, a fourth; *duae tertiae*, two thirds.

2. DISTRIBUTIVES are used

1) To show the *number* of objects taken at a time, often best rendered by adding to the cardinal *each* or *apiece*; *ternos dēnārios accēperunt*, they received *each* three denarii, or three apiece. Hence:

2) To express *Multiplication*: *decies centēna millia*, ten times a hundred thousand, a million.

3) Instead of *Cardinals*, with nouns plural in form, but singular in sense: *bina castra*, two camps. Here for *singuli* and *terni*, *ūni* and *trīni* are used: *unae littērae*, one letter; *trinae littērae*, three letters.

4) Sometimes in reference to objects spoken of in pairs: *bīni scyphi*, a pair of goblets; and in the poets with the force of cardinals: *bina hastilia*, two spears.

3. Poets use numeral adverbs (181) very freely in compounding numbers: *bis sex*, for duodēcim; *bis septem*, for quattuordēcim.

4. *Sexcenti* and *mille* are sometimes used indefinitely for any large number, as *one thousand* is in English.

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

175. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

Unus, *one*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
N. ūnūs	ūnā	ūnūm	ūnī	ūnae	ūnā	
G. unīūs	unīūs	unīūs	unōrūm	unārūm	unōrūm	
D. unī	unī	unī	unīs	unīs	unīs	
A. unūm	unām	unūm	unōs	unās	unā	
V. unē	unā	unūm	unī	unae	unā	
A. unō	unā	unō;	unīs	unīs	unīs.	

Duo, *two*.

Tres, *three*.

N. duō	duae	duō	trēs, m. and f.	triā, n.
G. duōrūm	duārūm	duōrūm ²	triūm	triūm

¹ Literally ten times a hundred thousand; the table might be carried up to any desired number by using the proper numeral adverb with *centēna millia*: *centiēs centēna millia*, 10,000,000; sometimes in such combinations *centēna millia* is understood and only the adverb is expressed, and sometimes *centum millia* is used.

² *Duōrum* and *duārum* are sometimes shortened to *duūm*.

D.	duōbŭs	duābŭs	duōbŭs	trībŭs	trībŭs
A.	duōs, duō	duās	duō	trēs, trīs	triā
V.	duō	duae	duō	trēs	triā
A.	duōbŭs	duābŭs	duōbŭs.	trībŭs	trībŭs.

1. The plural of *unus* in the sense of *alone* may be used with any noun; *uni Ubii*, the Ubii alone; but in the strict numeral sense of *one*, it is used only with such nouns as, though plural in form, are singular in sense: *una castra*, one camp; *unae littērae*, one letter.

2. Like *duo* is declined *ambo*, both.

3. *Multi*, many, and *plūrīmi*, very many, are indefinite numerals, and as such generally want the sing. But in the poets the sing. occurs in the sense of *many a*: *multa hostia*, many a victim.

176. The Cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum* are indeclinable.

177. Hundreds, *dūcenti*, *trēcenti*, etc., are declined like the plural of *bŏnus*: *dūcenti*, *ae*, *a*.

178. *Mille* as an adjective is indeclinable: as a substantive it is used in the singular only in the nominative and accusative, but in the plural it is declined like the plural of *māre* (63); *millia*,¹ *millium*, *millibŭs*.

With the substantive *Mille*, the name of the objects enumerated is generally in the genitive: *mille hŏminum*, a thousand men (of men); but it is in the same case as *mille*, if a declined numeral intervenes: *tria millia trēcenti milites*, three thousand three hundred soldiers.

179. Ordinals are declined like *bŏnus* and distributives like the plural of *bonus*, but the latter often have *ūm* for *ōrum* in the genitive; *binūm* for *binōrum*.

180. NUMERAL SYMBOLS.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
1.	I.	9.	IX.	17.	XVII.
2.	II.	10.	X.	18.	XVIII.
3.	III.	11.	XI.	19.	XIX.
4.	IV.	12.	XII.	20.	XX.
5.	V.	13.	XIII.	21.	XXI.
6.	VI.	14.	XIV.	22.	XXII.
7.	VII.	15.	XV.	30.	XXX.
8.	VIII.	16.	XVI.	40.	XL.

¹ This according to Corssen is the proper form, though the word is often written with one *l*: *milīa*.

ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.	ARABIC.	ROMAN.
50.	L.	200.	CC.	900.	DCCCC.
60.	LX.	300.	CCC.	1,000.	CIO, or M.
70.	LXX.	400.	CCCC.	2,000.	CIOCIO, or MM.
80.	LXXX.	500.	IO, or D.	10,000.	CCIOO.
90.	XC.	600.	DC.	100,000.	CCCIOOO.
100.	C.	700.	DCC.	1,000,000.	CCCCIOOOO.
101.	CI.	800.	DCCC.		

1. **LATIN NUMERAL SYMBOLS** are combinations of: I = 1; V = 5; X = 10; L = 50; C = 100; IO or D = 500; CIO or M = 1,000.¹

2. **IN THE COMBINATION OF THESE SYMBOLS**, except IO, observe

1) That the repetition of a symbol doubles the value: II = 2; XX = 20; CC = 200.

2) That any symbol standing before one of greater value, subtracts its own value, but that after one of greater value, it adds its own value: V = 5; IV = 4 (5 - 1); VI = 6 (5 + 1).

3. **IN THE COMBINATION OF IO** observe

1) That each O (inverted C) after IO increases the value tenfold: IO = 500; IOO = 500 × 10 = 5,000; IOOO = 5,000 × 10 = 50,000.

2) That these numbers are doubled by placing C the same number of times before I as O stands after it: IO = 500; CIO = 500 × 2 = 1,000; IOO = 5,000; CCIOO = 5,000 × 2 = 10,000.

3) That smaller symbols standing after these add their value: IO = 500; IOC = 600; IOCC = 700.

NUMERAL ADVERBS.

181. To numerals belong also numeral adverbs. For convenience of reference we add the following table:

1. sěměl, <i>once</i>	11. unděcies	17. septiesděcies
2. bīs, <i>twice</i>	12. duōděcies	18. { duōdēvīcies
3. tř, <i>three times</i>	13. { terděcies	{ octiesděcies
4. quātěr	{ třědecies	19. { undēvīcies
5. quinquīēs	14. { quāterděcies	{ nōviesděcies
6. sexiēs	{ quattuordecies	20. vīcies
7. septies	15. { quinquiesděcies	21. sěmel et vīcies
8. octies	{ quindecies	22. bis et vīcies
9. nōvies	16. { sexiesděcies	30. trīcies
10. děcies	{ sēdecies	40. quādrāgies

¹ Thousands are sometimes denoted by a line over the symbol: $\overline{\text{II}}$ = 2,000; $\overline{\text{V}}$ = 5,000.

50. quinquāgies	200. dŭcenties	900. nōningenties ¹
60. sexāgiēs	300. trēcenties	1,000. millies ²
70. septuāgies	400. quādringenties	2,000. bis millies
80. octōgies	500. quingenties	10,000. decies millies
90. nōnāgies	600. sexcenties	100,000. centies millies
100. centies	700. septingenties	1,000,000. millies millies.
101. centies semel	800. octingenties	

1. In Compounds of units and tens, the unit with *et* generally precedes, as in the table: *bis et vicies*; the tens, however, with or without *et* sometimes precede: *vicies et bis* or *vicies bis*, but not *bis vicies*.

2. Another Class of numeral adverbs in *ŭm* or *ō* is formed from the ordinals: *primum*, *primo*, for the first time, in the first place; *tertium*, *tertio*, for the third time.



CHAPTER III.

PRONOUNS.

182. THE PRONOUN is the part of speech which supplies the place of nouns: *ěgŏ*, I; *tŭ*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tŭ*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hŭc*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *quŭ*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quŭs*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *ŭlŭquŭs*, some one.

I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are:

¹ Also written *nongenties*.

² *Millies* is often used indefinitely like the English *a thousand times*.

Ego, *I*.Tu, *thou*.Sui, *of himself*, etc.¹

SINGULAR.

N. ěgŏ	tŭ	
G. meĭ	tuĭ	suĭ
D. mihĭ	tĭbĭ	sĭbĭ
A. mē	tē	sē
V.	tŭ	
A. mē;	tē;	sē;

PLURAL.

N. nŏs	vŏs	
G. nostrŭm } nostrĭ }	vestrŭm } vestrĭ }	suĭ
D. nŏbĭs	vŏbĭs	sĭbĭ
A. nŏs	vŏs	sē
V.	vŏs	
A. nŏbĭs.	vŏbĭs.	sē.

1. STEMS.—The stems in the Sing.² are *me*, *te*, *se*; in the Plur. *no*, *vo*, *se*.

2. The CASE-ENDINGS of Pronouns differ considerably from those of Nouns.

3. GENITIVE.—*Mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrĭ*, and *vestrĭ*, are in form strictly Possessive Pronouns and are in the Gen. Sing., but by use they have become Personal. *Nostrĭ* and *vestrĭ* have also become Plural. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* for *nostrŏrum* and *vestrŏrum* are also Possessives. See *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, etc., 185.

4. SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.—Personal Pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

5. REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, *of himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

6. EMPHATIC FORMS in *met* occur, except in the Gen. Plur.: *egŏmĕt*, I myself; *tĕmĕt*, etc. But the Nom. *tu* has *tŭtĕ* and *tutĕmĕt*, for *tŭmet*.

7. REDUPLICATED FORMS:—*Sēsē*, *tētē*, *mēmē*, for *se*, *te*, *me*.

8. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS:—*Mis* for *mei*; *tis* for *tui*; *mĭ* for *mihi*; *mĕd*, and *mĕptĕ* for *me*; *tĕd* for *te*; *sĕd* for *se*.

9. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of a Personal Pronoun, is appended to it: *mĕcŭm*, *tĕcŭm*.

II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

¹ *Of himself*, *herself*, *itself*. The Nom. is not used.

² Except in the Nom. *Tu* is related to *te*, but *ego* is an entirely independent form.

meūs, ā, ūm, *my*; nostēr, trā, trūm, *our*;
tuus, a, um, *thy, your*; vester, tra, trum, *your*;
suus, a, um, *his, her, its*; suus, a, um, *their*.

1. Possessives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions; but *meus* has in the Voc. Sing. Masc. generally *mī*, sometimes *meus*.

2. Emphatic forms in *ptē* and *mēt* occur: *suapte, suāmet*.

3. Other possessives are: (1) *cujus, a, um*,¹ whose, and *cujus, a, um*,² whose? declined like *bonus*, and (2) the Patrials, *nostrās, G. ātis*, of our country, *vestrās, G. ātis*, of your country, and *cujās*,¹ *G. ātis*, of whose country, declined as adjectives of Decl. III.

III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

Hīc, istē, illē, īs, ipsē, īdem.

They are declined as follows :

I. Hic, *this*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>G. hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hujūs</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>	<i>hārūm</i>	<i>hōrūm</i>
<i>D. huīc</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>huīc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>A. hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i> ³	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>A. hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i> ;	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i> .

II. Istē, *that, that of yours*. See 450.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. istē</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istūd</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istae</i>	<i>istā</i>
<i>G. istīūs</i>	<i>istīūs</i>	<i>istīūs</i>	<i>istōrūm</i>	<i>istārūm</i>	<i>istōrūm</i>
<i>D. istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istī</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>
<i>A. istūm</i>	<i>istām</i>	<i>istūd</i> ³	<i>istōs</i>	<i>istās</i>	<i>istā</i>
<i>A. istō</i>	<i>istā</i>	<i>istō</i> ;	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i>	<i>istīs</i> .

III. Illē, *he or that*, is declined like *istē*.

¹ From the relative *quī, cuius*. See 187.

² From the interrogative *quis, cuius*. See 188.

³ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

IV. *Is, he, this, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> is	eā	īd	eī, ii	eae	eā
<i>G.</i> ejūs	ejūs	ejūs	eōrūm	eārūm	eōrūm
<i>D.</i> eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
<i>A.</i> eūm	eām	īd ¹	eōs	eās	eā
<i>A.</i> eō	eā	eō ;	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs.

V. *Ipsē, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> ipsē	ipsā	ipsūm	ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
<i>G.</i> ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsiūs	ipsōrūm	ipsārūm	ipsōrūm
<i>D.</i> ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>A.</i> ipsūm	ipsām	ipsūm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
<i>A.</i> ipsō	ipsā	ipsō ;	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs.

VI. *Idem, the same.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> idēm	eādēm	īdēm	{ eīdēm ² īdēm	eaedēm	eāddēm
<i>G.</i> ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
<i>D.</i> eīdēm	eīdēm	eīdēm	{ eisdēm iisdēm	eisdēm	eisdēm ²
<i>A.</i> eundēm	eandēm	īdēm	eosdēm	easdēm	eāddēm
<i>A.</i> eōdēm	eādēm	eōdēm ;	{ eisdēm iisdēm	eisdēm	eisdēm ² iisdēm.

1. The STEMS are as follows :

1) Of HIC—*ho, ha.*³

2) Of ISTE AND ILLE, for *istus* and *illus*—*isto, ista, and illo, illa.*

3) Of IS—*i, eo, ea.*

4) Of IPSE, for *ipsus*—*ipso, ipsa.*

5) IDEM, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *is*dem to *īdem* and *iddem* to *īdem*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem*.

¹ The Vocative is wanting in Demonstrative, Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite Pronouns.

² *Eīdem* and *eisdēm* are the approved forms, but *īdem* and *iīdem* are retained in many editions. *Iīdem* and *iīdem* are in poetry dissyllables, and are often written *īdem* and *iīdem*.

³ By the addition of *i* in certain cases, *ho* and *ha* become *hi* and *hae*, as in *hi-e* and *hae-c*.

2. **HIC**, for *hi-ce*, is compounded with the demonstrative particle *cĕ*, meaning *here*. The forms in *c* have dropped *e*, while the other forms have dropped the particle entirely. But *ce* is often retained for emphasis; *hīce*, *hujusce*, *hosce*, *hōrunce* (*m* changed to *n*), *hōrunc* (*e* dropped). **Ce**, changed to *ci*, is generally retained before the interrogative *ne*: *hīcĭne*, *hoscĭne*.

3. **ILLIC AND ISTIC**.—The particle *ce*, generally shortened to *c*, except after *s*, is sometimes appended to *ille* and *iste*: *illic* for *ille*, *illaec* for *illa*, *illōc* or *illūc* for *illud*, *illiusce*, etc.

4. **ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS:**

1) Of **HIC**: *hisce* for *hice*, *hi* ; *haec* for *hae*.

2) Of **ISTE** and **ILLE**: forms in *ī*, *ae*, *ī* for *iūs* and *ī* in the Gen. and Dat.: *illi* for *illius*, *istae* for *istius* or *isti*; also forms from *ollūs* for *ille*: *olli*, *olla*, *ollōs*, etc.

3) Of **IS**: *ēī*,¹ *eae*, *ēī*,¹ Dat. for *ēī* ; *ibūs*, *eābūs*, *ibūs*, for *īs*.

4) Of **IPSE**, compounded of *is* and *psĕ* (*is-pse* = *ipse*); the uncontracted forms: Acc. *eumpse*, *eampse*, Abl. *eopse*, *eapse*; with *re*: *re eapse*, *reapse* for *re ipsa*, in reality; also *ipsus*, *a*, *um*, etc., for *ipse*, *a*, *um*.

5) **SYNCOPIATED FORMS**, compounded of *ecĕ* or *ēn*, *lo*, *see*, and some cases of demonstratives, especially the Acc. of *ille* and *is*; *eccūm* for *ecce eum*; *eccōs* for *ecce eos*; *ellum* for *ēn illum*; *ellam* for *en illam*.

5. **DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES**: *tālis*, *e*, such; *tantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *tōt*, so many; *tōtus*, *a*, *um*, so great. *Tot* is indeclinable; the rest regular.

For *tālis*, the Gen. of a demonstrative with *mōdi* (Gen. of *modus*, measure, kind), is often used: *hujusmōdi*, *ejusmōdi*, of this kind, such.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N.</i> quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuiūs	cuiūs	cuiūs	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs
<i>A.</i> quēm	quām	quōd ²	quōs	quās	quae
<i>A.</i> quō	quā	quō;	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs.

1. **STEMS**.—The stem is *quo*, *qua*.³

¹ Sometimes *ei* as a diphthong.

² The Vocative is wanting. See 186, I. Foot-note.

³ *Quo* becomes *co*, *cu* in *cuius* and *cui*. *Qui* and *quae* are formed from *quo* and *qua* like *hi* and *hae* in *hi-c* and *hae-c* from *ho* and *ha*.

2. ANCIENT and RARE FORMS: *quojus* and *quoi* for *cujus* and *cui*; *quī* for *quo*, *qua*; *quīs* (*queis*) for *quibus*.

3. CUM, when used with the *ablative* of the relative, is generally appended to it: *quibuscum*.

4. QUICUMQUE and QUISQUIS, *whoever*, are called from their signification *general relatives*. *Quicumque* (*quicunque*) is declined like *quī*. *Quisquis* is rare except in the forms: *quisquis*, *quidquid* (*quicquid*), *quōquō*.

5. The parts of *Quicumque* are sometimes separated by one or more words: *qua re cumque*.

6. RELATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, such as; *quantus*, *a*, *um*, so great; *quōt*, as many as; *quōtus*, *a*, *um*, of which number; and the double and compound forms: *quālisquālis*, *qualiscumquē*, etc.

For *Quālis* the genitive of the relative with *mōdi* is often used: *cujusmōdi*, of what kind, such as; *cujuscumquēmōdi*, *cūcūimōdi* (for *cujuscujusmōdi*), of whatever kind.

V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

Quīs and *quī* with their compounds.

I. Quis, who, which, what?

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quīs	quae	quīd	quī	quae	quae
G. cujūs	cujūs	cujūs	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs
A. quēm	quā	quīd	quōs	quās	quae
A. quō	quā	quō;	quībūs	quībūs	quībūs.

II. Quī, which, what? is declined like the relative quī.

1. QUIS is generally used substantively, and QUI, adjectively.

2. STEM.—From the stem, *quo*, *qua*, are formed,—(1) The relative *quī*, —(2) The interrogatives *quīs* and *quī*,—(3) The indefinites *quīs* and *quī*.

3. QUIS and QUEM are sometimes feminine. QUI, for *quo*, *qua*, occurs in the sense of *how*? The other ancient forms are the same as in the relative. See 187, 2.

4. COMPOUNDS of *quis* and *quī* are declined like the simple pronouns: *quisnam*, *quīnam*, *ecquis*, etc. But *ecquis* has sometimes *ecqua* for *ecquae*.

5. INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES: *quālis*, *e*, what? *quantus*, *a*, *um*, how great? *quōt*, how many? *quōtus*, *a*, *um*, of what number? *ūter*, *utra*, *utrum*, which (of two)? See 151.

VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite person or things. The most important are

Quis and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, and *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. But

1. After *sī*, *nīsī*, *nē*, and *nūm*, the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. have *quae* or *quā* : *sī quae*, *sī quā*.

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

I. The Indefinites :

<i>āliquis</i> ,	<i>āliquā</i> ,	<i>āliquid</i>	or <i>āliquōd</i> ,	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quispiām</i> ,	<i>quaepiam</i> ,	<i>quidpiām</i> ¹	or <i>quodpiām</i> ,	<i>some, some one.</i>
<i>quidām</i> ,	<i>quaedam</i> ,	<i>quiddam</i>	or <i>quoddam</i> ,	<i>certain, certain one.</i>
<i>quisquām</i> ,	<i>quaequam</i> ,	<i>quidquam</i> ¹		<i>any one.</i>

II. The General Indefinites :

<i>quisquē</i> ,	<i>quaeque</i> ,	<i>quidque</i> ¹	or <i>quodque</i> ,	<i>every, every one.</i>
<i>quīvis</i> ,	<i>quaevis</i> ,	<i>quidvis</i>	or <i>quodvis</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>
<i>quīlibēt</i>	<i>quaelibet</i> ,	<i>quidlibet</i>	or <i>quodlibet</i> ,	<i>any one you please.</i>

1. These compounds are generally declined like the simple *quis* and *qui*, but have in the Neut. Sing. both *quod* and *quid*, the former used *adjectively*, the latter *substantively*.

2. *Aliquis* has *aliqua* instead of *aliquae* in the Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. *Aliqui* for *aliquis* occurs.

3. *Quidam* may change *m* to *n* before *d* : *quendam* for *quemdam*.

4. *Quisquam* generally wants the Fem. and the Plur.

5. *Unus* prefixed to *quisque* does not affect its declension : *ūnusquisque*, *unaquaeque*, etc.

CHAPTER IV.

VERBS.

192. VERBS in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action : *est*, he is ; *dormit*, he is sleeping ; *lĕgit*, he reads.

¹ Sometimes written respectively, *quippiām*, *quicquam*, *quicque*.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes :

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS,—which admit a direct object of their action : *servūm verbĕrāt*, he beats the slave.¹

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS,—which do not admit such an object : *puĕr currĭt*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person*.

I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices :

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE,²—which represents the subject as acting or existing : *pĕtĕr filiūm āmat*, the father loves his son ; *est*, he is.

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE,—which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing : *filiūs ā pĕtrĕ āmatŭr*, the son is loved by his father.

1. INTRANSITIVE VERBS generally have only the active voice, but are sometimes used impersonally in the passive. See 301, 1.

2. DEPOXENT VERBS³ are Passive in form, but not in sense : *lŏquĕr*, to speak. But see 225.

II. MOODS.

196. Moods⁴ are either Definite or Indefinite :

I. THE DEFINITE or FINITE MOODS make up the Finite Verb ; they are :

1. THE INDICATIVE MOOD,—which either asserts something as a *fact* or inquires after the fact ; *lĕgĭt*, he is reading ; *lĕgitnĕ*, is he reading ?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD,—which expresses not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may, can*, etc. : *lĕgāt*, he may read, let him read.

¹ Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *verbĕrat*, beats : *beats (what?) the slave*.

² *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

³ So called from *dĕpŏno*, to lay aside, as they dispense, in general, with the active form and the passive meaning.

⁴ *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

But the Subjunctive may be variously translated, as we shall see in the Syntax.

3. The IMPERATIVE MOOD,—which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lěgě*, read thou.

II. The INDEFINITE MOODS express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. THE INFINITIVE,—which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb without any necessary reference to person or number: *lěgěrě*, to read.

2. The GERUND,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *āmandī*, of loving; *amandī causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. The SUPINE,—which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *āmātūm*, to love, for loving; *āmātū*, to be loved, in loving.

4. The PARTICIPLE,—which, like the English participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and the Future—*āmans*, loving; *āmātūrūs*, about to love;—and two in the Passive, the Perfect—*āmātūs*, loved, and the Gerundive¹—*āmandūs*, deserving to be loved.

III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:

I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *āmō*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *āmābām*, I was loving.
3. Future: *āmābō*, I shall love.

III. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *āmāvī*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *āmāvērām*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *āmāvērō*, I shall have loved.

¹ Also called the *Future Passive Participle*.

198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. PRESENT PERFECT and HISTORICAL PERFECT.—The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect* or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect* or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. PRINCIPAL and HISTORICAL.—Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal*:—Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*:—Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. TENSES WANTING.—The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

199. NUMBERS AND PERSONS.—There are two numbers, SINGULAR and PLURAL,¹ and three persons, FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.¹

CONJUGATION.

200. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.

āre,

Conj. II.

ēre,

Conj. III.

ĕre,

Conj. IV.

ire.

201. STEM AND PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine are called from their importance the *Principal Parts* of the verb. They are all formed, by means of certain endings, from one common base, called the *Stem*.²

202. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of any regular verb may be readily formed from the Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.³

203. SUM, *I am*, is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

¹ As in Nouns. See 44.

² For treatment of stems, see 249–257.

³ In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. *Sūm, I am.*—STEMS, *ēs, fu.*¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>sūm,</i>	<i>essē,</i>	<i>fuī,</i>	—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
<i>sūm,</i> ²	<i>I am,</i>	<i>sūmūs,</i>	<i>we are,</i>
<i>ēs,</i>	<i>thou art,</i> ³	<i>estīs,</i>	<i>you are,</i>
<i>est,</i>	<i>he is ;</i>	<i>sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I was.

<i>ērām,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>ērāmūs,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
<i>erās,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i>	<i>erātīs,</i>	<i>you were,</i>
<i>erāt,</i>	<i>he was ;</i>	<i>erant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will be.

<i>ērō,</i>	<i>I shall be,</i>	<i>ērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall be,</i>
<i>erīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	<i>erītīs,</i>	<i>you will be,</i>
<i>erīt,</i>	<i>he will be ;</i>	<i>erunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

PERFECT.

I have been, was.

<i>fuī,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>	<i>fuīmūs,</i>	<i>we have been,</i>
<i>fuistī,</i>	<i>thou hast been,</i>	<i>fuistīs,</i>	<i>you have been,</i>
<i>fuīt,</i>	<i>he has been ;</i>	<i>fuērunt</i>	} <i>they have been.</i>
		<i>fuērō,</i>	

PLUPERFECT.

I had been.

<i>fuērām,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>	<i>fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>we had been,</i>
<i>fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	<i>fuērātīs,</i>	<i>you had been,</i>
<i>fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been ;</i>	<i>fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall or will have been.

<i>fuērō,</i>	<i>I shall have been,</i>	<i>fuērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall have been,</i>
<i>fuērīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	<i>fuērītīs,</i>	<i>you will have been,</i>
<i>fuērīt,</i>	<i>he will have been ;</i>	<i>fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

¹ *Sum* has two Verb-Stems, while regular verbs have only one.² *Sum* is for *ēsum*, *ēram* for *ēsam*. Whenever *s* of the stem *ēs* comes between two vowels, *e* is dropped, as in *sum*, *sunt*, or *s* is changed to *r*, as in *ēram*, *ēro*. See 85.³ Or *you are ; thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
sĭm,	<i>I may be,</i> ¹	sĭmŭs,	<i>we may be,</i>
sĭs,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sĭtis,	<i>you may be,</i>
sĭt,	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be.

essĕm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essĕmŭs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essĕs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essĕtis,	<i>you might be,</i>
essĕt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have been.

fuĕrĭm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuĕrĭmŭs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuĕrĭs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuĕrĭtis,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuĕrĭt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuĕrint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been.

fuissĕm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissĕmŭs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissĕs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissĕtis,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissĕt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ĕs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estĕ,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estĕ,	<i>thou shalt be,</i> ²	estĕtĕ,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
	<i>estĕ, he shall be ;</i> ²	suntĕ,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essĕ, *to be.*PERF. fuissĕ, *to have been.*FUT. fŭtŭrŭs essĕ,³ *to be about to be.* FUT. fŭtŭrŭs,³ *about to be.*

1. In the Paradigm all the forms beginning with *e* or *s* are from the stem *es* ; all others from the stem *fu*.

2. RARE FORMS :—*fĕrĕm, fĕrĕs, fĕrĕt, fĕrent, fĕrĕ, for essem, esses, esset, essent, futŭrus esse ; sĕm sĕs, sĕt, sĕnt, or fuĕm, fuĕs, fuĕt, fuant, for sĭm, sĭs, sĭt, sĭnt.*

¹ On the translation of the Subjunctive, see 196, I. 2.

² The Fut. may also be rendered like the Pres., or with *let* : *be thou ; let him be.*

³ *Futŭrus* is declined like *bonus*. So in the Infinitive : *futŭrus, a, um esse.*

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

205. ACTIVE VOICE.

Amō, *I love*—STEM, *āma*.¹

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
āmō,	āmāre,	āmāvī,	āmātum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I love, am loving, do love.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
āmō,	<i>I love,</i>	āmāmūs,	<i>we love,</i>
āmās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>	āmātīs,	<i>you love,</i>
āmāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>	āmant,	<i>they love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I loved, was loving, did love.

āmābām,	<i>I was loving,</i>	āmābāmūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
āmābās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>	āmābātīs,	<i>you were loving,</i>
āmābāt,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	āmābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

FUTURE.

I shall or will love.

āmābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	āmābīmūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
āmābīs,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>	āmābītīs,	<i>you will love,</i>
āmābīt,	<i>he will love ;</i>	āmābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

PERFECT.

I loved, have loved.

āmāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>	āmāvīmūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
āmāvīstī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	āmāvītīs,	<i>you have loved,</i>
āmāvīt,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	āmāvērunt, ērē,	<i>they have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I had loved.

āmāvērām,	<i>I had loved,</i>	āmāvērāmūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
āmāvērās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>	āmāvērātīs,	<i>you had loved,</i>
āmāvērāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	āmāvērant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT.

I shall, or will have loved.

āmāvērō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	āmāvērīmūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
āmāvērīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	āmāvērītīs,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
āmāvērīt,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	āmāvērint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

¹ The final *a* of the stem disappears in *amo* for *ama-o*, *amem*, *ames*, etc., for *ama-im*, *ama-is*, etc. Also in the Pass. in *amor* for *ama-or*, *amer*, etc., for *ama-ir*, etc. See 82, II. 1, 3); 82, II. 2.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can love.

SINGULAR.

ăm ēm ,	<i>I may love,</i>
ăm ēs ,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
ăm ēt ,	<i>he may love ;</i>

PLURAL.

ăm ēmūs ,	<i>we may love,</i>
ăm ētīs ,	<i>you may love,</i>
ăm ent ,	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should love.

ăm ārēm ,	<i>I might love,</i>	ăm ārēmūs ,	<i>we might love,</i>
ăm ārēs ,	<i>thou mightst love,</i>	ăm ārētīs ,	<i>you might love,</i>
ăm ārēt ,	<i>he might love ;</i>	ăm ārent ,	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

I may or can have loved.

ăm āvērīm ,	<i>I may have loved,</i>	ăm āvērīmūs ,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
ăm āvērīs ,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>	ăm āvērītīs ,	<i>you may have loved,</i>
ăm āvērīt ,	<i>he may have loved ;</i>	ăm āvērīnt ,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have loved.

ăm āvissēm ,	<i>I might have loved,</i>	ăm āvissēmūs ,	<i>we might have loved,</i>
ăm āvissēs ,	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>		<i>loved,</i>
		ăm āvissētīs ,	<i>you might have loved,</i>
ăm āvissēt ,	<i>he might have loved ;</i>	ăm āvissent ,	<i>they might have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ăm ā ,	<i>love thou ;</i>	ăm ātē ,	<i>love ye.</i>
FUT. ăm ātō ,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	ăm ātōtē ,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
ăm ātō ,	<i>he shall love ;</i>	ăm antō ,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. ăm ārē ,	<i>to love.</i>	PRES. ăm ans , ¹	<i>loving.</i>
PERF. ăm āvissē ,	<i>to have loved.</i>		
FUT. ăm ātūrūs ²	<i>essē, to be about to love.</i>	FUT. ăm ātūrūs , ²	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. ăm andī ,	<i>of loving,</i>		
Dat. ăm andō ,	<i>for loving,</i>		
Acc. ăm andūm ,	<i>loving,</i>	Acc. ăm ātūm ,	<i>to love,</i>
Abl. ăm andō ,	<i>by loving.</i>	Abl. ăm ātū ,	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

¹ For declension, see 157.² Decline like *bonus*, 148.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A VERBS.

206. PASSIVE VOICE.

Amör, *I am loved*.—STEM, *äma*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

ämör,

Pres. Inf.

ämäri,

Perf. Ind.

ämätüs süm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am loved.

SINGULAR.

ämör

ämäris, or rē

ämätür;

PLURAL.

ämämür

ämämini

ämantür.

IMPERFECT.

I was loved.

ämäbär

ämäbäris, or rē

ämäbätür;

ämäbämür

ämäbämini

ämäbantür.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be loved.

ämäbör

ämäbēris, or rē

ämäbītür;

ämäbimür

ämäbimīni

ämäbuntür.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was loved.*ämätüs süm¹

ämätüs es

ämätüs est;

ämätī sümüs

ämätī estīs

ämätī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*ämätüs ērām¹

ämätüs ērās

ämätüs ērāt;

ämätī ērāmüs

ämätī ērātīs

ämätī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*ämätüs ērō¹

ämätüs ēris

ämätüs ērit;

ämätī ērimüs

ämätī ēritīs

ämätī ērunt.

¹ *Fui, fuisti*, etc., are sometimes used for *sum, es*, etc.: *amätus fui* for *amätus sum*. So *fuëram, fuëras*, etc., for *ëram*, etc.: also *fuëro*, etc., for *ëro*, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be loved.

SINGULAR.

ămă**er**
 ămă**eris**, or **ră**
 ămă**tăr**;

PLURAL.

ămă**măr**
 ămă**mîni**
 ămă**entăr**.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be loved.

ămă**ărer**
 ămă**ăreris** or **ră**
 ămă**ăretăr**;

ămă**ărēmăr**
 ămă**ărēmîni**
 ămă**ărentăr**.

PERFECT.

I may have been loved.

ămă**tūs sim**¹
 ămă**tūs sis**
 ămă**tūs sît**;

ămă**tî simūs**
 ămă**tî sitis**
 ămă**tî sint**.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been loved.

ămă**tūs essēm**¹
 ămă**tūs essēs**
 ămă**tūs essēt**;

ămă**tî essēmūs**
 ămă**tî essētis**
 ămă**tî essent**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămă**ărē**, *be thou loved*;ămă**mîni**, *be ye loved*.FUT. ămă**tôr**, *thou shalt be loved*,
 ămă**tôr**, *he shall be loved*;ămă**antôr**, *they shall be loved*.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. ămă**ărî**, *to be loved*.PERF. ămă**tūs essē**,¹ *to have been loved*.FUT. ămă**tūm îrî**, *to be about to be loved*.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. ămă**tūs**, *having been loved*.GER.² ămă**andūs**, *to be loved, deserv-
ing to be loved*.

¹ *Fuërim, fuëris*, etc., are sometimes used for *sim, sis*, etc.—So also *fuisse*, *fuisse*, etc., for *essem, esses*, etc.; rarely *fuisse* for *esse*.

² GER.=Gerundive. See 196, 4.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

207. ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneō, *I advise*.—STEM, mōne.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
mōneō,Pres. Inf.
mōnēre,Perf. Ind.
mōnuī,Supine.
mōnītum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I advise.

SINGULAR.

mōneō
mōnēs
mōnēt;

PLURAL.

mōnēmūs
mōnētis
mōnent.

IMPERFECT.

*I was advising.*mōnēbām
mōnēbās
mōnēbāt;mōnēbāmūs
mōnēbātis
mōnēbant.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*mōnēbō
mōnēbis
mōnēbīt;mōnēbīmūs
mōnēbītis
mōnēbunt.

PERFECT.

*I advised or have advised.*mōnuī
mōnuistī
mōnuīt;mōnuīmūs
mōnuistis
mōnuērunt, or ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*mōnuērām
mōnuērās
mōnuērāt;mōnuērāmūs
mōnuērātis
mōnuērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*mōnuērō
mōnuērīs
mōnuērīt;mōnuērīmūs
mōnuērītis
mōnuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can advise.

SINGULAR.

mŏneām
mŏneās
mŏneāt;

PLURAL.

mŏneāmūs
mŏneātīs
mŏneant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should advise.

mŏnērēm
mŏnērēs
mŏnērēt;

mŏnērēmūs
mŏnērētīs
mŏnērent.

PERFECT.

I may have advised.

mŏnuērīm
mŏnuērīs
mŏnuērīt;

mŏnuērīmūs
mŏnuērītīs
mŏnuērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have advised.

mŏnuissēm
mŏnuissēs
mŏnuissēt;

mŏnuissēmūs
mŏnuissētīs
mŏnuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mŏnē, *advise thou;* | mŏnētē, *advise ye.*

FUT. mŏnētō, *thou shalt advise,* | mŏnētōtē, *ye shall advise,*
mŏnētō, *he shall advise;* | mŏnentō, *they shall advise.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mŏnērē, *to advise.*
PERF. mŏnuissē, *to have advised.*
FUT. mŏnītūrūs *essē, to be*
about to advise.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mŏnens, *advising.*
FUT. mŏnītūrūs, *about to advise.*

GERUND.

Gen. mŏnenāī, *of advising,*
Dat. mŏuendō, *for advising,*
Acc. mŏnendūm, *advising,*
Abl. mŏnendō, *by advising.*

SUPINE.

Acc. mŏnītūm, *to advise,*
Abl. mŏnītū, *to advise, be advised.*

SECOND CONJUGATION: E VERBS.

208. PASSIVE VOICE.

Mõneõr, *I am advised*.—STEM, *mõne*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
mõneõr,Pres. Inf.
mõnẽrl,Perf. Ind.
mõnõtũs sũm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am advised.

SINGULAR.

mõneõr
mõnẽrls, or rẽ
mõnẽtũr;

PLURAL.

mõnẽmũr
mõnẽmĩnl
mõnẽantũr.

IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*mõnẽbũr
mõnẽbũrls, or rẽ
mõnẽbũtũr;mõnẽbũmũr
mõnẽbũmĩnl
mõnẽbantũr.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*mõnẽbõr
mõnẽbõrls, or rẽ
mõnẽbĩtũr;mõnẽbĩmũr
mõnẽbĩmĩnl
mõnẽbuntũr.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*mõnõtũs sũm¹
mõnõtũs ẽs
mõnõtũs est;mõnõtĩ sũmũs
mõnõtĩ estĩs
mõnõtĩ sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*mõnõtũs ẽrũm¹
mõnõtũs ẽrũs
mõnõtũs ẽrũt;mõnõtĩ ẽrũmũs
mõnõtĩ ẽrũtĩs
mõnõtĩ ẽrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*mõnõtũs ẽrõ¹
mõnõtũs ẽrls
mõnõtũs ẽrlt;mõnõtĩ ẽrlmũs
mõnõtĩ ẽrltĩs
mõnõtĩ ẽrunt.¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be advised.

SINGULAR.

mōneār
mōneārīs, or rē
mōneātūr;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūr
mōneāmīnī
mōneantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be advised.

mōnērēr
mōnērērīs, or rē
mōnērētūr;

mōnērēmūr
mōnērēmīnī
mōnērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been advised.

mōnītūs sīm¹
mōnītūs sis
mōnītūs sīt;

mōnītī simūs
mōnītī sitīs
mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been advised.

mōnītūs essēm¹
mōnītūs essēs
mōnītūs essēt;

mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītī essētīs
mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, *be thou advised*; | mōnēmīnī, *be ye advised.*

FUT. mōnētōr, *thou shalt be advised,*
mōnētōr, *he shall be advised;* | mōnentōr, *they shall be advised.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES. mōnēri, *to be advised.*
PERF. mōnītūs essē,¹ *to have been advised.*
FUT. mōnītūm iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. mōnītūs, *advised.*
GER. mōnendūs, *to be advised, deserving to be advised.*

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

209. ACTIVE VOICE.

Rĕgŏ, *I rule*.—STEM, *rĕg*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
rĕgŏ,Pres. Inf.
rĕgĕrĕ,Perf. Ind.
rexī,¹Supine.
rectum.¹

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I rule.

SINGULAR.

rĕgŏ
rĕgĭs
rĕgĭt;

PLURAL.

rĕgĭmŭs
rĕgĭtis
rĕgunt.

IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling.*rĕgĕbām
rĕgĕbās
rĕgĕbāt;rĕgĕbāmŭs
rĕgĕbātĭs
rĕgĕbant.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*rĕgām
rĕgēs
rĕgēt;rĕgēmŭs
rĕgētĭs
rĕgent.

PERFECT.

*I ruled or have ruled.*rexī
rexistī
rexīt;rexīmŭs
rexistĭs
rexērunt, or ĕrĕ.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*rexĕrām
rexĕrās
rexĕrāt;rexĕrāmŭs
rexĕrātĭs
rexĕrant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*rexĕrŏ
rexĕrĭs
rexĕrīt;rexĕrīmŭs
rexĕrītĭs
rexĕrint.¹ See 213, III. 1; 253, I. 1; 253, II. 1.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can rule.

SINGULAR.

rēgā^m
rēgās
rēgāt

PLURAL.

rēgāmūs
rēgātīs
rēgant.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should rule.

rēgērēm
rēgērēs
rēgērēt;

rēgērēmūs
rēgērētīs
rēgērent.

PERFECT.

I may have ruled.

rexērīm
rexērīs
rexērīt;

rexērīmūs
rexērītīs
rexērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have ruled.

rexissēm
rexissēs
rexissēt;

rexissēmūs
rexissētīs
rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, rule thou ; | rēgītē, rule ye.

FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule, | rēgītōtē, ye shall rule,
rēgītō, he shall rule ; | rēguntō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.
PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.
FUT. rectūrūs essē, to be about
to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgens, ruling.
FUT. rectūrūs, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. rēgendī, of ruling,
Dat. rēgendō, for ruling,
Acc. rēgendūm, ruling,
Abl. rēgendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectūm, to rule,
Abl. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

THIRD CONJUGATION: CONSONANT VERBS.

210. PASSIVE VOICE.

Rēgōr, *I am ruled.*—STEM, *rēg.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

rēgōr,

Pres. Inf.

rēgī,

Perf. Ind.

rectūs¹ sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am ruled.

SINGULAR.

rēgōr

rēgērīs, or *rē*

rēgītūr;

PLURAL.

rēgīmūr

rēgīmīnī

rēguntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was ruled.

rēgēbār

rēgēbārīs, or *rē*

rēgēbātūr;

rēgēbāmūr

rēgēbāmīnī

rēgēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be ruled.

rēgār

rēgērīs, or *rē*

rēgētūr;

rēgēmūr

rēgēmīnī

rēgentūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*rectūs sūm²

rectūs ēs

rectūs est;

rectī sūmūs

rectī estīs

rectī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*rectūs ērām²

rectūs ērās

rectūs ērāt;

rectī ērāmūs

rectī ērātīs

rectī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*rectūs ērō²

rectūs ērīs

rectūs ērīt;

rectī ērīmūs

rectī ērītīs

rectī ērunt.

¹ See 209, foot-notes.² See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be ruled.

SINGULAR.

rĕgār
rĕgārīs, or rĕ
rĕgātūr;

PLURAL.

rĕgāmūr
rĕgāmīnī
rĕgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be ruled.

rĕgērēr
rĕgērērīs, or rĕ
rĕgērētūr;

rĕgērēmūr
rĕgērēmīnī
rĕgērentūr.

PERFECT.

I may have been ruled.

rectūs sīm¹
rectūs sis
rectūs sīt;

rectī sīmūs
rectī sītīs
rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.

rectūs essēm¹
rectūs essēs
rectūs essēt;

rectī essēmūs
rectī essētīs
rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rĕgērē, *be thou ruled*; | rĕgīmīnī, *be ye ruled*.

FUT. rĕgītōr, *thou shalt be ruled*, |
rĕgītōr, *he shall be ruled*; | rĕguntōr, *they shall be ruled*.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rĕgī, *to be ruled*.

PERF. rectūs essē,¹ *to have been ruled*.

FUT. rectūm irī, *to be about to be ruled*.

PERF. rectūs, *ruled*.

GER. rĕgendūs, *to be ruled, deserving to be ruled*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

211. ACTIVE VOICE.

Audiō, *I hear*.—STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.
audiō,Pres. Inf.
audi^rē,Perf. Ind.
audi^vi,Supine.
audi^tum.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I hear.

SINGULAR.

audiō
audis
audit;

PLURAL.

audi^mus
auditis
audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing.*audiēbām
audiēbas
audiēbāt;audiēbā^mus
audiēbātis
audiēbant.

FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*audiām
audies
audiet;audiē^mus
audietis
audient.

PERFECT.

*I heard or have heard.*audi^vi
audi^visti
audi^vit;audi^vim^{us}
audi^vistis
audi^verunt, or ^{er}ē.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*audi^vērām
audi^vērās
audi^vērāt;audi^vērā^mus
audi^vērātis
audi^verant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*audi^vērō
audi^veris
audi^verit;audi^verim^{us}
audi^veritis
audi^verint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can hear.

SINGULAR.

audiā**m**
audiā**s**
audiā**t**;

PLURAL.

audiā**mūs**
audiā**tīs**
audiā**nt**.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should hear.

audīr**ēm**
audīr**ēs**
audīr**ēt**;

audīr**ēmūs**
audīr**ētīs**
audīr**ēnt**.

PERFECT.

I may have heard.

audīv**ērīm**
audīv**ērīs**
audīv**ērīt**;

audīv**ērīmūs**
audīv**ērītīs**
audīv**ērīnt**.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have heard.

audīvīss**ēm**
audīvīss**ēs**
audīvīss**ēt**;

audīvīss**ēmūs**
audīvīss**ētīs**
audīvīss**ēnt**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi I ,	hear thou ;	audi Itē ,	hear ye.
FUT. audi Itō ,	thou shalt hear,	audi Itōtē ,	ye shall hear,
audi Itō ,	he shall hear ;	audi untō ,	they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. audīr**ē**, to hear.
PERF. audīvīss**ē**, to have heard.
FUT. auditū**rās** ess**ē**, to be
about to hear.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audi**ens**, hearing.
FUT. auditū**rūs**, about to hear.

GERUND.

Gen. audi**endi**, of hearing.
Dat. audi**endō**, for hearing.
Acc. audi**endūm**, hearing.
Abl. audi**endō**, by hearing.

SUPINE.

Acc. auditū**m**, to hear.
Abl. auditū**n**, to hear, be heard.

FOURTH CONJUGATION: I VERBS.

212. PASSIVE VOICE.

Audiōr, *I am heard*.—STEM, *audi*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.

audiōr,

Pres. Inf.

audiīrī,

Perf. Ind.

audītūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

I am heard.

SINGULAR.

audiōr

audiīrīs, or rē

audītūr;

PLURAL.

audīmūr

audīmīni

audiuntūr.

IMPERFECT.

I was heard.

audiēbār

audiēbārīs, or rē

audiēbātūr;

audiēbāmūr

audiēbāmīni

audiēbantūr.

FUTURE.

I shall or will be heard.

audiār

audiērīs, or rē

audiētūr;

audiēmūr

audiēmīni

audientūr.

PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*audītūs sūm¹

audītūs ēs

audītūs est;

audītī sūmūs

audītī estīs

audītī sunt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*audītūs ērām¹

audītūs ērās

audītūs ērāt;

audītī ērāmūs

audītī ērātīs

audītī ērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*audītūs ērō¹

audītūs ērīs

audītūs ērīt;

audītī ērīmūs

audītī ērītīs

audītī ērunt.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

I may or can be heard.

SINGULAR.

aud**iār**
 aud**iārīs**, or **rő**
 aud**iātūr**;

PLURAL.

aud**iāmūr**
 aud**iāmīnī**
 aud**iantūr**.

IMPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should be heard.

aud**irēr**
 aud**irērīs**, or **rő**
 aud**irētūr**;

aud**irēmūr**
 aud**irēmīnī**
 aud**irentūr**.

PERFECT.

I may have been heard.

aud**itūs sīm**¹
 aud**itūs sīs**
 aud**itūs sīt**;

aud**itī sīmūs**
 aud**itī sitīs**
 aud**itī sint**.

PLUPERFECT.

I might, could, would, or should have been heard.

aud**itūs essēm**¹
 aud**itūs essēs**
 aud**itūs essēt**;

aud**itī essēmūs**
 aud**itī essētīs**
 aud**itī essent**.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. aud**irē**, *be thou heard*; | aud**imīnī**, *be ye heard*.

FUT. aud**itōr**, *thou shalt be heard*, |
 aud**itōr**, *he shall be heard*; | aud**iuntōr**, *they shall be heard*.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. aud**iri**, *to be heard*.

PERF. aud**itūs essē**,¹ *to have been heard*.

FUT. aud**itūm iri**, *to be about to be heard*.

PERF. aud**itūs**, *heard*.

GER. aud**iendūs**, *to be heard, deserving to be heard*.

¹ See 206, foot-notes.

VERBAL INFLECTIONS.

213. PRINCIPAL PARTS.—The Principal Parts are formed in the four conjugations with the following endings, including final *a*, *e* or *i*, of the stem :¹

I.	o,	āre,	āvi,	ātum.
II.	1. In a few verbs :			
	eo,	ēre,	ēvi,	ētum.
III.	2. In most verbs :			
	eo,	ēre,	ui,	ītum.
IV.	1. In consonant stems :			
	o,	ēre,	si,	tum.
V.	2. In vowel stems :			
	o,	ēre,	i,	tum.
VI.	io,	ire,	īvi,	ītum.

EXAMPLES.

I.	Amo,	āmāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	to love.
II.	1. Dēleo, delēre, delēvi, delētum, to destroy.				
	2. Mōneo, monēre, monui, monitum, to advise.				
III.	1. Carpo, carpēre, carpsi, carptum, to pluck.				
	2. Acuo, ācuēre, acui, acūtum, to sharpen.				
IV.	Audio,	audīre,	audivi,	audītum,	to hear.

214. COMPOUNDS.—Compounds of verbs with dissyllabic supines generally change the stem-vowel in forming the principal parts :

I. When the Present of the compound has *i* for *e* of the simple verb :

1. The Perfect and Supine generally resume the *e* :²

Rēgo,	regēre,	rexī,	rectum,	to rule.
Dī-rīgo,	dirigēre,	direxī,	directum,	to direct.

2. But sometimes only the Supine resumes the *e* :²

Tēneo,	tenēre,	tenui,	tētum,	to hold.
Dē-tīneo,	detinēre,	detinui,	detentum,	to detain.

II. When the Present of the compound has *i* for *a* of the simple verb :

1. The Perfect generally resumes the vowel of the simple perfect and the supine takes *e*,² sometimes *a* :

¹ We class *ēvi* and *ētum* with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *ītum* are derived: thus the full forms in *mōneo* would be *monēvi*, *monētum*. By dropping *e* in *monēvi*, and by changing the consonant *v* into its corresponding vowel *u*, we have *monui*. So by weakening *ē* into *i* in *monētum*, we have *monītum*.

² The favorite vowel before two consonants or a double consonant. See 23, 2.

Cápio,	capĕre,	cĕpi,	captum,	<i>to take.</i>
Ac-cípio,	accipĕre,	accĕpi,	acceptum,	<i>to accept.</i>

2. But sometimes the Perfect retains *i* and the Supine takes *e*:¹

Rápío,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	<i>to seize.</i>
Dí-rípío,	diripĕre,	diripui,	direptum,	<i>to tear asunder.</i>

For *Reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I. 4; other peculiarities of compounds will be noticed under the separate conjugations.

215. ENTIRE CONJUGATION.—From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen, that all the forms of any regular verb, through all the moods and tenses of both voices, arrange themselves in three distinct groups or systems :

I. The **PRESENT SYSTEM**, with the Present Infinitive as its basis, comprises

1. The *Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative*—Active and Passive.

2. The *Present and Imperfect Subjunctive*—Active and Passive.

3. The *Imperative*—Active and Passive.

4. The *Present Infinitive*—Active and Passive.

5. The *Present Active Participle*.

6. The *Gerund* and the *Gerundive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Present Stem*, found in the Present Infinitive by dropping the ending *rĕ* of the Active or *ri* of the Passive in Conj. I. II. and IV. and *ĕrĕ* of the Active or *i* of the Passive in Conj. III.: *āmārĕ*, present stem AMA; *mōnĕrĕ*, MONE; *rĕgĕrĕ*, REG; *audirĕ*, AUDI.

II. The **PERFECT SYSTEM**, with the Perfect Indicative Active as its basis, comprises in the Active voice

1. The *Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Indicative*.

2. The *Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive*.

3. The *Perfect Infinitive*.

These parts are all formed from the *Perfect Stem*, found in the Perfect Indicative Active by dropping *i*: *amāvi*, perfect stem AMAV; *monui*, MONU.

III. The **SUPINE SYSTEM**, with the Supine as its basis, comprises

1. The *Supines* in *ŭm* and *ŭ*, the former of which with *iri* forms the *Future Infinitive Passive*.

2. The *Future Active and Perfect Passive Participles*, the for-

¹ The favorite vowel before two consonants or a double consonant. See 23, 2.

mer of which with *esse* forms the *Future Active Infinitive*, and the latter of which with the proper parts of the auxiliary *sum* forms in the Passive those tenses which in the Active belong to the *Perfect System*.

These parts are all formed from the *Supine Stem*, found in the Supine by dropping *um*: *amātum*, supine stem *AMAT*; *monitum*, *MONIT*.

216. These three Systems of Forms are seen in the following Synopsis of Conjugation.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

217. FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

āmō, āmārē, āmāvī, āmātūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, āma.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	āmō	āmēm	āmā	āmārē	āmans.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmābām	āmārēm			
<i>Fut.</i>	āmābō		āmātō		

Gerund, āmandī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, āmāv.

<i>Perf.</i>	āmāvī	āmāvērim		āmāvissē.	
<i>Plup.</i>	āmāvērām	āmāvissēm			
<i>F.P.</i>	āmāvērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, āmāt.

<i>Fut.</i>			āmātūrūs essē	āmātūrūs.
-------------	--	--	---------------	-----------

Supine, āmātūm, āmātū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

āmōr, āmārī, āmātūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, āma.

<i>Pres.</i>	āmōr	āmēr	āmārē	āmārī	
<i>Imp.</i>	āmābār	āmārēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	āmābōr		āmātōr		

Gerundive, āmandūs.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *āmāt*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> āmātūs sūm	āmātūs sīm		āmātūs essē	āmātūs.
<i>Plup.</i> āmātūs ērām	āmātūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> āmātūs ērō			āmātūm īrī	
<i>Fut.</i>				

218. SECOND CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *mōne*.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneō	mōneām	mōnē	mōnērē	mōnens.
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbām	mōnērēm			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbō		mōnētō		

Gerund, mōnendī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM: STEM, *mōnu*.

<i>Perf.</i> mōnuī	mōnuērīm	.	mōnuissē	
<i>Plup.</i> mōnuērām	mōnuissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnuērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *mōnīt*.

<i>Fut.</i>			mōnītūrās essē	mōnītūrās.
-------------	--	--	----------------	------------

Supine, mōnītūm, mōnītū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

mōneōr, mōnērī, mōnītūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *mōne*.

<i>Pres.</i> mōneōr	mōneār	mōnērē	mōnērī	
<i>Imp.</i> mōnēbār	mōnērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> mōnēbōr		mōnētōr		

Gerundive, mōnendūs.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *mōnīt*.

<i>Perf.</i> mōnītūs sūm	mōnītūs sīm		mōnītūs essē	mōnītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> mōnītūs ērām	mōnītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> mōnītūs ērō			mōnītūm īrī	
<i>Fut.</i>				

219. THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *rēg*.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i>	rēgō	rēgām	rēgē	rēgērē	rēgens.
<i>Imp.</i>	rēgēbām	rēgērēm			
<i>Fut.</i>	rēgām		rēgītō		

Gerund, rēgendī, dō, etc.3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, *rex*

<i>Perf.</i>	rexī	rexērīm		rexissē	
<i>Plup.</i>	rexērām	rexissēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	rexērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *rect*.

<i>Fut.</i>			rectūrūs essē	rectūrūs.
-------------	--	--	---------------	-----------

Supine, rectūm, rectū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

rēgōr, rēgī, rectūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *rēg*.

<i>Pres.</i>	rēgōr	rēgār	rēgērē	rēgī	
<i>Imp.</i>	rēgēbār	rēgērēr			
<i>Fut.</i>	rēgār		rēgītōr		

Gerundive, rēgendūs.3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *rect*.

<i>Perf.</i>	rectūs sūm	rectūs sīm		rectūs essē	rectūs.
<i>Plup.</i>	rectūs ērām	rectūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i>	rectūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>				rectūm irī	

220. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiō, audīrē, audīvī, audītūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *audi*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> audiō	audiām	audi	audīre	audiens.
<i>Imp.</i> audiēbām	audīrēm			
<i>Fut.</i> audiām		audītō		

Gerund, audiendī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM : STEM, *audīv*.

<i>Perf.</i> audīvī	audīvērīm		audīvissē	
<i>Plup.</i> audīvērām	audīvissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> audīvērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *audīt*.

<i>Fut.</i>			audītūrūs essē	audītūrūs.
-------------	--	--	----------------	------------

Supine, audītūm, audītū.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

audiōr, audīrī, audītūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *audi*.

<i>Pres.</i> audiōr	audiār	audīrē	audīrī	
<i>Imp.</i> audiēbār	audīrēr			
<i>Fut.</i> audiār		audītōr		

Gerundive, audiendūs.

3. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *audīt*.

<i>Perf.</i> audītūs sūm	audītūs sīm		audītūs essē	audītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> audītūs ērām	audītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> audītūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			audītūm irī	

THIRD CONJUGATION : VERBS IN IO.

221. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the Present Indicative in **io**, **ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels. These verbs are

1. The following with their compounds :

Cūpio, to take; *cūpio*, to desire; *fācio*, to make; *fōdio*, to dig; *fūgio*, to flee; *jūcio*, to throw; *pārio*, to bear; *quātio*, to shake; *rāpio*, to seize; *sāpio*, to be wise.

2. The compounds of the obsolete *lacio*, to entice, and *spicio*, to look ; *allicio*, *ēlicio*, *illicio*, *pellicio*, etc. ; *aspicio*, *conspicio*, etc.

3. The Deponent Verbs : *grādiōr*, to go ; *mōriōr*, to die ; *pātiōr*, to suffer. See 225.

222. ACTIVE VOICE.

Cāpio, *I take*.—STEM, *cāp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpērē,	cēpī,	captūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit ;	cāpimūs, cāpītis, cāpiunt.
IMP.	cāpiebām, -iebās, -iebāt ;	cāpiebāmūs, -iebātis, -iebant.
FUT.	cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt ;	cāpiēmūs, -iētis, -ient.
PERF.	cēpī, -istī, -it ;	cēpimūs, -istis, -erunt, or ērē.
PLUP.	cēpērām, -ērās, -ērāt ;	cēpērāmūs, -ērātis, -ērant.
FUT. PERF.	cēpērō, -ērīs, -ērīt ;	cēpērīmūs, -ērītis, -ērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	cāpiām, -iās, -iāt ;	cāpiāmūs, -iātis, -iant.
IMP.	cāpērēm, -ērēs, -ērēt ;	cāpērēmūs, -ērētis, -ērent.
PERF.	cēpērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt ;	cēpērīmūs, -ērītis, -ērint.
PLUP.	cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt ;	cēpissēmūs, -issētis, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	cāpē ;	cāpītē.
FUT.	cāpītō,	cāpītōtē,
	cāpītō ;	cāpiuntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	cāpērē.
PERF.	cēpissē.
FUT.	captūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	cāpiens.
FUT.	captūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen.	cāpiendī.
Dat.	cāpiendō.
Acc.	cāpiendūm.
Abl.	cāpiendō.

SUPINE.

Acc.	captūm.
Abl.	captū.

223. PASSIVE VOICE.

Căpior, *I am taken*.—STEM, *căp*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
căpiör,	căpī,	captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

PRES.	căpiör, căpērīs, căpītūr :	căpīmūr, căpīmīnī, căpiuntūr.
IMP.	căpiebār, -iebārīs, -iebātūr ;	căpiebāmūr, -iebāmīnī, -iebantūr.
FUT.	căpiār, -iērīs, -iētūr :	căpiēmūr, -iēmīnī, -ientur.
PERF.	captūs sūm, ēs, est ;	captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
PLUP.	captūs ērām, ērās, ērāt ;	captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
FUT. PERF.	captūs ērō, ērīs, ērīt ;	captī ērīmūs, ērītīs, ērunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	căpiār, -iārīs, -iātūr ;	căpiāmūr, -iāmīnī, -iantūr.
IMP.	căpērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr ;	căpērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -ērentūr.
PERF.	captūs sīm, sīs, sīt ;	captī sīmūs, sītīs, sint.
PLUP.	captūs essēm, essēs, essēt ;	captī essēmūs, essētīs, essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	căpērē ;	căpīmīnī.
FUT.	căpītör,	
	căpītör ;	căpiuntör.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	căpī.	
PERF.	captūs essē.	PERF. captūs.
FUT.	captūm irī.	GER. căpiendūs.

224. SYNOPSIS.

I. ACTIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

căpiō, căpērē, cēpī, captūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *căpi*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
Pres. căpiō	căpiām	căpē	căpērē	căpiens.
Imp. căpiebām	căpērēm			
Fut. căpiām		căpītō		

Gerund, căpiendī, dō, etc.

3. PERFECT SYSTEM: STEM, *cēp*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> cēpī	cēpērīm		cēpissē	
<i>Plup.</i> cēpērām	cēpissēm			
<i>F. P.</i> cēpērō				

4. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *capt*.

<i>Fut.</i>			captūrūs essē	captūrūs.
			<i>Supine</i> , captūm, captū.	

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

1. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

cāpiōr, cāpī, captūs sūm.

2. PRESENT SYSTEM: STEM, *cāpi*.

<i>Pres.</i> cāpiōr	cāpiār	cāpērē	cāpī	
<i>Imp.</i> cāpiēbār	cāpērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> cāpiār		cāpītōr		
			<i>Gerundive</i> , cāpiendūs.	

3. SUPINE SYSTEM: STEM, *capt*.

<i>Perf.</i> captūs sūm	captūs sīm		captūs essē	captūs.
<i>Plup.</i> captūs ērām	captūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> captūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			captūm īrī	

DEPONENT VERBS.

225. Deponent Verbs have in general the forms of the Passive Voice with the signification of the Active. But

1. They have also in the Active, the future infinitive, the participles, gerund, and supine.

2. The gerundive generally has the passive signification; sometimes also the perfect participle: *hortandus*, to be exhorted; *expertus*, tried.

3. The Future Infinitive of the Passive form is rare, as the Active form is generally used.

SYNOPSIS OF CONJUGATION.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

226. Hortor, *I exhort*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

hortōr, hortārī, hortātūs sūm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *horta*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> hortōr ¹	hortēr	hortārē	hortārī	hortans.
<i>Imp.</i> hortābār	hortārēr			
<i>Fut.</i> hortābōr		hortātōr		
	<i>Gerund</i> , hortandī.		<i>Gerundive</i> , hortandūs.	

 III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *hortāt*.

<i>Perf.</i> hortātūs sūm	hortātūs sīm		hortātūs essē	hortātūs.
<i>Plup.</i> hortātūs ērām	hortātūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> hortātūs ērō			hortātūrūs essē	hortātūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>				
	<i>Supine</i> , hortātūm, hortātū.			

SECOND CONJUGATION.

 227. Vēreor, *I fear*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

vēreōr, vērerī, vēritūs sūm.

 II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *vēre*.

<i>Pres.</i> vēreōr	vēreār	vērērē	vērērī	vērens.
<i>Imp.</i> vērebār	vērērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> vērebōr		vērētōr		
	<i>Gerund</i> , vērendī.		<i>Gerundive</i> , vērendūs.	

 III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *vērīt*.

<i>Perf.</i> vēritūs sūm	vērītūs sīm		vērītūs essē	vērītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> vēritūs ērām	vērītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> vēritūs ērō			vērītūrūs essē	vērītūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>				
	<i>Supine</i> , vēritūm, vēritū.			

THIRD CONJUGATION.

 228. Sēquor, *I follow*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

sēquōr, sēquī, sēcūtūs sūm.

¹ The tenses are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers: *hortōr*, *hortāris*, *hortātūr*, *hortāmūr*, *hortāmīni*, *hortantūr*. All the forms in this synopsis have the active meaning, *I exhort*, *I was exhorting*, etc., except the *Gerundive*, which has the passive force, *deserving to be exhorted*, *to be exhorted*. From the passive force the *Gerundive* cannot be used in intransitive Dep. verbs, except in an impersonal sense. See 201, 1.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *sēqu*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres.</i> sēquōr	sēquār	sēquērē	sēquī	sēquens.
<i>Imp.</i> sēquēbār	sēquērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> sēquār		sēquītōr		
		<i>Gerund</i> , sēquendī.	<i>Gerundive</i> , sēquendūs.	

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *sēcūt*.

<i>Perf.</i> sēcūtūs sūm	sēcūtūs sīm		sēcūtūs essē	sēcūtūs.
<i>Plup.</i> sēcūtūs ērām	sēcūtūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> sēcūtūs ērō			sēcūtūrūs essē	sēcūtūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>				
<i>Supine</i> , sēcūtūm, sēcūtū.				

229. Pătior, *I suffer*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

pătior, pătī, passūs sūm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *pāti*.

<i>Pres.</i> pătior	pătīār	pătērē	pătī	pătienst.
<i>Imp.</i> pătiebār	pătērēr			
<i>Fut.</i> pătīār		pătītōr		
		<i>Gerund</i> , pătienti.	<i>Gerundive</i> , pătientiūs.	

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *pass*.

<i>Perf.</i> passūs sūm	passūs sīm		passūs essē	passūs.
<i>Plup.</i> passūs ērām	passūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> passūs ērō			passūrūs essē	passūrūs.
<i>Fut.</i>				
<i>Supine</i> , passūm, passū.				

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

230. Blandior, *I flatter*.

I. PRINCIPAL PARTS.

blandior, blandirī, blandītūs sūm.

II. PRESENT SYSTEM : STEM, *blandi*.

<i>Pres.</i> blandior	blandiār	blandirē	blandirī	blandiens.
<i>Imp.</i> blandiebār	blandirēr			
<i>Fut.</i> blandiār		blandi- tōr		
		<i>Gerund</i> , blandiendi.	<i>Gerundive</i> , blandiendiūs.	

III. SUPINE SYSTEM : STEM, *blandit*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPER.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Perf.</i> blandītūs sūm	blandītūs sīm		blandītūs essē	blandītūs.
<i>Plup.</i> blandītūs ērām	blandītūs essēm			
<i>F. P.</i> blandītūs ērō				
<i>Fut.</i>			blandītūrūs essē	blandītūrūs.

Supine, blandītūm, blandītū.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

231. The ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Future Active Participle with *sum*, denotes an intended or future action :

Amatūrus sum, I am about to love.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INFINITIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	āmātūrūs sūm ¹	āmātūrūs sīm	āmātūrūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmātūrūs ērām	āmātūrūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	āmātūrūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fui	āmātūrūs fuērīm	āmātūrūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērām	āmātūrūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	āmātūrūs fuērō ¹		

232. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION, formed by combining the Gerundive with *sum*, denotes *necessity* or *duty*.

Amandus sum, I must be loved.²

<i>Pres.</i>	āmandūs sūm	āmandūs sīm	āmandūs essē.
<i>Imp.</i>	āmandūs ērām	āmandūs essēm	
<i>Fut.</i>	āmandūs ērō		
<i>Perf.</i>	āmandūs fui	āmandūs fuērīm	āmandūs fuissē.
<i>Plup.</i>	āmandūs fuērām	āmandūs fuissēm	
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	āmandūs fuērō		

233. The Periphrastic Conjugation, in the widest sense of the term, includes all forms compounded of participles with *sum* ; but as the Pres. Part. with *sum* is equivalent to the Pres. Ind. (*amans est* = *amat*), and is accordingly seldom used, and as the Perf. Part. with *sum* is, in the strictest sense, an integral part of the regular conjugation, the term *Periphrastic* is generally limited to the two conjugations above given.

¹ The periphrastic forms are inflected regularly through the persons and numbers : *amatūrus sum, es, est*. The Fut. Perf. is exceedingly rare.

² Or, *I deserve* (ought) *to be loved*.

PECULIARITIES IN CONJUGATION.

234. Perfects in **āvi**, **ēvi**, **īvi**, and the tenses derived from them, sometimes drop **v** and suffer contraction before **s** and **r**. Thus

A-i and **a-e** become **ā**: *ānavisti* (*amaisti*), *amasti*; *amavēram* (*amae-ram*), *amāram*; *amavisse* (*amaisse*), *amasse*.

E-i and **e-e** become **ē**: *nēvi* (to spin), *nevisti* (*neisti*), *nesti*; *nevērunt* (*neerunt*), *nērunt*.

I-i becomes **i**: *audivisti* (*audiisti*), *audisti*; *audivissem* (*audiissem*), *audissem*.

1. Perfects in *īvi* sometimes drop *v* in any of their forms, but generally without contraction, except before *s*: *audīvi*, *audīi*, *audīit*, *audīeram*; *audīvisti*, *audīisti* or *audīsti*.

2. Perfects in *ōvi*.—The perfects of *nosco*, to know, and *mōveo*, to move, sometimes drop *v* and suffer contraction before *r* and *s*: *nōvisti*, *nostī*.

3. Perfects in *si* and *xi* sometimes drop *is*, or *sis*: *scripsisti*, *scripsisti*; *dixisse*, *dixē*; *accessistis*, *accestitis*.

235. **Erē** for **ērunt**, as the ending of the third Pers. Pl. of the Perf. Ind. Act., is common in the historians.

The form in *ēre* does not drop *v*. In poetry *ērunt* occurs.

236. **Re** for **ris** in the ending of the second Pers. of the Pass. is rare in the Pres. Indic.

237. **Dic**, **duc**, **fac**, and **fer**, for *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*, and *fēre*, are the Imperatives of *dīco*, *dūco*, *fācio*, and *fēro*, to say, lead, make, and bear.

1. *Dīce*, *dūce*, and *fāce*, occur in poetry.

2. Compounds follow the simple verbs, except those of *fācio* which change *a* into *i*: *confīce*.

238. **Undus** and **undi** for *endus* and *endi* occur as the endings of the Gerundive and Gerund of Conj. III. and IV.: *dīcundus*, from *dīco*, to say; *pōtiundus*, from *pōtior*, to obtain.

239. ANCIENT AND RARE FORMS.—Various other forms, belonging in the main to the earlier Latin, occur in the poets, even of the classical period, and occasionally also in prose, to impart to the style an air of antiquity or solemnity. Thus forms in

1. **ībam** for *īebam*, in the Imp. Ind. of Conj. IV.: *scībam* for *sciēbam*. See Imp. of *eo*, to go, 295.

2. **ībo**, **ībor**, for *iam*, *iar*, in the Fut. of Conj. IV.: *servībo* for *servīam*; *oppēribor* for *opperiar*. See Fut. of *eo*, 295.

3. **īm** for *am* or *em*, in the Pres. Subj.: *ēdīm*, *edis*, etc., for *ēdām*, *ās*, etc.; *duīm* (from *duo*, for *do*), for *dem*.—In *sīm*, *vēlīm*, *nōlīm*, *mālīm* (204 and 293), *īm* is the common ending.

4. **asso**, **esso**, and **so**, in the Fut. Perf., and **assim**, **essim**, and **sim**, in the Perf. Subj. of Conj. I. II. III. : *fazo* (facso) for *fēcēro*¹ (from *fācio*) ; *faxim* for *fēcērim*¹ ; *ausim* for *ausus sim* (for *ausērim*, from *audeo*). Rare examples are : *lēvasso* for *levavēro* ; *prohibesso* for *prohibuēro* ; *capso* for *cēpēro* ; *azo* for *ēgēro* ; *jusso* for *jussēro* ; *occisit* for *occidērit* ; *taxis* for *tēlūgēris*.

5. **to** and **mīno** for *tor*, the former in both numbers, the latter in the singular, of the Fut. Imp. Pass. and Dep. : *arbītrāto*, *arbitrāmīno* for *arbitrātor* ; *ūtunto* for *ūtuntor*.

6. **ier** for *i* in the Pres. Pass. Infin. : *āmāriēr* for *amārī* ; *vidēriēr* for *vidērī*.

240. COMPARATIVE VIEW OF CONJUGATIONS.

I. PRESENT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
STEM,	<i>āma.</i>	<i>mōne.</i>	<i>rēg.</i>	<i>audi.</i>
IND. PRES.	<i>āmō = amao</i>	<i>mōneō</i>	<i>rēgō</i>	<i>audiō</i>
	<i>amās</i> ²	<i>monēs</i> ²	<i>regīs</i>	<i>audiās</i>
IMP.	<i>amābām</i>	<i>monēbām</i>	<i>regēbām</i>	<i>audiēbām</i>
	<i>amābās</i>	<i>monēbās</i>	<i>regēbās</i>	<i>audiēbās</i>
FUT.	<i>amābō</i>	<i>monēbō</i>	<i>regām</i>	<i>audiām</i>
	<i>amābīs</i>	<i>monēbīs</i>	<i>regēs</i>	<i>audiēs</i>
SUB. PRES.	<i>amēm = amaim</i>	<i>moneām</i>	<i>regām</i>	<i>audiām</i>
	<i>amēs</i>	<i>moneās</i>	<i>regās</i>	<i>audiās</i>
IMP.	<i>amārēm</i>	<i>monērēm</i>	<i>regērēm</i>	<i>audiērēm</i>
	<i>amārēs</i>	<i>monērēs</i>	<i>regērēs</i>	<i>audiērēs</i>
IMP. PRES.	<i>amā</i>	<i>monē</i>	<i>regē</i>	<i>audi</i>
FUT.	<i>amātō</i>	<i>monētō</i>	<i>regītō</i>	<i>auditō</i>
INF. PRES.	<i>amārē</i>	<i>monērē</i>	<i>regērē</i>	<i>audiērē</i>
PAR. PRES.	<i>amans</i>	<i>monens</i>	<i>regens</i>	<i>audiens</i>
GERUND,	<i>amandī.</i>	<i>monendī.</i>	<i>regendī.</i>	<i>audiendī.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

IND. PRES.	<i>amōr</i>	<i>moneōr</i>	<i>regōr</i>	<i>audiōr</i>
	<i>amārīs (rē)</i>	<i>monērīs (rē)</i>	<i>regērīs (rē)</i>	<i>audiārīs (rē)</i>
IMP.	<i>amābār</i>	<i>monēbār</i>	<i>regēbār</i>	<i>audiēbār</i>
	<i>amābārīs (rē)</i>	<i>monēbārīs (rē)</i>	<i>regēbārīs (rē)</i>	<i>audiēbārīs (rē)</i>
FUT.	<i>amābōr</i>	<i>monēbōr</i>	<i>regār</i>	<i>audiār</i>
	<i>amabērīs (rē)</i>	<i>monebērīs (rē)</i>	<i>regērīs (rē)</i>	<i>audiērīs (rē)</i>
SUB. PRES.	<i>amēr = amair</i>	<i>moneār</i>	<i>regār</i>	<i>audiār</i>
	<i>amērīs (rē)</i>	<i>moneārīs (rē)</i>	<i>regārīs (rē)</i>	<i>audiārīs (rē)</i>
IMP.	<i>amārēr</i>	<i>monērēr</i>	<i>regērēr</i>	<i>audiērēr</i>
	<i>amarērīs (rē)</i>	<i>monerērīs (rē)</i>	<i>regerērīs (rē)</i>	<i>audiērērīs (rē)</i>
IMP. PRES.	<i>amārē</i>	<i>monērē</i>	<i>regērē</i>	<i>audiērē</i>
FUT.	<i>amātōr</i>	<i>monētōr</i>	<i>regītōr</i>	<i>auditōr</i>
INF. PRES.	<i>amārī</i>	<i>monērī</i>	<i>regī</i>	<i>audiērī</i>
GER.	<i>amandūs.</i>	<i>monendūs.</i>	<i>regendūs.</i>	<i>audiendūs.</i>

¹ Remember that *r* in *ēro* and *ērim* was originally *s*. See 85, and foot-note 2, p. 70.

² In the same manner all the persons of both numbers may be compared.

II. PERFECT SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	CONJ. I.	CONJ. II.	CONJ. III.	CONJ. IV.
STEM,	<i>āmāv.</i>	<i>mōnu.</i>	<i>rex.</i>	<i>audīv.</i>
IND. PERF.	amāvī	monuī	rexī	audīvī
	amavistī	monuistī	rexistī	audivistī
PLUP.	amavērām	monuērām	rexērām	audivērām
	amavērās	monuērās	rexērās	audivērās
F. PERF.	amavērō	monuērō	rexērō	audivērō
	amavērīs	monuērīs	rexērīs	audivērīs
SUB. PERF.	amavērīm	monuērīm	rexērīm	audivērīm
	amavērīs	monuērīs	rexērīs	audivērīs
PLUP.	amavissēm	monuissēm	rexissēm	audivissēm
	amavissēs	monuissēs	rexissēs	audivissēs
INF. PERF.	amavissē.	monuissē.	rexissē.	audivissē.

III. SUPINE SYSTEM.

ACTIVE VOICE.

STEM,	<i>āmāt.</i>	<i>mōnīt.</i>	<i>rect.</i>	<i>audīt.</i>
INF. FUT.	amātūrūs essē	monītūrūs essē	rectūrūs essē	audītūrūs essē
PAR. FUT.	amatūrūs	monītūrūs	rectūrūs	audītūrūs
SUPINE,	amātūm.	monītūm.	rectūm.	audītūm.

PASSIVE VOICE.

IND. PERF.	amātūs sūm	monītūs sūm	rectūs sūm	audītūs sūm
	amātūs ēs	monītūs ēs	rectūs ēs	audītūs ēs
PLUP.	amātūs ērām	monītūs ērām	rectūs ērām	audītūs ērām
	amātūs ērās	monītūs ērās	rectūs ērās	audītūs ērās
F. PERF.	amātūs ērō	monītūs ērō	rectūs ērō	audītūs ērō
	amātūs ērīs	monītūs ērīs	rectūs ērīs	audītūs ērīs
SUB. PERF.	amātūs sīm	monītūs sīm	rectūs sīm	audītūs sīm
	amātūs sīs	monītūs sīs	rectūs sīs	audītūs sīs
PLUP.	amātūs essēm	monītūs essēm	rectūs essēm	audītūs essēm
	amātūs essēs	monītūs essēs	rectūs essēs	audītūs essēs
INF. PERF.	amātūs essē	monītūs essē	rectūs essē	audītūs essē
FUT.	amātūm irī	monītūm irī	rectūm irī	audītūm irī
PAR. PERF.	amātūs.	monītūs.	rectūs.	audītūs.

1. From this Synopsis it will be seen :

1) That the Four Conjugations differ from each other only in the formation of the *Principal Parts* and in the endings of the *Present System*.

2) That even these differences have been produced in the main by the union of different final letters in the various stems with one general system of endings.

3) That the Four Conjugations are thus only varieties of one general system of inflection.

ANALYSIS OF VERBAL ENDINGS.

241. The endings which are appended to the stems in the formation of the various parts of the finite verb contain three distinct elements :

1. The TENSE-SIGN : *ba* in *āmā-bā-m*, *rĕg-ē-bā-s*.
2. The MOOD-VOWEL : *a* in *mōne-ā-s*, *rĕg-ā-s*.
3. The PERSONAL ENDING : *s* in *mōne-ā-s*, *rĕg-ā-s*.

I. TENSE-SIGNS.

242. The Present is without any tense-sign : *āmā-s*. So also the Future¹ in Conj. III. and IV.

243. The other tenses² have the following

TENSE-SIGNS.

IND.	IMP.	<i>ba</i> :	<i>āmā-bā-s</i> :	<i>rĕg-ē-bā-s</i> .
	FUT.	<i>bi</i> :	<i>āmā-bī-s</i> :	<i>mōnē-bī-s</i> .
	PLUP.	<i>ĕra</i> :	<i>āmāv-ĕrā-s</i> :	<i>rex-ĕrā-s</i> .
	F. PERF.	<i>ĕri</i> :	<i>āmāv-ĕrī-s</i> :	<i>audīv-ĕrī-s</i> .
SUBJ.	IMP.	<i>ĕra</i> :	{ <i>rĕg-ĕrē-s</i> , for <i>rĕg-ĕra-ī-s</i> . ³ <i>āmā-rē-s</i> , for <i>āma-ĕra-ī-s</i> . ³	
	PERF.	<i>ĕri</i> :	<i>rex-ĕrī-s</i> :	<i>audīv-ĕrī-s</i> .
	PLUP.	<i>issa</i> :	<i>rex-issē-s</i> , for <i>rex-issa-ī-s</i> . ³	

II. MOOD-SIGNS.

244. The Indicative has no special sign to mark the Mood.

245. The Subjunctive has a long vowel—*ā*, *ē*,⁴ or *ī*⁵—

¹ This Future is in form a Present Subjunctive, though it has assumed in full the force of the Future Indicative. See foot-note 5 below.

² These are all compounded with the tenses of *sum* : Thus in *āmā-bām* and *āmā-bō*, the ending *bām* = *ĕrām* is the Imperfect from the stem *bhu*, the old form of *fu* in *fui*, and *bō* = *ĕrō* is the Future from the same stem. In *āmāv-ĕrām* and *āmāv-ĕrō*, the endings *ĕrām* and *ĕrō* are the Imperfect and Future of *sum* from the stem *ēs*. In *rĕg-ĕrēm* the ending *ĕrēm* is for *ĕsēm*, the ancient form of *essēm* ; in *rex-ĕrīm*, *ĕrīm* is for *ĕsīm* = *sīm*, and in *rex-issēm*, *issēm* is for *essēm*.

³ See foot-note 5 below.

⁴ This *ē* comes from *a-ī*, of which the *ī* alone is the true Mood-Sign.

⁵ The Latin Subjunctive contains the forms of two distinct Moods,—the Subjunctive with the sign *ā*, and the Optative with the sign *ī*, sometimes

before the Personal Endings : *mōne-ā-mūs*, *ām-ē-mūs*, *s-ī-mūs*. But

1. This vowel is shortened before final *m* and *t*, and sometimes in the Perfect before *s*, *mūs* and *tīs* : *mōneām*, *āmēt*, *sīt*, *fuērīs*, *āmāvērīmūs*, *āmāvērītīs*.

246. The Imperative is distinguished by its Personal Endings. See 247, 3.

III. PERSONAL ENDINGS.

247. The Personal Endings are formed from ancient pronominal stems, and have, accordingly, the force of pronouns in English. They are as follows :

	PERSON.	ACT.	PASS.	MEANING.
Sing. ¹	<i>First Pers.</i> ,	<i>m</i> ,	<i>r</i> ,	<i>I</i> .
	<i>Second</i> ,	<i>s</i> ,	<i>rīs</i> ,	<i>thou, you.</i>
	<i>Third</i> ,	<i>t</i> ,	<i>tūr</i> ,	<i>he, she, it.</i>
Plur. ²	<i>First</i> ,	<i>mūs</i> ,	<i>mūr</i> ,	<i>we.</i>
	<i>Second</i> ,	<i>tīs</i> ,	<i>mīnī</i> , ³	<i>you.</i>
	<i>Third</i> ,	<i>nt</i> ,	<i>ntūr</i> ,	<i>they.</i>

contained in *ē* for *a-ī*. Thus : Subjunctive, *mōne-ā-mūs*, *audi-ā-tīs* ; Optative, *s-ī-mūs*, *rexēr-ī-tīs*, *ām-ē-mūs* for *ama-ī-mūs*, *rēgēr-ē-s*, for *rēgēra-ī-s*. The Subjunctive and Optative forms, originally distinct, have in the Latin been blended into one Mood, called the Subjunctive, and are used without any difference of meaning. Thus the Mood in *mōne-ā-mūs*, a Subjunctive form, has precisely the same force as in *ām-ē-mūs*, an Optative form.

The 1st Pers. Sing. of Futures in *ām-rēgām*, *audiām*, etc.—is in form a Subjunctive, while the other Persons, *rēgēs*, *ēt*, etc., *audiēs*, *ēt*, etc., are in form Optatives.

¹ In the Singular these Personal Endings contain each, (1) in the Active Voice one pronominal stem, *m*, I ; *s*, thou, you ; *t*, he ; and (2) in the Passive two such stems—one denoting the Person, and the other the Passive Voice : thus in the ending *tūr*, *t* (tu) denotes the person, and *r*, the voice. *R* of the first person stands for *m-r*.

² In the Plural the Endings contain each, (1) in the Active two pronominal stems : *mū-s* = *m* (mu) and *s*, I and you, i. e. we ; *tīs* = *t* (the original form for *s*, thou, as seen in *tu*, thou) and *s*, = *s* and *s*, thou and thou, i. e. you ; *nt* = *n* and *t*, he and he, i. e. they, and (2) in the Passive three such stems—the third denoting the Passive voice : thus in *ntūr*, *nt* (ntu) denotes the person and number, and *r*, the voice.

³ *Mīnī* was not originally a Personal Ending, but the Plural of a Passive Participle, not otherwise used in Latin, but seen in the Greek (μεινι). *Amāmīnī*, originally *āmāmīnī estīs*, means *you are loved*, as *amātī estis* means *you have been loved*.

EXAMPLES.

āmābā-m,	amābā-r;	rěgŏ,	regŭ-r.
amābā-s,	amabā-rīs;	regĭ-s,	regĕ-rīs.
amābā-t,	amabā-tŭr;	regĭ-t,	regĭ-tŭr.
amabā-mŭs,	amabā-mŭr;	regĭ-mŭs,	regĭ-mŭr.
amabā-tīs,	amabā-mĭnĭ;	regĭ-tīs,	regĭ-mĭnĭ.
amāba-nt,	amaba-ntŭr;	regu-nt,	regu-ntŭr.

1. OMITTED.—The ending *m* is omitted in the Pres.,¹ Perf., and Fut. Perf. Ind. of all the conjugations, and in the Fut. Ind. of Conj. I. and II. Accordingly in those forms the First Person ends in the connecting vowel *o*: *āmŏ*, *amābŏ*, *amāvĕro*; except in the Perfect, where it ends in *i*: *āmāvĭ*.

2. The Endings of the Perfect Act. are peculiar. They are the same as in *fuī*:

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>First Pers.</i> ,	fu-ī; ²	fu-ī-mŭs.
<i>Second</i> ,	fu-is-tĭ;	fu-is-tīs.
<i>Third</i> ,	fu-ī-t;	fu-ĕru-nt, or ĕrĕ.

3. The Imperative Mood has the following Personal Endings:

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Pres. Second Pers.</i> ,	— ³ ,	tĕ;	rĕ,	mĭnĭ.
<i>Fut. Second</i> ,	tŏ,	tŏtĕ;	tŏr.	
<i>Third</i> ,	tŏ,	ntŏ;	tŏr,	ntŏr.

248. Infinitives, Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, are formed with the following endings:

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Infinitive Present</i> ,	rĕ (ĕrĕ),	rĭ (ĕrĭ), I,
<i>Perfect</i> ,	issĕ,	ŭs essĕ,
<i>Future</i> ,	ŭrŭs essĕ,	ŭm ĭrĭ.

¹ Except in *sŭm*, I am, and *inquā*m, I say.

² *M* is omitted in the first person, and *tī*, an ancient form of *sī*, *s*, is used in the second. Otherwise the endings themselves are regular, but in the second person *tī* and *tīs* are preceded by *is*, and *ĕrunt* in *fu-ĕrunt*, is for *ĕsunt*, the full form for *sunt*. Thus *fu-ĕrunt* is a compound of *fu* and *esunt* for *sunt*. *Fu-istīs*, in like manner, may be a compound of *fu* and *istīs* for *estīs*, and *fu-istī*, of *fu* and *istī* for *estī* for *ēs*.

³ In the Present the ending is dropped in the Sing. Act., and the endings *tĕ* and *rĕ* are shortened from *tīs* and *rīs* of the Indicative by dropping *s* and changing final *i* into *ĕ*. See 28, 1. In the Future *tŏ* of the 2d pers. corresponds to *tī* of the Perfect Ind., *tŏ* and *ntŏ* of the 3d pers. to *t* and *nt*. *Tŏr* and *ntŏr* add *r* to *tŏ* and *ntŏ*. *Tŏtĕ* doubles the pronominal stem.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
<i>Participle Present,</i>	ns.	
<i>Future,</i>	tūrūs.	
<i>Perfect,</i>		tūs.
<i>Gerundive,</i>		ndūs.
<i>Gerund,</i>	ndī.	
<i>Supine,</i>	ūm, ū.	

FORMATION OF STEMS.

249. The three Special Stems are all formed from the Verb Stem.

I. PRESENT STEM.

250. The Present Stem is generally the same as the Verb Stem. Thus *āma*, *mōne*, *rĕg*, and *audi*, are at once Present Stems and Verb Stems.

251. The Present Stem, when not identical with the Verb Stem, is formed from it by one of the following methods :

1. By inserting **n**—changed to **m** before **b** or **p** :

Frango ;	<i>stem</i> , frag ;	<i>pres. stem</i> , frang ;	<i>to break.</i>
Fundo ;	fud ;	fund ;	<i>to pour.</i>
Rumpo ;	rup ;	rump ;	<i>to burst.</i>

2. By adding **n**, especially to vowel stems :

Sīno ;	<i>stem</i> , sī ;	<i>pres. stem</i> , sīn ;	<i>to permit.</i>
Sperno ;	spēr, sprē ;	spern ;	<i>to spurn.</i>
Temno ;	tēm ;	temn ;	<i>to despise.</i>

3. By adding **a**, **e**, or **i** :

Jūvo ;	<i>stem</i> , jūv ;	<i>pres. stem</i> , jūva ;	<i>to assist.</i>
Vīdeo ;	vīd ;	vīde ;	<i>to see.</i>
Cāpio ;	cāp ;	cāpi ;	<i>to take.</i>
Vīncio ;	vinc ;	vinci ;	<i>to bind.</i>
Haurio ;	haur for haus ;	hauri ;	<i>to draw.</i>

4. By adding **sc**,—to consonant stems **isc** :

Vētērasco ;	<i>stem</i> , vētēra ;	<i>pres. stem</i> , veterasc ;	<i>to grow old.</i>
Cālesco ;	cāle ;	calesc ;	<i>to become warm.</i>
Cresco ;	crē ;	crese ;	<i>to increase.</i>
Apiscor ;	āp ;	apisc ;	<i>to obtain.</i>
Nanciscor ;	nac ;	nancisc ; ¹	<i>to obtain.</i>

5. By adding **t** :

Plecto ;	<i>stem</i> , plēc ;	<i>pres. stem</i> , plect ;	<i>to braid.</i>
----------	----------------------	-----------------------------	------------------

¹ N is inserted and *isc* added. See 1 above.

6. By doubling the final consonant—**l, r, or t**:

Pello;	<i>stem</i> , pel;	<i>pres. stem</i> , pell;	<i>to drive</i> .
Curro;	cur;	curr;	<i>to run</i> .
Mitto;	mit;	mitt;	<i>to send</i> .

7. By reduplication:

Gigno;	<i>stem</i> , gĕn;	<i>pres. stem</i> , gĭgĕn,	gign;	<i>to beget</i> .
Sisto;	sta;	sista, sist;		<i>to place</i> .
Sĕro;	sa;	sĭsa, sĭs, sĕr;		<i>to sow</i> .

II. PERFECT STEMS.

252. Vowel Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **v**:

Amo (a-o),	ămăvi,	<i>stem</i> , ăma;	<i>perf. stem</i> , ămăv;	<i>to love</i> .
Dĕleo,	delĕvi,	dĕle;	dĕlĕv;	<i>to destroy</i> .
Audio,	audĭvi,	audi;	audĭv;	<i>to hear</i> .

1. Most stems in *e* and a few in *a* drop the final vowel and change *v* to *u*.

Mĕneo, monui;	<i>stem</i> , mĕne;	<i>perf. stem</i> , mĕnev, mĕnu;	<i>to advise</i> .
Crĕpo (a-o), crepui;	crĕpa;	crĕpav, crĕpu;	<i>to creak</i> .

2. In verbs in *uo*, the Perfect Stem is the same as the Verb Stem:

Acuo, ĕcui;	<i>stem</i> , neu;	<i>perf. stem</i> , acu;	<i>to sharpen</i> .
-------------	--------------------	--------------------------	---------------------

253. Many Liquid Stems, and a few others, form the Perfect Stem by adding **u**:

Alo, ĭlui;	<i>stem</i> , ĭl;	<i>perf. stem</i> , ĭlu;	<i>to nourish</i> .
Frĕmo, frĕmui;	frĕm;	frĕmu;	<i>to rage</i> .
Tĕneo, tĕnui;	tĕn;	tĕnu;	<i>to hold</i> .
Dŏceo, dŏcui;	dŏc;	dŏcu;	<i>to teach</i> .

254. Most Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem by adding **s**:

Carpō, carpsi;	<i>stem</i> , carp;	<i>perf. stem</i> , carps;	<i>to pluck</i> .
Rĕgo, rexi;	rĕg;	rex=regs;	<i>to rule</i> .
Scribo, scripsi;	scrib;	scrips=scribs;	<i>to write</i> .

255. A few Consonant Stems form the Perfect Stem without any suffix whatever. But of these

I. Some reduplicate the stem:¹

Căno, cĕcĭni;	<i>stem</i> , căn;	<i>perf. stem</i> , cĕcĭn;	<i>to sing</i> .
---------------	--------------------	----------------------------	------------------

1. The REDUPLICATION consists of the initial consonant (or consonants) of the stem with the following vowel, or with *e*,—generally with the following vowel, if that vowel is *e, i, o*, or *u*, otherwise with *e*; see examples under 273, I.

2. The STEM-VOWEL *a* is generally weakened to *i*, sometimes to *e*: *cădo, cĕcĭdi* (for *cecădi*), *to fall*.

¹ See list, 273, I.

3. REDUPLICATION WITH *Sp* OR *St*.—In verbs beginning with *sp* or *st*, the reduplication retains both consonants, but the stem drops the *s*: *spondeo*, *spōpondi* (for *spospondi*), to promise; *sto*, *stēti* (for *stesti*), to stand.

4. In COMPOUNDS the reduplication is generally dropped, but it is retained in the compounds of *do*, to give; *sto*, to stand; *disco*, to learn; *posco*, to demand; and sometimes in the compounds of *curro*, to run: *re-spondeo*, *respondi* (redup. dropped), to answer; *circum-do*, *circum-dēdi* (redup. retained); *circum-sto*, *circum-stēti*, to encircle. The compounds of *do* which are of the third conjugation change *e* of the reduplication into *i*: *ad-do*, *ad-dīdi* (for *ad-dēdi*), to add.

II. Some lengthen the Stem-Vowel:¹

Emo, ēmi; stem, ēm; perf. stem, ēm; to buy.
Ago, ēgi; āg; ēg; to drive.
Ab-igo, āb-ēgi; ābīg; ābēg; to drive away.

1. The stem-vowels *ā* and (in compounds) *ī* generally become *ē*, as in *āgo* and *āb-igo*.

III. Some retain the stem unchanged:¹

Ico, ici; stem, Ic; perf. stem, Ic; to strike.
Viso, vīsi; vis; vīs; to visit.

1. Of the few verbs belonging to this class, nearly all have the stem-vowel long, either by nature or by position.

III. SUPINE STEM.

256. Vowel Stems and most Consonant Stems form the Supine Stem by adding **t**:

Amo = āmao,	āmātūm; stem, āma,	sup. st. āmāt;	to love.
Dēleo,	dēlētūm;	dēle,	dēlēt; to destroy.
Mōneo,	mōnītūm;	mōne, ²	mōnīt; ² to advise.
Audio,	audītūm;	audi,	audīt; to hear.
Dīco,	dictūm;	dīc,	dict; to say.
Carpō,	carptūm;	carp,	carpt; to pluck.

257. Stems in **d** and **t**, most stems in **l** and **r**, and a few others, add **s** to the Verb Stem.

Laedo,	laesum; stem, laed,	sup. st. laes ³	(for laeds); to hurt.
Plaudo,	plausum;	plaud,	plaus (for plauds); to applaud.
Video,	vīsum;	vīd,	vīs (for vīds); to see.
Verto,	versum;	vert,	vers ³ (for verts); to turn.
Vello, ⁴	vulsum;	vōl,	vuls ⁵ (for vols); to pluck.
Verro, ⁴	versum;	ver,	vers; to brush.

¹ See lists, 273, II. and III.

² See 36.

⁴ See 251, 6.

³ See 213, foot-note.

⁵ See 23, and 293, 1.

258. EUPHONIC CHANGES IN STEMS.

I. BEFORE S IN THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

1. A GUTTURAL—**c**, **g**, **qu**¹ or **h**—generally unites with the **s** and forms **z**, but is dropped after **l** or **r**: *dūco*, *duxi* (ducsi), *dux*, to lead; *rēgo*, *rexi* (regsi), *rex*, to rule; *cōquo*, *coxi* (coqusi), to cook; *traho*, *traxi* (trahsi), to draw; *algeo*, *alsi* (algsi), *als*, to be cold; *mergo*, *mersi* (mergsi), to dip; *mulceo*, *mulsum* (mulcesum), *mul*, to caress; *fīgo*, *fixum* (figsum), to fasten.

2. A DENTAL—**d** or **t**—is generally dropped, but sometimes assimilated: *claudo*, *clausi* (claudsi), *claus*, *clausum* (claudsum), *claus*, to close; *mitto*,² *mīsi* (mitsi), *missum* (mitsum), to send; *cēdo*, *cessi* (cedsi), *cessum* (cedsum), to yield.

3. **B** is changed to **p**: *scribo*, *scripsi* (scribsi), *scrips*, to write; *nūbo*, *nupsi*, to marry.

4. **M** is sometimes assimilated, and sometimes strengthened with **p**: *prēmo*, *pressi* (premsi), *press*, *pressum* (premsum), to press; *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi), to take.

5. **S**—changed to **r** in the Present—is sometimes dropped: *haereo* (haeseo), *haesi* (haessi), *haes*, *haesum* (haessum), to stick.

II. BEFORE T IN THE SUPINE STEM.

1. A GUTTURAL—**g**, **qu**¹ or **h**—becomes **c**: *rēgo*, *rectum* (regtum), *rect*, to rule; *cōquo*, *coctum* (coqutum), to cook; *traho*, *tractum* (trahtum), to draw.

2. **B** is changed to **p**, as in the Perfect: *scribo*, *scriptum* (scribtum), to write.

3. **M** is strengthened with **p**: *sūmo*, *sumpsi* (sumsi), *sumptum* (sumtum), to take.

4. **V** is generally changed into its corresponding vowel, **u**: *volvo*, *vōlūtum* (volvtum), to roll. If a vowel precedes, a contraction takes place—a-u becoming **au**, rarely **ō**; o-u becoming **ō**, and u-u becoming **ū**: *lāvo*, *lavtum*, *lautum*, *lōtum*, to wash; *mōveo*, *mortum*, *moutum*, *mōtum*, to move; *jūvo*, *jvutum*, *jvutum*, *jūtum*, to assist.

¹ Sometimes also *qu*: *extinguo*, *extinxi*, *extinctum*, to extinguish. *Vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*, to live; *fluo*, *fluxi*, *fluxum*, to flow; and *struo*, *struxi*, *structum*, to build, form the Perfect and Supine from stems in *v* for *qu*.

² Stem *mit* (251, 6); in *misi*, *t* is dropped, but in *missum* assimilated.

CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS.¹

FIRST CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN **a**: PERFECT IN **vi** OR **ui**.I. STEM IN **a**: PERFECT IN **vi**.259. Principal Parts in : **o**, **äre**, **ävi**, **ätum**.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples :

Dōno,	donäre,	donävi,	donätum,	<i>to bestow.</i>
Hönōro,	honoräre,	honorävi,	honorätum,	<i>to honor.</i>
Lībēro,	liberäre,	liberävi,	liberätum,	<i>to free.</i>
Nōmīno,	nominäre,	nominävi,	nominätum,	<i>to name.</i>
Pugno,	pugnäre,	pugnävi,	pugnätum,	<i>to fight.</i>
Spēro,	speräre,	sperävi,	sperätum,	<i>to hope.</i>
Vōco,	vocäre,	vocävi,	vocätum,	<i>to call.</i>

II. STEM IN **a**: PERFECT IN **ui**.260. Principal Parts in : **o**, **äre**, **ui**, **itum**.²

Crēpo,	crepäre,	crepui,	crepītum.	<i>to creak.</i>
--------	----------	---------	-----------	------------------

Incrēpo, äre, ui (ävi), itum (ätum); discrēpo, äre, ui (ävi) —.

Cūbo,	cubäre,	cubui,	cubītum,	<i>to recline.</i> ³
Dōmo,	domäre,	domui,	domītum,	<i>to tame.</i>
Enēco,	ēnecäre,	enēcui,	enectum,	<i>to kill.</i> ⁴
Fricō,	fricäre,	fricui,	{ frictum,	<i>to rub.</i>
			{ fricātum,	
Mico,	micäre	micui,	_____	<i>to glitter.</i>

Dīmico, äre, ävi (ui), ätum; ěmico, äre, ui, ätum.

¹ The Perfect Formation is selected as the special basis of this classification, because the irregularities of the other principal parts are less important and can be readily associated with this formation. In this classification the regular or usual formation is first given with a few examples, then complete lists (1) of all the simple verbs which deviate from this formation, and (2) of such compounds as deviate in any important particular from their simple verbs.

² Note deviations in the Supine. The ending *ui* may have been formed from *avi* by dropping *a* and changing *v* to *u*, and the ending *itum* from *atum* by weakening *a* to *i*. See 213, foot-note. But in some of these verbs the Perfect and Supine may be formed from consonant stems. Thus *sōnui*, *sōnītum* may be formed from the liquid stem *sōn*, in *sōno*, *sonēre*, like *ālui*, *ālītum* from the liquid stem *āl* in *ālo*, *ālēre*, to nourish. See 253.

³ Compounds which insert *m*, as *accumbo*, etc., are of Conj. III. See 275, I.

⁴ The simple *nēco* is regular, and even in the compound the forms in *ävi* and *ätum* occur.

Plicō,	plicāre,	{ plicui, plicāvi,	{ plicitum, plicatum,	to fold.
--------	----------	-----------------------	--------------------------	----------

Duplicō, multiplicō, replicō, and supplicō, are regular: āre, āvi, ātum.

Sēcō,	secāre,	secui,	sectum,	to cut.
-------	---------	--------	---------	---------

Participle, *secātūrus*.

Sōno,	sonāre,	sonui,	sonitum,	to sound.
-------	---------	--------	----------	-----------

Participle, *sonātūrus*. Most compounds want Sup. *Rēsōno* has Perf. *resonāvi*.

Tōno	tonāre,	tonui,	(tonitum),	to thunder.
Vēto,	vetāre,	vetui,	vetitum,	to forbid.

1. *Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum*, to drink, has also *pōtum* in the supine.

2. The Passive Participles *cēnātus* and *jūrātus* (*cēno*, to dine, and *jūro*, to swear) are active in signification, *having dined*, etc. *Pōtus*, from *pōto*, is also sometimes active.

CLASS II.—PERFECT IN *i*.

I. PERFECT IN *i*: WITH REDUPLICATION.

261. Principal Parts in *o, āre, i, tum*.

Do,	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	to give.
Sto,	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	to stand.

1. In *do* the characteristic *a* is short by exception: *dābam, dābo, dārem*, etc. Four compounds of *do*—*circumdo, pessumdo, sctisdo, and venumdo*—are conjugated like the simple verb; the rest are dissyllabic and of the Third Conj. (273, I.) The basis of the dissyllabic compounds is *do*, to place, originally distinct from *do*, to give.

2. Compounds of *sto* are conjugated like the simple verb, if the first part is a dissyllable, otherwise they take *stēti* for *stēti*: *adsto, adstāre, adstēti, adstātum*. *Disto* wants Perf. and Sup.

II. PERFECT IN *i*: WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

262. Principal Parts in : *o, āre, i, ātum, or tum*.

Jūvo,	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	to assist.
-------	---------	-------	--------	------------

Participle *jūvātūrus*, but in compounds *jūtūrus* is also used.

Lāvo,	lavāre,	lāvi,	{ lavātum, lautum, lōtum,	to wash.
-------	---------	-------	---------------------------------	----------

1. In poetry *lāvo* is sometimes of Conj. III.: *lāvo, lavēre, lāvi*, etc.

2. In *jūvo* and *lāvo*, the stems are *juv* and *lav*, strengthened in the Present to *jura* and *lava*. See 251, 8; also 253, II. 4.

263. DEPONENT VERBS.

In this conjugation deponent verbs are entirely regular.

Cōnor,	conāri,	conātus sum,	to endeavor.
Hortor,	hortāri,	hortātus sum,	to exhort.
Mīror,	mirāri,	mirātus sum,	to admire.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN **e**: PERFECT IN **vi** OR **ui**.I. STEM IN **e**: PERFECT IN **vi**.264. Principal Parts in: **eo**, **ēre**, **ēvi**, **ētum**.¹

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Compleo,	complēre,	complēvi,	complētum,	to fill.
----------	-----------	-----------	------------	----------

So other compounds of *pleo*; as *expleo*, *impleo*.

Dēleo,	delēre,	delēvi,	delētum,	to destroy.
Fleo,	flēre,	flēvi,	flētum,	to weep.
Neco,	nēre,	nēvi,	nētum,	to spin.

1. *Abōleo*, *ābolēre*, *abolēvi*, *abolētum*, to destroy, is compounded of *āb* and *oleo* (not used). The other compounds of *oleo* generally end in *esco*, and are of the third conjugation. See *ābōlesco*, 277.

2. *Vieo*, *viēre*, *viētum*, to weave, bend, is rare, except in the participle *viētus*.

II. STEM IN **e**: PERFECT IN **ui**.265. Principal Parts in: **eo**, **ēre**, **ui**, **ītum**.

These endings belong to most verbs of this conjugation. The following are examples:

Dēbeo,	debēre,	debui,	debītum,	to owe.
Hābeo,	habēre,	habui,	habītum,	to have.
Mōneo,	monēre,	monui,	monītum,	to advise.
Nōceo,	nocēre,	nocui,	nocītum,	to hurt.
Pāreo,	parēre,	parui,	parītum,	to obey.
Plāceo,	placēre,	placui,	placītum,	to please.
Tāceo,	tacēre,	tacui,	tacītum,	to be silent.

266. SUPINE WANTING.—Many verbs with the Perfect in **ui**, want the Supine. The following are the most important:

Candeo, to shine.	Mādeo, to be wet.	Sorbeo, to swallow.
Egeo, to want.	Niteo, to shine.	Splendeo, to shine.
Emineo, to stand forth.	Oleo, to smell.	Stūdeo, to study.
Flōreo, to bloom.	Palleo, to be pale.	Stūpeo, to be amazed.
Frondeo, to bear leaves.	Pāteo, to be open.	Tīmeo, to fear.
Horreo, to shudder.	Rūbeo, to be red.	Torpeo, to be torpid.
Lāteo, to be hid.	Sileo, to be silent.	Vīreo, to be green.

267. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs, derived mostly from adjectives, want both Perfect and Supine. The following are the most important:

Albeo, to be white.	Cāneo, to be gray.	Hēbeo, to be blunt.
Calveo, to be bald.	Flāveo, to be yellow.	Hūmeo, to be moist.

¹ We class *ēvi* and *ētum*, though belonging to but few verbs, with the regular formations, because they are the full and original forms from which the more common *ui* and *ītum* are derived. See 218, foot-note.

Immineo, *to threaten.* Maereo, *to be sad.* Renideo, *to shine.*
 Lacteo, *to suck.* Polleo, *to be powerful.* Squaleo, *to be filthy.*

CLASS II.—STEM IN **c, n, r, OR s**: PERFECT IN **ui**.

Present Stem adds e. See 251, 3.

268. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, ui, tum, or sum.**

These endings belong to the following verbs:

Censeo, censēre, censui, censum, *to think.*

Perf. Part. *census* and *censitus*.—*Percenseo* wants Sup.: *recenseo* has *recensum* and *recensitum*.

Dūceo, docēre, docui, doctum, *to teach.*

Misceo, miscēre, miscui, { mistum,
mixtum, *to mix.*

Tēneo, tenēre, tenui, tentum, *to hold.*

Dēlineo, ēre, ui, detentum; so *oblīneo* and *rētīneo*; other compounds seldom have Sup.

Torreo, torrēre, torrui, tostum, *to roast.*

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si** OR **i**.¹

269. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si**.

Present Stem adds e. See 251, 3.

I. Principal Parts in: **eo, ēre, si, sum.**

Algeo, algēre, alsi, —, *to be cold.*

Ardeo, ardēre, arsi, arsum, *to burn.*

Cōnīveo, conīvēre, { conīvi,
conīxi, —, *to wink at.*

Frīgeo, frigēre, frixi (*rare*), —, *to be cold.*

Fulgeo, fulgēre, fulsi, —, *to shine.*

Poetic *fulgo, fulgēre*, etc.

Haereo,² haerēre, haesi, haesum, *to stick.*

Jūbeo, jubēre, jussi, jussum, *to order.*

Lūceo, lucēre, luxi, —, *to shine.*

Lūgeo, lugēre, luxi, —, *to mourn.*

Māneo, manēre, mansi, mansum, *to remain.*

Mulceo, mulcēre, mulsi, mulsum, *to caress.*

Compounds have *mulsum* or *mulctum*.

Mulgeo, mulgēre, mulsi, mulsum, *to milk.*

Rīdeo, rīdēre, rīsi, rīsum, *to laugh.*

Suādeo, suadēre, suāsi, suāsum, *to advise.*

Tergeo, tergēre, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.*

¹ For convenience of reference, a *General List* of all verbs involving irregularities will be found on page 328.

² The stem of *haereo* is *haes*. The Present adds *e* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *haesi* and *haesum*, *s* stands for *ss*—*haesi* for *haes-si*—and is therefore not changed. See 258, I. 5.

Tergo, of Conj. III., also occurs: *tergo, ěre, si, sum*.

Turgeo,	turgĕre,	tursi (<i>rare</i>),	—	<i>to swell.</i>
Urgeo (<i>urgueo</i>),	urgĕre,	ursi,	—	<i>to press.</i>

1. *Cleo, ciĕre, cĭvi, cĭtum*, to arouse, has a kindred form, *cio, cĭre, cĭvi, cĭtum*, from which it seems to have obtained its perfect. In compounds the forms of the Fourth Conj. prevail, especially in the sense of *to call, call forth*.

2. For *Euphonic Changes* before *si* and *sum*, see 258, I.

II. Principal Parts in: **eo, ěre, si, tum.**

Augeo,	augĕre,	auxi,	auctum,	<i>to increase.</i>
Indulgeo,	indulgĕre,	indulsi,	indultum,	<i>to indulge.</i>
Torqueo,	torquĕre,	torsi,	tortum,	<i>to twist.</i>

270. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **i**.

Present Stem adds e. See 251, 3.

I. WITH REDUPLICATION.

Principal Parts in: **eo, ěre, i, sum.**

Mordeo,	mordĕre,	mĕmordi,	morsum,	<i>to bite.</i>
Pendeo,	pendĕre,	pĕpendi,	pensum,	<i>to hang.</i>
Spondeo,	spondĕre,	spĕpondi,	sponsum,	<i>to promise.</i>
Tondeo,	tondĕre,	tĕtondi,	tonsum,	<i>to shear.</i>

For *reduplication in compounds*, see 255, I. 4.

II. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

1. Principal Parts in: **eo, ěre, i, tum.**

Căveo,	cavĕre,	căvi,	cautum,	<i>to beware.</i>
Făveo,	favĕre,	făvi,	fautum,	<i>to favor.</i>
Fĕveo,	fovĕre,	fĕvi,	fĕtum,	<i>to cherish.</i>
Mĕveo,	movĕre,	mĕvi,	mĕtum,	<i>to move.</i>
Păveo,	pavĕre,	păvi,	—	<i>to fear.</i>
Vĕveo,	vovĕre,	vĕvi,	vĕtum,	<i>to vow.</i>

2. Principal Parts in: **eo, ěre, i, sum.**

Sĕdeo,	sedĕre,	sĕdi,	sessum,	<i>to sit.</i>
--------	---------	-------	---------	----------------

So *circumsĕdeo* and *supersĕdeo*. Other compounds thus: *assĕdeo, ěre, assĕdi, assessum*; but *dissĕdeo, praesĕdeo, and resĕdeo*, want Supine.

Vĭdeo,	vidĕre,	vĭdi,	vĭsum,	<i>to see.</i>
--------	---------	-------	--------	----------------

III. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Principal Parts in: **eo, ěre, i, sum.¹**

Cŏnĭveo,	conĭvĕre,	{ conĭvi, conixi,	—	<i>to wink at.</i>
Ferveo,	fervĕre,	{ fervi, ferbui,	—	<i>to boil.</i>

¹ Supine Stem is wanting in most of these verbs.

Languéo,	languēre,	langui,	—	<i>to be languid.</i>
Liqueo,	liquēre,	liqui (licui),	—	<i>to be liquid.</i>
Prandeo,	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>to dine.</i>

Participle, *pransus*, in an active sense, *having dined*.

Strideo,	stridēre,	strīdi,	—	<i>to creak.</i>
----------	-----------	---------	---	------------------

271. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Regular.

Līceor,	licēri,	licītus sum,	<i>to bid.</i>
Mēreor,	merēri,	merītus sum,	<i>to deserve.</i>
Pollīceor,	pollicēri,	pollicītus sum,	<i>to promise.</i>
Tueor,	tuēri,	tuītus sum,	<i>to protect.</i>
Vēreor,	verēri,	verītus sum.	<i>to fear.</i>

2. Irregular.

Fāteor,	fatēri,	fassus sum,	<i>to confess.¹</i>
Mēdeor,	medēri,	—	<i>to cure.</i>
Misēreor,	miserēri,	{ miserītus sum,	<i>to pity.</i>
		{ misertus sum,	
Reor,	rēri,	rātus sum,	<i>to think.</i>

3. Semi-Deponent,—Deponent in the Perfect.

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus sum,	<i>to dare.</i>
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavīsus sum,	<i>to rejoice.</i>
Sōleo,	solēre,	solītus sum,	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si** OR **i**.

272. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **si**.I. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ĕre, si, tum.**

These are the regular endings in verbs whose stems end in a consonant. The following are examples:²

Carpo,	carpĕre,	carpsi,	carptum,	<i>to pluck.</i>
Cingo,	cingĕre,	cinxi (<i>gsi</i>),	cinctum,	<i>to gird.</i>
Cōquo,	coquĕre,	coxi,	coctum,	<i>to cook.</i>
Dēmo,	demĕre,	dempsi,	demptum,	<i>to take away.</i>
Dīco,	dicĕre,	dixi,	dictum,	<i>to say.</i>
Dūco,	ducĕre,	duxi,	ductum,	<i>to lead.</i>
Exstinguo,	exstinguĕre,	exstinxi,	exstinctum, ³	<i>to extinguish.</i>
Gĕro,	gerĕre,	gessi,	gestum,	<i>to carry.</i>
Nūbo,	nubĕre,	nupsi,	nuptum,	<i>to marry.</i>
Rĕgo,	regĕre,	rexī,	rectum,	<i>to rule.</i>
Sūmo,	sumĕre,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	<i>to take.</i>
Traho,	trahĕre,	traxi,	tractum,	<i>to draw.</i>

¹ *Confiteor, ĕri, confessus* : so *prōfiteor*.

² For *Euphonic Changes*, see 253.

³ So other compounds of *stinguo* (rare): *distinguo*, etc.

Uro,	ūrēre,	ussi,	ustum,	to burn.
Veho,	vehēre,	vexi,	vectum,	to carry.
Vivo,	vivēre,	vixi,	victum,	to live.

1. STEM-VOWEL IN COMPOUNDS. See 253, II. 1.

Carpo: dē-cerpo, decerpēre, decerpsi, decerptum, to pluck off.

Rēgo: dī-rīgo, dirīgēre, direxi, directum (214, I.), to direct.

Here *decerpo*, though it has not the same stem-vowel as the simple *carpo*, forms its principal parts precisely like the simple verb; but *dirīgo* changes the stem-vowel in forming those parts, having *i* in the Pres., and *e* in the Perf. and Sup.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OBSOLETE VERBS present the same vowel changes: *Lācto* (obs.): al-līco, allicēre, allexi, allectum (214, II.), to allure.

So *illīcio*, *pellicio*. For *ēlicio*, see 275, I.

Spēcio (obs.): a-spīcio, aspicēre, aspexi, aspectum, to look at.

II. Principal Parts in: o, io, ēre, si, sum.¹

Cēdo,	cedēre,	cessi,	cessum,	to yield.
Claudo,	claudēre,	clausi,	clausum,	to close.

Compounds have *u* for *au*: *conclūdo*, *exclūdo*.

Divīdo,	dividēre,	divīsi,	divīsum,	to divide.
Evādo,	ēvadēre,	evāsi,	evāsum,	to evade.

So other compounds of *vādo*. See 281.

Fīgo,	figēre,	fixi,	fixum,	to fasten.
Flecto,	flectēre,	flexi,	flexum,	to bend.
Frendo,	frendēre,	—	{ frēsūm, fressum,	to gnash.
Laedo,	laedēre,	laesi,	laesum,	to hurt.

Compounds have *i* for *ae*: *illūdo*, etc.

Lūdo,	ludēre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	to play.
Mergo,	mergēre,	mersi,	mersum,	to dip.
Mitto,	mittēre,	mīsi,	missum,	to send.
Necto,	nectēre,	{ nexi, nexui, ²	nexum,	to bind.
Pecto,	pectēre,	pexi,	pexum,	to comb.
Plecto,	plectēre,	plexi,	plexum,	to plait.
Plaudo,	plaudēre,	plausi,	plausum,	to applaud.

So *applaudo*; other compounds have *o* for *au*: *explōdo*, etc.

Prēmō,	premēre,	pressi,	pressum (258, I. 4),	to press.
Quātio,	quatēre,	quassi,	quassum (258, I. 2),	to shake.

Compounds have *cu* for *qua*: *concūtio*, etc.

Rādo,	radēre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	to shave.
Rōdo,	rodēre,	rōsi,	rōsum,	to gnaw.
Spargo,	spargēre,	sparsi,	sparsum,	to scatter.

Compounds generally have *e* for *a*: *aspergo*, *respergo*.

Tergo,	tergēre,	tersi,	tersum,	to wipe off.
--------	----------	--------	---------	--------------

Also *tergeo*, *tergēre* (Conj. II.); compounds take this form.

Trūdo,	trudēre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	to thrust.
--------	----------	--------	---------	------------

¹ For *Euphonic Changes*, see 258.

² Compounds take this form in the Perfect.

273. STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN *i*.

I. WITH REDUPLICATION.

1. Principal Parts in : *o*, *io*, *ěre*, *i*, *tum*.

Abdo, *abděre*, *abdīdi*, *abditum*, *to hide.*

So all compounds of *do*, except those of Conj. I. (261): *addo*, *condo*, *crědo*, *dědo*, *zdo*, *indo*, *obdo*, *perdo*, *prědo*, *reddo*, *trědo*, *vendo*; but *abs-condo* generally drops reduplication: *abs-condi*.

Căno, *caněre*, *cěcni*, *cantum*, *to sing.*

Concino, *ěre*, *concinui*, —; so *occino* and *praecono*; other compounds want Perf. and Sup.

Crědo, *creděre*, *credīdi*, *credītum*,¹ *to believe.*

Disco, *discěre*, *didici*, — *to learn.*

Do, Conj. I. See *abdo*, above.

Pango, *pangěre*, *pěpigi*, *pactum*, *to bargain.*

Pango, *pangěre*, { *panxi*, { *panctum*,
 { *pěgi*, { *pactum*, *to fix in.*

Compingo, *ěre*, *compěgi*, *compactum*; so also *impingo*. *Děpango* wants Perf.; *rěpango*, Perf. and Sup.

Părio, *parěre*, *pěpěri*, *partum*, *to bring forth.*

Participle, *paritūrus*; compounds are of Conj. IV.

Pungo, *pungěre*, *pűpűgi*, *punctum*, *to prick.*

Compounds thus *compungo*, *ěre*, *compunxi*, *compunctum*.

Sisto, *sistěre*, *stīti*, *stātum*, *to place.*

Sisto seems to have been derived from *sto*, and forms the Perf. and Sup. after that analogy.—Compounds thus: *consisto*, *ěre*, *constiti*, *constitum*; but *circumstěti* also occurs.

Tango, *tangěre*, *tětīgi*, *tactum*, *to touch.*

Compounds thus: *attingo*, *ěre*, *attigi*, *attactum*.

Tendo, *tenděre*, *tětendi*, { *tentum*,
 { *tensum*, *to stretch.*

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., *tentum*, but *dětendo* and *ostendo* have *tensum*; and *extendo*, *prōtendo*, and *rětendo*, have both forms.

Tollo, *tollěre*, { *tětūli* (*obs.*),
 { *sustūli*, *sublātum*, *to raise.*

Attollo and *extollo* want Perf. and Sup.

Vendo, *venděre*, *vendīdi*, *vendītum*,¹ *to sell.*

2. Principal Parts in : *o*, *ěre*, *i*, *sum*.

Cădo, *caděre*, *cěcidi*, *cāsum*, *to fall.*

Incido, *ěre*, *incidi*, *incāsum*; so *occido* and *rēcido*; other compounds want *supine*.

¹ Explained as compound of *do*; see *abdo*.

Caedo, caedĕre, cĕcĭdi, caesum, to cut.

Compounds thus: *concĭdo, ĕre, concĭdi, concĭsum*.

Curro, currĕre, cŭcurri, cursum, to run.

Excurro and *prae-curro* generally retain the reduplication, *excŭcurri, praecŭ-curri*; other compounds generally drop it.

Fallo, fallĕre, fĕfelli, falsum, to deceive.

Rĕfello, ĕre, refelli, without Supine.

Parco, parcĕre, pĕperci (parsi), parsum, to spare.

Comparco, ĕre, comparsi, comparsum, also with *e* for *a*: *comperco, ĕre*, etc. *Imparco* and *rĕparco* want Perf. and Sup.

Pello,	pellĕre,	pĕpŭli,	pŭlsum, ¹	to drive.
Pendo,	pendĕre,	pĕpendi,	pensum, ¹	to weigh.
Posco,	poscĕre,	pŏposci,	— ²	to demand.
Tendo,	tendĕre,	tĕtendi,	{ tentum, tensum,	to stretch.

Compounds drop reduplication and prefer Sup., *tentum*, but *detendo* and *ostendo* have *tensum*; and *extendo, protendo, and rĕtendo*, have both forms.

Tundo,	tundĕre,	tŭtŭdi,	{ tunsum, tŭsum,	to beat.
--------	----------	---------	---------------------	----------

Compounds drop reduplication and generally take *tŭsum* in Sup.

II. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

1. Principal Parts in : o, io, ĕre, i, tum.

Ago, āgĕre, ĕgi, actum, to drive.

So *circumdāgo* and *pĕrāgo*; *sātāgo* wants Perf. and Sup. Other compounds change *a* into *i* in the Pres.: *ābĭgo, ĕre, abĕgi, abactum*; but *coīgo* becomes *cōgo, ĕre, coĕgi, coactum*, and *dēgo, dĕgo, ĕre, dĕgi*, without Sup. *Prōdĭgo* wants Sup., and *ambĭgo*, Perf. and Sup.

Cāpio, capĕre, cĕpi, captum, to take.

So *antecāpio*; other compounds thus: *accĭpio, ĕre, accĕpi, acceptum*.

Emo, ĕmĕre, ĕmi, emptum, to buy.

So *coĕmo*; other compounds thus: *ādĭmo, ĕre, adĕmi, ademptum*.

Fācio, facĕre, fĕci, factum, to make.

Passive irregular: *fio, fiĕri, factus sum*. See 294.

So *sātisfacio* and compounds of *facio* with verbs, but compounds with prepositions thus: *conficĭo, conficĕre, confĕci, confectum*, with regular Pass., *conficior, confĭci, confectus sum*.—Compounds of *facio* with nouns and adjectives are of Conj. I.: *signīfĭco, āre, āvi, ātum*.

Frango, frangĕre, frĕgi, fractum, to break.

Compounds thus: *confringo, ĕre, confrĕgi, confractum*.

¹ Compounds drop reduplication, 255, I. 4.

² Compounds retain reduplication, 255, I. 4.

Fūgio,	fugĕre,	fūgi,	fugitum,	to flee.
Jācio,	jacĕre,	jĕci,	jactum,	to throw.

Sūperjacio has *jactum* or *jectum* in Sup.; other compounds thus: *abjicio, ĕre, abjĕci, abjectum*.

Lĕgo,	legĕre,	lĕgi,	lectum,	to read.
-------	---------	-------	---------	----------

So compounds, except (1) *colligo, ĕre, collĕgi, collectum*; so *dĕlĭgo, ĕlĭgo, sĕlĭgo*: —(2) *dĭlĭgo, ĕre, dĭlĕxi, dilectum*; so *intellĭgo, neglĭgo*.

Linquo,	linquĕre,	liqui,	—	to leave.
---------	-----------	--------	---	-----------

Compounds with Sup.: *rĕlinquo, ĕre, relinqui, relictum*.

Rumpo,	rumpĕre,	rūpi,	ruptum,	to burst.
Scābo,	scabĕre,	scābi,	—	to scratch.
Vinco,	vincĕre,	vici,	victum,	to conquer.

2. Principal Parts in : o, io, ĕre, i, sum.

Edo,	ĕdĕre,	ĕdi,	ĕsum,	to eat.
Fōdio,	fodĕre,	fōdi,	fossūm,	to dig.
Fundo,	fundĕre,	fūdi,	fūsūm,	to pour.

III. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Principal Parts in : o, ĕre, i, sum.¹

Accendo,	accendĕre,	accendi,	accensum,	to kindle.
----------	------------	----------	-----------	------------

So other compounds of *cando* (obsolete): *incendo, succendo*.

Cūdo,	cudĕre,	cūdi,	cūsum,	to forge.
Dĕfendo,	defendĕre,	defendi,	defensum,	to defend.

So other compounds of *fendo* (obsolete): *offendo, etc.*

Findo,	findĕre,	fīdi (findi),	fissum,	to part.
Ico,	icĕre,	Ici,	ictum,	to strike.
Mando,	mandĕre,	mandi,	mansum,	to chew.
Pando,	Pandĕre,	pandi,	{ passum,	to open.

Pinso (pĭso),	pinsĕre,	{ pinsi,	{ pinsitum,	to pound.
		{ pinsui,	{ pistum,	
			{ pinsum,	

Prehendo,	prehendĕre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	to grasp.
-----------	-------------	-----------	------------	-----------

Often written *prendo, prendĕre, etc.*

Scando,	scandĕre,	scandi,	scansum,	to climb.
---------	-----------	---------	----------	-----------

Compounds have *e* for *a*: *ascendo, descendo*.

Scindo,	scindĕre,	scīdi,	scissum,	to rend.
Solvo,	solvĕre,	solvi,	sōlūtum, ²	to loose.
Vello,	vellĕre,	velli (vulsi),	vulsum,	to pluck.

Compounds in good use generally have *velli*.

Verro,	verrĕre,	verri,	versum,	to brush.
Verto,	vertĕre,	verti,	versum,	to turn.

Compounds of *dĕ, prae, rĕ*, are generally deponent in the *Pres., Imperf., and Future*.

¹ For euphonic changes before *s*, see 258, I.

² *V* is here changed to its corresponding vowel *u*: *sōlūtum* for *solvtum*.

Vīso,	visĕre,	vīsi,	vīsum,	to visit.
Volvo,	volvĕre,	volvi,	vōlūtum. ¹	to roll.

CLASS II.—STEM IN A CONSONANT: PERFECT IN **ui**.

274. STEM IN A LIQUID—**l, m, n, r**: PERFECT IN **ui**.

Principal Parts in: **o, ěre, ui, tum, or ĭtum**.

Alo,	ālĕre,	alui,	{ alĭtum, altum,	to nourish.
Cello, <i>obsolete</i> . See excello, below.				
Cōlo,	colĕre,	colui,	cultum,	to cultivate.
Consūlo,	consulĕre,	consului,	consultum,	to consult.
Excello,	excellĕre,	excellui (<i>rare</i>),	—	to excel.

Other compounds of *cello* want Perf. and Sup., except *percello, percellĕre, percūti, perculsum*.

Frĕmo,	fremĕre,	fremui,	fremĭtum,	to rage.
Fūro,	furĕre,	furui,	—	to rage.
Gĕmo,	gemĕre,	gemui,	gemĭtum,	to groan.
Gigno,	gignĕre,	gĕnui (<i>f. gĕno</i>),	genĭtum,	to beget.
Mōlo,	molĕre,	molui,	molĭtum,	to grind.
Occūlo,	occulĕre,	occului,	occultum,	to hide.
Sĕro,	serĕre,	serui,	sertum,	to connect.
Trĕmo,	tremĕre,	tremui,	—	to tremble.
Vōmo,	vomĕre,	vomui,	vomĭtum,	to vomit.

275. STEMS IN **b, p, c, s, t, x**: PERFECT IN **ui**.

I. Principal Parts in: **o, io, ěre, ui, tum, or ĭtum**.

Accumbo,	accumbĕre,	accūbui,	accubĭtum,	to recline.
----------	------------	----------	------------	-------------

So other compounds of *cumbo, cūbo*. See *cubo*, 260.

Compesco,	compescĕre,	compescui,	—	to restrain.
Cumbo for cūbo, in compounds: see <i>accumbo</i> .				

Depso,	depsĕre,	depsui,	{ depsĭtum, depstum,	to knead.
Elicio,	elicĕre,	elicui,	elicĭtum,	to elicit.

Other compounds of *lacio*, thus: *allacio, ěre, allexi, allectum*.

Pinso,	pinsĕre,	{ pinsui, pinsi,	{ pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum,	to crush.
Pōno,	ponĕre,	pōsui,	pōsĭtum,	to place.
Rāpio,	rapĕre,	rapui,	raptum,	to snatch.

Compounds thus: *corrĭpio, corripĕre, corripui, correptum*.

Sterto,	stertĕre,	stertui,	—	to snore.
Strĕpo,	strepĕre,	strepui,	strepĭtum,	to make a noise.
Texo,	texĕre,	texui,	textum,	to weave.

¹ See foot-note, p. 119.

II. Principal Parts in: **o, ěre, sui, sum.**

Měto,	metěre,	messui,	messum,	to reap.
Necto,	nectěre,	{ nexi, nexui,	nexum,	to bind.

1. The Perfect in *sui* is a double formation, *si* enlarged to *sui*.

III. Many Inceptives in *esco* form the Perfect in *ui* from their primitives. See 282, I. 2.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A VOWEL: PERFECT IN **vi** OR **i**.276. STEM IN **a**: PERFECT IN **vi**.

Present stem adds sc or n. See 251, 2 and 4.

Invětērasco, ¹	inveterascěre,	inveterāvi,	inveterātum,	to grow old.
Pasco, ¹	pascěre,	pāvi,	pastum,	to feed.
Sterno, ²	sterněre,	strāvi,	strātum,	to strew.
Větērasco, ¹	veterascěre,	veterāvi,	—	to grow old.

1. *Sěro*, stem *sa* (251, 7), thus:

Sěro,	serěre,	sěvi,	sātum,	to sow.
-------	---------	-------	--------	---------

Compounds thus: *consěro, ěre, consěvi, consitum*.

277. STEM IN **e**: PERFECT IN **vi**.

Present Stem adds sc or n. See 251.

Abōlesco, ³	ābolescěre,	abolēvi,	abolitum,	to disappear.
------------------------	-------------	----------	-----------	---------------

So *inōlesco*; but *ādōlesco* has Supine *adultum*; *exōlesco, exolitum*; *obsōlesco, obsolitum*.

Cerno, ⁴	cerněre,	crēvi,	crētum,	to decide.
Cresco,	crescěre,	crēvi,	crētum,	to grow.

Inresco and *succresco* want Supine.

Quiesco, ³	quiescěre,	quiēvi,	quiētum,	to rest.
Sperno, ⁴	sperněre,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	to spurn.
Suesco, ³	suescěre,	suēvi,	suētum,	to become accustomed.

278. STEM IN **i**: PERFECT IN **vi**.

Cūpio,	cupěre,	cupīvi,	cupītum,	to desire.
Līno, ⁵	liněre,	līvi or lēvi,	lītum,	to smear.
Sāpio,	sapěre,	sapīvi, sapui,	—	to taste.

Compounds have *i* for *a*, as *rēsīpio*. *Dēsīpio* wants Perf. and Sup.

¹ Stem *invětēra*, etc., strengthened by adding *sc*. See 251, 4. The stem of *pasco* is *pa, pas*.

² Stem *stra*, by metathesis *star*, lengthened to *starn* (251, 2). The vowel *a* is then lightened to *e* before the two consonants *rn*.

³ Stems *ābōle, quie*, etc.

⁴ Stems *cre* and *spre*, by metathesis *cer* and *sper*, lengthened to *cern* and *spern*.

⁵ Present adds *n*.

Sino, ¹	sinĕre,	sĭvi,	sĭtum,	to permit.
Tĕro, ²	terĕre,	trĭvi,	trĭtum,	to rub.

1. A few Inchoatives in *isco* form the Perfect in *vi* from their primitives. See 282, I. 1.

2. The following verbs have *i*-stems in the Perfect and Supine, but consonant stems in the Present.

Arcesso,	arcessĕre,	arcessĭvi,	arcessĭtum,	to call for.
Căpesso,	capessĕre,	capessĭvi,	capessĭtum,	to lay hold of.
Făcesso,	facessĕre,	{ facessĭvi,	facessĭtum,	to make.
		{ facessi,		
Incesso,	incessĕre,	incessĭvi or -cessi, —		to attack.
Lăcesso,	laccessĕre,	laccessĭvi,	laccessĭtum,	to provoke.
Pĕto,	petĕre,	petĭvi,	petĭtum,	to ask.
Quaero,	quaerĕre,	quaesĭvi,	quaesĭtum,	to seek.

Compounds thus: *acquĭro*, *ĕre*, *acquĭsĭvi*, *acquĭsĭtum*.

Rŭdo,	rudĕre,	rudĭvi,	rudĭtum,	to bray.
-------	---------	---------	----------	----------

3. *Nosco* and its compounds form the Perfect in *vi*.

Nosco,	noscĕre,	nŏvi,	nŏtum,	to know.
--------	----------	-------	--------	----------

So *ignosco*.—*Agnosco* and *cognosco* have *ĭtum* in Sup., *agnĭtum*; *dignosco* and *internosco* want Supine.

279. STEM IN u: PERFECT IN i.

Principal Parts in : o, ĕre, i, tum.

The following are examples :

Acuo,	ăcuĕre,	acui,	acŭtum,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	arguĕre,	argui,	argŭtum,	to convict.

Coarguo and *ređarguo* want the Supine.

Imbuo,	imbuĕre,	imbui,	imbŭtum,	to imbue.
Mĭnuo,	minuĕre,	minui,	minŭtum,	to diminish.
Ruo,	ruĕre,	ruĭ,	rŭtum,	to fall.

Part. *ruĭtŭrus*.—*Corruo* and *irruo* want Sup.

Stătuo,	statuĕre,	stătui,	statŭtum,	to place.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	-----------

Compounds change *a* into *i*: *constĭtuo*.

Tribuo,	tribuĕre,	tribui,	tribŭtum,	to impart.
---------	-----------	---------	-----------	------------

1. *Fluo* and *struo* have the Perfect in *xi*.

Fluo,	fluĕre,	fluxi,	fluxum,	to flow.
Struo,	struĕre,	struxi,	structum,	to build.

280. SUPINE WANTING.—The following verbs, with the Perfect in *si* or *i*, want the Supine :

¹ Present adds *n*.

² Stem *tri*, by metathesis and change of vowel *ter*.

Ango, ęre, anxī, to strangle.

Annuo, ęre, ī, to assent.

So other compounds of *nuo*, but *abnuo* has Part. *abnuiturus*.

Bătuo, ęre, ī, to beat.

Bibo, ęre, ī, to drink.

Congruo, ęre, ī, to agree.

Ingruo, ęre, ī, to assail.

Lambo, ęre, ī, to lick.

Luo, ęre, ī, to wash.

Part. *luiturus*. Compounds—*abluo*, *aluo*, etc.—have Sup. *lütum*.

Mętuo, ęre, ī, to fear.

Ningo, ęre, ninxi, to snow.

Pluo, ęre, ī or vi, to rain.

Psallo, ęre, ī, to play on a stringed instrument.

Sido, ęre, ī, to sit down.

Perf. and Sup. generally supplied from *sędeo*; hence *sędi*, *sęssum*. So in compounds.

Strido, ęre, ī, to creak.

Also *strideo*, *ęre* (Conj. II.).

Sternuo, ęre, ī, to sneeze.

281. PERFECT AND SUPINE WANTING.—Some verbs want both Perfect and Supine :

Clango, to clang.

Claudo, to be lame.

Fătisco, to gape.

Glisco, to grow.

Hisco, to gape.

Stinguo, to quench ;

but *distinguo*, ęre,

distinxi, *distinctum* ;

so *exstinguo*.

Temno, to despise ; but

contemno, ęre, *con-*

tempsi, *contemptum*.

Vădo, to go. See *ęvă-*

do, 272, II.

Vergo, to incline.

1. For Inceptives, see 282, II.

282. INCEPTIVES.

Inceptives end in **sco**, and denote the beginning of an action. When formed from verbs, they are called *Verbal Inceptives*, and when formed from nouns or adjectives, *Denominative Inceptives*.

I. VERBAL INCEPTIVES.—Most verbal inceptives want the *Supine*, but take the *Perfect* of their primitives :

Acesco	(ăcco),	ăcescęre,	acui,	————	to become sour.
Aresco	(ăreo),	ărescęre,	arui,	————	to become dry.
Călesco	(căleo),	calescęre,	calui,	————	to become warm.
Flōresco	(flōreo),	florescęre,	florui,	————	to begin to bloom.
Tępesco	(tępeo),	tepescęre,	tępui,	————	to become warm.
Vīresco	(vīreo),	virescęre,	vīrui,	————	to become green.

1. The following take the Perfect and Supine of their primitives :

Abōlesco	(ăb, ôleo),	ęre, ăbolęvi,	abolitum, ¹	to disappear.
Coălesco	(côn, âlo),	ęre, coălui,	coalitum,	to coalesce.
Concūpisco	(con, cūpio),	ęre, concupīvi,	concupitum,	to desire.
Convălesco	(con, văleo),	ęre, convălui,	convalitum,	to grow strong.
Exardesco	(ex, ardeo),	ęre, exarsi,	exarsum,	to burn.
Invętęrasco	(invętęro),	ęre, inveterăvi,	inveteratum,	to grow old.
Obdormisco	(ôb, dormio),	ęre, obdormīvi,	obdormitum,	to fall asleep.

¹ So *inōlesco*; but *adōlesco* has Sup. *adultum*; *exōlesco*, *exolētum*; *obōlesco*, *obolētum*.

Rēvīvisco	(<i>rē, vīvo</i>),	ēre, revixi,	revictum,	to revive.
Scisco	(<i>scio</i>),	ēre, scivi,	scitum,	to enact.

II. DENOMINATIVE INCEPTIVES.—Most denominative inceptives want both Perfect and Supine. Thus

Dītesco	(<i>dīves</i>),	to grow rich.	Mītesco	(<i>mītis</i>),	to grow mild.
Dulcesco	(<i>dulcis</i>),	to become sweet.	Mollesco	(<i>mollis</i>),	to grow soft.
Grandesco	(<i>grandis</i>),	to grow large.	Puēresco	(<i>puer</i>),	to become a boy.

1. The following have the Perfect in *ui* :

Crēbresco	(<i>crēber</i>),	ēre,	crēbrui,	to become frequent.
Dūresco	(<i>dūrus</i>),	ēre,	dūrui,	to become hard.
Innōtesco	(<i>īn, nōtus</i>),	ēre,	innōtui,	to become known.
Macresco	(<i>mācer</i>),	ēre,	macrui,	to become lean.
Mātūresco	(<i>mātūrus</i>),	ēre,	mātūrui,	to ripen.
Nigresco	(<i>nīger</i>),	ēre,	nigrui,	to become black.
Obmūtesco	(<i>ōb, mūtus</i>),	ēre,	obmūtui,	to grow dumb.
Recrūdesco	(<i>rē, crūdus</i>),	ēre,	recrūdui,	to bleed afresh.
Vīlesco	(<i>vīlis</i>),	ēre,	vīlui,	to become worthless.

283. DEPONENT VERBS.

Amplector,	i,	amplexus sum,	to embrace.
So <i>complector, circumplector.</i>			
Apiscor,	i,	aptus sum,	to obtain.
<i>Adīpiscor, i, adeptus sum; so indīpiscor.</i>			
Commīniscor,	i,	commentus sum,	to devise.
<i>Rēmīniscor</i> wants Perf.			
Expergiscor,	i,	experrectus sum,	to awake.
Fātiscor,	i,	_____	to gape.
<i>Dēfētiscor, i, defessus sum.</i>			
Fruor,	frui,	{ fructus sum,	to enjoy.
		{ frūitus sum,	
Part. <i>fruitūrus.</i>			
Fungor,	i,	functus sum,	to perform.
Grādior,	i,	gressus sum,	to walk.
Compounds thus: <i>aggrēdior, i, aggressus sum.</i>			
Irascor,	i,	_____	to be angry.
Lābor,	i,	lapsus sum,	to fall.
Liquor,	i,	_____	to melt.
Lōquor,	i,	locūtus sum,	to speak.
Mīniscor,	<i>obsolete; see commīniscor.</i>		
Mōrior,	i (iri, rare),	mortuus sum,	to die.
Part. <i>morītūrus.</i>			
Nanciscor,	i,	nactus (nactus) sum,	to obtain.
Nascor,	i,	nātus sum,	to be born.
Part. <i>nascītūrus.</i>			
Nitor,	i,	{ nīsus sum,	to strive.
		{ nixus sum,	
Oblīviscor,	i,	oblītus sum,	to forget.

Pāciscor,	i,	pactus sum,	to bargain.
Pātior,	i,	passus sum,	to suffer.
<i>Perpētior, i, perpassus sum.</i>			
Prōficiscor,	i,	profectus sum,	to set out.
Quēror,	i,	questus sum,	to complain.
Rēmīniscor,	i,	—	to remember.
Rīngor,	i,	—	to growl.
Sēquor,	i,	secūtus sum,	to follow.
<i>Tuor, antiquated form for tueor, 271, 1.</i>			
Uleiscor,	i,	ultus sum,	to avenge.
Utor,	i,	ūsus sum,	to use.
<i>Vertor; see dēvertor, etc., under verto, 273, III.</i>			
Vescor,	i,	—	to eat.
<i>Semi-Deponent.</i>			
Fido,	fidēre,	fisus sum,	to trust.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

CLASS I.—STEM IN **i**: PERFECT IN **vi**.284. Principal Parts in : **io, ire, ivi, itum.**

The following are examples :

Finio,	finīre,	finīvi,	finītum,	to finish.
Lēnio,	lenīre,	lenīvi,	lenītum,	to alleviate.
Mūnio,	munīre,	munīvi,	munītum,	to fortify.
Pūnio,	punīre,	punīvi,	punītum,	to punish.
Scio,	scīre,	scīvi,	scītum,	to know.
Sēpēlio,	sepelīre,	sepelīvi,	sepultum, ¹	to bury.
Sītio,	sitīre,	sitīvi,	—	to thirst.
Vāgio,	vagīre,	vagīvi,	—	to cry.

1. *V* is often dropped in the Perfect : *audii* for *audīvi*. See 234, 1.

2. Desideratives (332, III.),—except *ēsūrio, ire, —, itum*; *nuptūrio, ire, ivi*, and *partūrio, ire, ivi*,—want both Perf. and Sup. Also a few others :

Balbūtio, to stammer.	Fērōcio, to be fierce.	Sāgio, to be wise.
Caecūtio, to be blind.	Gannio, to bark.	Sūperbio, to be proud.
Fērio, to strike.	Ineptio, to trifle.	Tussio, to cough.

CLASS II.—STEM IN **c, l, or r**: PERFECT IN **ui**.

Present Stem adds i. See 251, 3.

285. Principal Parts in : **io, ire, ui, tum.**

Amīcio,	āmīcīre,	amicui (xi),	amictum,	to clothe.
Apērio,	āpērīre,	aperui,	apertum,	to open.
Opērio,	ōperīre,	operui,	opertum,	to cover.
Sālīo,	salīre,	salui (ii),	(saltum),	to leap.

Compounds thus: *dēsīlio, ire, ui (ii), (desultum).*

¹ Supine irregular.

CLASS III.—STEM IN A CONSONANT : PERFECT IN **si** OR **i**.286. STEM IN A CONSONANT : PERFECT IN **si**.I. Principal Parts in : **io**, **ire**, **si**, **tum**.

Farcio,	farcīre,	farsi,	{ fartum, farctum,	to stuff.
Compounds thus : <i>confercio, ire, confersi, confertum.</i>				
Fulcio,	fulcīre,	fulsi,	fultum,	to prop.
Haurio, ¹	haurīre,	hausi,	haustum, hausum,	to draw.
Sancio,	sancīre,	sanxi,	{ sancitum, sanctum,	to ratify.
Sarcio,	sarcīre,	sarsi,	sartum,	to patch.
Sēpio,	sepīre,	sepsi,	septum,	to hedge in.
Vincio,	vincīre,	vinxi,	vinctum,	to bind.

II. Principal Parts in : **io**, **ire**, **si**, **sum**.

Raucio,	raucīre,	rausi,	rausum,	to be hoarse.
Sentio,	sentīre,	sensi,	sensum, ²	to feel.

287. STEM IN A CONSONANT : PERFECT IN **i**.

I. WITH LENGTHENED STEM-VOWEL.

Vēnio,	venīre,	vēni,	ventum,	to come.
So compounds : <i>advenio, convenio, dēvenio, invenio, obvenio, pervenio</i> , etc.				

II. WITH UNCHANGED STEM.

Compērio,	comperīre,	compēri,	compertum,	to learn.
Rēpērio,	reperīre,	repēri,	repertum,	to find.

288. DEPONENT VERBS.

1. *Regular.*

Blandior,	iri,	blanditus sum,	to flatter.
Largior,	iri,	largitus sum,	to bestow.
Mentior,	iri,	mentitus sum,	to lie.
Molior,	iri,	molitus sum,	to strive.
Partior,	iri,	partitus sum,	to divide.
<i>Impertior, iri, impertitus sum; so dispertior.</i>			
Pōtior, ³	iri,	potitus sum,	to obtain.
Sortior,	iri,	sortitus sum,	to draw lots.

2. *Irregular.*

Assentior, ⁴	iri,	assensus sum,	to assent.
-------------------------	------	---------------	------------

¹ The stem of *haurio* is *haus*. The Present adds *i* and changes *s* to *r* between two vowels. In *hausi* and *hausum*, *s* stands for *ss*—*hausi* for *haus-si*—and is therefore not changed. See 253, I. 5.

² Compound *assentio* has a deponent form *assentior*. See 233, 2.

³ In the Pres. Ind. and Subj., forms of Conj. III. occur.

⁴ Compounded of *ad* and *sentio*. See *sentio*, 236, II.

Exp̃rior,	Iri,	expertus sum,	to try.
M̃etior,	Iri,	ensus sum,	to measure.
Opp̃rior,	Iri,	{ oppertus sum,	to await.
		{ oppertus sum,	
Ordior,	Iri,	orsus sum,	to begin.
Orior,	Iri,	ortus sum,	to rise.

Part. *ōrit̃urus*.—Pres. Ind. Conj. III., *ōr̃eris, oritur*. Imp. Subj., *ōr̃er* or *or̃er*.
—So compounds, but *ad̃ōrior* follows Conj. IV.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

289. A few verbs which have special irregularities are called by way of prẽminence *Irregular* or *Anomalous Verbs*. They are

S̃um, ēdo, f̃ero, ṽolo, f̃io, eo, queo,
and their compounds.

290. *S̃um, I am*, and its compounds.

I. The conjugation of *sum* has been already given (204); its numerous compounds—*absum*,¹ *adsum*, *d̃esum*, *praesum*,¹ etc.—except *possum* and *pr̃osum*, are conjugated in the same way.

II. Poss̃um, poss̃e, p̃otui, to be able.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	poss̃um, p̃otēs, p̃otest;	poss̃um̃s, p̃otest̃is, possunt.
IMP.	p̃ot̃er̃am; ²	p̃ot̃er̃am̃s.
FUT.	p̃ot̃er̃ō;	p̃ot̃er̃im̃s.
PERF.	p̃otui;	p̃otuĩm̃s.
PLUP.	p̃otuer̃am;	p̃otuer̃am̃s.
FUT. PERF.	p̃otuer̃ō;	p̃otuer̃im̃s.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	poss̃im, poss̃is, poss̃it;	poss̃im̃s, poss̃it̃is, possint.
IMP.	poss̃em;	poss̃em̃s.
PERF.	p̃otuer̃im;	p̃otuer̃im̃s.
PLUP.	p̃otuissem;	p̃otuissem̃s.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	poss̃e.
PERF.	p̃otuis̃e.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	p̃otens (as an adjective).
-------	----------------------------

1. COMPOSITION.—*Possum* is compounded of *p̃otis*, able, and *sum*, to be. The parts are sometimes separated, and then *p̃otis* is indeclinable: *p̃otis sum, p̃otis s̃umus*, etc.

¹ *Absum* and *praesum*, like *possum*, have Pres. Participles, *absens* and *praesens*.

² Inflected regularly through the different persons: *p̃ot̃eram, p̃ot̃eras, p̃ot̃erat*, etc. So also in the other tenses: *p̃otui, p̃otuĩsti*, etc.

2. IRREGULARITIES.—In *possum* observe

1) That *potis* drops *is*, and that *t* is assimilated before *s*: *possum* for *potsum*.

2) That *f* of the simple is dropped after *t*: *potui* for *potfui*.

3) That the Infin. *posse* and Subj. *possem* are shortened forms for *potesse* and *potessem*.

3. OLD AND RARE FORMS. See 204, 2.

III. *Prōsūm*, I profit, is compounded of *prō*, *prōd*, for, and *sūm*, to be. It retains *d* when the simple verb begins with *e*: *prōsūm*, *prōdēs*, *prōdest*, etc. Otherwise it is conjugated like *sūm*.

291. *Edō*, *ēdērē*, *ēdī*, *ēsūm*, to eat.

This verb is sometimes regular, and sometimes takes forms¹ like those of *sūm* which begin in *ēs*. Thus:

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	{	<i>ēdō</i> ,	<i>ēdis</i> ,	<i>ēdīt</i> ;	<i>ēdimūs</i> ,	<i>ēdītis</i> ,	<i>ēdunt</i> .
			<i>ēs</i> , ¹	<i>est</i> ;		<i>estis</i> .	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMP.	{	<i>ēdērēm</i> ,	<i>ēdērēs</i> ,	<i>ēdērēt</i> ;	<i>ēdērēmūs</i> ,	<i>ēdērētis</i> ,	<i>ēdērent</i> .
		<i>essēm</i> ,	<i>essēs</i> ,	<i>essēt</i> ;	<i>essēmūs</i> ,	<i>essētis</i> ,	<i>essent</i> .

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	{	<i>ēdē</i> ;	<i>ēdītē</i> .
		<i>ēs</i> , ¹	<i>estē</i> .
FUT.	{	<i>ēdītō</i> ;	<i>ēdītōtē</i> , <i>ēduntō</i> .
		<i>estō</i> ;	<i>estōtē</i> .

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	<i>ēdērē</i> .	<i>essē</i> .
-------	----------------	---------------

1. PASSIVE FORMS.—*Estūr* for *ēdītūr* and *essētūr* for *ēdērētūr* also occur.

2. FORMS IN *IM* for *am* occur in Pres. Subj.: *ēdīm*, *ēdis*, *ēdīt*, etc., for *ēdām*, *ēdds*, *ēddt*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS are conjugated like the simple verb, but *cōmēdo* has in Sup. *cōmēsūm* or *cōmestum*.

292. *Fērō*, *ferrē*, *tūlī*, *lātūm*, to bear.

ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	<i>fērō</i> , <i>fers</i> , <i>fert</i> ;	<i>fērīmūs</i> , <i>fertis</i> , ² <i>fērunt</i> .
IMP.	<i>fērēbām</i> , ³	<i>fērēbāmūs</i> .

¹ But these forms have *e* long before *s*, even where the corresponding forms of *sūm* have *e* short.

² *Fers* for *fēris*: *fert* for *fērīt*; *fertis* for *fērītis* (*i* dropped).

³ Inflect the several tenses in full: *fērēbam*, *ferēbas*, etc.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
FUT.	fērām ;	fērēmūs.
PERF.	tūli ;	tūlimūs.
PLUP.	tūlērām ;	tūlērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	tūlērō ;	tūlērīmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērām ;	fērāmūs.
IMP.	ferrēm ;	ferrēmūs. ¹
PERF.	tūlērīm ;	tūlērīmūs.
PLUP.	tūlissēm ;	tūlissēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fēr ; ²	fertē.
FUT.	fertō,	fertōtē,
	fertō ;	feruntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferrē. ¹
PERF.	tūlissē.
FUT.	lātūrūs essē.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	fērens.
FUT.	lātūrūs.

GERUND.

Gen.	fērendī.
Dat.	fērendō.
Acc.	fērendūm.
Abl.	fērendō.

SUPINE.

Acc.	lātūm.
Abl.	lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

fērōr,	ferrī,	lātūs sūm,	<i>to be borne.</i>
--------	--------	------------	---------------------

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	fērōr, ferrīs, fertūr ; ³	fērīmūr, fērīmīnī, fēruntūr.
IMP.	fērēbār ;	fērēbāmūr.
FUT.	fērār ;	fērēmūr.
PERF.	lātūs sūm ;	lātī sūmūs.
PLUP.	lātūs ērām ;	lātī ērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	lātūs ērō ;	lātī ērīmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fērār ;	fērāmūr.
-------	---------	----------

¹ *Ferrem*, etc., for *fērērēm*, etc. ; *ferrē* for *fērērē* (*e* dropped).

² *Fēr* for *fērē* ; *ferto*, *fertē*, *fertōte*, for *fērītē*, *fērīto*, *fērītōtē* (*i* dropped).

³ *Ferrīs* for *fērērīs* ; *fertūr* for *fērītūr*.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
IMP.	ferrĕr; ¹	ferrēmŭr.
PERF.	lātŭs sĭm;	lātī sĭmŭs.
PLUP.	lātŭs essĕm;	lātī essēmŭs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	ferrĕ; ¹	fĕrĭmĭnĭ.
FUT.	fertŏr, fertŏr;	— fĕruntŏr.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	ferrĭ. ¹
PERF.	lātŭs essĕ.
FUT.	lātŭm irĭ.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	lātŭs.
GER.	fĕrendŭs.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Fĕro* has two principal irregularities:

1) It forms its Perf. and Sup. *tŭli* (rarely *tĕtŭli*) and *lātum* from obsolete stems.

2) It drops the connecting vowel *e* or *i* before *r*, *s*, and *t*.

2. COMPOUNDS of *fĕro* are conjugated like the simple verb, but in a few of them the preposition suffers a euphonic change:

<i>ab-</i>	<i>aufĕro</i> ,	<i>aufferre</i> ,	<i>abstŭli</i> ,	<i>ablātum</i> .
<i>ad-</i>	<i>affĕro</i> ,	<i>afferre</i> ,	<i>attŭli</i> ,	<i>allātum</i> .
<i>con-</i>	<i>confĕro</i> ,	<i>conferre</i> ,	<i>contŭli</i> ,	<i>collātum</i> .
<i>dis-</i>	<i>diffĕro</i> ,	<i>differre</i> ,	<i>distŭli</i> ,	<i>dilātum</i> .
<i>ex-</i>	<i>effĕro</i> ,	<i>efferre</i> ,	<i>extŭli</i> ,	<i>ĕlātum</i> .
<i>in-</i>	<i>infĕro</i> ,	<i>inferre</i> ,	<i>intŭli</i> ,	<i>illātum</i> .
<i>ob-</i>	<i>offĕro</i> ,	<i>offerre</i> ,	<i>obtŭli</i> ,	<i>oblātum</i> .
<i>sub-</i>	<i>suffĕro</i> ,	<i>sufferre</i> ,	<i>sustŭli</i> ,	<i>sublātum</i> .

Sustŭli and *sublātum* are not often used in the sense of *suffĕro*, to bear, but they supply the Perf. and Sup. of *tollo*, to raise. See 273, I. 1.

293. Vŏlŏ,	vellĕ,	vŏluĭ,	<i>to be willing.</i>
Nŏlŏ,	nollĕ,	nŏluĭ,	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
Mālŏ,	mallĕ,	māluĭ,	<i>to prefer.</i>

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	vŏlŏ,	nŏlŏ,	mālŏ,
	vĭs,	nŏn vĭs,	māvĭs,
	vult;	nŏn vult;	māvult;
	vŏlŭmŭs,	nŏlŭmŭs,	mālŭmŭs,
	vultĭs,	nŏn vultĭs,	māvultĭs,
	vŏlunt.	nŏlunt.	mālunt.

¹ *Fĕrrĕr*, etc., for *fĕrĕrĕr*, etc.; *ferrĕ* for *fĕrĕrĕ*; *fertŏr* for *fĕrĕtŏr*; *ferrĭ* for *fĕrĕrĭ*, *fĕrĭ*.

IMP.	vōlēbām.	nōlēbām.	mālēbām.
FUT.	vōlām.	nōlām.	mālām.
PERF.	vōluī.	nōluī.	māluī.
PLUP.	vōluērām.	nōluērām.	māluērām.
FUT. PERF.	vōluērō.	nōluērō.	māluērō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	vělm. ¹	nōlm.	mālm.
IMP.	vellēm. ²	nollēm.	mallēm.
PERF.	vōluērīm.	nōluērīm.	māluērīm.
PLUP.	vōluissēm.	nōluissēm.	māluissēm.

IMPERATIVE.

P. nōlī,	nōlītě.
F. nōlītě,	nōlītōtě,
nōlītě;	nōluntě.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	vellě.	nollě.	mallě.
PERF.	vōluissě.	nōluissě.	māluissě.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES.	vōlens.	nōlens.
-------	---------	---------

1. The stem of *vōlo* is *vōl* with variable stem-vowel, ō, ē, ů.
2. *Nōlo* is compounded of *ně* or *nōn* and *vōlo*; *Malō*, of *māgīs* and *vōlo*.
3. RARE FORMS.—(1) Of *VOLO*: *volt*, *voltis*, for *vult*, *vultis*; *sīs*, *sultis*, for *sī vis*, *sī vultis*; *vin'* for *visne*.—(2) Of *NŌLO*: *něvis*, *něvult* (*něvolt*), *nevelle*, for *non (ne) vis*, *non (ne) vult*, *nolle*.—(3) Of *MALO*: *māvōlo*, *māvēlm*, *mavellem*, for *mālo*, *mālm*, *mallem*.

294. *Fīō*, *fiērī*, *factūs sūm*, *to become, be made.*³

INDICATIVE.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PRES.	fīō, fīs, fīt;	fīmūs, fītīs, fīunt.
IMP.	fiēbām;	fiēbāmūs.
FUT.	fiām;	fiēmūs.

¹ *Vělm* is inflected like *sim*, and *vellem* like *essem*.

² *Vellēm* and *velle* are syncopated forms for *velērem*, *velēre*; *e* is dropped and *r* assimilated; *velērem*, *velrem*, *vellem*; *velēre*, *velre*, *velle*. So *nollem* and *nolle*, for *nolērem* and *nolēre*; *mallem* and *malle*, for *malērem* and *malēre*.

³ COMPOUNDS of *fīo* are conjugated like the simple verb, but *confīt*, *dēfīt*, and *infīt* are defective. See 297, III. 2.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
PERF.	factūs sūm ;	factī sūmūs.
PLUP.	factūs ērām ;	factī ērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	factūs ērō ;	factī ērimūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	fiām ;	fiāmūs.
IMP.	fiērēm ;	fiērēmūs.
PERF.	factūs sīm ;	factī sīmūs.
PLUP.	factūs essēm ;	factī essēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fī ;	fītě.
-------	------	-------

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	fiērī.
PERF.	factūs essě.
FUT.	factūm irī.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF. factūs.
GER. faciendūs.

295. Eō, irě, ivī, itūm, *to go.*

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	eō, is, it ;	imūs, itīs, eunt.
IMP.	ibām ;	ibāmūs.
FUT.	ibō ;	ibīmūs.
PERF.	ivī ;	ivīmūs.
PLUP.	ivērām ;	ivērāmūs.
FUT. PERF.	ivērō ;	ivērīmūs.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	eām ;	eāmūs.
IMP.	irēm ;	irēmūs.
PERF.	ivērīm ;	ivērīmūs.
PLUP.	ivissēm ;	ivissēmūs.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	I;	itě.
FUT.	itō,	itōtě,
	itō;	euntō.

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	irě.
PERF.	ivissě.
FUT.	itūrūs essě.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. iens. <i>Gen.</i> euntīs.
FUT. itūrūs.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen.	eundī.	
Dat.	eundŏ.	
Acc.	eundŭm.	Acc. ĭtŭm.
Abl.	eundŏ.	Abl. ĭtŭ.

1. IRREGULARITIES.—*Eo* is a verb of the fourth conjugation, but it forms the Sup. with a short vowel (*itum*) and is irregular in several parts of the present system. It admits contraction according to 234: *istis* for *ivistis*, etc.

2. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—*Eo*, as an intransitive verb, wants the Passive, except when used impersonally in the third singular, *itur*, *ibatur*, etc. (301, 1), but *iri*, the Pass. Infin., occurs as an auxiliary in the Fut. Infin. Pass. of the regular conjugations: *amatum iri*, etc.

3. COMPOUNDS of *eo* are generally conjugated like *eo*, but shorten *ivi* into *iĭ*.—*Veneo* (*vĕnum eo*) has sometimes *vĕniĕbam* for *veniĕbam*. Many compounds want the supine, and a few admit in the Fut. a rare form in *eĕm*, *iĕs*, *iĕt*.

Transitive compounds have also the Passive: *adeo*, to approach, *adeor*, *adiris*, *aditur*, etc.

Ambio is regular, like *audio*, though *ambibam* for *ambiĕbam* occurs.

296. *Queo*, *quĕre*, *quĭvi*, *quĭtum*, to be able, and *nĕqueo*, *nĕquĕre*, *nequĭvi* (*iĭ*), *nequĭtum*, to be unable, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the Imperative and Gerund, and are rare except in the Present tense.¹

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

297. Defective Verbs want certain parts. The following are the most important.²

I. PRESENT SYSTEM WANTING.

Coepi, *I have begun*. Mĕmĭni, *I remember*. Odi, *I hate*.

INDICATIVE.

PERF.	coepī.	mĕmĭnī.	ōdī.
PLUP.	coepĕrām.	mĕmĭnĕrām.	ōdĕrām.
FUT. PERF.	coepĕrŏ.	mĕmĭnĕrŏ.	ōdĕrŏ.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PERF.	coepĕrĭm.	mĕmĭnĕrĭm.	ōdĕrĭm.
PLUP.	coepissĕm.	mĕmĭnissĕm.	ōdissĕm.

¹ A passive form *quĭtur*, *nequĭtur*, etc., sometimes occurs before a Pass. Infin.

² Many, which want the Perf. or Sup. or both, have been mentioned under the Classification of Verbs. See 259 to 283.

IMPERATIVE.

	S. měmentŏ.	
	P. měmentŏtě.	

INFINITIVE.

PERF.	coepissě.	měmñissě.	ŏdissě.
FUT.	coeptŭrŭs essě.		ŏsŭrŭs essě.

PARTICIPLE.

PERF.	coeptŭs.		ŏsŭs. ¹
FUT.	coeptŭrŭs.		ŏsŭrŭs.

1. PASSIVE FORM.—With passive infinitives *coepi* generally takes the passive form: *coeptus sum*, *eram*, etc. The Part. *coeptus* is passive in sense.

2. PRESENT IN SENSE.—*Memini* and *ŏdi* are present in sense; hence in the Pluperf. and Fut. Perf. they have the sense of the Imperf. and Fut.—*Nŏvi*, I know, Perf. of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuēvi*, I am wont, Perf. of *consuesco*, to accustom one's self, are also present in sense.

II. PARTS OF EACH SYSTEM WANTING.

1. Aio, *I say*, say yes.²

INDIC.	Pres.	āio,	ais, ³	ait;	—	—	aiunt.
	Imp.	āiebām,	-ēbās,	-ēbāt;	-ēbāmŭs,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant. ⁴
	Perf.	—	—	ait;	—	—	—
SUBJ.	Pres.	—	āias,	aiāt;	—	—	aiant.
IMPER.	Pres.	ai (rare).					
PART.	Pres.	aiens (as adjective).					

2. Inquam, *I say*.

INDIC.	Pres.	inquām,	inquīs,	inquīt;	inquīmŭs,	inquītis,	inquunt.
	Imp.	—	—	inquiēbāt; ⁵	—	—	—
	Fut.	—	inquiēs,	inquiēt;	—	—	—
	Perf.	—	inquisti,	inquīt;	—	—	—
IMPER.	Pres.	inquē.	Fut.	inquītŏ.			

¹ *Ōsus* is active in sense, *hating*, but is rare except in compounds: *exŏsus*, *pērŏsus*.

² In this verb *a* and *i* do not form a diphthong; before a vowel the *i* has the sound of *y*: *ā-yo*, *a'-is*. See 7, 4, 4).

³ The interrogative form *aisne* is often shortened into *ain'*.

⁴ *Aibam*, *aibas*, etc., occur in comedy.

⁵ Also written *inquībat*.

3. *Fāri, to speak.*¹

INDIC.	Pres.	—	—	fātūr;	—	—	—
	Fut.	fābōr,	—	fābītūr;	—	—	—
	Perf.	fātūs sūm,	ēs,	est;	fātī sūmūs,	estīs,	sunt.
	Plup.	fātūs ērām,	erās,	erāt;	fātī erāmūs,	erātīs,	ērant.
SUBJ.	Perf.	fātūs sīm,	sīs,	sīt;	fātī sīmūs,	sītīs,	sint.
	Plup.	fātūs essēm,	essēs,	essēt;	fātī essēmūs,	essētīs,	essent.
IMPER.	Pres.	fārē.					
INFIN.	Pres.	fārī.					
PART.	Pres.	(fans) fantis;	Perf.	fātūs;	Ger.	fandūs.	
GERUND,	Gen. and Abl.	fandī, dō.	SUPINE,	Abl.	fātū.		

III. IMPERATIVES AND ISOLATED FORMS.

1. IMPERATIVES.—āvē, avētē; avētō; INF. avērē, *hail.*
 salvē, salvētē, salvētō;² salvērē, *hail.*
 cēdō, cettē, *tell me, give me.*
 āpāgē, *begone.*

2. ISOLATED FORMS.

INDIC.	Pres.	Fut.	SUB. Pres.	Imp.	INFIN.
confīt,	—	—	confiāt,	confiērēt,	confiērī, <i>to be done.</i>
dēfiť,	defiunt,	defiet,	defiāt,	—	defiērī, <i>to be wanting.</i>
infīt,	infiant,	—	—	—	— <i>to begin.</i>
SUB.	Imp.	fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrēt,	—	—	fōrent. INF. fōrē. ³
IND.	Pres.	ōvāt.	PART.	ōvans,	<i>he rejoices.</i>
IND.	Pres.	quaesō, quaesūmūs, ⁴			<i>I pray.</i>

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Impersonal Verbs never admit a personal subject. They correspond to the English Impersonal with *it*: *licet*, it is lawful, *oportet*, it behooves.⁵ They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

299. Strictly Impersonal are only :

¹ *Fāri* is used chiefly in poetry. Compounds have some forms not found in the simple: *affāmur, affāmīni, affābar; effābēris.*

² The Fut. *salvēbis* is also used for the Imperat.

³ *Fōrem* = *essem*; *fōre* = *fūtūrum esse*. See 204, 2.

⁴ Old forms for *quaero* and *quaerimus*.

⁵ The real subject is generally an infinitive or clause: *hoc fieri oportet*, that this should be done is necessary.

Dēcēt, dēcuīt,	<i>it becomes.</i> ¹	Pīgēt, { pīguīt,	<i>it grieves.</i>
Libēt, { libuīt,	<i>it pleases.</i> ¹	Paenītēt, paenītuit,	<i>it causes re-</i>
Līcēt, { līcuīt,	<i>it is lawful.</i> ¹	gret ; paenītet me,	<i>I repent.</i>
Līquēt, līcuīt,	<i>it is evident.</i> ¹	Pūdēt, { pūduīt,	<i>it shames.</i>
Mīsērēt, mīsērītūm est,	<i>it excites pity ;</i>	Taedēt, it wearies ;	pertaedēt, per-
me mīsēret,	<i>I pity.</i>	taesūm est.	
Oportēt, oportuīt,	<i>it behooves.</i>		

1. PARTICIPLES are generally wanting, but a few occur, though with a somewhat modified sense: (1) from LIBET: *libens*, willing; (2) from LICET: *licens*, free; *licitus*, allowed; (3) from PAENITET: *paenitens*, penitent; *paenitendus*, to be repented of; (4) from PUDET: *pudens*, modest; *pudendus*, shameful.

2. GERUNDS are generally wanting, but occur in rare instances: *paenitendum*, *pudendū*.

300. Generally Impersonal are several verbs which designate the changes of weather, or the operations of nature:

Fulmīnāt, *it lightens*; grandīnāt, *it hails*; lūcescīt, *it grows light*; pluīt, *it rains*; rōrāt, *dew falls*; tōnāt, *it thunders*.

301. Many other verbs are often used impersonally:

Accēdit, *it happens*; appāret, *it appears*; constat, *it is evident*; con-tingit, *it happens*; dēlectat, *it delights*; dōlet, *it grieves*; intērest, *it concerns*; jūvat, *it delights*; pātet, *it is plain*; plācet, *it pleases*; praestat, *it is better*; rēfert, *it concerns*.

1. In the PASSIVE VOICE intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi crēditur, *it is credited to me, I am believed*; tibi crēditur, *you are believed*; crēditum est, *it was believed*; certātur, *it is contended*; currītur, *there is running, people run*; pugnātur, *it is fought, they, we, etc., fight*; vivītur, *we, you, they live*.

2. The PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION (232) is often used impersonally. The participle is then neuter:

Mihi scribendum est, *I must write*; tibi scribendum est, *you must write*; illi scribendum est, *he must write*.

¹ These four occur in the third person plural, but without a personal subject.

CHAPTER V.

PARTICLES.

302. THE Latin has four parts of speech sometimes called *Particles*: the *Adverb*, the *Preposition*, the *Conjunction*, and the *Interjection*.

ADVERBS.

303. The Adverb is the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs: *cēlērītēr currēre*, to run swiftly; *tām cēler*, so swift; *tam celerīter*, so swiftly.

304. Adverbs may be divided, according to their signification, into four principal classes:

I. ADVERBS OF PLACE.

Hīc,	<i>here;</i>	hūc,	<i>hither;</i>	hinc,	<i>hence.</i>
illīc,	<i>there;</i>	illūc,	<i>thither;</i>	illinc,	<i>thence.</i>
istīc,	<i>there;</i>	istūc,	<i>thither;</i>	istinc,	<i>thence.</i>
ūbī,	<i>where?</i>	quō,	<i>whither?</i>	undē,	<i>whence?</i>

II. ADVERBS OF TIME.

Hōdiē,	<i>to-day.</i>	nondūm,	<i>not yet.</i>	saepē,	<i>often.</i>
ībī,	<i>then.</i>	nunc,	<i>now.</i>	sēmēl,	<i>once.</i>
jām,	<i>now.</i>	nunquām,	<i>never.</i>	tūm,	<i>then.</i>
jamdiū,	<i>long since.</i>	ōlim,	<i>formerly.</i>	unquām,	<i>ever.</i>

III. ADVERBS OF MANNER, MEANS, DEGREE.

Adeō,	<i>so.</i>	paenē,	<i>almost.</i>	sīc,	<i>so.</i>
ālītēr,	<i>otherwise.</i>	pālām,	<i>openly.</i>	ūt,	<i>as.</i>
itā,	<i>so.</i>	prorsūs,	<i>wholly.</i>	valdē,	<i>much.</i>
māgis,	<i>more.</i>	rītē,	<i>rightly.</i>	vix,	<i>scarcely.</i>

IV. ADVERBS OF CAUSE, INFERENCE.

Cūr,	<i>why?</i>	eō,	<i>for this reason.</i>
quārē,	<i>wherefore.</i>	īdeō,	<i>on this account.</i>
quāmobrēm,	<i>wherefore.</i>	īdeircō,	<i>therefore.</i>
quaproptēr,	<i>wherefore.</i>	proptēreā,	<i>therefore.</i>

1. For INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES, see 346, II. 1 and 2.

2. For NEGATIVE PARTICLES, see 584 and 585.

305. COMPARISON.—Most Adverbs are derived from adjectives, and are dependent upon them for their comparison. The comparative is the neuter singular of the adjective, and the superlative changes the ending **us** of the adjective into **ē** :

altus,	altior,	altissimus,	<i>lofty.</i>
altē,	altius,	altissimē,	<i>loftily.</i>
prūdēns,	prudēntior,	prudētissimus,	<i>prudent.</i>
prudētēr,	prudētius,	prudētissimē,	<i>prudently.</i>

1. MAGIS AND MAXIME.—When the adjective is compared with *māgīs* and *maxīmē*, the adverb is compared in the same way :

ēgrēgius,	māgis egregius,	maxīme egregius,	<i>excellent.</i>
egregiē,	māgis egregie,	maxīme egregie,	<i>excellently.</i>

2. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.—When the adjective is irregular, the adverb has the same irregularity :

bōnus,	mēlior,	optīmus,	<i>good.</i>
bēnē,	mēlius,	optīmē,	<i>well.</i>
mālē,	pejus,	pessīmē,	<i>badly.</i>

3. DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.—When the adjective is defective, the adverb is generally defective :

—	dētērior,	dētērrimus,	<i>worse.</i>
—	dētērius,	dētērrime,	<i>worse.</i>
nōvus,	—	novissimus,	<i>new.</i>
nōvē,	—	novissimē,	<i>newly.</i>

4. COMPARED.—A few not derived from adjectives are compared :

diū,	diūtiūs,	diutissimē,	<i>for a long time.</i>
saepē,	saepius,	saepissimē,	<i>often.</i>
sātīs,	satius,	—	<i>sufficiently.</i>
nūpēr,	—	nuperrime,	<i>recently.</i>

5. NOT COMPARED.—Most adverbs not derived from adjectives, as also those from adjectives incapable of comparison (169), are not compared : *hic*, here ; *nunc*, now ; *vulgārītēr*, commonly.

6. SUPERLATIVES IN *o* OR *um* are used in a few adverbs : *prīmō*, *prīmūm*, *pōtissimūm*.

PREPOSITIONS.

306. The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other : *in Itālia esse*, to be in Italy ; *antē mē*, before me. See 433–435.

307. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—*Ambī*, *amb*, around, about ; *dis*, *di*, asunder ; *rē*, *rēd*, back ; *sē*, *sēd*, aside, apart ; and *vē*, not, are called inseparable prepositions, because they are used only in composition.

CONJUNCTIONS.

308. Conjunctions are mere connectives: *pāter ET fīlius*, the father and son; *pāter AUT fīlius*, the father or son.

309. Conjunctions are divided, according to their use, into two classes:

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect similar constructions: *lābor vōluptasquē*, labor and pleasure; *Carthāgīnem cēpit āc dīruit*, he took and destroyed Carthage.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS,—which connect subordinate with principal constructions: *haec dūm collīgunt, effūgit*, while they collect these things, he escapes.

I. COÖRDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

310. Coördinate Conjunctions comprise five subdivisions:

1. COPULATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting union:

Et, quē, atquē, āc, *and*. Etiām, quōquē, *also*. Nēquē, nēc, *and not*. Nēquē—nēquē, nēc—nēc, nēquē—nēc, *neither—nor*.

2. DISJUNCTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting separation:

Aut, vėl, vė, sīvė (seu), *or*. Aut—aut, vėl—vėl, *either—or*. Sīvė—sīvė, *either—or*.

3. ADVERSATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting opposition:

Sėd, autėm, vėrũm, vėrõ, *but*. At, *but, on the contrary*. Atquĩ, *rather*. Cėtėrũm, *but still*. Tāmėn, *yet*.

4. ILLATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inference:

Ergõ, Igĩtũr, indė, proindė, Itāquē, *hence, therefore*. See also 587, IV. 2.

5. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause:

Nām, namquē, ěnĩm, ětėnĩm, *for*.

II. SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS.

311. Subordinate Conjunctions comprise eight subdivisions:

1. TEMPORAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting time:

Quandõ, quũm, *when*. Ut, ũbĩ, *as, when*. Quum prĩmũm, ũt prĩmũm, ũbĩ prĩmũm, sĩmũl, sĩmũlāc, sĩmũlatquē, *as soon as*. Dũm, dõnēc, quoad,

quamdiū, *while, until, as long as*. Antequā, priusquam, *before*. Postequā, *after*.

2. COMPARATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting comparison :

Ut, ūtī, sicut, sicūtī, *as, so as*. Vēlūt, *just as*. Praeūt, proūt, *according as, in comparison with*. Quā, *as*. Tanquā, quāsi, ūt sī, ac sī, vėlūt sī, *as if*.

3. CONDITIONAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting condition :

Sī, *if*. Sī nōn, nīsī, nī, *if not*. Sīn, *but if*. Sī quīdēm, *if indeed*. Sī mōdō, dūm, mōdō, dummōdō, *if only*.

4. CONCESSIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting concession :

Quamquā, licēt, quū, *although*. Etsī, tāmetsī, ētiamsī, *even if*. Quamvis, quantumvis, quantumlibet, *however much, although*. Ut, *grant that*. Nē, *grant that not*.

5. FINAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting purpose or end :

Ut, ūtī, *that, in order that*. Nē, nēvē (neu), *that not*. Quō, *that*. Quōmīnūs, *that not*.

6. CONSECUTIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting consequence or result :

Ut, *so that*. Ut nōn, quīn, *so that not*.

7. CAUSAL CONJUNCTIONS, denoting cause :

Quiā, quōd, *because*. Quū, *since*. Quōniām, quandō, quandōquīdem, sīquīdem, *since indeed*.

8. INTERROGATIVE CONJUNCTIONS, denoting inquiry :

Nē, nonnē, nūm, utrūm, ān, *whether*. An nōn, necnē, *or not*.

INTERJECTIONS.

312. Interjections are certain particles used as expressions of feeling or as mere marks of address. They may express

1. Astonishment : ō, hēm, ehēm, huī, ātāt, pāpae, vāh, ēn, eccē.
2. Joy : iō, eu, ēvoe.
3. Sorrow : vae, hei, heu, ēheu, ohē, ah, au, prō or proh.
4. Disgust : ahā, phuī, āpāgē.
5. Calling : heus, ō, ehō, ehōdūm.
6. Praise : eugē, ejā, hejā.

CHAPTER VI.

FORMATION OF WORDS.

313. WORDS may be formed in two ways :

I. By DERIVATION ; i. e., by the addition of certain endings to the stems of other words : *ámör*, love, from *ámō*, to love.

II. By COMPOSITION ; i. e., by the union of two or more words or their stems : *běněvölens*, well-wishing, from *běně*, well, and *völens*, wishing.

1. SIMPLE and COMPOUND.—Words formed by composition are called *Compounds* ; those not thus formed are called *Simple Words*.

2. PRIMITIVE and DERIVATIVE.—Simple words formed by derivation are called *Derivatives* ; those not thus formed are called *Primitives*.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

314. Nouns are derived from other *Nouns*, from *Adjectives*, and from *Verbs*.

I. NOUNS FROM NOUNS.

315. DIMINUTIVES generally end in

ülüs, *ülä*, *ülüm*, *cülüs*, *cülä*, *cülüm*.

hort-ülüs,	a small garden,	from	hortus,	garden.
virg-üla,	a small branch,	"	virga,	branch.
oppid-ülüm,	a small town,	"	oppidum,	town.
flos-cülüs,	a small flower,	"	flös,	flower.
partī-cüla,	a small part,	"	pars,	part.
münus-cülüm,	a small present,	"	münus,	present.

1. *Ulus*, *üla*, *ülüm*, originally *ölus*, *öla*, *ölüm*, are appended to a and o stems, and to Dental and Guttural Stems. When appended to a and o stems, they take the place of the final vowel.

2. The original forms *ölus*, *öla*, *ölüm*, are used after i or e : *filiölus*, little son, from *filius* ; *filiöla*, little daughter, from *filia* ; *atriölüm*, small hall, from *atrium*.

3. *El-lus*, *el-la*, *el-lum*, *il-lus*, *il-la*, *il-lum*, are used when the stem

of the primitive ends in **a** or **o**, preceded by **l**, **n**, or **r**: *ocel-lus*,¹ small eye, from *oculus*; *fābel-la*, short fable, from *fābula*; *vil-lum*,¹ a little wine, from *vinum*.

4. **Cūlus**, **cūla**, **cūlum**, are appended to **e**, **i**, and **o** stems, and to liquid and **s**-stems, but stems in **u** change **u** into **i**, and stems in **on** change **o** into **u**: *versī-cūlus*, a little verse, from *versus*; *hōmun-cūlus*, a small man, from *hōmo*. Like nouns in **o**, a few other words form diminutives in *uncūlus*, *uncūla*: *āv-uncūlus*, maternal uncle, from *āvus*, grand-father.²

5. **Uleus** and **cio** are rare: *ēquuleus*, a small horse, from *ēquus*; *hōmuncio*, a small man, from *hōmo*.

316. **PATRONYMICS**, or names of descent, generally end in

īdes , īs ,	īdes , ēis ,	iādes , ias ,	ādes , as ,	<i>masculine.</i> <i>feminine.</i>
Tantāl-īdes,	<i>son of Tantalus</i> ;	Tantāl-is,	<i>daughter of Tantalus.</i>	
Thēs-īdes,	<i>son of Theseus</i> ;	Thes-ēis,	<i>daughter of Theseus.</i>	
Lāert-iādes,	<i>son of Laertes</i> ;	Laert-ias,	<i>daughter of Laertes.</i>	
Thesti-ādes,	<i>son of Thestius</i> ;	Thesti-as,	<i>daughter of Thestius.</i>	

1. These endings take the place of the final stem-vowel or diphthong.

2. **Ides** (**ī**) and **īs** are the common endings.

3. **Ides** (**ī**) and **ēis** are used especially with primitives in *eus*.

4. **Iādes**, **ādes**, and **ias**, **as**, are used principally with primitives in *ius*, and in those in *as* and *es* of Dec. I.—*Aenēas* has *Aeneādes*, masc., and *Aenēis*, fem.

5. **Inē** and **ōnē** are rare feminine endings: *Neptūn-inē*, daughter of Neptune; *Acrīsi-ōnē*, daughter of Acrisius.

317. **DESIGNATIONS OF PLACE** are often formed with the endings

ārium ,	ētum, tum ,	īle . ³
cōlumb-ārium,	<i>a dovecot,</i>	from cōlumba.
querc-ētum,	<i>a forest of oaks,</i>	" quereus.
sālic-tum,	<i>a thicket of willows,</i>	" sālix.
ōv-īle,	<i>a sheepfold,</i>	" ōvis.

1. **Arium** designātes the place where anything is kept, a receptacle: *acrārium*, treasury, from *aes*.

2. **Etum, tum**, used with names of trees and plants, designate the place where they flourish: *ōlīvētum*, an olive-grove, from *ōlīva*.

¹ The syllables *el* and *il* do not belong to the ending, but are produced by a slight change in the stem: thus, *oculus*, *ocul-ulus*=*ocul-lus*=*ocel-lus*; *vinum*, *vin-ulum*=*vin-lum*=*vil-lum*.

² *Nūbē-cūla*, *plēbē-cūla*, and *vulpē-cūla*, are formed as if from *e*-stems.

³ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel.

3. **Ile**, used with names of animals, designates their stall or fold: *bōvīle*, stall for cattle, from *bos*.

318. DERIVATIVES are also formed with several other endings, especially with

ārius,	io,	ium,	ītium,	tus, ĭtus,	ātus. ¹
stātu-ārius,		<i>a statuary,</i>		from	stātua.
lūd-io,		<i>a player,</i>		"	lūdus.
sācerdōt-ium,		<i>priesthood,</i>		"	sācerdōs.
serv-ĭtium,		<i>servitude,</i>		"	servus.
vir-tus,		<i>virtue,</i>		"	vīr.
consūl-ātus,		<i>consulship,</i>		"	consūl.

1. **Arius** and **io** generally designate one's occupation.

2. **Ium** and **itium** denote office, condition, or collection: *servitium*, servitude, sometimes a collection of servants.

3. **Tus** and **ĭtus** designate some characteristic or condition: *virtus*, manliness, virtue, from *vir*; *jūventus*, youth, from *jūvēnis*.

4. **Atus** denotes rank, office, collection: *consulātus*, consulship, from *consul*; *sēnātus*, senate, collection of old men, from *sēnex*.

5. PATRIAL OR GENTILE NOUNS.—See 326, 2.

II. NOUNS FROM ADJECTIVES.

319. From Adjectives are formed various ABSTRACT NOUNS with the endings

ia,	ĭtia,	ītās,	ītūdo,	īmōnia. ¹
diligent-ia,		<i>diligence,</i>	from	diligens.
āmīc-ĭtia,		<i>friendship,</i>	"	āmīcus.
bōn-ītās,		<i>goodness,</i>	"	bōnus.
sōl-ītūdo,		<i>solitude,</i>	"	sōlus.
ācr-īmōnia,		<i>sharpness,</i>	"	ācēr.

1. **Itās, tās, ētās**.—*Itas* sometimes drops *i*: *libertās*, liberty, from *libēr*; *ētas* is used with primitives in *ius*: *piētās*, piety, from *pius*. Sometimes the stem of the adjective is slightly changed: *fācīlis*, *fācultas*, faculty; *diffīcīlis*, *diffīcultas*, difficulty; *pōtens*, *pōtestas*, power; *hōnestus*, *hōnestas*, honesty.

2. **Itūdo** and **ītās**.—A few adjectives form abstracts with both these endings: *fīrmus*, *fīrmūtas*, *fīrmitūdo*, firmness. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus* generally change *tus* into *tūdo*: *sollīcītus*, *sollīcītūdo*, solicitude.

3. **Imōnia** is rare: *Parsīmōnia*=*parcimonia*, parsimony, from *parcus*.

¹ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings take the place of the final vowel. This is true of all endings beginning with a vowel.

III. NOUNS FROM VERBS.

320. From the VERB-STEM are formed VERBAL NOUNS with various endings, especially with

ör; ium; mēn, mentum; būlum, cūlum, brum, crum, trum.

ām-ör,	love,	from	āmo.
gaud-ium,	joy,	"	gaudeo.
ornā-mentum,	ornament,	"	orno.
vōcā-būlum,	appellation,	"	vōco.
simūlā-crum,	image,	"	simūlo.

1. **Or**¹ designates the *action* or *state* denoted by the verb.
2. **Ium**¹ has nearly the same force, but sometimes designates the *thing* done: *aedificium*, edifice, from *aedifico*.

3. **Mēn** and **mentum** generally designate the *means* of an action, or its involuntary *subject*: *flūmen*, a stream, something which flows, from *fluō*; *agmen*, an army in motion, from *āgo*.

A connecting vowel is sometimes used: *āl-ī-mentum*. The stem is sometimes shortened or changed: *mōmentum*, moving force, from *mōveo*.

4. **Būlum**, **cūlum**, **brum**, **crum**, **trum**, designate the *instrument* or the *place* of the action: *vehīcūlum*,² vehicle, instrument of the action, from *veho*; *stābūlum*, stall, place of the action, from *sto*.

The stem-vowel is sometimes changed: *sēpulcrum*, sepulchre, from *sēpēlio*.

5. **Ulum**, **ūla**.—*Ulum* for *cūlum* occurs after *c* and *g*: *vinc-ūlum*, a bond, from *vincio*; *cing-ūlum*, girdle, from *cingo*. *Ula* also occurs: *rēgūla*, rule, from *rēgo*.

6. **Us**, **a**, **o**, sometimes designate the *agent* of the action: *cōquus*, cook, from *cōquo*; *scrība*, writer, from *scrībo*; *erro*, wanderer, from *erro*.

7. **Ela**, **ido**, **igo**, and a few other endings also occur: *quērēla*, complaint, from *quēror*; *cūpīdo*, desire, from *cūpio*; *ōrīgo*, origin, from *ōrior*.

321. From the VERB-STEM are formed VERBAL NOUNS with the endings

tōr,	tio,	tūs,	tūra.
āmā-tōr,	lover,	from	āmo.
audī-tor,	hearer,	"	audio.
mōnī-tio,	advising,	"	mōneo.
audī-tio,	hearing,	"	audio.
audī-tūs,	hearing,	"	audio.
can-tūs,	singing,	"	cāno.
pic-tūra,	painting,	"	pingo.

¹ See foot-note, p. 143.

² With connecting vowel.

1. **T** in these endings becomes **s** when added to stems which form the Supine stem in **s**: *vī-sio, vī-sus*, sight, vision. See 257.

2. **Or** denotes the *agent* or *doer*. The corresponding feminine ending is *trix*: *vīctor, conqueror; vīctrix, conqueress*.

3. **Tio, tus, and tūra**, form *abstract nouns*, and denote the *act* itself.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

322. Derivative adjectives are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, and Adverbs*.

I. ADJECTIVES FROM NOUNS.

323. **FULNESS.**—Adjectives denoting *fulness, abundance, supply*, generally end in

ōsus,	ōlentus,	ūlentus,	ātus,	ītus,	ūtus,	tus. ¹
ānīm-ōsus,	<i>full of courage,</i>			from		ānīmus.
vīn-ōlentus,	<i>full of wine,</i>			"		vīnum.
ōp-ūlentus,	<i>opulent,</i>			"		ōpēs.
āl-ātus,	<i>winged,</i>			"		āla.
turr-ītus,	<i>turreted,</i>			"		turris.
corn-ūtus,	<i>horned,</i>			"		cornu.
jus-tus,	<i>just,</i>			"		jūs.

324. **MATERIAL.**—Adjectives designating the material of which anything is made generally end in

eūs,	īnus,	īneūs,	nus,	neūs,	āceūs,	īciūs. ¹
aur-eus,	<i>golden,</i>			from		aurum.
fāg-īnus,	<i>of beech,</i>			"		fāgus.
fāg-īneūs,	<i>of beech,</i>			"		fāgus.
pōpul-nus,	<i>of poplar,</i>			"		pōpŭlus.
pōpul-neūs,	<i>of poplar,</i>			"		pōpŭlus.
pāpŷr-āceūs,	<i>of papyrus,</i>			"		pāpŷrus.
lāter-īciūs,	<i>of brick,</i>			"		lāter.

1. These endings sometimes denote *characteristic* or *possession*: *virgīneūs*, belonging to a maiden.

325. **CHARACTERISTIC.**—Adjectives signifying *belonging to, derived from*, generally end in

¹ When appended to vowel-stems, these endings generally take the place of the final vowel, but *u*-stems retain *u* before the ending *ōsus*: *fructu-ōsus*, fruitful.

icus, ilis, inus, ius; ālis, ānus, āris, ārius, ensis.¹

civ-icus,	relating to a citizen,	from	civis.
civ-ilis,	relating to a citizen,	"	civis.
ēqu-inus,	of, pertaining to a horse,	"	ēquus.
rēg-ius,	royal,	"	rex.
mort-ālis,	mortal,	"	mors.
urb-ānus,	of, pertaining to a city,	"	urbs.
sālūt-āris,	salutary,	"	sālūs.
auxīli-ārius,	auxiliary,	"	auxīlium.
fōr-ensis,	forensic,	"	fōrum.

1. **Ester, ītīmus, tīcus**, and a few other endings occur: *camp-ester*, level, from *campus*; *mār-ītīmus*, maritime, from *māre*; *rus-tīcus*, rustic, from *rūs*.

326. Adjectives from proper nouns generally end in **ānus, iānus, inus; iācus, īcus, ius, ensis, iensis, as, aeus, ēus.**¹

Sull-ānus,	of <i>Sylla</i> ,	from	Sulla.
Rōm-ānus,	<i>Roman</i> ,	"	Rōma.
Cicērōn-iānus,	<i>Ciceronian</i> ,	"	Cicēro.
Lāt-inus,	<i>Latin</i> ,	"	Lātium.
Cōrīnth-iācus,	<i>Corinthian</i> ,	"	Cōrīnthus.
Cōrīnth-ius,	<i>Corinthian</i> ,	"	Cōrīnthus.
Brītan-nīcus,	<i>British</i> ,	"	Brītan-nus.
Cann-ensis,	of <i>Cannae</i> ,	"	Cannae.
Athēn-iensis,	<i>Athenian</i> ,	"	Athēnae.
Fīdēn-ās,	of <i>Fidenae</i> ,	"	Fīdēnae.
Smyrn-aeus,	<i>Smyranean</i> ,	"	Smyrna.
Pŷthāgōr-ēus,	<i>Pythagorean</i> ,	"	Pŷthāgōrās.

1. **Anus** and **iānus** are the endings generally used in derivatives from *Names of Persons*; but others also occur.

2. **PATRIALS.**—Many of these adjectives from names of places are also used substantively as *Patrial* or *Gentile Nouns* to designate the citizens of the place: *Cōrīnthīi*, the Corinthians; *Athēnienses*, the Athenians.

II. ADJECTIVES FROM ADJECTIVES.

327. **DIMINUTIVES** from other adjectives generally end like diminutive nouns (315) in

ūlus, ūla, ūlum, cūlus, cūla, cūlum. ¹	
long-ūlus, a, um,	rather long, from longus.
pauper-cūlus, a, um,	rather poor, " pauper.

¹ See 319, foot-note.

1. **Olus**, **ellus**, and **illus**, also occur as in nouns.
2. **Cūlus** is sometimes added to comparatives: *dūrius-cūlus*, somewhat hard, from *dūrius*.

III. ADJECTIVES FROM VERBS.

328. Verbal adjectives generally end in

bundus, cundus, ūdus, ūlis, būlis, ax.¹

mīrā-bundus,	wondering,	from	mīror.
vērē-cundus,	diffident,	"	vēreor.
cāl-ūdus,	warm,	"	cāleo.
pāv-ūdus,	fearful,	"	pāveo.
dōc-ūlis,	docile,	"	dōceo.
āmā-būlis,	worthy of love,	"	āmo.
pugn-ax,	pugnacious,	"	pugno.
aud-ax,	daring,	"	audeo.

1 **Bundus** and **cundus** have nearly the force of the present participle; but *bundus* is somewhat more expressive than the Part.: *laetā-bundus*, rejoicing greatly; and *cundus* generally denotes some characteristic rather than a single act or feeling: *vērē-cundus*, diffident.

2. **Idus** retains the simple meaning of the verb.

3. **Ilis** and **būlis** denote *capability*, generally in a passive sense: *āmābūlis*, capable or worthy of being loved; sometimes in an *active* sense: *terrībūlis*, terrible, capable of producing terror. *Būlis* is sometimes added to the Supine stem: *flex-ī-būlis*, flexible.

4. **Ax** denotes *inclination*, generally a faulty one: *loquax*, loquacious.

5. **Uus, ūlus, ticius, and tivus**, also occur:—(1) *uus* in the sense of *ūdus*: *vāc-uus*, vacant.—(2) *ūlus* in the sense of *ax*: *crēd-ūlus*, credulous.—(3) *ticius* and *tivus* in the sense of the Perf. Part.: *fic-ticius*, feigned, from *finco*; *cap-tivus*, captive, from *cāpio*.

IV. ADJECTIVES FROM ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

329. A few adjectives are formed from adverbs and prepositions:

hōdiernus,	of this day,	from	hōdiē.
contrārius,	contrary,	"	contrā.

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

330. Derivative Verbs are formed from *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbs*.

¹ See 819, foot-note.

I. VERBS FROM NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

331. Verbs formed from nouns and adjectives are called *Denominatives*. They end in

Conj. I. o,	Conj. II. eo,		Conj. IV. io.
cūro,	to cure,	from	cūra.
nōmīno,	to name,	"	nōmēn.
libēro,	to liberate,	"	libēr.
flōreo,	to bloom,	"	flōs.
lūceo,	to shine,	"	lux.
albeo,	to be white,	"	albus.
fīnio,	to finish,	"	fīnis.
mollio,	to soften,	"	mollis.

1. Denominatives of the Second Conjugation are intransitive, but most of the others are transitive.

2. **Asco** and **esco** occur in Inceptives. See 332, II.

3. **DEPONENT**. Derivatives, like other verbs, may of course be deponent: *dōmīnōr*, to domineer, from *dōmīnus*.

II. VERBS FROM VERBS.

332. I. **FREQUENTATIVES** denote *repeated* or *continued* action. They are of the first conjugation, and end in **īto**, or **to**, sometimes **so**.

clām-īto, ¹	to exclaim,	from	clāmo.
vōl-īto,	to flū,	"	vōlo.
hāb-īto,	to have often,	"	hābeo.
āg-īto,	to put in motion often,	"	āgo.
can-to,	to sing,	"	cāno.
cur-so,	to run about,	"	curro.

1. Primitives of Conj. I. take **īto**, but contraction sometimes takes place: *adjū-to* for *adjūv-īto*, to assist often, from *adjūvo*.

2. **So** is used with primitives which form the Supine in *sum*. See 257.

3. Frequentatives may be formed from other frequentatives: *cant-īto*, to sing often, from *can-to*, from *cāno*.

4. **Esso** and **isso** form derivatives which are generally classed with *frequentatives*, though they are *intensive* in force, denoting *earnest* rather than *repeated* action, and are of Conj. III.: *fācio*, *fācesso*, to do earnestly;

¹ *Itō* takes the place of the final stem-vowel. This is true of all endings beginning with a vowel.

incĭpio, incĭpĭsso, to begin eagerly. The regular frequentatives sometimes have the same force: *răpio, rapto*, to seize eagerly.

II. INCEPTIVES or INCHOATIVES denote the beginning of the action. They are of the third conjugation, and end in

<i>asco,</i>	<i>esco,</i>	<i>isco.</i> ¹
<i>gĕl-asco,</i>	<i>to begin to freeze,</i>	from <i>gĕlo,</i> <i>ăre.</i>
<i>rŭb-esco,</i>	<i>to grow red,</i>	“ <i>rŭbeo,</i> <i>ĕre.</i>
<i>trĕm-isco,</i>	<i>to begin to tremble,</i>	“ <i>trĕmo,</i> <i>ĉre.</i>
<i>obdorm-isco,</i>	<i>to fall asleep,</i>	“ <i>obdormio,</i> <i>ĭre.</i>

1. **Asco** is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. I., and in a few from nouns and adjectives: *puĕr, puĕrasco*, to become a boy.

2. **Esco** is by far the most common ending, and is used in inceptives from verbs of Conj. II., and in many from nouns and adjectives: *dŭrus, dŭresco*, to grow hard.

III. DESIDERATIVES denote a *desire* to perform the action. They are of the fourth conjugation, and are formed from the Supine stem by adding **ŭrio** :

<i>ĕs-ŭrio,</i>	<i>to desire to eat,</i>	from <i>ĕdo,</i>	<i>ĕsum.</i>
<i>empt-ŭrio,</i>	<i>to desire to buy,</i>	“ <i>ĕmo,</i>	<i>emptum.</i>

IV. DIMINUTIVES denote a *feeble* action.² They are of the first conjugation, and end in **illo** :

<i>cant-illo,</i>	<i>to sing feebly,</i>	from	<i>canto.</i> ¹
<i>conscrib-illo,</i>	<i>to scribble,</i>	“	<i>conscribo.</i>

DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

333. Adverbs are formed from *Nouns, Adjectives, Participles, Pronouns, and Prepositions.*

I. ADVERBS FROM NOUNS.

334. Adverbs are formed from Nouns

1. By simply taking a case-ending, as that of the accusative, ablative, or locative :

partĭm, partly ; *forte*, by chance ; *jŭre*, with right, rightly ; *tempĕre*, *tempĕri*, in time ; *hĕrĭ*, yesterday.

¹ See foot-note on page 148.

² Sometimes treated as *Denominatives* from supposed Diminutive Nouns.

2. By taking special endings:

1) *ātīm, tīm*, denoting MANNER: *grex, grēg-ātīm*, by herds; *fūr, fur-tīm*, by stealth.

2) *ītūs*, denoting ORIGIN, SOURCE: *caelum, cael-ītus*, from heaven; *fundus, fund-ītus*, from the foundation.

II. ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

335. Adverbs from adjectives and participles generally end in

ē, *těr,* *ītěr.*

doctus, doct-ē, learnedly; *libēr, libēr-ē*, freely; *ēlēgans, ēlēgan-ter*, elegantly; *āmans, aman-ter*, lovingly; *prūdēns, pruden-ter*, prudently; *cēlēr, celer-iter*, quickly.

1. Stems in *o* take *ē* or *ītěr*; some both *ē* and *ītěr*: *dūrus, dur-ē, dur-iter*, hardly.

2. Stems in *nt* take *těr*, but drop the final *t* of the stem. See examples.

3. Adverbs are also formed with the endings *ātīm, īm*, and *ītūs*: *singūli, singul-ātīm*, one by one; *passus* (part.) *pass-īm*, everywhere; *divīnus, divin-ītus*, divinely.

4. Certain cases of adjectives are often used as adverbs:

1) Neuter accusatives in *e, um*, rarely *a*: *fācīle*, easily; *multum, multa*, much.

2) Ablatives in *a, o, is*: *dextra*, on the right; *consulto*, designedly; *paucis*, briefly, in few words.

3) Accusatives in *am*: *bīfāriam*, in two parts; *multīfāriam, in* many parts or places (*partem*, understood).

5. NUMERAL ADVERBS.—See 181.

III. ADVERBS FROM PRONOUNS.

336. Various adverbs are formed from Pronouns: thus from *hīc, illē, and istē*, are formed

<i>hīc,</i>	<i>here;</i>	<i>hūc,</i>	<i>hither;</i>	<i>hinc,</i>	<i>hence.</i>
<i>illīc,</i>	<i>there;</i>	<i>illūc,</i>	<i>thither;</i>	<i>illinc,</i>	<i>thence.</i>
<i>istīc,</i>	<i>there;</i>	<i>istūc,</i>	<i>thither;</i>	<i>istinc,</i>	<i>thence.</i>

IV. ADVERBS FROM PREPOSITIONS.

337. A few adverbs are formed from Prepositions, or are at least related to them:

intrā, intrō, within; *ultrā, ultrō*, beyond; *in, intūs*, within; *sūb, subtūs*, beneath.

COMPOSITION OF WORDS.

338. The elements of a compound may unite in three distinct ways:

I. The two elements may unite without change of form:¹ *dēcem-vīri*, the decemvirs, ten men; *āb-eo*, to go away.

II. One element, generally the first, may be put in an oblique case, generally the genitive, dependent upon the other: *lēgis-lātor*, legislator, from *lex*, *lēgis*, and *lātor*.

III. The stem of the first element may unite with the second element, or with its stem: *belli-gēro*, to wage war, from *bellum* and *gēro*; *magn-ānīmus*, magnanimous, from *magnus* and *ānīmus*; *frūg-ī-fēr*, fruit-bearing, from *frux* and *fēro*.

1. The final vowel of the stem is often dropped, as in *magn-anīmus*, or changed, as in *belli-gēro*. Sometimes a connecting vowel is inserted between the parts of a compound: *frūg-ī-fēr*, fruit-bearing.

2. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION admit the following *euphonic changes*.

A, āb, abs:—*ā* before *m* and *v*; *abs* before *c*, *p*, *t*; *āb* before the vowels and the other consonants: *ā-mitto*; *abs-condo*; *āb-eo*, *ab-jicio*. But *abs* before *p* drops *b*: *as-porto* for *abs-porto*. *Ab* becomes *au* in *au-fēro* and *au-fūgio*.

Ad,—unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, and *v*; **d** generally assimilated before the other consonants, but changed to *c* before *q* and dropped before *gn* and often before *sc*, *sp*, and *st*: *ād-eo*, *ad-do*, *ad-jungo*; *af-fēro*, *al-līgo*; *ac-quīro*, *a-gnosco* (*ad* and *gnosco*), *a-scendo*.

Ante,—the original form **anti**, retained in *antī-cīpo* and *anti-sto*.

Circūm,—unchanged, except in *circu-eo*.

Cōm for *cūm*,—(1) unchanged before *b*, *m*, *p*: *com-bībo*, *com-mitto*,—(2) **m** generally dropped before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: *co-eo*, *co-haero*, *co-gnosco*,—(3) **m** assimilated before *l*, *n*, *r*: *col-līgo*, *cor-rumpo*,—(4) **m** changed to *n* before the other consonants: *con-fēro*, *con-gēro*.

E, ex:—*ex* before vowels and before *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*, and with assimilation before *f*; *e* generally before the other consonants and sometimes before *p* and *s*: *ex-eo*, *ex-pōno*, *ef-fēro*; *ē-dūco*, *ē-līgo*, *ē-pōto*, *e-scendo*. *S* after *ex* is often dropped: *exspecto* or *expecto*.

In,—*n* assimilated before *l*, *m*, *r*, changed to *m* before *b*, *p*; in other situations unchanged: *il-lūdo*, *im-mitto*; *im-buo*, *im-pōno*; *īn-eo*, *īn-dūco*.

¹ Except of course euphonic changes.

Intēr,—unchanged, except in *intel-īgo*.

Ob,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, p*; in other situations generally unchanged: *oc-curro, of-ficio, op-pōno*; *ob-ŷcio, ob-sto*. But **b** is dropped in *ō-mitto*, and an old form *obs* occurs in a few words: *obs-ūlesco, os-tendo* for *obs-tendo* (*b* dropped).

Pēr,—unchanged, except in *pel-līcio, pel-lūceo, and pe-jēro*.

Post, unchanged except in *pō-moerium* and *pō-mērīdianus*.

Pro, prōd:—*prōd* the usual form before a vowel: *prōd-eo, prōd-īgo*.

Sūb,—**b** assimilated before *c, f, g, p*, generally before *m* and *r*: dropped before *sp*; in other situations unchanged: *suc-cumbo, su-spīcio* for *sub-spicio*; *sūb-eo, sub-dūco*. An old form *subs* shortened to *sus* occurs in a few words: *sus-cipio, sus-pendo*.

Trans drops *s* before *s*, and often *ns* before *d, j, n*: *trans-eo, trans-ŷero*; *tran-sīlio* for *trans-sīlio*; *trā-do* for *trans-do*; *tra-ŷcio* for *trans-ŷcio*; *trā-no* for *trans-no*.

3. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS (307) also admit *euphonic changes*:

Ambi, amb:—*amb* before vowels; *ambī, am, or an* before consonants: *amb-īgo*; *ambī-dens, am-pūto, an-quīro*.

Dis, di: *dīs* before *c, p, q, t, s* before a vowel, and with assimilation, before *f*; *dī* in most other situations: *dis-curro, dis-pōno, dif-fluo*; *dī-dūco, di-mōveo*. But *dīr* occurs in *dīr-īmo* and *dīr-ībeo* (*dis* and *habeo*), and both *dis* and *di* occur before *j*: *dis-jungo, di-judīco*.

In,—**n** dropped before *gn*: *i-gnosco*; otherwise like the prep. *in* above.

Por,—**r** assimilated before *l* and *s*; in other situations unchanged: *pol-līceor, pos-sūdeo, por-rīgo*.

Red, re:—*rēd* before vowels, before *h*, and in *red-do*; *rē* in other situations: *rēd-eo, rēd-īgo, rēd-hībeo*; *rē-clādo, rē-vello*.

Sed, se: *sēd* before vowels, *sē* before consonants: *sēd-ītio, sē-pōno*.

339. In COMPOUND NOUNS, the first part is generally a noun, but sometimes an adjective, adverb, or preposition; the second part is a verb or noun:

artī-fex,	artist,	from	ars and fācio.
caprī-cornus,	capricorn,	"	cāpēr and cornu.
aequī-noctium,	equinox,	"	aequus and nōx.
nē-mo,	nobody,	"	nē and hōmo.
prō-nōmēn,	pronoun,	"	prō and nōmēn.

1. GENITIVE IN COMPOUNDS.—In compounds of two nouns, or of a noun and an adjective, the first part is often a genitive: *lēgis-lātor, legislator*; *jūris-consultus, lawyer*.

2. COMPOUNDS IN **fex, cēn**, and **cōla**, are among the most important compounds of nouns and verbs; *fex* from *fācio*; *cēn* from *cāno*; *cōla* from *cōlo*: *artī-fex, artist*; *tūbī-cēn, trumpeter*; *āgrī-cōla, husbandman*.

340. In COMPOUND ADJECTIVES, the first part is generally a noun, adjective, or preposition, and the second a noun, adjective or verb:

lětī-fer,	<i>death-bearing,</i>	from	lětum and fěro.
magn-ānīmus,	<i>magnanimous,</i>	"	magnus and ānīmus.
per-fācīlis,	<i>very easy,</i>	"	pěr and fācīlis.

341. In COMPOUND VERBS the first part is a noun, adjective, verb, adverb, or preposition, and the second is a verb:

aedī-fīco,	<i>to build,</i>	from	aedēs and fācio.
amplī-fīco,	<i>to enlarge,</i>	"	amplus and fācio.
pātē-fācio,	<i>to open,</i>	"	pāteo and fācio.
běně-fācio,	<i>to benefit,</i>	"	běně and fācio.
āb-co,	<i>to go away,</i>	"	āb and eo.

1. When the first part is a verb, the second is generally *fācio*: *pātē-fācio*.

2. When the first part is a noun or adjective, the second is generally *fācio* or *āgo*. These verbs then become *fīco* and *īgo* of Conj. I.: *aedī-fīco*, āre, to build; *nāv-īgo*, āre, to sail, from *nāvis* and *āgo*.

3. Verbs compounded with prepositions often undergo certain vowel-changes.

1) *A* short and *ē* generally become *ī*: *hābeo*, *ād-hābeo*; *tēneo*, *con-tēneo*. But *a* sometimes becomes *e* or *u*: *carpo*, *dē-cerpo*; *calco*, *con-culco*.

2) *Āe* becomes *ī*: *caedo*, *in-cīdo*.

3) *Au* generally becomes *ō* or *ū*: *plaudo*, *ex-plōdo*; *claudio*, *in-clūdo*.

4. Changes in Prepositions.—See 338, 2 and 3.

342. COMPOUND ADVERBS are variously formed, but most of them may be divided into three classes:

1. Such as consist of an oblique case with its preposition: *ad-mōdum*, very, to the full measure; *ob-viam*, in the way.

2. Such as consist of a noun with its adjective: *hō-diē* (*hoc* and *dīē*), to-day, on this day; *quā-rē*, wherefore, by which thing.

3. Such as consist of two particles: *ād-hūc*, hitherto; *inter-dūm*, sometimes; *in-sūpēr*, moreover.

PART THIRD.
S Y N T A X.

CHAPTER I.

SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

SECTION I.

CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic.

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts so related that one is dependent upon the other:

Dñec ěris fĕlix, multos nŭmĕrābis āmĭcos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.

1. CLAUSES.—In this example two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous*," and (2) "*You will number many friends*," are so united that the first only specifies the *time* of the second: *You will number many friends* (when?), *so long as you are prosperous*. The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

2. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The part of the complex sentence which makes complete sense of itself—*multos numerābis amicos*—is called the *Principal Clause*; and the part which is dependent upon it—*donec eris felix*—is called the *Subordinate Clause*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, The sun descends and the mountains are shaded. Virg.

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiādes accŭsātus est, Miltiades was accused. Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS.—Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word—either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information: *Scribitne*, Is he writing? *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word. But *ne* appended to the principal verb often suggests the answer *yes*, while appended to any other word, it often suggests the answer *no*. It is sometimes appended to *utrum*, *num*, or *an*, without affecting their meaning, and sometimes inserted in the clause after *utrum* :

Utrum taceamne, an *praedicem*, *Shall I be silent, or shall I speak?* Ter.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes*: *Nonne scribit*, Is he not writing? *Non* for *nonne* indicates surprise that there should be any doubt on the question: *Non vides*, Do you really not see?

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no*: *Num scribit*, Is he writing?

4) Questions with *an*. See 2. 4) below.

5) The interrogative word is sometimes omitted, and sometimes *numquid* is used for *num*, and *ecquid* for *ne* or *nonne*: *Ecquid vides*, Do you not see?

2. DOUBLE QUESTIONS.—Double or disjunctive questions offer a choice or alternative, and generally take one of the following forms :

1) The first clause has *utrum*, *num*, or *ne*, and the second *an* :

Utrum ea vestra an nostra culpa est, *Is that your fault or ours?* Cic.

2) The first clause omits the particle, and the second has *an* or *ne* :

Elôquar an sileam, *Shall I utter it, or keep silence?* Virg.

3) When the second clause is negative, the particle generally unites with the negative, giving *annon* or *necne* :

Sunt haec tua verba necne, *Are these your words or not?* Cic.

4) By the omission of the first clause, the second often stands alone with *an*, in the sense of *or* :

An hoc timemus, *Or do we fear this?* Liv.

5) Other forms are rare.

3. ANSWERS.—In answers the verb or some emphatic word is usually repeated, often with *prorsus*, *vêro*, and the like; or if negative, with *non* :

Dixitne causam? Dixit. *Did he state the cause? He stated it*. Cic. *Possumusne tûti esse? Non possumus*. *Can we be safe? We cannot*. Cic.

1) Sometimes the simple particle is used; affirmatively, *sâne*, *etiam*, *ita*, *vêro*, *certe*, etc., negatively, *non*, *minime*, etc.

Vénitne? Non. *Has he come? No*. Plaut.

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

Iustitiam côle, *Cultivate justice*. Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

Rēliquit quos viros, *What heroes he has left!* Cic.

Exclamatory sentences are often elliptical.

SECTION II.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject :

Cluilius mōritur, Cluilius dies. Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *mōritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris *Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōritur* ; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and *in his castris mōritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE.—The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements ; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX.—The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex :

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.

SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence, expressed or implied, must be a noun or some word or words used as a noun :

Rex dēcrēvit, The king decreed. Nep. *Ego scribo, I write.* Cic. *Vīdeo idem vālet, The word video has the same meaning.* Quint.

COMPLEX SUBJECT.

352. The subject admits the following modifiers :

I. AN ADJECTIVE :

Pōpūlus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, The Roman people decreed. Cic.

II. A NOUN either in apposition with the subject, in the genitive, or in an oblique case with a preposition :

Cluilius rex mōrītur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Rex Rūtūlōrum, *the king of the Rutuli*. Liv. Līber de officiis, *The book on duties*. Cic.

1. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—Any noun may be modified like the subject.

2. APPOSITIVE AND ITS SUBJECT.—The noun in apposition with another is called an *Appositive*, and the other noun is called the *Subject* of the appositive.

3. ADVERBS WITH NOUNS.—Sometimes adverbs and adverbial expressions occur as modifiers of nouns:

Non ignāri sūmus ante mālōrum, *We are not ignorant of past misfortunes*. Virg. Victōria āpud Cnīdum, *The victory at Cnidus*. Nep.

SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

Miltiādes est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused*. Nep. Tu es testis, *You are a witness*. Cic. Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*. Cic.

1. Like *Sum* several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. See 362. 2. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.

2. *Sum* with an *Adverb* sometimes forms the predicate:

Omnia recte sunt, *All things are right*. Cic.

COMPLEX PREDICATE.

354. I. The VERB admits the following modifiers:

I. OBJECTIVE MODIFIERS:

1. A *Direct Object* in the Accusative—that upon which the action is directly exerted:

Miltiādes Athēnas libērāvit, *Miltiades liberated Athens*. Nep.

2. An *Indirect Object* in the Dative—that *to* or *for* which something is or is done:

Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor*. Caes.

3. *Combined Objects* consisting of two or more cases:

Me rōgāvit sententiā, *He asked me my opinion*. Cic. Pons īter hostibūs dēdit, *The bridge furnished a passage to the enemy*. Liv.

II. ADVERBIAL MODIFIERS:

1. *Adverbs*:

Bella feliciter gessit, *He waged wars successfully*. Cic.

2. *Adverbial Expressions*—consisting of oblique cases of nouns, with or without prepositions:

In his castris mōritur, He dies (where?) in this camp. Liv. Vēre convēnere, They assembled (when?) in the spring. Liv.

355. II. The PREDICATE NOUN is modified in the various ways specified for the subject (352).

356. III. The PREDICATE ADJECTIVE admits the following modifiers :

I. An ADVERB :

Sātis hūmīlis est, He is sufficiently humble. Liv.

II. A NOUN in an oblique case :

1. *Genitive* : *Avidi laudis fuērunt, They were desirous of praise. Cic.*
2. *Dative* : *Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, Death is common to every age. Cic.*
3. *Ablative* : *Digni sunt āmicītia, They are worthy of friendship. Cic.*

SECTION III.

COMPLEX SENTENCES.

357. A Complex sentence differs from a Simple one only in taking a sentence or clause as one (or more) of its elements :

I. A Sentence as an Element :

"Cīvis Rōmānus sum" audiēbātur, "I am a Roman citizen" was heard. Cic. Aliquis dicat mihi : "Nulla hābes vītia;" Some one may say to me, "Have you no faults?" Hor.

1. In the first example, an entire sentence—*Cīvis Rōmānus sum*—is used as the *Subject* of a new sentence ; and in the second example, the sentence—*Nulla habes vitia*—is the *Object* of *dicat*.

2. Any sentence may be thus quoted and introduced without change of form as an element in a new sentence.

II. A Clause as an Element :

Trādītum est Hōmērum caecum fuisse, That Homer was blind has been handed down by tradition. Cic. Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, The soul knows not what the soul is. Cic.

1. In these examples the clauses used as elements have undergone certain changes to adapt them to their subordinate rank. The clause *Hōmērum caecum fuisse*, the subject of *trādītum est*, if used as an independent sentence, would be *Hōmērus caecus fuit* ; and the clause *Qualis sit ānīmus*, the object of *nescit*, would be *Qualis est ānīmus*, What is the soul?

2. Forms of Subordinate Clauses.

1) Infinitive with Subject Accusative :

Hoc majōres dicere audīvi, I have heard that our ancestors said this. Cic.

2) Indirect Questions :

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

3) Relative Clauses :

Sententia, quae tūtissima vidēbātur, *The opinion which seemed the safest.* Liv.

4) Clauses with Conjunctions :

Mos est ut dicat, *It is his custom to speak.* Cic. Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic.

358. Infinitive Clauses sometimes drop their subjects :

Diligī jūcundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic. Vivēre est cōgītāre, *To live is to think.* Cic. See 545. 2.

359. Participles often supply the place of subordinate clauses.

Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing, or while he was writing.* Cic. See 576-578.

SECTION IV.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

360. Compound sentences express two or more independent thoughts, and are of five varieties :

I. COPULATIVE SENTENCES—in which two or more thoughts are presented in harmony with each other :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg.

II. DISJUNCTIVE SENTENCES—in which a choice between two or more thoughts is offered :

Audendum est āliquīd aut omnia pātienda sunt, *Something must be risked or all things must be endured.* Liv.

III. ADVERSATIVE SENTENCES—in which the thoughts are opposed to each other :

Gyges a nullo vidēbātur, ipse autem omnia vidēbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

IV. ILLATIVE SENTENCES—which contain an inference :

Nihil lābōras, ideo nihil hābes ; *You do nothing, therefore you have nothing.* Phaed.

V. CAUSAL SENTENCES—which contain a cause or reason :

Difficile est consilium, sum enim sōlus ; *Consultation is difficult, for I am alone.* Cic.

1. The **CONNECTIVES** generally used in these several classes of compounds are the corresponding classes of conjunctions, i. e., *copulative, disjunctive, adversative, illative, and causal* conjunctions. See 310. But the connective is often omitted.

2. **DISJUNCTIVE QUESTIONS** have special connectives. See 346. II. 2.

361. Compound sentences are generally abridged when their members have parts in common. Such sentences have compound elements :

1. Compound Subjects :

Aborigines Trojānique dūcem āmisēre, The Aborigines and the Trojans lost their leader. Liv.

The two members here united are: *Aborigines dūcem amisēre* and *Trojānt dūcem amisēre*; but as they have the same predicate, *dūcem amisēre*, that predicate is expressed but once, and the two subjects are united into the compound subject: *Aborigines Trojānique*.

2. Compound Predicates :

Rōmāni pārant consultantque, The Romans prepare and consult. Liv.

3. Compound Modifiers :

Athēnas Graeciamque libērāvit, He liberated Athens and Greece. Nep.

CHAPTER II.

SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

RULE I.—Predicate Nouns.

362. A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in **CASE**:¹

Ego sum nuntius, I am a messenger. Liv. *Servius rex est dēclārātus, Servius was declared king.* Liv. *Orestem se esse dixit, He said that he was Orestes.* Cic. See 353.

1. In **GENDER AND NUMBER Agreement** either may or may not take place. But

1) If the Predicate Noun has different forms for different genders, it must agree with its subject in gender :

Usus māgister est, Experience is an instructor. Cic. *Histōria est māgistra (not magister), History is an instructress.* Cic.

¹ For Pred. Noun denoting a different person or thing from its subject, see 401. For convenience of reference the *Rules* will be presented in a body on page 274.

2. WITH FINITE VERBS.—Predicate Nouns are most frequent

1) With *Sum* and a few intransitive verbs : *evādo, exsisto, appāreo*, and the like :

Ego sum nuntius, I am a messenger. Liv. *Hōmo magnus ēvāsērat, He had become (turned out) a great man.* Cic. *Exstītit vindex libertātis, He became (stood forth) the defender of liberty.* Cic.

2) With Passive verbs of *appointing, making, naming, regarding, esteeming*, and the like :

Servius rex est dēclārātus, Servius was declared king. Liv. *Mundus civitas existimātur, The world is regarded as a state.* Cic.

(1) In the poets, Predicate Nouns are used with great freedom after verbs of a great variety of significations. Thus with *audio* = *appellor* : *Rex audisti, You have been called king* ; i. e., have heard yourself so called. Hor.

(2) For *Predicate Accusative*, see 373. 1.

(3) The Dative of the object for which (390), *pro* with the Abl., and *ūco* or *in nūmēro* with the Gen. are often kindred in force to Predicate Nouns : *hosti, pro hoste, ūco hostis, in nūmēro hostium*, for or as an enemy. See also *Pred. Gen.* 401.

3. WITH INFINITIVES, PARTICIPLES, ETC.—Predicate Nouns are used not only with finite verbs, but also with Infinitives and Participles, and sometimes without verb or participle :

Dēclārātus rex Nūma, Numa having been declared king. Liv. *Cāninio consule, Catinus being consul.* Cic. See 431, also *Orestem* under the rule.

1) For *Predicate Nominative* after *esse*, see 547.

2) For Infinitive or Clause as Predicate, see 553, I. ; 495, 3.

RULE II.—Appositives.

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE :

Cluilius rex moritur, Cluilius the king dies. Liv. *Urbes Carthāgo atque Nūmantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic. See 352. 2.

1. In GENDER and NUMBER the appositive conforms to the same rule as the predicate noun. See 362. 1.

2. The SUBJECT of the appositive is often omitted :

Hostis hostem occidēre vōlui, I (ego understood) an enemy wished to slay an enemy. Liv.

3. FORCE OF APPOSITIVES.—Appositives are generally kindred in force to Relative clauses, but sometimes to Temporal clauses :

Cluilius rex, Cluilius (who was) the king. Liv. *Fūrius puer didicit, Furius learned, when a boy, or as a boy.* Cic.

4. PARTITIVE APPOSITIVE.—The parts are sometimes in apposition with the whole :

Duo rēges, ille bello, hic pāce civitātem auxērunt, Two kings advanced the state, the former by war, the latter by peace. Liv.

Conversely the whole may be in apposition with its parts.

5. CLAUSES.—A noun or pronoun may be in apposition with a clause, or a clause in apposition with a noun or pronoun. See 445, 7 ; 553, II.

SECTION II.

NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES.—Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. ¹

365. KINDRED CASES.—The cases naturally arrange themselves in pairs : the Nominative and Vocative require no governing word ; the Accusative and Dative are the regular cases of the Object of an action ; the Genitive has usually the force of an Adjective, and the Ablative that of an Adverb.

366. NOMINATIVE.—The Nominative is either the Subject of a Sentence or in agreement with another Nominative.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative : ²

Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Pātent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vīcit, The king conquered. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.

2. **SUBJECT OMITTED.**—The subject is generally omitted

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, unless expressed for contrast or emphasis, and when it can be readily supplied from the context :

Discipūlos mōneo, ut stūdia āment, I instruct pupils to love their studies. Quint.

2) When it means men, people : *Fērunt, They say.*

3) When the verb is impersonal : *Pluit, It rains.*

3. **VERB OMITTED.**—The Verb is sometimes omitted, when it can be readily supplied, especially *est* and *sunt* :

¹ This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because, it is thought, it will best present the force of the several cases and their relation to each other.

² For the Subject of the Infinitive, see 545. For the agreement of the verb with its subject, see 460.

Ecce tuae littërae, Lo your letter (comes). Cic. Tot sententiae, There are (sunt) so many opinions. Ter. Consul pröfectus (est), The consul set out. Liv.

1) *Föcio* is often omitted in short sentences and clauses. Thus with *nihil aliud* (*amplius, minus, etc.*) *quam, nihil praeterquam* = merely, *si nihil aliud, finem, etc.* : *Nihil aliud quam steterunt, They merely stood* (did nothing other than). *Liv.* Also in brief expressions of opinion : *Recte ille, He does rightly. Cic.*

368. AGREEMENT.—A Nominative in agreement with another nominative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive. See 362 and 363.

For the Predicate Nominative after a verb with *esse*, see 547.

SECTION III.

VOCATIVE.

RULE IV.—Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli, Proceed, Laelius. Cic. Quid est, Cätillina, Why is it, Catiline? Cic. Tuum est, Servi, regnum, The kingdom is yours, Servius. Liv. O dii immortäles, O immortal gods. Cic.

1. WITH INTERJECTIONS.—The vocative is used both with and without interjections.

2. NOMINATIVE FOR VOCATIVE.—In poetry and sometimes in prose, the nominative in apposition with the subject occurs where we should expect the vocative :

Audi tu, pöpulus Albänus, Hear ye, Alban people. Liv. Here *populus* may be treated as a Nom. in apposition with *tu*, though it may also be treated as an irregular Voc. See 52, 3.

3. VOCATIVE FOR NOMINATIVE.—Conversely the vocative by attraction sometimes occurs in poetry where we should expect the nominative :

Quibus, Hector, ab öris expectäte vénis, From what shores, Hector, do you anxiously awaited come? Virg.

SECTION IV.

ACCUSATIVE.

370. The Accusative is used

- I. As the Direct Object of an Action.
- II. As the Subject of an Infinitive.
- III. In Agreement with another Accusative.
- IV. In an Adverbial Sense—with or without Prepositions.
- V. In Exclamations—with or without Interjections.

I. ACCUSATIVE AS DIRECT OBJECT.

RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendīte, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

1. The DIRECT OBJECT may be

1) The *Object*, person or thing, on which the action of the verb is directly exerted, as *sālūtem* above.

2) The *Effect* of the action, i. e., the object produced by it, as *mundum* above.

3) The *Cognate Accusative*. Many verbs, generally intransitive, sometimes become so far transitive as to admit an accusative of *cognate* or *kindred* meaning:

Eam vītam vīvĕre, *to live that life.* Cic. Mirum somniāre somnium, *to dream a wonderful dream.* Plaut. Servītūtem servīre, *to serve a servitude.* Ter.

(1) This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective as in the first two examples.

(2) Neuter Pronouns and Adjectives often supply the place of the Cognate accusative:

Eādem peccat, *He makes the same mistakes.* Cic. Hoc stūdet ūnum, *He studies this one thing* (this one study). Hor. Id assentior, *I make this assent.* Cic. Idem glōriāri, *to make the same boast.* Cic.

(3) The object is often omitted when it is a reflexive (184, 5) or can be easily supplied: *mōveo* = *mōveo me*, I move (myself); *vertit* = *vertit se*, he moves (himself).

(4) Some verbs are sometimes transitive and sometimes intransitive: *augeo*, *dūro*, *incipio*, *laxo*, *ruo*, *suppedito*, *turbo*, etc.

2. WITH OR WITHOUT OTHER CASES.—The direct object may be used with all transitive verbs, whether with or without other cases. See 384. 410. 419.

3. TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS.—Many verbs transitive in English are intransitive in Latin. See 385. Conversely some verbs intransitive in English are transitive in Latin, or at least are often so used, especially verbs denoting

1) *Feeling or Mental State*: *despĕro*, to despair of; *doleo*, to grieve for; *gĕmo*, to sigh over; *horreo*, to shudder at; *lācrīmo*, to weep over; *moereo*, to mourn over; *mīror*, to wonder at; *rīdeo*, to laugh at; *sītio*, to thirst for, etc.

Hōnōres despĕrat, *He despairs of honors.* Cic. Haec gĕmĕbant, *They were sighing over these things.* Cic. Dētrīmenta rīdet, *He laughs at losses.* Hor.

2) *Taste or Smell*: *oleo*, *sāpio*, and their compounds, both literally and figuratively:

Olet unguenta, *He smells of perfumes.* Ter. Oratio rēddōlet antiquitatem, *The oration smacks of antiquity.* Cic.

4. COMPOUNDS OF PREPOSITIONS.—We notice two classes :

1) Many compounds become transitive by the force of the prepositions with which they are compounded, especially compounds of *circum*, *per*, *præter*, *trans*, *super*, and *subter* :

Murmur concionem pervāsīt, *A murmur went through the assembly.* Liv. Rhenum transiērunt, *They crossed (went across) the Rhine.* Caes.

2) Many compounds, without becoming strictly transitive, admit an Accus. dependent upon the preposition :

Circumstant sēnātum, *They stand around the senate.* Cic.

5. CLAUSE AS OBJECT.—An Infinitive or a Clause may be used as Direct Object :

Impērāre cūpiunt, *They desire to rule.* Just. Sentimus cālēre ignem, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic.

6. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—When a verb takes the passive construction

1) The direct object of the active becomes the subject of the passive, and

2) The subject of the active becomes the Ablative of Cause (414) or the Ablative of Agent with *a* or *ab* (414. 5).

Thēbāni Lysandrum occidērunt, *The Thebans slew Lysander.* Passive : Lysander occisus est a Thēbānis, *Lysander was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

7. ACCUSATIVE IN SPECIAL INSTANCES.—Participles in *dus*, verbal adjectives in *bundus*, and in Plautus a few verbal nouns, occur with the accusative :

Vitābundus castra, *avoiding the camp.* Liv. Quid tibi hanc cūrātio est rem, *What care have you of this ?* Plant.

372. TWO ACCUSATIVES.—Two accusatives without any connective, expressed or understood, may depend upon the same verb. They may denote

1. The same person or thing.

2. Different persons or things.

Any number of accusatives connected by conjunctions, expressed or understood, may of course depend upon the same verb.

RULE VI.—Two Accusatives—Same Person.

373. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing :

Hāmilcārem impērātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep. Ancum rēgem pōpulus creāvit, *The people elected Ancus king.* Liv. Summum consilium appellārunt Sēnātum, *They called their highest council Senate.* Cic. Sc præstitit prōpugnātōrem libertātis, *He showed*

himself the champion of liberty. Cic. Flaccum habuit collēgam, *He had Flaccus as colleague.* Nep.

1. **PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—One of the two accusatives is the *Direct Object*, and the other an essential part of the Predicate. The latter may be called a *Predicate Accusative*. See 362. 2. (2).

2. **VERBS WITH PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—The verbs which most frequently admit a Direct Object with a Predicate Accusative are verbs of

1) *Making, electing*: *fācio, efficio, reddo,—creo, ēlīgo, dēsigno, dēclāro.*

2) *Calling, regarding*: *appello, nōmino, rōco, dico,—arbitror, existīmo, dūco, jūdico, hābeo, pūto.*

3) *Showing*: *praesto, praebeo, exhibeo.*

3. **ADJECTIVE AS PREDICATE ACCUSATIVE.**—The Predicate Accusative may be either Substantive or Adjective:

Hōmīnes caecos reddit āvāritia, Avarice renders men blind. Cic.

4. **PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.**—In the Passive these verbs take two Nominatives, a *Subject* and *Predicate*, corresponding to the two Accusatives of the Active:

Servius rex est dēclārātus, Servius was declared king. Liv. See 362. 2. 2.)

RULE VII.—Two Accusatives—Person and Thing.

374. Some verbs of **ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING,** and **CONCEALING,** admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive:

Me sententiam rōgāvit, He asked me my opinion. Cic. *Ego sententiam rōgātus sum, I was asked my opinion.* Cic. *Philōsōphia nos res omnes dōcuit, Philosophy has taught us all things.* Cic. *Artes ēdoctus fuerat, He had been taught the arts.* Liv. *Non te cēlāvi sermōnem, I did not conceal from you the conversation.* Cic.

1. **PERSON AND THING.**—One accusative generally designates the *person*, the other the *thing*: with the Passive the accusative of the Person becomes the subject and the accusative of the thing is retained: see examples.

2. **VERBS WITH TWO ACCUSATIVES.**—Those most frequently so used are

1) *Regularly*: *cēlo—dōceo, ēdōceo, dēdōceo.*

2) *Sometimes*: *ōro, exōro, rōgo, interrōgo, percontor, flāgīto, posco, rēposco.*

3. **OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS** also occur:

1) *Cēlo*: Ablative with a preposition:

Me de hoc libro cēlāvit, He kept me ignorant of this book. Cic. Passive: Accus. of Neuter pronoun or Abl. with *de*: *Hoc cēlāri, to be kept ignorant of this.* Ter. *Cēlāri de consilio, to be kept ignorant of the plan.* Cic. The Dative is rare: *Id Alcibiādi cēlāri non pōtuit, This could not be concealed from Alcibiades.* Nep.

2) *Verbs of Teaching*: Ablative with or without a preposition:

De sua re me dōcet; He informs me in regard to his case. Cic. *Sōcrātem fidibus dōcuit, He taught Socrates (with) the lyre.* Cic.

3) *Verbs of Asking, Demanding*: Ablative with a preposition:

Hoc a me poscēre, *to demand this from me*. Cic. Te hisdem de rebus interrōgo, *I ask you in regard to the same things*. Cic.

4) *Pēto, postūlo, and quaero* take the Ablative of the person with a preposition:

Pācem a Rōmānīs pētiērunt, *They asked peace from the Romans*. Caes.

4. INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE as Accusative of thing:

Te sāpēre dōcet, *He teaches you to be wise*. Cic.

5. A NEUTER PRONOUN OR ADJECTIVE as a second accusative occurs with many verbs which do not otherwise take two accusatives:

Hoc te hortor, *I exhort you to this, I give you this exhortation*. Cic. Ea mōnēmur, *We are admonished of these things*. Cic.

6. COMPOUND VERBS.—A few compounds of *trans, circum, ad,* and *in* admit two accusatives, dependent the one upon the verb, the other upon the preposition:

Ibērum cūpias trajēcit, *He led his forces across the Ebro*. Liv.

In the Passive, not only these, but even other compounds sometimes admit an Accus. depending upon the preposition:

Praetervēhor ostia Pantāgiae, *I am carried by the mouth of the Pantagia*. Virg.

7. POETIC ACCUSATIVE.—In poetry, rarely in prose, verbs of clothing, unclothing—*induo, exuo, cingo, accingo, induco*, etc.—sometimes take in the Passive an accusative in imitation of the Greek:

Gāleam induitur, *He puts on his helmet*. Virg. Inūtile ferrum cingitur, *He girds on his useless sword*. Virg. Virgīnes longam indūtae vestem, *maidens attired in long robes*. Liv.

II. ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

375. The Accusative is used as the Subject of an Infinitive; see 545:

Plātōnem fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic.

Plātōnem is the subject of *venisse*.

III. ACCUSATIVE IN AGREEMENT WITH AN ACCUSATIVE.

376. The Accusative in agreement with another Accusative is either a Predicate Noun or an Appositive:

Orestem se esse dixit, *He said that he was Orestes*. Cic. Apud Hērōdōtum, patrem histōriae, *in Herodotus, the father of history*. Cic. See 362 and 363.

IV. ACCUSATIVE IN AN ADVERBIAL SENSE

377. In an Adverbial sense the Accusative is used either with or without Prepositions.

1. WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 433.

2. WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS.—The Adverbial use of the Accusative without Prepositions is presented in the following rules.

RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME and EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative :

Rōmulus septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambŭlāre, *to walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *to be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quatuor pēdes alta, *snow four feet deep.* Liv. But

1. DURATION OF TIME is sometimes expressed by the Ablative or the Accusative with a Preposition :

1) By the *Ablative* : Pugnātum est hōris quinque, *The battle was fought five hours.* Caes.

2) By the *Accusative with Preposition* : Per annos vīginti certātum est, *The war was waged for twenty years.* Liv.

2. DISTANCE is sometimes expressed by the Ablative :

Millibus passuum sex consēdit, *He encamped at the distance of six miles.* Caes. Sometimes with a preposition : Ab millibus passuum duobus, *at the distance of two miles.* Caes.

RULE IX.—Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquīnios, *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic. But

1. The Accusative with *Ad* occurs :

1) In the sense of—*to, toward, in the direction of, into the vicinity of* :

Tres sunt viae ad Mūtīnam, *There are three roads to Mutina.* Cic. Ad Zāmam pervēnit, *He came to the vicinity of Zama.* Sall.

2) In contrast with *a* or *ab* :

A Diānio ad Sīnōpen, *from Dianium to Sinope.* Cic.

2. *Urbs* or *Oppīdum* with a Preposition :

Pervēnit in oppīdum Cirtam, *He came into the town of Cirta.* Sall.

3. Like Names of Towns are used

1) The Accusatives *dŏmum, dŏmos, rus*:

Scīpio dŏmum rēductus est, *Scipio was conducted home*. Cic. Dŏmos abducti, *led to their homes*. Liv. Rus ēvŏlāre, *to hasten into the country*. Cic.

2) Sometimes the Accusative of names of Islands and Peninsulas:

Lātŏna confūgit Dēlum, *Latona fled to Delos*. Cic. Pervēnit Chersŏnŏsum, *He went to the Chersonesus*. Nep.

4. Names of Other Places used as the limit of motion are generally in the Accusative with a Preposition:

In Asiā rēdit, *He returns into Asia*. Nep.

But the preposition is sometimes omitted before names of countries, and, in the poets, before names of nations and even before common nouns:

Aegyptum prŏfūgit, *He fled to Egypt*. Cic. Itāliā vēnit, *He came to Italy*. Virg. Ibimur Afros, *We shall go to the Africans*. Virg. Lāvīniā vēnit litŏra, *He came to the Lavinian shores*. Virg.

5. A Poetic Dative for the accusative with or without a preposition occurs:

It clāmior coelo (for *ad coelum*), *The shout ascends to heaven*. Virg.

RULE X.—Accusative of Specification.

380. A Verb or Adjective may take an Accusative to define its application:

Cāpita vėlāmur, *We have our heads veiled* (are veiled as to our heads). Virg. Nūbe hūmēros āmictus, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud*. Hor. Miles fractus membra lābōre, *the soldier with limbs shattered with labor* (broken as to his limbs). Hor. Aenēas os deo sīmilis, *Aeneas like a god in appearance*. Virg.

1. In a strict sense, the Accusative of Specification generally specifies the part to which the action or quality particularly belongs. In this sense, it is mostly poetic, but occurs also in prose. See 429.

2. In a freer sense, this Accusative includes the adverbial use of *partem, vicem, nihil*, of *id* and *genus* in *id tempōris, id aetātis* (at this time, age), *id gēnus, omne gēnus, quod gēnus* (for *eius gēneris*, etc.), etc.; also of *secus, libra* and of many neuter pronouns and adjectives; *hoc, illud, id, quid* (454, 2), *multum, summum, cētera, reliqua*, etc. In this sense, it is common in prose.

Maximam partem lacte vivunt, *They live mostly* (as to the largest part) *upon milk*. Caes. Nihil mōti sunt, *They were not at all moved*. Liv. Lŏcus id tempōris vacuus erat, *The place was at this time vacant*. Cic. Aliquid id gēnus scribēre, *to write something of this kind*. Cic. Quaerit, quid possint, *He inquires how powerful they are*. Caes. Quid vēnis, *Why do you come?*

V. ACCUSATIVE IN EXCLAMATIONS.**RULE XI.—Accusative in Exclamations.**

381. The Accusative either with or without an Interjection may be used in Exclamations:

Heu me misērum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic. Me misērum, *Me miserable!*¹ Cic. O fallācem spem, *O deceptive hope!* Cic. Me caecum, *Blind that I am!* Cic. Pro deōrum fidem, *In the name of the gods!* Cic. But

1. An Adjective or Genitive generally accompanies this accusative, as in the examples.

2. O, *ēheu*, *heu* are the Interjections most frequently used with the Accusative, though others occur.

3. Other Cases also occur in exclamations:

1) The *Vocative*—when an address as well as an exclamation is intended:

Pro sancte Jūpiter, *O holy Jupiter.* Cic. Infelix Dido, *Unhappy Dido.* Virg.

2) The *Nominative*—when the exclamation approaches the form of a statement: En dextra, *Lo the right hand* (there is, or that is the right hand)! Virg. Ecce tuae littērae, *Lo your letter (comes)!* Cic.

3) The *Dative*—to designate the person after *hei*, *vae*, and sometimes after *ecce*, *en*, *hem*.

Hei mihi, *Woe to me.* Virg. Vae tibi, *Woe to you.* Ter. Ecce tibi, *Lo to you* (lo here is to you = observe). Cic. En tibi, *This for you* (lo I do this for you). Liv. See 389. 2.

SECTION V.

DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used

I. With Verbs.

II. With Adjectives.

III. With their Derivatives—Adverbs and Substantives.

I. DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT.—A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the action, that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative:

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Tempōri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērānt, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri stūdent, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Mundus deo pāret, *The world obeys God.*² Cic. Caesāri supplicābo, *I will supplicate Caesar.*³ Cic. Nōbis vīta dāta est, *Life has*

¹ Milton, Par. Lost, iv. 73

² Is subject to God.

³ Will make supplication to Caesar.

been granted to us. Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons īter hostībūs dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv.
Lēges civitatībūs suis scripsērunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

1. DOUBLE CONSTRUCTION.—A few verbs admit (1) the Dative of the person and the Accusative of the thing, or (2) the Accusative of the person and the Ablative of the thing: *alicui rem dōnāre*, to present a thing to any one, or *aliquem re dōnāre*, to present any one with a thing. For the Dat. of the person, the Dat. of a thing sometimes occurs, especially if it involves persons or is in a measure personified :

Mūrum urbi circumdēdit, *He surrounded the city with a wall.* Nep.

This double construction occurs chiefly with: *aspergo, circumdo, circumfundo, dōno, exuo, impertio, induo, inspergo, interclūdo.*

2. To and FOR are not always signs of the Dative: thus

1) To, denoting mere *motion or direction*, is generally expressed by the Accusative with or without a preposition (379. and 379. 4):

Vēni ad urbem, *I came to the city.* Cic. Dēlum vēnīmus, *We came to Delos.* Cic. But the Dative occurs in the poets: It clāmor coelo, *The shout goes to heaven.* Virg.

2) FOR, in *defence of, in behalf of*, is expressed by the Abl. with *pro*; for the sake of, for the purpose of, sometimes by the Accus. with *in*.

Pro patria mōri, *to die for one's country.* Hor. Dīmīcāre pro libertātē, *to fight for liberty.* Cic. Sātis in ūsum, *enough for use.* Liv.

3. OTHER ENGLISH EQUIVALENTS.—Conversely the dative is often used where the English either omits TO or FOR, or employs some other preposition. We proceed to specify the cases in which this difference of idiom requires notice.

385. The Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage is used with verbs signifying *to benefit or injure, please or displease, command or obey, serve or resist*; also, *indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, be angry, believe, persuade, and the like*:

Sibi prōsunt, *They benefit themselves.* Cic. Nōcēre altēri, *to injure another.* Cic. Zēnōni plācuit, *It pleased Zeno.* Cic. Displīcet Tullo, *It displeases Tullus.* Liv. Cūpīditātībūs impērāre, *to command desires.* Cic. Deo pārēre, *to obey God.* Cic. Rēgi servīre, *to serve the king.* Cic. Hostībūs rēsistēre, *to resist the enemy.* Caes. Sibi indulgēre, *to indulge one's self.* Cic. Vitae parcēre, *to spare life.* Nep. Mihi ignoscēre, *to pardon me.* Cic. Minītans patriae, *threatening his country.* Liv. Irasci āmicis, *to be angry with friends.* Cic. Mihi crēde, *Believe me.* Cic. Iis persuādēre, *to persuade them.* Caes.

1. OTHER CASES.—Some verbs of this class take the Accusative : *dēlecto*, *jūvo*, *laedo*, *offendo*, etc. ; *fīdo* and *confīdo* generally the Ablative (419) : *Mārium jūvit*, *He helped Marius*. Nep.

2. SPECIAL VERBS.—With a few verbs the force of the dative is found only by attending to the strict meaning of the verb: *nūbo*, to marry, strictly to veil one's self, as the bride for the bridegroom ; *mēdeor*, to cure, to administer a remedy to ; *sātisfācio*, to satisfy, to do enough for, etc.

3. ACCUSATIVE OR DATIVE with a difference of signification: *cāvēre āliquem*, to ward off some one ; *cāvēre ālicui*, to care for some one ; *consūlēre āliquem*, to consult, etc. ; *ālicui*, to consult for ; *mētūēre*, *tīmēre āliquem*, to fear, etc. ; *ālicui*, to fear for ; *prospicere*, *prōvidere āliquid*, to foresee ; *ālicui*, to provide for ; *tempērare*, *mōdērārī āliquid*, to govern, direct ; *ālicui*, to restrain, put a check upon ; *tempērare (sibi) ab āliquo*, to abstain from.

A few verbs admit either the Acc. or Dat. without any special difference of meaning: *ādūlor*, to flatter ; *cōmitor*, to accompany, etc.

4. DATIVE rendered FROM, occurs with a few verbs of *differing*, *dissenting*, *repelling*, *taking away* : *diffēro*, *discrēpo*, *disto*, *dissentio*, *arceo*, etc. .

Differre cuius, to differ from any one. Nep. *Discrēpare istis*, to differ from those. Hor. *Sibi dissentire*, to dissent from himself. Cic. See 412.

5. DATIVE rendered WITH, occurs with *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, *jungo*, *certo*, *decerto*, *lucto*, *altercor*, and sometimes *fācio* (434. 2) :

Sēvēritātem miscere cōmītāti, to unite severity with affability. Liv.

Misceo and its compounds, as also *junctus* and *conjunctus*, also take the Abl. with or without *cum*.

386. Dative with Compounds.—The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions :

ad,	ante,	con,	in,	inter,
ob,	post,	prae,	sub,	super :

Adsum āmicis, *I am present with my friends*. Cic. *Omnibus antestāre*, to surpass all. Cic. *Terris cohaeret*, *It cleaves to the earth*. Sen. *Vōluptāti inhaerēre*, to be connected with pleasure. Cic. *Interfuit pugnae*, *He participated in the battle*. Nep. *Consiliis obstāre*, to oppose plans. Nep. *Lībertāti ōpes postferre*, to sacrifice wealth to liberty. Liv. *Pōpūlo praesunt*, *They rule the people*. Cic. *Succumbere dōlōribus*, to yield to sorrows. Cic. *Sūperfuit patri*, *He survived his father*. Liv.

1. TRANSITIVE Verbs thus compounded admit both the Accusative and Dative : *Se oppōsuit hostibus*, *He opposed himself to the enemy*. Cic.

2. COMPOUNDS OF OTHER PREPOSITIONS, especially *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *circum*, sometimes admit the Dative ; while several of the compounds specified under the rule admit the Abl. : *assuesco*, *consuesco*, *insuesco*, *acquiesco*, *sūpersēdeo* (also with Acc.), etc.

Hoc Caesāri dēfuit, *This failed (was wanting to) Caesar*. Caes.

3. MOTION OR DIRECTION.—Compounds expressing mere motion or direction generally take the Accusative or repeat the preposition :

Adire aras, *to approach the altars*. Cic. Ad consules adire, *to go to the consuls*. Cic.

In some instances where no motion is expressed, several of these compounds admit some other construction for the Dative :

In oratore inest scientia, *In the orator is knowledge*. Cic.

387. The Dative of Possessor is used with the verb *Sum* :

Mihi est nōverca, *I have (there is to me) a stepmother*. Virg. Fonti nōmen Arēthūsa est, *The fountain has (there is to the fountain) the name Arethusa*. Cic. But

1. The DATIVE OF THE NAME as well as of the possessor is common in expressions of naming : *nōmen est, nomen datur*, etc. :

Scipioni Africāno cognōmen fuit, *Scipio had the surname Africanus*. Sall. Here *Africāno*, instead of being in apposition with *cognōmen*, is put by attraction in apposition with *Scipioni*.

2. The GENITIVE OF THE NAME dependent upon *nomen* occurs :

Nōmen Mercūri est mihi, *I have the name of Mercury*. Plaut.

3. By a GREEK IDIOM, *vōlens, cūpiens*, or *invitus* sometimes accompanies the dative of possessor :

Quibus bellum vōlentibus erat, *They liked the war (it was to them wishing)*. Tac.

388. Dative of Agent.—The Dative of Agent is used with the Participle in *dus* :

Suum cuique incommōdum fērendum est, *Every one has his own trouble to bear, or must bear his own trouble*. Cic.

1. DATIVE WITH COMPOUND TENSES.—The Dative of the Agent is sometimes used with the compound tenses of passive verbs :

Mihi consīlium captum jam diu est, *I have a plan long since formed*. Cic.

1) The Dative of Agent, with the Participle in *dus*, as in the Periphrastic Conjugation, designates the person who has the work to do ; while with the Compound Tenses of passive verbs, it designates the person who has the work already done. See examples above.

2) HABEO with the Perfect Participle has the same force as EST MIHI with the Perfect Participle (388, 1) :

Bellum habuit indictum, *He had a war (already) declared*. Cic.

3) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* occurs :

Est a vōbis consūlendum, *Measures must be taken by you*. Cic.

2. The REAL AGENT with Passive verbs is denoted by the Ablative with *a* or *ab*. The Dative, though the regular construction with the Passive Periphrastic conjugation, does not regard the person strictly as agent, but rather as possessor or indirect object. Thus, *Suum cuique incommōdum est*, means, Every one has his trouble (*cuique* Dative of Possessor), and *Suum cuique incommōdum fērendum est*, Every one has his trouble to bear. So too, *Mihi consīlium est*, I have a plan ; *Mihi consīlium captum est*, I have a plan (*already*) formed.

3. DATIVE WITH SIMPLE TENSES.—The Dative is used with the tenses for incomplete action, to designate the person who is at once *Agent* and *Indirect Object*, the person BY whom and FOR (to) whom the action is performed :

Hōnesta bōnis vīris quaeruntur, Honorable things are sought by good men, i. e., for themselves. Cic.

4. DATIVE OF AGENT IN POETS.—In the poets the Dative is often used for the *Ablative* with *a* or *ab*, to designate simply the agent of the action :

Non intelligor ulli, I am not understood by any one. Ovid.

389. Ethical Dative.—A Dative of the person to whom the thought is of special interest is often introduced into the Latin sentence when it cannot be imitated in English :

At tibi vēnit ad me, But lo, he comes to me. Cic. *Ad illa mihi intendat ānimum, Let him, I pray, direct his attention to those things.* Liv. *Quid mihi Celsus āgit? What is my Celsus doing?* Hor. But

1. The ETHICAL DATIVE is always a personal pronoun.

2. ETHICAL DATIVE with VOLO and INTERJECTIONS :

1) With VOLO: *Quid vōbis vultis? What do you wish, intend, mean?* Liv. *Āvāritia quid sibi vult, What does avarice mean, or what object can it have?* Cic.

2) With INTERJECTIONS: *heī, vae* and some others: *Heī mihi, ah me.* Virg. *Vae tibi, Woe to you.* Ter. See §81. 3. 3).

RULE XIII.—Two Datives—To which and For which.

390. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs :

I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs:

Mālo est hōmīnibus āvāritia, Avarice is an evil to men (lit. *is to men for an evil*). Cic. *Est mihi cūrae, It is a care to me.* Cic. *Dōmus dēdēcōri dōmīno fit, The house becomes a disgrace to its owner.* Cic. *Vēnit Atīcis auxilio, He came to the assistance of the Athenians.* Nep. *Hoc illi tribuēbātur ignāviae, This was imputed to him as cowardice* (for cowardice). Cic. *Iis subśidio missus est, He was sent to them as aid.* Nep.

II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Quinque cohortes castris praesidio rēliquit, He left five cohorts for the defence of the camp (lit. *to the camp for a defence*). Caes. *Pēricles agros suos dōno rei pūblicae dēdit, Pericles gave his lands to the republic as a present* (lit. *for a present*). Just.

1. Verbs with TWO DATIVES are

1) Intransitives signifying to *be, become, go, and the like; sum, fīo, etc.*

2) Transitives signifying to *give, send, leave, impute, regard, choose, and the like: do, dōno, dūco, hābeo, mītto, rēlinquo, tribuo, verito, etc.* These take in the Active two datives with an accusative, but in the Passive two datives only, as the Accusative of the active becomes the subject of the passive. See §71. 6.

2. **ONE DATIVE OMITTED.**—One dative is often omitted or its place supplied by a Predicate Noun :

Ea sunt ūsui, *These things are of use* (for use). Caes. Tu illi pāter es, *You are a father to him*. Tac.

3. With *Audiens* two Datives sometimes occur, the Dat. *dicto* dependent upon *audiens* and a personal Dat. dependent upon *dicto*-*audiens* treated as a verb of obeying (383) :

Dicto sum audiens, *I am listening to the word, I obey*. Plaut. Nōbis dicto audiens est, *He is obedient to us*. Cic. Sometimes *dicto obēdiens* is used in the same way: Māgistro dicto obediens, *obedient to his master*. Plaut.

II. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

Patriae solum omnibus cārum est, *The soil of their country is dear to all*. Cic. Id aptum est tempōri, *This is adapted to the time*. Cic. Omni aetāti mors est commūnis, *Death is common to every age*. Cic. Cānis sīmīlis lūpo est, *A dog is similar to a wolf*. Cic. Nātūrae accommodātum, *adapted to nature*. Cic. Graeciae ūtile, *useful to Greece*. Nep.

1. **ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.**—The most common are those signifying : Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in *bilis*.

Such are : accommodātus, aequalis, aliēnus, amicus and inimicus, aptus, cārus, facilis and difficilis, fidēlis and infidēlis, finitimus, grātus and ingrātus, idōneus, jucundus and injucundus, molestus, nēcessārius, nōtus and ignōtus, noxius, par and dispar, perniciosus, prōpinquus, proprius, salūtāris, similis and dissimilis, vicinus, etc.

2. **OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS** sometimes occur where the learner would expect the Dative :

1) *Accusative with a Preposition* : (1) **in, erga, adversus** with adjectives signifying *friendly, hostile*, etc., and (2) **ad**, to denote the *object or end for which*, with adjectives signifying *useful, suitable, inclined*, etc. :

Pērindulgens in patrem, *very kind to his father*. Cic. Multas ad res pērūtīlis, *very useful for many things*. Cic. Ad cōmītātem prōclīvis, *inclined to affability*. Cic. Prōnus ad luctum, *inclined to mourning*. Cic.

2) *Accusative without a Preposition* with *prōpior, proximus* : Prōpior montem, *nearer the mountain*. Sall. Proximus mǎre, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See 433 and 437.

3) *Ablative with or without a Preposition* : Aliēnum a vīta mea, *foreign to my life*. Ter. Hōmīne ālienissimum, *most foreign to man*. Cic. Ei cum Roscio commūnis, *common to him and Roscius* (with Roscius). Cic.

4) *Genitive* : (1) with *proprius, commūnis, contrārius* ; (2) with *sīmīlis*,

dissimilis, assimilis, consimilis, par and *dispar*, especially to express likeness in character; (3) with adjectives used substantively, sometimes even in the superlative; (4) sometimes with *affinis, alienus, insuetus*, and a few others:

Pōpūli Rōmāni est propria libertas, Liberty is characteristic of the Roman people. Cic. *Alexandri similis, like Alexander*, i. e., in character. Cic. *Dispar sui, unlike itself.* Cic. *Cujus pāres, like whom.* Cic. *Amicissimus hōm-inum, the best friend of the men*, i. e., the most friendly to them. Cic.

3. **Idem** occurs with the Dative, especially in the poets:

Idem facit occidenti, He does the same as kill, or as he who kills. Hor.

4. For the GENITIVE AND DATIVE with an adjective, see 399. 6.

III. DATIVE WITH DERIVATIVE NOUNS AND ADVERBS.

RULE XV.—Dative.

392. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives:

I. VERBAL NOUNS.—*Justitia est obtemperatio lēgibus, Justice is obedience to laws.* Cic. *Sibi responsio, replying to himself.* Cic. *Opulento hōmīni servitus dūra est, Serving a rich man (servitude to) is hard.* Plaut.

II. ADVERBS.—*Congruenter nātūrae vivēre, to live in accordance with nature.* Cic. *Sibi constanter dicere, to speak consistently with himself.* Cic. *Proxime hostium castris, next to the camp of the enemy.* Caes.

1. DATIVE WITH NOUNS.—Nouns construed with the Dative are derived from verbs which govern the Dative. With other nouns the Dative is generally best explained as dependent upon some verb, expressed or understood:

Tēgimenta gāleis milites facere jubet, He orders the soldiers to make coverings for their helmets. Caes. Here *galeis* is probably the indirect object of *facere* and not dependent upon *tegimenta*. In *conspectum venērat hostibus, He had come in sight of the enemy.* Caes. Here *hostibus* is dependent not upon *conspectum*, but upon *venērat*; the action, *coming in sight*, is conceived of as done to the enemy. See 398. 5.

2. DATIVE WITH ADVERBS.—A few adverbs not included in the above rule occur with the Dative: *huic ūna* = *ūna cum hoc*, with him.

SECTION VI.

GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes *source* or *cause*, but in its general use, it corresponds to the English possessive, or the objective with *of*, and expresses various adjective relations.

1. But sometimes, especially when Objective (396, II.), the Genitive is best rendered by *to, for, from, in, on account of*, etc.:

Bēnēficii grātia, gratitude for a favor. Cic. *Lābōrum fūga, escape from labors.* Cic.

394. The Genitive is used

- I. With Nouns.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With Verbs.
- IV. With Adverbs.

I. GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive :

Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *the death of Hamilcar*. Liv. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv. Vir consilii magni, *a man of great prudence*. Caes. See 363.

396. Varieties of Genitive with Nouns.—The principal varieties of the Genitive are the following :

I. The SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *subject* or *agent* of the action, feeling, etc., including the *author* and *possessor* :

Serpentis morsus, *the bite of the serpent*. Cic. Păvor Nūmīdārum, *the fear of the Numidians*. Liv. Xēnōphontis libri, *the books of Xenophon*. Cic. Fanum Neptūni, *the temple of Neptune*. Nep.

II. The OBJECTIVE GENITIVE designates the *object* toward which the action or feeling is directed :

Amor glōriæ, *the love of glory*. Cic. Mēmōria mālōrum, *the recollection of sufferings*. Cic. Deum mētus, *the fear of the gods*. Liv.

III. The PARTITIVE GENITIVE designates the *whole* of which a *part* is taken :

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Vitæ pars, *a part of life*. Cic. Omnium sāpientissimus, *the wisest of all men*. Cic.

1. NOSTRUM and VESTRUM.—As partitive genitives, *nostrum* and *vestrum* are generally used instead of *nostri* and *vesiri*.

2. USE.—The Partitive Genitive is used

1) With *pars*, *nemo*, *nihil* ; nouns of quantity, number, weight, etc. : *mōdius*, *lēgio*, *tālentum*, and any nouns used partitively :

Equōrum pars, *a part of the horses*. Liv. Mēdimnum tritīci, *a bushel of wheat*. Cic. Pēcūniæ tālentum, *a talent of money*. Nep. Quōrum Cāius, *of whom Caius*. Cic.

2) With *Numerals* used Substantively :

Quōrum quattuor, *four of whom*. Liv. Sāpientum octāvus, *the eighth of the wise men*. Hor.

(1) But the Genitive should not be used when the two words refer to the same number of objects, even though *of* be used in English: Vīvi qui (not *quōrum*) duo sūpersunt, *the living, of whom two survive*. Cic.

3) With Pronouns and Adjectives used substantively, especially (1) with *hic, ille, quis, qui, alter, ūter, neuter*, etc.; (2) with comparatives and superlatives; (3) with neuters: *hoc, id, illud, quid; multum, plus, plurimum, minus, minimum, tantum, quantum*, etc.; (4) with *omnes* and *cuncti*, rarely:

Quis vestrum, *which of you?* Cic. Consūlum alter, *one of the consuls*. Liv. Prior hōrum, *the former of these*. Nep. Gallōrum fortissīmi, *the bravest of the Gauls*. Caes. Id temporis, *that (of) time*. Cic. Multum ōpērae, *much (of) service*. Cic. Hōmīnum cuncti, *all of the men*. Ovid. But *omnes* and *cuncti* generally agree with their nouns: Omnes hōmīnes, *all men*. Cic.

Pronouns and Adjectives, except neuters, when used with the Part. Gen. take the gender of the Gen. unless they agree directly with some other word; see *Consūlum alter* above.

4) With a few Adverbs used substantively; (1) with adverbs of Quantity—*abunde, affātīm, nīmīs, pārūm, partīm, quoad, sātīs*, etc.; (2) with adverbs of Place—*hic, huc, nusquam, ūbi*, etc.; (3) with adverbs of Extent, degree, etc.—*eo, huc, quo*; (4) with superlatives:

Armōrum affātīm, *abundance of arms*. Liv. Lūcis nīmīs, *too much (of) light*. Ovid. Sāpientiae pārūm, *little (of) wisdom*. Sall. Partīm cōpiārum, *a portion of the forces*. Liv. Quoad ejus fācere pōtest, *as far as (as much of it as) he is able to do*. Cic. Nusquam gentium, *nowhere in the world*. Cic. Huc arrōgantiae, *to this degree of insolence*. Tac. Maxīme omnium, *most of all*. Cic.

3. Lōci and lōcōrum occur as partitive genitives in expressions of time:

Intērea lōci, *in the mean time*. Ter. Adhuc lōcōrum, *hitherto*. Plaut.

4. For *id gēnus* = *ejus gēnēris, sēcus, libra*, etc., see 380. 2.

5. For Predicate Genitive, see 401.

IV. The GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC designates *character* or *quality*, including *value, price, size, weight*, *age*, etc.

Vir maxīmi consīlii, *a man of very great prudence*. Nep. Mītis ingēnii jūvēnis, *a youth of mild disposition*. Liv. Vestis magni prētiī, *a garment of great value*. Cic. Exsīlium dēcem annōrum, *an exile of ten years*. Nep. Cōrōna parvi pondēris, *a crown of small weight*. Liv. See 402, III. 1.

1. A noun designating *character* or *quality* may be either in the Gen. or in the Abl. See 428.

1) But it must be accompanied by an adjective, numeral, or pronoun, unless it be a compound containing such modifier; as *hujusmodi* = *hujus modi* : *tridui*, from tres dies; *bidui*, from duo (bis) dies. With *tridui* and *bidui*, via or spātium is sometimes omitted: *Abērant bidui*, *They were two days' journey distant*. Cic.

V. The GENITIVE OF SPECIFICATION has the general force of an Appositive (363) :

Virtus continentiae, the virtue of self-control. Cic. *Verbum vōluptātis*, the word (of) pleasure. Cic. *Oppīdum Antiōchiæ*, the city of Antioch. Cic. *Tellus Ausōniæ*, the land of Ausonia. Virg.

397. Peculiarities.—We notice the following :

1. The GOVERNING WORD is often omitted. Thus

Aedes, *templum*, *discīpūlus*, *hōmo*, *jūvēnis*, *puer*, etc.; *causa*, *grātia*, and indeed any word when it can be readily supplied :

Ad Jōvis (sc. *aedem*), near the temple of Jupiter. Liv. *Hannībal annōrum nōvem* (sc. *puer*), Hannibal a boy nine years of age. Liv. *Nāves sui commōdi* (causa) *fēcērat*, He had built vessels for his own advantage. Caes. *Conferre vītā Trēbonii cum Dōlābellæ* (sc. *vīta*), to compare the life of Trebonius with that of Dolabella. Cic.

1) The governing word is generally omitted when it has been expressed before another Gen. as in the last example; and then the second Gen. is sometimes attracted into the case of the governing word: *Nātūra hōmīnis bēluis* (for *beluārum naturae*) *antecēdit*, The nature of man surpasses (that of) the brutes. Cic.

2) In many cases where we supply *son*, *daughter*, *husband*, *wife*, the ellipsis is only apparent, the Gen. depending directly on the proper noun expressed :

Hasdrūbal Giscōnis, Gisco's Hasdrubal, or Hasdrubal the son of Gisco. Liv. *Hectōris Andrōmachē*, Hector's Andromache, or Andromache the wife of Hector. Virg.

2. Two GENITIVES are sometimes used with the same noun—generally one Subjective and one Objective :

Memmii ōdium pōtentiae, Memmius's hatred of power. Sall.

3. GENITIVE AND POSSESSIVE.—A Genitive sometimes accompanies a Possessive, especially the Gen. of *ipse*, *solus*, *ūnus*, *omnis* :

Tua ipsius amīcītia, your own friendship. Cic. *Meum sōlius peccātum*, my fault alone. Cic. *Nōmen meum absentis*, my name while absent. Cic.

Here *ipsius* agrees with *tui* (of you) involved in *tua*; *solius* and *absentis*, with *mei* (of me) involved in *meum*.

398. Other Constructions—for the Genitive occur.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC. See 428.

2. An ADJECTIVE is sometimes used for the Genitive :

Bellīca glōria = *belli glōria*, the glory of war. Cic. *Conjux Hectōrea* = *conjux Hectōris*, the wife of Hector. Virg.

3. The POSSESSIVE is regularly used for the Subjective Gen. of Personal pronouns, rarely for the Objective :

Mea dŏmus, *my house*. Cic. Fāma tua, *your fame*. Cic.

4. CASE WITH PREPOSITION.—A case with a preposition may be used for the Gen. ; especially, 1) For the *Objective Genitive*, the Accusative with *in*, *erga*, *adversus* :—2) For the *Partitive Genitive*, the Accusative with *inter*, *ante*, *apud*, or the Ablative with *ex*, *de*, *in* :

Odium in hŏmīnum gēnus, *hatred of or towards the race of men*. Cic. Erga vos āmor, *love towards you*. Cic. Inter rēges ōpulentissīmus, *the most wealthy of (among) kings*. Sen. Unus ex vīris, *one of the heroes*. Cic.

5. A DATIVE depending on the VERB is sometimes used, instead of the Genitive depending on a noun :

Urbi fundāmenta jācēre, *to lay the foundations of (for) the city*. Liv. Caesāri ad pēdes projicēre, *to cast at the feet of Caesar*, i. e., before Caesar at his feet. Caes. See 392. 1.

1) The two constructions, the Gen. and the Case with Prep., are sometimes combined in the same sentence.

II. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

Avīdus laudis, *desirous of praise*. Cic. Otii cūpīdus, *desirous of leisure*. Liv. Amans sui virtus, *virtue fond of itself*. Cic. Effīciens vŏluptātis, *productive of pleasure*. Cic. Glōriæ mēmōr, *mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force—*of*, *in respect of*—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in *ax* and participles in *ans* and *ens* used adjectively :

Virtūtum fērax, *productive of virtues*. Liv. Tēnax prŏpŏsīti, *tenacious (steadfast) of purpose*. Hor. Amans patriae, *loving (fond of) his country*. Cic. Fūgiens lābōris, *shunning labor*. Caes.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *recollection*, *participation*, *mastery*, *fulness*, and their contraries :

(1) DESIRE, AVERSION—*avīdus*, *cūpīdus*, *stūdiōsus* ; *fastīdiōsus*, etc. ; sometimes *aemūlus* and *invidus*, which also take the Dative :

Contentiōnis cūpīdus, *desirous of contention*. Cic. Sāpientiae stūdiōsus, *studious of (student of) wisdom*. Cic.

(2) KNOWLEDGE, SKILL, RECOLLECTION with their contraries—*gnārus*,

ignārus, consultus, conscius, inscius, nescius, certus, incertus, suspensus; prōvīlus, prūdēns, imprūdēns; pēritus, impēritus, rūdis, insuētus; mēmōr, immēmōr, etc.:

Rei gnārus, acquainted with the thing. Cic. Prūdēns rei militāris, skilled in military science. Nep. Pēritus belli, skilled in war. Nep. Insuētus lābōris, unaccustomed to labor. Caes. Glōriæ mēmōr, mindful of glory. Liv. Immēmōr bēnēficii, forgetful of kindness. Cic.

(3) PARTICIPATION, FULLNESS, MASTERY, with their contraries—*affinis, consors, exsors, expers, particeps; plenus, fertilis, refertus, egenus, inops, vacuus; potens, impotens, compos, impos, etc.:*

Affinis culpaē, sharing the fault. Cic. Ratiōnis particeps, endowed with (sharing) reason. Cic. Ratiōnis expers, destitute of reason. Cic. Vita mētus plēna, a life full of fear. Cic. Mei potens sum, I am master of myself. Liv. Virtūtis compos, capable of virtue. Cic.

3. OTHER ADJECTIVES also occur with the Genitive.

1) A few of a signification kindred to the above:

Mānifestus rērum cāpitālium, convicted of capital crimes. Sall. Noxius conjurātiōnis, guilty of conspiracy. Tac.

2) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis; par and dispar*, especially to denote internal or essential likeness. See 391. 2. 4).

3) Sometimes *aliēnus, communis, proprius, publicus, sacer, vicinus:*

Aliēnus dignitātis, inconsistent with dignity. Cic. Viri proprius, characteristic of a man. Cic.

4) In the poets and late prose writers, especially Tacitus, a Genitive of Cause occurs with a few adjectives, especially those denoting *emotion or feeling*, and a Gen. having the force of—in, in respect of, for, especially *ānīmi* and *ingēniū*, with many adjectives:

Anxius pōtentiaē, anxious for power. Tac. Lassus militiæ, tired of military service. Hor. See Gen. with Verbs, 409. 2 and 4. Aeger ānīmi, afflicted in mind. Liv. Anxius ānīmi, anxious in mind. Sall. Intēger aevi, whole in respect of age, i. e., in the bloom of youth. Virg.

4. PARTITIVE GENITIVE with Adjectives. See 396. III. 3).

5. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) DATIVE: *Mānus sūbitis āvidae, hands ready for sudden events. Tac. Insuētus mōrībūs Rōmānis, unaccustomed to Roman manners. Liv. Fācīnōri mēns conscia, a mind conscious of crime. Cic.*

2) ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITION: *Insuētus ad pugnam, unaccustomed to battle. Liv. Fertilis ad omnia, productive for all things. Plin. Avidus in novās res, eager for new things. Liv.*

3) ABLATIVE WITH OR WITHOUT PREPOSITION: *Prūdēns in jūre cīvili, learned in civil law. Cic. Rūdis in jūre cīvili, uninstructed in civil law. Cic. His de rēbus conscius, aware of those things. Cic. Vācuus de dēfensōrībūs, destitute of defenders. Caes. Cūris vācuus, free from cares. Cic. Rēfertus bōnis, replete with blessings. Cic.*

6. The GENITIVE AND DATIVE occur with the same adjective:

Sibi consilii culpaē, conscious to themselves of fault. Cic.

III. GENITIVE WITH VERBS.

400. The Genitive with Verbs includes

I. Predicate Genitive.

II. Genitive in Special Constructions.

I. Predicate Genitive.

RULE XVIII.—Predicate Genitive.

401. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject is put in the Genitive :

*Omnia hostium erant, All things belonged to the enemy.*¹ Liv. *Sēnātus Hannibālis erat, The senate was Hannibal's, i. e., in his interest.* Liv. *Jūdicis est vērū sēqui, To follow the truth is the duty of a judge.*² Cic. *Parvi prētii est, It is of small value.* Cic.

1. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.—The Predicate Genitive is distinguished from the Predicate Nominative and Accusative by the fact that it always designates a different person or thing from its subject, while they always designate the same person or thing as their subjects. See 362.

2. PREDICATE GENITIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVE.—The genitive is often nearly or quite equivalent to a predicate adjective (353. 1): *hōmīnis est = hūmānum est*, it is the mark of a man, is human; *stultī est = stultum est*, it is foolish. The Gen. is the regular construction in adjectives of one ending: *sāpientis est* (for *sāpiens est*), it is the part of a wise man, is wise.

402. Varieties of Predicate Genitive.—The principal are,

I. SUBJECTIVE OR POSSESSIVE GENITIVE—generally best rendered by—*of, property of, duty, business, mark, characteristic of* :

Haec hostium erant, These things were of (belonged to) the enemy. Liv. *Est impērātōris sup̄erāre, It is the duty of a commander to conquer.* Caes.

II. PARTITIVE GENITIVE :

Fies nobīlium fontium, You will become one of the noble fountains. Hor.

III. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC—including *value, price, size, weight*, etc. :

Summae fācūlātis est, He is (a man) of the highest ability. Cic. *Op̄ra magni fuit, The assistance was of great value.* Nep.

1. The Genitive of *Price* or *Value* is generally an adjective belonging to *prētii* understood; but sometimes *prētii* is expressed :

¹ Lit. *were of the enemy, or were the enemy's.*

² Lit. *is of a judge.*

Parvi pretii est, *It is of little value.* Cic. See 396. IV.

2. *Price* and *Value* with verbs of *buying*, *selling*, and the like, are expressed

1) Regularly by the Ablative. See 416.

2) Sometimes by the Genitive of adjectives, like the Pred. Gen. of price: *Vendo frumentum plūris, I sell grain at a higher price.* Cic.

But the Gen. is thus used only in *indefinite* and *general* expressions of price and value. A definite price or value regularly requires the Ablative.

3) In familiar discourse sometimes by the genitives, *assis, flocci, nihili, pīli* and a few others:

Non flocci pendere, not to care a straw (lock of wool) for. Plaut.

3. *Bōni* and *Aequi*, as Predicate Genitives, occur in such expressions as *aequi bōni facere* and *bōni consilēre*, to take in good part.

403. Verbs with Predicate Genitive.—The Predicate genitive occurs most frequently with *sum* and *facio*, but sometimes also with verbs of *seeming* and *regarding*:

Haec hostium erant, These things were the enemy's. Liv. *Oram Rōmānae ditionis fecit, He brought the coast under (of) Roman rule.* Liv.

1. Transitive Verbs of this class admit in the active, an Accusative with the Genitive, as in the second example.

2. With Verbs of *Seeming* and *Regarding*—*videor, habeo, dūco, puto*, etc.—*esse* may generally be supplied:

Hōmīnis videtur, It seems to be (esse) the mark of a man. Cic.

404. Other Constructions for the Genitive also occur.

1. The *Possessive* is regularly used for the Pred. Gen. of personal pronouns:

Est tuum (not tui) videre, It is your duty to see. Cic.

2. The Genitive with *Officium, Mūnus, Nēgōtium, Proprium*:

Sēnātus officium est, It is the duty of the senate. Cic. *Fuit proprium pōpūli, It was characteristic of the people.* Cic.

The Predicate Genitive could in most instances be explained by supplying some such word, but it seems to be more in accordance with the idiom of the Latin to regard the genitive as complete in itself.

3. The *Ablative of Characteristic.* See 428.

II. Genitive in Special Constructions.

405. The Genitive, either alone or with an Accusative, is used in a few constructions which deserve separate mention.

RULE XIX.—Genitive with Certain Verbs.

406. The Genitive is used

I. With *miserere* and *miseresco*:

Miserere laborum, *Pity the labors*. Virg. *Miserescite regis*, *Pity the king*. Virg.

II. With *recordor*, *memini*, *remiscor*, and *obliscor*:

Meminit praeteritorum, *He remembers the past*. Cic. *Oblitus sum mei*, *I have forgotten myself*. Ter. *Flagitiorum recordari*, *to recollect base deeds*. Cic. *Remisceri virtutis*, *to remember virtue*. Caes.

III. With *refert* and *interest*:

Illorum refert, *It concerns them*. Sall. *Interest omnium*, *It is the interest of all*. Cic.

1. EXPLANATION.—The Genitive may be explained as dependent upon *refert*, and upon *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*. With the other verbs it accords with the Greek idiom, and with verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting*, it also conforms to the analogy of the Gen. with the adjectives *memor* and *immemor* (399. 2. 2).

2. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—The expression *Venit mihi in mentem*, *It occurs to my mind*, equivalent to *remiscor*, is sometimes construed with the Gen.:

Venit mihi Platōnis in mentem, *The recollection of Plato comes to my mind*, or *I recollect Plato*. Cic. But the Nom. is also admissible: *Non venit in mentem pugna*, *Does not the battle come to mind?* Liv.

407. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS with verbs of *Remembering* and *Forgetting* also occur:

1. The Accusative: *Memineram Paulum*, *I remembered Paulus*. Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *thing* (not person), with *recordor*, and, if it be a neuter pronoun or adjective, also with other verbs:

Triumphos recordari, *to recall triumphs*. Cic. *Ea remiscere*, *Remember those things*. Cic.

2. The Ablative with *De*: *Recordare de ceteris*, *Bethink yourself of the others*. Cic.

This is the regular construction for the *person* with *recordor*, and occurs also with *memini*, though that verb takes the Acc. of a *contemporary*.

408. The CONSTRUCTION with *Refert* and *Interest* is as follows:

1. The PERSON or THING interested is denoted

1) By the *Genitive* as under the rule.

2) By the *Ablative Feminine* of the *Possessive* :

Meā refert, It concerns me. Ter. *Intērest meā, It interests me.* Cic.

This possessive regularly takes the place of the Gen. of personal pronouns, and may be explained as agreeing with *re* in *refert*, and with *re* or *causa* to be supplied with *interest*.

3) By the *Dative*, or *Accusative* with or without *Ad* ; but rarely, and chiefly with *refert*, which moreover often omits the person :

Quid refert viventi, What does it concern one living? Hor. *Ad me refert, It concerns me.* Plaut.

2. The **SUBJECT OF IMPORTANCE**, or that which involves the interest, is expressed by an Infinitive or Clause, or by a Neuter Pronoun :

Intērest omnium recto facere, To do right is the interest of all. Cic. *Vestrā hoc intērest, This interests you.* Cic.

3. The **DEGREE OF INTEREST** is expressed by an Adverb, by a Neuter used adverbially, or by a Gen. of Value (402. 1 and 2) :

Vestrā maxime intērest, It especially interests you. Cic. *Quid nostrā refert, What does it concern us?* Cic. *Magni intērest meā, It greatly interests me.* Cic.

4. The **OBJECT** or **END** for which it is important is expressed by the Accusative with *ad*, rarely by the Dative :

Ad hōnōrem nostrum intērest, It is important for our honor. Cic.

409. GENITIVE WITH OTHER VERBS.—Many other verbs sometimes take the Genitive :

1. Some Verbs of *Plenty* and *Want*, as *ēgeo*, *indīgeo*, like adjectives of the same meaning (399. 2. 2) :

Virtus exercitiōnis indiget, Virtue requires exercise. Cic. *Auxilii ēgere, to need aid.* Caes.

2. Some Verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling* like adjectives (399. 3. 4) :

Animi pendeo, I am uncertain in mind. Cic. *Discrucior animi, I am troubled in mind.* Plaut.

3. A few Verbs denoting *Mastery* or *Participation* like adjectives (399. 2. 2)), *pōtior*, *ādīpiscor*, *regno* :

Siciliae pōtītus est, He became master of Sicily. Nep. *Rōrum ādeptus est, He obtained the power.* Tac. *Regnāvit pōpūlōrum, He was king of the people.* Hor.

4. A Genitive of *Separation* or *Cause* occurs in the poets, with a few verbs—*abstīneo*, *dēcīpio*, *dēsīno*, *dēsisto* ; *mīror* :

Abstīnere irārum, to abstain from anger. Hor. *Lābōrum dēcīpitur, He is beguiled of his labors.* Hor. *Dēsīno quērēlārū, Cease from complaints.* Hor. *Dēsistēre pugnae, to desist from the battle.* Virg.

5. *Sātāgo* and *Sātūgīto* admit a genitive dependent upon *sat* (396. 4)), and verbs of *Promising* admit the Gen. *damni infecti* :

Rōrum sātāgēre, to be occupied with (have enough of) business. Ter.

6. Genitive of *Gerunds* and *Gerundives*. See 563 and 563. 5.

RULE XX.—Accusative and Genitive.

410. A few transitive verbs take both the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing :

- I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing.*
- II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting.*
- III. *Misēret, Poenitet, Pūdet, Taedet, and Piget.*

I. REMINDING, ETC.—Te āmicītiāe commōnēfācit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic. Milītes nēcessitātis mōnet, *He reminds the soldiers of the necessity.* Ter.

II. ACCUSING, ETC.—Vīros scēlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic. Lēvītātis eum convīcēre, *to convict him of levity.* Cic. Absolvēre injūriāe eum, *to acquit him of injustice.* Cic.

III. MISERET, POENITET, ETC.—Eōrum nos mīsēret, *We pity them* (it moves our pity of them). Cic. Consīlii me poenitet, *I repent of my purpose.* Cic. Me stultītiāe meae pūdet, *I am ashamed of my folly.* Cic.

1. The GENITIVE OF THING designates, with verbs of *reminding*, etc., that to which the attention is called ; with verbs of *accusing*, etc., the crime, charge, and with *mīsēret, poenitet*, etc., the object which produces the feeling. See examples.

2. PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—The personal verbs included under this Rule retain the Genitive in the Passive :

Accūsātus est prōditiōnis, *He was accused of treason.* Nep.

3. Verbs of REMINDING, *mōneo, admōneo, commōneo, commōnēfācio*, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive,

1) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely of a substantive, thus admitting two accusatives :

Illud me admōnes, *You admonish me of that.* Cic.

2) The *Ablative* with *de*, *mōneo* generally so :

De proelio vos admōnui, *I have reminded you of the battle.* Cic.

4. Verbs of ACCUSING, CONVICTING, sometimes take, instead of the Genitive of the crime, etc.,

1) The *Genitive* with *nōmīne* or *crīmīne* :

Nōmīne conjūrātiōnis damnāti sunt, *They were condemned on the charge of conspiracy.* Cic.

2) The *Accusative* of a neuter pronoun or adjective, rarely :

Id me accūsas, *You accuse me of that.* Plaut.

3) The *Ablative* alone or with a preposition, generally *de* :

De pēcūniis rēpētundis damnātus est, *He was convicted of extortion.* Cic.

5. With Verbs of CONDEMNING, the *Punishment* may be expressed

1) By the *Genitive* :

Căpitis condemnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

(1) *Voti damnāri*, *to be condemned to fulfill a vow = to obtain a wish*.

2) By the *Accusative* with a preposition, generally *ad* :

Ad bestias condemnāre, *to condemn to the wild beasts*. Suet.

3) By the *Ablative* ; and, in the poets, sometimes by the *Dative* :

Căpite damnāre, *to condemn to death*. Cic.

6. With MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TAEDET, and PIGET, an Infinitive or Clause is sometimes used, rarely a neuter pronoun or *nil* :

Me poenitet vixisse, *I repent having lived*. Cic.

1) Like *Miseret* are sometimes used *miserescit*, *commiserescit*, *miseretur*, *commiseretur*. Like *Tuedet* are used *pertaedet*, *pertaesum est*.

2) *Pudet* sometimes takes the Gen. of the Person before whom one is ashamed :
Me tui pudet, *I am ashamed in your presence*. Ter. *Pudet hominum*, *It is a shame in the sight of men*. Liv.

3) *Pertaesus* admits the Accusative of the object :

Pertaesus ignāviam suam, *disgusted with his own inaction*. Suet.

7. The ACCUSATIVE and GENITIVE occur with other Verbs.—Thus

1) With some Verbs of FREEING with the accessory notion of ACQUITTING :
Eum culpaē libērāre, *to free him from blame*, i. e., *to acquit him of fault*. Liv. So *purgo*, *dēcipio*, and the like.

2) With a few Verbs of FILLING, like adjectives and verbs of plenty (399. 2. 2) and 409. 1), especially *compleo* and *impleo* :

Multitūdīnem religiōnis implēvit, *He inspired (filled) the multitude with religion*. Liv. See 419. 2.

3) With a few transitive verbs of EMOTION or FEELING (409. 2), rarely :
Te angis ānīmi, *You make yourself anxious in mind*. Plaut.

IV. GENITIVE WITH ADVERBS.

411. The Genitive is used with a few Adverbs :

1. With *Partitives*. See 396. III. 2.

2. With *Prīdie* and *Postrīdie*, perhaps dependent upon *die* contained in them, and with *Ergo* and *Tēnus*, originally nouns :

Prīdie ejus diēi, *on the day before that day*. Caes. *Postrīdie ejus diēi*, *on the day after that day*. Caes. *Virtūtis ergo*, *on account of virtue*. Cic. *Lumbōrum tēnus*, *as far as the loins*. Cic. For *tēnus* with the Abl., see 434.

SECTION VII.

ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive ; but in its general use, it corresponds to the English objective with—*from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used

with Verbs and Adjectives, while the genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

413. The Ablative is used as

I. Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means—including

1. Ablative of Price.
2. Ablative after Comparatives.
3. Ablative of Difference.
4. Ablative in Special Constructions.

II. Ablative of Place.

III. Ablative of Time.

IV. Ablative of Characteristic.

V. Ablative of Specification.

VI. Ablative Absolute.

VII. Ablative with Prepositions.

I. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means are denoted by the Ablative:

Ars *utilitāte* laudātur, *An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. Glōria dūcitur, *He is led by glory.* Cic. Duobus modis fit, *It is done in two ways.* Cic. Sol omnia luce collustrat, *The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. Aeger erat vulneribus, *He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. Laetus sorte tua, *pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. The ABLATIVE OF CAUSE designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which* anything is or is done.

1) This includes such ablatives as *meo iudicio*, in accordance with my opinion; *mea sententia, jussu, impulsu, monitu*, etc.; also the Abl. with *dōleo, gaudeo, glōrior, lābōro*, etc.

The Abl. with *afficio*, and with *sto* in the sense of *depend upon, abide by*, is best explained as *Means*. *Afficio* and the Abl. are together often equivalent to another verb: *hōnōre afficere* = *hōnōrāre*, to honor; *admirationē afficere* = *admirārī*, to admire.

2) With *Passive* and *Intransitive* verbs, *Cause* is regularly expressed by the Abl., though a preposition with the Acc. or Abl. sometimes occurs:

Amicitia propter se expetitur, *Friendship is sought for itself.* Cic.

3) With *Transitive* verbs the Abl. without a Prep. is rare; but *causa, grātia* and ablatives in *u* of nouns used only in that case (134), *jussu, rogātu, mandātu*, etc., are thus used; sometimes also other words.

In other cases, *Cause* in the sense of—*on account of, because of*, is generally expressed—(1) by a Preposition with its case: *ob, propter, de, ex, prae*, etc.; or (2) by a Perfect Participle with an Ablative:

In oppidum propter timorem sese recipiunt, *They betake themselves into the city on account of their fear.* Caes. Regni cupiditate inductus conjurationem fecit, *Influenced by the desire of ruling, he formed a conspiracy.* Caes.

Cupiditate in the 2d example really expresses the *cause* of the action *fecit*, but by the use of *inductus*, it becomes the Abl. of Cause with that participle.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the Prep. *cum*; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*—*mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc.—occur without such accompaniment:

Vi summa, *with the greatest violence.* Nep. Mōre Persarum, *in the manner of the Persians.* Nep. Cum silentio audire, *to hear in silence.* Liv.

Per with the Acc. sometimes denotes *Manner*: *per vim*, violently.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.—This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed. See also 434. 2; 414, 2, 1).

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT.—This designates the Person by whom anything is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the Prep. *A* or *Ab*:

Occisus est a Thēbānis, *He was slain by the Thebans.* Nep.

1) The Abl. without a Prep. or the Accus. with *per* is sometimes used, especially when the Person is regarded as the *Means*, rather than as the *Agent*.

Cornua Nūmidis firmat, *He strengthens the wings with Numidians.* Liv. Per Fabricium, *by means of (through the agency of) Fabricius.* Cic.

2) Dative of Agent. See 388.

6. PERSONIFICATION.—When anything is personified as agent, the ablative with *A* or *Ab* may be used as in the names of persons:

Vinci a voluptate, *to be conquered by pleasure.* Cic. A fortuna datam occasionem, *an opportunity furnished by fortune.* Nep.

7. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT.—This generally takes *cum*:

Vivit cum Balbo, *He lives with Balbus.* Cic. But

In describing military movements, the preposition is often omitted, especially when the Abl. is qualified by an adjective:

Ingenti exercitu profectus est, *He set out with a large army.* Liv.

415. KINDRED USES OF THE ABLATIVE.—Kindred to the Ablative of Cause, etc., are

I. The Ablative of Price—that by which the trade is effected.

II. The Ablative with Comparatives—that by which the comparison is effected.

III. The Ablative of Difference—that by which one object differs from another.

IV. The Ablative in Special Constructions.

RULE XXII.—Ablative of Price.

416. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative :

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg. Conduxit magno dōmum, *He hired a house at a high price.* Cic. Multo sanguine Poenis victōria stētit, *The victory cost the Carthaginians (stood to the Carthaginians at) much blood.* Liv. Quinquāginta tālentis aestimāri, *to be valued at fifty talents.* Nep. Vile est vīginti mīnis, *It is cheap at twenty minae.* Plaut.

1. Th ABLATIVE OF PRICE is used

1) With verbs of buying, selling, hiring, letting, *ēmo, vendo, condūco, lūco, vēneo*, etc.

2) With verbs of costing, of being cheap or dear, *sto, consto, liceo, sum*, etc.

3) With verbs of valuing, *aestimo*, etc.

4) With adjectives of value, *cārus, venālis*, etc.

2. EXCHANGING.—With verbs of exchanging—*mūto, commūto*, etc.—the thing received is generally treated as the price, as with verbs of *selling* :

Pāce bellum mūtāvit, *He exchanged war for peace.* Sall. But sometimes the thing given is treated as the price, as with verbs of *buying*, or is put in the Abl. with *cum* : Exsīlium patria mūtāvit, *He exchanged country for exile.* Curt.

3. ADVERBS OF PRICE are sometimes used : *bene ēmere*, to purchase well, i. e., at a low price ; *cāre aestimāre*, to value at a high price.

4. GENITIVE OF PRICE. See 402. III.

RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative :

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic. Quid est melius bonitāte, *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them :

Hibernia mīnor quam Brītanīa existimātur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi terrībilior, *more terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

2. ABLATIVE, WHEN ADMISSIBLE.—The construction with *quam* is the full form for which the Ablative is an abbreviation. This abbreviation is admissible only in place of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative, but is not necessary even here except for *quam* with a Relative :

Scimus sōlem majōrem esse terrā, *We know that the sun is larger than the earth.* Cic. Amīcītia, qua nihil mēlius hābēmus; *friendship, than which we have nothing better.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule.

1) In the first example the Ablative (*terra*) is admissible but not necessary, *quam terram* might have been used; but in the second example the Ablative (*quā*) is necessary, the conjunction *quam* would be inadmissible.

2) In the examples under the rule the ablatives *virtūte* and *bonitāte* are both equivalent to *quam* with the Nom. *quam virtus* and *quam bonitas*, which might have been used.

3) Instead of the Abl., a Preposition with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, or *supra* is sometimes used: *Ante illos immānior, more monstrous than (before) the others.* Virg.

3. CONSTRUCTION WITH PLUS, MINUS, ETC.—*Plus*, *minus*, *amplius*, or *longius*, with or without *quam*, is often introduced in expressions of number and quantity, without influence upon the construction; sometimes also *major*, *minor*, etc.:

Tecum plus annum vixit, *He lived with you more than a year.* Cic. Minus duo millia, *less than two thousand.* Liv.

So in expressions of age: *nātus plus triginta annos, having been born more than thirty years.* The same meaning is also expressed by—*major triginta annos nātus, major triginta annis, major quam triginta annōrum, or major triginta annōrum.*

4. ARQUE OR AC FOR QUAM OCCURS chiefly in poetry and late prose:

Arctius atque hēdērā, *more closely than with ivy.* Hor.

5. ALIUS WITH THE ABLATIVE sometimes occurs. It then involves a comparison, *other than*:

Quaerit ālia his, *He seeks other things than these.* Plaut.

6. PECULIARITIES.—*Quam pro* denotes disproportion, and many ablatives—*ōy inīōne, spe, aequo, justo, solito*, etc.—are often best rendered by clauses:

Minor caedes quam pro victōria, *less slaughter than was proportionate to the victory.* Liv. Sērius spe vēnit, *He came later than was hoped (than hope).* Liv. Plus aequo, *more than is fair.* Cic.

RULE XXIV.—Ablative of Difference.

418. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative:

Uno die longiōrem mensem faciunt, *They make the month one day longer (longer by one day).* Cic. Bīduo me antecessit, *He preceded me by two days.* Cic. Sunt magnitūdine paulo infra ēlēphantos, *They are in size a little below the elephant.* Caes.

1. The Ablative is thus used with all words involving a comparison, but adverbs often supply its place: *Multum rōbustior*, much more robust.

2. The Ablative of *Difference* includes the Abl. of *Distance* (378. 2), and the Abl. with *ante*, *post*, and *abhinc* in expressions of time (427).

RULE XXV.—Ablative in Special Constructions.

419. The Ablative is used

I. With *utor*, *frutor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, *vescor*, and their compounds:

Plūrimis rēbus fruimur et ūtimur, *We enjoy and use very many things.* Cic. *Magna est praeda pōtītus*, *He obtained great booty.* Nep. *Vescimur bestiis*, *We live upon animals.* Cic.

II. With *fido*, *confido*, *nitor*, and *innitor*:

Nemo pōtest fortunae stābilitate confidēre, *No one can trust (confide in) the stability of fortune.* Cic. *Sālus vērītate nititur*, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With VERBS and ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY and WANT:

Non ēgeo mēdicīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic. *Vācāre culpa*, *to be free from fault.* Cic. *Villa ābundat lacte, cāseo, melle*; *The villa abounds in milk, cheese, and honey.* Cic. *Urbs nūda praesidio*, *a city destitute of defence.* Cic. *Virtūte praeditus*, *endowed with virtue.* Cic.

IV. With *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, and *frētus*:

Digni sunt āmicītia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic. *Nātūra parvo contenta*, *nature content with little.* Cic. *Frētus āmicis*, *relying upon his friends.* Liv.

V. With *opus* and *usus*:

Auctōritāte tua nobis opus est, *We need (there is to us a need of) your authority.* Cic. *Usus est tua mihi ōpēra*, *I need your aid.* Plaut.

1. EXPLANATION.—This Ablative may in most instances be readily explained as the Ablative of *Cause* or *Means*: thus *utor*, I use, serve myself by means of; *frutor*, I enjoy, delight myself with; *vescor*, I feed upon, feed myself with; *fido*, *confido*, I confide in, am confident because of, etc.

2. ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Dignor* and transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* take the Accusative with the Ablative:

Me dignor hōnōre, *I deem myself worthy of honor.* Virg. *Armīs nāves ōnērat*, *He loads the ships with arms.* Sall. *Ocūlis se privāt*, *He deprives himself of his eyes.* Cic. See 371. 2.

1) Transitive verbs of *Plenty* and *Want* signify to fill, furnish with, deprive of, etc.: *afficio*, *cūmulo*, *compleo*, *impleo*, *imbuo*, *instruo*, *ōnēro*, *orno*, etc.—*orbo*, *privo*, *spolio*, etc. *Dignor* in the best prose admits only the Abl.

2) For the *Accusative* and *Genitive* with some of these verbs, see 410. 7. 2).

3. DATIVE AND ABLATIVE.—*Opus est* and *usus est* admit the Dative of the person with the Ablative of the thing. See examples.

1) The Ablative is sometimes a Perfect Participle, or, with *opus est*, a Noun and Participle :

Consulto *opus est*, *There is need of deliberation*. Sall. Opus fuit Iiirtio convento, *There was need of meeting Iiirtius*. Cic.

2) With *opus est*, rarely with *usus est*, the thing needed may be denoted—

(1) By the Nominative, rarely by the Genitive or Accusative :

Dux nōbls *opus est*, *We need a leader, or a leader is necessary* (a necessity) *for us*. Cic. Tempōris *opus est*, *There is need of time*. Liv. Opus est cibum, *There is need of food*. Plaut.

(2) By an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Supine :

Opus est te vālēre, *It is necessary that you be well*. Cic. Opus est ut lāvem, *It is necessary for me to bathe* (that I bathe). Plaut. Dictu est *opus*, *It is necessary to be told*. Ter.

4. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS also occur. Thus

1) *Utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and *vescor*, originally transitive, are occasionally so used in classic authors. Their participle in *dus* is passive in sense. *Utor* admits two ablatives of the same person or thing :

Me ūtūtur pātre, *He will find (use) me a father*. Ter.

2) *Fīdo*, *confīdo*, and *innītor* admit the Dative, rarely the Abl. with *in*.

Virtūti confīdēre, *to confide in virtue*. Cic. See 385. 1.

3) *Dignus* and *indignus* admit the Gen., *frētus* the Dat., *nītor* and *innītor* the Acc. or Abl. with Prep., and some verbs of *Want* the Abl. with Prep.

Dignus sālūtis, *worthy of safety*. Plaut. Rei frētus, *relying upon the thing*. Liv. Vācāre āb ōpēre, *to be free from work*. Caes.

4) *Genitive*.—For the *genitive* with *pōtior*, see 409. 3. For the *genitive* with verbs and adjectives of *Plenty* and *Want*, see 409. 1, 410. 7, and 399. 2. 2).

II. ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH anything is or is done :

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH anything proceeds;—including *Source* and *Separation*.

RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS omit the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative, (45, 2):

I. Hannibal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *in our camp*. Caes. In Appia via, *on the Appian way*. Cic. Ab urbe prōficiēscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Afrīca, *from Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābŷlōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic. See 48, 4.

422. NAMES OF PLACES NOT TOWNS sometimes omit the preposition:

1. The Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, sometimes omits the preposition:

1) Generally the Ablatives—*lōco, lōcis, parte, partibus, dextra, laeva, sinistra, terra, mārī*, and other Ablatives when qualified by *tōtus*:

Alīquid lōco pōnere, *to put anything in its place*. Cic. Terra mārīque, *on land and sea*. Liv. Tōta Graecia, *in all Greece*. Nep.

2) Sometimes other Ablatives, especially when qualified by adjectives:

Hoc libro, *in this book*. Cic.

In poetry the preposition is often omitted even when the ablative has no modifier: *Silvis agrisque, in the forests and fields*. Ov.

2. The Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH sometimes omits the preposition, especially in poetry:

Cādere nūbibus, *to fall from the clouds*. Virg. Lābi ēquo, *to fall from a horse*. Hor.

423. NAMES OF TOWNS differ in their construction from other names of places,

I. Generally in simply omitting the preposition. But

II. In the Singular of the First and Second declensions they designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Locative. See examples under the Rule.

1. PREPOSITION RETAINED.—The preposition is sometimes retained, especially for emphasis or contrast:

Ab Ardea Rōmam vēnērunt, *They came from Ardea to Rome*. Liv. So also when the *vicinity* rather than the town itself is meant: *Discessit a Brundisio, He departed from Brundisium*, i. e., from the port. Caes. Apud Mantinēam, *near Mantinea*. Cic. Ad Trēbiam, *at or near the Trebia*. Liv.

2. LOCATIVE.—The original Locative, denoting the PLACE IN WHICH, was blended with the Ablative, except in the Singular of the First and Second Declensions, where it still remains distinct, though with the same form as the Genitive. A few traces of it also remain in the Singular of the Third Declension, where it ends in *i*. See 62, IV. 3.

3. OTHER CONSTRUCTIONS for the Genitive also occur:

1) *Ablative by Attraction* :

In monte Albāno Lāviniōque, *on the Alban mount and at Lavinium*. Liv.

2) *Ablative without Attraction*, generally with a preposition :

In ipsa Alexandria, *in Alexandria itself*. Cic. Longa Alba, *at Alba Longa*. Virg.

This is the regular construction when the noun takes an adjective or adjective pronoun, but the Locative *dōmi* (424, 2) admits a *possessive* or *dīēnus* :

Dōmī, suae, *at his home*. Cic.

3) With an Appellative—*urbis, oppidum*—the name of the town is in the Loc. or Abl., but the appellative itself is in the Abl., generally with a Prep. :

In oppīdo Antiochiaē, *in the city of Antioch*. Cic. In oppīdo Cītio, *in the town Cītium*. Nep. Albae, in urbe opportūna, *at Alba, a convenient city*. Cic.

424. LIKE NAMES OF TOWNS are used

1. Many names of Islands :

Vixit Cypri, *He lived in Cyprus*. Nep. Dēlo prōfēiscitur, *He proceeds from Delos*. Cic.

2. *Dōmus, rus*, and the Locatives *hūmi, mīlītiaē, and belli* :

Rūri āgēre vītam, *to spend life in the country*. Liv. Dōmī mīlītiaēque, *at home and in the field*. Cic. Dōmo prōfūgit, *He fled from home*. Cic.

3. The Locative of other nouns also occurs :

1) *By Attraction* after names of towns :

Rōmae Nūmīdiaēque, *at Rome and in Numidia*. Sall.

2) *Without Attraction* in a few proper names, and rarely also the Locatives *ārēnae, fōci, terrae, vicīniae* :

Dōmum Chersōnēsi hābuit, *He had a house in the Chersonesus*. Nep. Truncum rēliquit ārēnae, *He left the body in the sand*. Virg.

RULE XXVII.—Ablative of Source and Separation.

425. SOURCE and SEPARATION are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition :

SOURCE.—Hoc audivi de pārente meo, *I heard this from my father*. Cic. Oriundi ab Sābinis, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Stātua ex aere facta, *a statue made of bronze*. Cic. Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

SEPARATION.—Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic. Hunc a tuis āris arcēbis, *You will keep this one from your altars*. Cic. Expulsus est patria, *He was banished from his country*. Cic.

1. The ABLATIVE OF SOURCE designates that from which anything is derived, including *parentage, material*, etc.

2. The ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION designates that from which anything is separated, or of which it is deprived, and is used :

1) With Intransitive verbs signifying, *to abstain from, be distant from*, etc.

2) In connection with the Accusative after transitive verbs signifying, *to hold from, separate from, free from*, and the like: *arceo, abstinco, deterreo, ejicio, excludo, exsolvo, libero, pello, prohibeo, removeo, solvo*, etc.:

3) A few verbs of separation admit the Dative: *alieno, furor*, etc. See 385. 4.

3. Preposition Omitted.—This generally occurs

1) With Perfect Participles denoting *parentage or birth*—*gēnitus, nātus, ortus*, etc.:

Jōve nātus, *son of Jupiter*. Cic.

2) With Verbs of *Freeing*, except *libero*, which is used both with and without a preposition:

Somno solvi, *to be released from sleep*. Cic. But in the sense of *acquitting* these verbs admit the genitive (410. 7): *Aliquem culpae liberāre, to free one from blame*, i. e., *acquit him*. Liv.

3) With *Moveo* before the ablatives—*lōco, sēnātu* and *tribū*:

Signum mōvēre lōco, *to move the standard from the place*. Cic.

4) The preposition is sometimes omitted with other words, especially in poetry.

III. ABLATIVE OF TIME.

RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octogēsimo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year*. Cic. Vēre convēnere, *They assembled in the spring*. Liv. Nātāli die suo, *on his birthday*. Nep. Hieme et aestate, *in winter and summer*. Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word, so used as to involve the time of an action or event, may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugna*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōria*, in memory, i. e., in the time of one's recollection.

2. The ABLATIVE WITH IN is used to denote

1) The *circumstances* of the time, rather than time itself:

In tāli tempore, *under such circumstances*. Liv.

2) The time *in* or *within* which anything is done:

In diēbus proximis dēcem, *in the next ten days*. Sall.

(1) This is used especially after numeral adverbs and in designating the periods of life: *bis in die*, twice in the day; *in puēritia*, in boyhood.

(2) In a kindred sense occur also the Abl. with *de* and the Accus. with *inter* or *intra*: *De mēdia nocte*, in the middle of the night. Caes. *Inter annos quattuordecim*, in (within) fourteen years. Caes.

(3) The Ablative with or without *in* sometimes denotes the time within which or after which: *paucis diēbus*, within (or after) a few days.

427. ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE.—The time since an action or event is denoted by *Abhinc* or *Ante* with the Accusative or Ablative, and the time between two events, by *Ante* or *Post* with the Accusative or Ablative :

Abhinc annos trécentos fuit, He lived (was) three hundred years since. Cic. *Abhinc annis quattuor, four years since.* Cic. *Hómērus annis multis fuit ante Rōmūlum, Homer lived many years before Romulus.* Cic. *Paucis ante diēbus, a few days before.* Cic. *Post dies paucos vēnit, He came after a few days.* Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—(1) The Accusative with *abhinc* is explained as Duration of Time (378), with *ante* and *post* as dependent upon those prepositions. (2) The Ablative in both cases is explained as the Ablative of Difference (418).

With the Abl. *ante* and *post* are used adverbially unless an Accus. is expressed after them. *Paucis his (illis) diēbus,* means *in these (those) few days.*

2. NUMERALS WITH ANTE AND POST.—These may be either cardinal or ordinal. Thus : five years after = *quinque annis post*, or *quinto anno post* ; or *post quinque annos*, or *post quintum annum* ; or with *post* between the numeral and the noun, *quinque post annis*, etc.

3. QUAM WITH ANTE AND POST.—*Quam* may follow *ante* and *post*, may be united with them, or may even be used for *postquam* :

Quartum post annum quam rēdiērat, four years after he had returned. Nep. *Nōno anno postquam, nine years after.* Nep. *Sexto anno quam erat expulsus, six years after he had been banished.* Nep.

4. THE ABLATIVE OF THE RELATIVE OR QUUM may be used for *postquam* : *Quātrīduo, quo occisus est, four days after he was killed.* Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.

RULE XXIX.—Characteristic.

428. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing :

Summa virtūte ādōlescens, a youth of the highest virtue. Caes. *Cātīlina ingēnio mālo fuit, Catiline was a man of a bad spirit.* Sall.

1. ABLATIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC is used

1) With Substantives as in the first example.

2) In the Predicate with *sum*, and the other verbs which admit a Predicate Genitive (403) as in the second example.

2. The ABLATIVE WITH A GENITIVE instead of the ablative with an adjective is sometimes used :

Uri sunt spēcie tauri, The urus is of the appearance of a bull. Caes.

3. GENITIVE OF CHARACTERISTIC.—See 396. IV.

4. GENITIVE AND ABLATIVE DISTINGUISHED.—The Genitive generally expresses permanent and essential qualities ; the Ablative is not limited to any particular kind of qualities.

V. ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION.

RULE XXX.—Specification.

429. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application :

Agēsīlāus nōmīne, non pōtestāte fuit rex, *Agesilaus was king in name, not in power.* Nep. Claudus altēro pēde, *lame in one foot.* Nep. Mōribus sīmīles, *similar in character.* Cic.

1. FORCE OF ABLATIVE.—This shows in *what respect* or *particular* anything is true : thus, *king* (in what respect?) *in name* : *similar* (in what respect?) *in character.*

2. ACCUSATIVE OF SPECIFICATION. See 380.

VI. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

430. A noun and a participle, a noun and an adjective, or two nouns may be grammatically independent of (*absolved from*) the rest of the sentence, and yet may express various adverbial modifications of the predicate. When so used they are said to be in the case Absolute.

RULE XXXI.—Ablative Absolute.

431. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE :

Servio regnante vīgūrunt, *They flourished in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic. Rēgībūs exactis, consūles creāti sunt, *After the banishment of the kings, consuls were appointed.* Liv. Sērēno coelo, *when the sky is clear.* Sen. Cānīnio consūle, *in the consulship of Caninius.* Cic.

1. USE.—The Ablative Absolute is much more common than the English Nominative Absolute, and expresses a great variety of relations,—*time, cause, reason, means, condition, concession,* etc.

2. HOW RENDERED.—This ablative is generally best rendered (1) by a *Clause* with—*when, while, for, since, if, though,* etc., (2) by a *Noun* with a *Preposition*,—*in, during, after, by, from, through,* etc., or (3) by an *Active Participle* with its *Object* :

Servio regnante, *while Servius reigned,* or *in the reign of Servius.* Cic. Rēlīgiōne neglecta, *because religion was neglected.* Liv. Perdītis rēbus omnībūs, tāmen, etc., *Though all things are lost, still,* etc. Cic. Equitātū prae-mis-so, subsēquēbātur, *Having sent forward his cavalry, he followed.* Caes.

3. A Connective sometimes accompanies the Ablative :

Nisi mūnītis castris, *unless the camp should be fortified.* Caes.

4. AN INFINITIVE OR CLAUSE may be in the Abl. Absolute with a neuter participle or adjective:

Audito Dārium mōvisse, pergit, *Having heard that Darius had withdrawn* (that Darius had, etc., having been heard), *he advanced*. Curt. Multi, incerto quid vitārent, intēriērunt, *Many, uncertain what they should avoid* (what they, etc., being uncertain), *perished*. Liv.

5. A PARTICIPLE OR ADJECTIVE may stand alone in the Abl. Absolute:

Multum certāto, pervicī, *He conquered after a hard struggle* (it having been much contested). Tac.

6. QUISQUE IN THE NOMINATIVE may accompany the Abl. Absolute:

Multis sibi quisque pōtentibus, *while many sought, each for himself*. Sall.

VII. ABLATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS. See 432 and 434.

SECTION VIII.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad āmicū scripsī, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In cūriam, *into the senate house*. Liv. In Itālia, *in Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *before the camp*.

433. The Accusative is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, āpud, circa, circum, circīter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *to the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *toward the gods*. Cic. Ante lūcem, *before light*. Cic. Apud concillium, *in the presence of the council*. Cic. Circa fōrum, *around the forum*. Cic. Citra flūmen, *on this side of the river*. Cic. Contra nātūrā, *contrary to nature*. Cic. Intra mūros, *within the walls*. Cic. Post castra, *behind the camp*. Caes. Sēcundum nātūrā, *according to nature*. Cic. Trans Alpes, *across the Alps*. Cic.

1. Like *Prōpe*, the derivatives *prōpior* and *proxīmus* take the Accus. dependent perhaps upon *ad* understood. *Exadversus* (um) also occurs with the Accus.:

Prōpior montem, *nearer to the mountain*. Sall. Proxīmus mǎre, *nearest to the sea*. Caes. See also 437, and for compounds, 371. 4. and 374. 6.

2. *Versus* (um) and *usque* as adverbs often accompany prepositions, especially *ad* and *in*: Ad Alpes versus, *towards the Alps*.

434. The Ablative is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sīne,	tēnus.

Ab urbe, *from the city*. Caes. Cōram conventu, *in the presence of the assembly*. Nep. Cum Antiōcho, *with Antiochus*. Cic. De fōro, *from the forum*. Cic. Ex Asia, *from Asia*. Nep. Sine corde, *without a heart*. Cic.

1. Many verbs compounded with *ab*, *de*, *ex*, or *sūper*, admit the Ablative dependent upon the preposition :

Abire māgistrātu, *to retire from office*. Tac. Pugna excēdunt, *They retire from the battle*. Caes.

Sometimes the Prep. is repeated, or one of kindred meaning is used :

De vita dēcēdēre, *to depart from life*. Cic. Dēcēdēre ex Asia, *to depart from Asia*. Cic.

2. The Ablative with or without *De* is sometimes used with *Fūcio*, *Fīo*, or *Sum*, as follows :

Quid hoc hōmīne fūcias, *What are you to do with this man?* Cic. Quid te (or de te) fūtūrum est, *What will become of you?* Cic.

The Dative occurs in nearly the same sense :

Quid huic hōmīni fūcias, *What are you to do with (or to) this man?* Cic.

3. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, *e*, *ex*.—*A* and *e* are used only before consonants, *ab* and *ex* either before vowels or consonants. *Abs* is antiquated, except before *te*.

4. *Tēnus* follows its case :

Collo tēnus, *up to the neck*. Ov.

5. *Cum* with the Abl. of a Pers. Pronoun is appended to it : *mēcum*, *tēcum*, etc., generally also with a relative : *quōcum*, *quībuscum*.

435. The ACCUSATIVE OR ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, sūper :

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia*. Cic. Hannībal in Itālia fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. Sub montem, *toward the mountain*. Caes. Sub monte, *at the foot of the mountain*. Liv. Subter tōgam, *under the toga*. Liv. Subter testūdīne, *under a tortoise or shed*. Virg. Sūper Nūmīdiam, *beyond Numidia*. Sall. Hac sūper re scribam, *I will write on this subject*. Cic.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither?* the Ablative in answer to *where?* In Asiam (whither?), *into Asia*; In Itālia (where?), *in Italy*.

2. *Subter* and *Sūper* generally take the Accusative, but *sūper* with the force of—*concerning*, *of*, *on* (of a subject of discourse), takes the Ablative; see examples.

436. PREPOSITIONS AS ADVERBS.—The prepositions were originally adverbs, and many of them are sometimes so used in classical authors.

437. ADVERBS AS PREPOSITIONS.—Conversely several adverbs are sometimes used as prepositions with an oblique case, though in most instances a preposition could readily be supplied. Such are

1. With Accusative : *prōpius*, *proxīme*, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *usque*, *dēsūper* :

Prōpius pēricūlum (ad), *nearer to danger*. Liv. Prīdie Idus (ante), *the day before the Ides*. Cic. Usque pēdes (ad), *even to the feet*. Curt.

2. With Ablative : *pālam*, *prōcul*, *sīmul* (poetic) :

Pālam pōpūlo, *in the presence of the people*. Liv. Prōcul castris, *at a distance from the camp*. Tac. Sīmul hīs, *with these*. Hor.

3. With Accusative or Ablative : *clam*, *insūper* :

Clam patrem, *without the father's knowledge*. Plaut. Clam vōbis, *without your knowledge*. Caes.

CHAPTER III.

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE XXXIII.—Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE :

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*. Cic. Vērae amicitiae, *true friendships*. Cic. Māgister optīmus, *the best teacher*. Cic.

1. This Rule includes Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles.

2. ATTRIBUTIVE AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES.—An adjective is called *attributive*, unless it unites with the verb (generally *sum*), to form the *predicate*; it is then called a *predicate-adjective*: as *caeca est*, above.

3. AGREEMENT WITH CLAUSE, ETC.—An adjective may agree with any word or words used substantively, as a *pronoun*, *clause*, *infinitive*, etc.:

Quis clārior, *Who is more illustrious?* Cic. Certum est libēros amāri, *It is certain that children are loved*. Quint. See 42, III.

An adjective agreeing with a clause is sometimes plural, as in Greek.

4. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE.—Sometimes the Predicate Adjective is neuter, when the subject is *Masc.* or *Fem.*:

Mors est extrēmum, *Death is the last (thing)*. Cic.

5. NEUTER WITH GENITIVE.—A neuter adjective with a genitive is often used instead of an adjective with its noun:

Multum op̄erae (for *multa op̄era*), *much service* (much of service). Cic. Id temp̄oris, *that time*. Cic. Vāna r̄erum (for *vānae res*), *vain things*. Hor.

6. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the adjective or participle conforms to the *real meaning* of its noun, without regard to grammatical gender or number:

Pars certāre pārāti, *a part (some), prepared to contend*. Virg. Nōbis (for *me*, 446, 2), praesente, *we (I) being present*. Plaut. Dēmōsthēnes cum cētēris erant expūlsī, *Demosthenes with the others had been banished*. Nep.

7. AGREEMENT WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—See 462.

8. AGREEMENT WITH ONE NOUN FOR ANOTHER.—When a noun governs another in the Genitive, an adjective belonging in sense to one of the two nouns, sometimes agrees with the other:

Majōra (for *majōrum*) inītia r̄erum, *the beginnings of greater things*. Liv. Cursus justī (*justus*) amnis, *the regular course of the river*. Liv.

439. WITH TWO OR MORE NOUNS.—An adjective or participle, belonging to two or more nouns, may agree with them all conjointly, or may agree with one and be understood with the others :

Castor et Pollux visi sunt, *Castor and Pollux were seen*. Cic. Tēmōritas ignōrātiōque vītīōsa est, *Rashness and ignorance are bad*. Cic.

1. THE ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVE generally agrees with the nearest noun: Agri omnes et mǎria, *all lands and seas*. Cic.

2. DIFFERENT GENDERS.—When the nouns are of different genders, they may denote

1) *Persons* : then the adjective or participle agreeing with them conjointly is masculine: Pāter et mǎter mortui sunt, *Father and mother are dead*. Ter.

2) *Persons and Things* : then the adjective generally takes the gender of the person: Rex rēgiāque classis prōfecti sunt, *The king and the royal fleet set out*. Liv.

3) *Things* : then the adjective is generally neuter: Hōnōres, victōriae fortuīta sunt, *Honors and victories are accidental (things)*. Cic.

3. NEUTER WITH MASCULINE OR FEMININE.—With masculine or feminine nouns denoting inanimate objects, the adjective is often neuter :

Lābor et dōlor sunt finītīma, *Labor and pain are kindred (things)*. Cic. Nox atque praeda hostes rēmōrāta sunt, *Night and plunder detained the enemy*. Sall.

4. TWO OR MORE ADJECTIVES.—Two or more adjectives in the singular may belong to a plural noun :

Prīma et vicēsīma lēgiōnes, *the first and the twentieth legions*. Tac.

So in proper names: Cnaeus et Publius Scīpiōnes, *Cnaeus and Publius Scipio*. Cic.

440. USE OF ADJECTIVES.—The Adjective in Latin corresponds in its general use to the Adjective in English.

1. An adjective may qualify the complex idea formed by a noun and an adjective: *aes aliēnum grande*, a great debt. Here *grande* qualifies not *aes* alone, but *aes aliēnum*. In such cases no connective is used between the adjectives.

But the Latin uses the conjunction after *multi* even where the English omits it: *multae et magnae tempestātes*, many great emergencies.

441. Adjectives are often used substantively: docti, the learned; *multi*, many persons; *multa*, many things.

1. In the Plural, Masculine Adjectives often designate persons, and Neuter Adjectives things: *fortes*, the brave; *divites*, the rich; *paupēres*, the poor; *multi*, many; *pauci*, few; *omnes*, all; *mei*, my friends; *utilia*, useful things; *mea*, *nostra*, my, our things; *omnia*, all things; *haec*, *illa*, these, those things.

2. In the Singular, Adjectives are occasionally used substantively, especially in the Neuter with an abstract sense: *doctus*, a learned man;

verum, a true thing, the truth; *nilul sincēri*, nothing of sincerity, nothing sincere.

3. NOUN UNDERSTOOD.—Many adjectives become substantives, by the omission of their nouns: *patria* (terra), native country; *dextra* (manus), right hand; *fēra* (bestia), wild beast; *hiberna* (castra), winter-quarters.

4. WITH RES.—Adjectives with *res* are used with great freedom: *res adversae*, adversity; *res secundae*, prosperity; *res publica*, republic.

5. FROM PROPER NAMES.—Adjectives from proper names are often equivalent to the English objective with *of*: *pugna Mārāthōnia*, the battle of Marathon; *Diāna Ephēsia*, Diana of Ephesus; *Hercūles Xēnōphontius*, the Hercules of Xenophon.

6. DESIGNATING A PART.—A few adjectives sometimes designate a particular part of an object: *primus*, *mēdius*, *ultimus*, *extrēmus*, *postrēmus*, *intimus*, *summus*, *infimus*, *imius*, *suprēmus*, *reliquus*, *cētera*, etc.: *prima nox*, the first part of the night; *summus mons*, the highest part of the mountain.

In Livy and late writers, the neuter of these adjectives with a genitive sometimes occurs:

Ad ultimum inōplae, for ad ultimam inōpiam, to extreme destitution. Liv.

442. EQUIVALENT TO A CLAUSE.—Adjectives, like nouns in apposition, are sometimes equivalent to clauses:

Nēmo saltat sobrius, No one dances when he is sober, or when sober. Cic. *Hortensium vivum amāvi*, I loved Hortensius, while he was alive. Cic. *Hōmo nunquam sobrius*, a man, who is never sober. Cic.

1. *Prior*, *primus*, *ultimus*, *postrēmus*, are often best rendered by a relative clause:

Primus mōrem solvit, He was the first who broke the custom. Liv.

With the adverb *primum*, the thought would be, he first broke the custom, and then did something else.

443. INSTEAD OF ADVERBS.—Adjectives are sometimes used where our idiom employs adverbs:

Socrātes vñēnum laetus hausit, Socrates cheerfully drank the poison. Sen. *Sēnātus frēquens convēnit*, The senate assembled in great numbers. Cic. *Roscius erat Rōmae frēquens*, Roscius was frequently at Rome. Cic.

Adjectives thus used are: (1) Those expressive of joy, knowledge, and their opposites: *laetus*, *libens*, *invitus*, *tristis*, *sciens*, *insciens*, *prūdens*, *imprūdens*, etc. (2) *Nullus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ūnus*; *prior*, *primus*, *prōpior*, *proximus*, etc. (3) In the Poets several adjectives of time and place:

Dōmesticus ōtior, I idle about home. Hor. *Vespertinus pēte tectum*, At evening seek your abode. Hor. See Examples above; also 335. 4.

444. COMPARISON.—A comparison between two objects requires the comparative degree; between more than two, the superlative:

Prior hōrum, the former of these (two). Nep. *Gallōrum fortissīmi*, the bravest of the Gauls. Caes.

1. WITH THE FORCE OF TOO OR VERY.—The comparative sometimes has the force of *too*, *unusually*, *somewhat*, and the superlative, the force of *very*: *doctior*, too learned, or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

2. COMPARATIVE AFTER QUAM.—When an object is said to possess one quality in a higher degree than another, both adjectives are put in the comparative; but when it is said to possess one quality rather than another, both are in the positive, the former with *māgis* or *pōtius*:

Clārior quam grātor, more illustrious than pleasing. Liv. *Dīsertus māgis quam sāpiens, fluent rather than wise.* Cic.

In the first case the positive is sometimes used in one or both members; and in the second case *māgis* is sometimes omitted, and occasionally the adjective before *quam* is in the comparative.

3. STRENGTHENING WORDS.—Comparatives and Superlatives are often strengthened by a Prep. with its case, *ante*, *prae*, *praeter*, *supra* (417. 2. 3), *ūnus*, *ūnus omnium*, alone, alone of all, far, by far; Comparatives also by *etiam*, even, still; *multo*, much, and Superlatives by *longe*, *multo*, by far, much, *quam*, *quantus*, as possible:

Multo maxīma pars, by far the largest part. Cic. *Res ūna omnium difficillima, a thing by far the most difficult of all.* Cic. *Quam maxīmae cōplae, forces as large as possible.* Sall. *Quanta maxīma vastitas, the greatest possible devastation.* Liv.

4. COMPARISON IN ADVERBS has the same force as in adjectives:

Quam saepissime, as often as possible. Cic. *Fortius quam felicius, with more bravery than success.* Liv.



CHAPTER IV.

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

RULE XXXIV.—Agreement of Pronouns.

445. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in **GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON**:

Animāl quod sanguinem hābet, an animal which has blood. Cic. *Ego, qui te confirmo, I who encourage you.* Cic. *Vis est in virtūtibus; eas excita, There is strength in virtues, arouse them.* Cic.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This rule applies to all Pronouns when used as *nouns*. Pronouns used as *adjectives* conform to the rule for adjectives. See 438.

The *Antecedent* is the word or words to which the pronoun refers, and whose place it supplies. Thus, in the examples under the rule, *animāl* is the antecedent of *quod*, and *virtūtibus* the antecedent of *eas*.

2. AGREEMENT WITH PERSONAL PRONOUN.—When the antecedent is a Demonstrative in agreement with a Personal pronoun, the relative agrees with the latter :

Tu es qui me ornasti, *You are the one who commended me.* Cic.

3. WITH TWO ANTECEDENTS.—When a relative or other pronoun, refers to two or more antecedents, it generally agrees with them conjointly, but it sometimes agrees with the nearest :

Puëri mülïëresque, qui, *boys and women, who.* Caes. Peccätum ac culpa, quae, *error and fault, which.* Cic.

1) With antecedents of different genders, the pronoun conforms in gender to the rule for adjectives (439. 2 and 3); hence *puëri mulieresque qui*, above.

2) With antecedents of different persons, the pronoun prefers the first person to the second, and the second to the third, conforming to the rule for verbs. See 463. 1.

4. WITH PREDICATE NOUN OR APPOSITIVE.—A pronoun sometimes agrees with a Predicate-Noun or an Appositive instead of the antecedent :

Animal quem (for *quod*) vöcämus hömïnem, *the animal which we call man.* Cic. Thëbae, quod (*quae*) cäput est, *Thebes which is the capital.* Liv. Ea (*id*) erat confessio, *That (i. e., the action referred to) was a confession.* Liv. Flūmen Rhēnus, qui, *the river Rhine, which.* Caes.

In the last example, *qui* agrees with the appositive *Rhenus*; in the other examples, the pronouns *quem*, *quod*, and *ea*, are attracted to agree with their predicate nouns *hömïnem*, *caput*, and *confessio*.

5. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the pronoun is construed according to the *real meaning* of the antecedent, without regard to grammatical form; and sometimes it refers to the *class of objects* to which the antecedent belongs :

Equitātūs, qui vïdërunt, *the cavalry who saw.* Caes. Eärum rërum utrumque, *each of these things.* Cic. Dëmöcrïtüm ömittämus; äpud istos; *let us omit Democritus; with such (i. e., as he).* Cic.

6. ANTECEDENT OMITTED.—The antecedent of the relative is often omitted when it is indefinite, is the pronoun *is*, or is implied in a possessive :

Sunt qui censeant, *There are some who think.* Cic. Terra reddit quod accëpit, *The earth returns what it has received.* Cic. Vestra, qui cum integritätë vixistis, hoc intërest, *This interests you who have lived with integrity.* Cic. Here the antecedent is *vos*, implied in *vestra*.

7. CLAUSE AS ANTECEDENT.—When the antecedent is a sentence or clause, the pronoun, unless attracted (445. 4), is in the Neuter Singular, but the relative generally adds *id* as an appositive to such antecedent :

Nos, id quod dëbet, patria dëlectat, *Our country delights us, as it ought (lit. that which it owes).* Cic.

8. RELATIVE ATTRACTED.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent, and sometimes agrees with the antecedent repeated :

Jüdïce quo (for *quem*) nosti, *the judge whom you know.* Hor. Dies in-

stat, quo die, *The day is at hand, on which day.* Caes. Cūmae, quam urbem tēnēbant, *Cumae, which city they held.* Liv.

9. ANTECEDENT ATTRACTED.—In Poetry, rarely in prose, the antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; and sometimes incorporated in the relative clause in the same case as the relative:

Urbem quam stātuo, vestra est, *The city which I am building is yours.* Virg. Mālārū, quas āmor cūras hābet, oblivisci (for *mālārū curārū quas*), *to forget the wretched cares which love has.* Hor.

I. PERSONAL AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

446. The Nominative of Personal Pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast:

Significāmus, quid sentiāmus, *We show what we think.* Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrannos intrōdūcītis, *I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. With *quidem* the pronoun is usually expressed, and then the third person is supplied by *hic, is, ille*, which are then often redundant: *tu quidem*, you indeed, *ille quidem*, he indeed. *Quidem* adds emphasis; *equidem* = *ego quidem*.

2. The writer sometimes speaks of himself in the plural, using *nos* for *ego*, *nos-ter* for *meus*, and the plural verb for the singular.

3. For *Nostrum* and *Vestrum*, see 396. 1.

447. Possessive Pronouns, when not emphatic, are seldom expressed, if they can be supplied from the context:

Mānus lāva, *Wash your hands.* Cic. Mihi mea vīta cāra est, *My life is dear to me.* Plaut.

For Possessive with Genitive in the sense of own, see 397. 3.

Reflexive use of Pronouns.

448. *Sui* and *Suus* have a reflexive sense (*himself*, etc.); sometimes also the other Personal and Possessive pronouns, together with *Is*, *Ille*, and *Ipse*:

Se dilīgit, *He loves himself.* Cic. Sua vi mōvētur, *He is moved by his own power.* Cic. Me consōlor, *I console myself.* Cic. Persuādēt Tulingis ūti cum iis prōficiscantur, *They persuade the Tulingi to depart with them.* Caes.

1. *Inter nos, inter vos, inter se*, have a reciprocal force, *each other, one another, together*; but instead of *inter se*, the noun may be repeated in an oblique case:

Colloquimur inter nos, *We converse together.* Cic. Amant inter se, *They love one another.* Cic. Hōmīnes hōmīnibus ūtiles sunt, *Men are useful to men, i. e., to each other.* Cic.

449. *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to the Subject of the clause in which they stand :

Se diligit, He loves himself. Cic. *Iustitia propter sese colenda est, Justice should be cultivated for its own sake.* Cic. *Anulum suum dedit, He gave his ring.* Nep.

1. In SUBORDINATE CLAUSES expressing the sentiment of the principal subject, *Sui* and *Suus* generally refer to that subject :

Sentit animus se vi sua moveri, The mind perceives that it is moved by its own power. Cic. *A me petivit ut secum essem, He asked (from) me to be with him (that I would be).* Cic. *Pervestigat quid sui cives cogitent, He tries to ascertain what his fellow citizens think.* Cic.

1) As *Sui* and *Suus* thus refer to subjects, the demonstratives, *Is, Ille*, etc., generally refer either to other words, or to subjects, which do not admit *sui* and *suus*.

Denum agnoscis ex ejus operibus, You recognize a god by (from) his works. Cic. *Obligat civitatem nihil eos mutatuuros, He binds the state not to change anything (that they will).* Just.

2) In some subordinate clauses the writer may at pleasure use either the Reflexive or the Demonstrative, according as he wishes to present the thought as that of the principal subject, or as his own. Thus in the last example under 448, *cum is* is the proper language for the writer without reference to the sentiment of the principal subject; *secum*, which would be equally proper, would present the thought as the sentiment of that subject.

3) Sometimes the Reflexive occurs where we should expect the Demonstrative, and the Demonstrative where we should expect the Reflexive.

2. *Suus* = HIS OWN, ETC.—*Suus* in the sense of *his own, fitting*, etc., may refer to subject or object :

Iustitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own). Cic.

3. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—When the subject of the verb is not the real agent of the action, *sui* and *suus* refer to the latter :

A Caesare invitator sibi ut sim legatus, I am invited by Caesar (real agent) to be his lieutenant. Cic.

4. *Suus* SUBSTANTIVELY.—The Plural of *Suus* used substantively—*his, their friends, possessions*, etc.—is used with great freedom, often referring to oblique cases :

Fuit hoc luctuosum suis, This was afflicting to his friends. Cic. Here *suis* refers to an oblique case in the preceding sentence.

5. *Sui* and *Suus* sometimes refer to an omitted subject :

Deforme est de se praedicare, To boast of one's self is disgusting. Cic.

6. REFLEXIVES REFERRING TO DIFFERENT SUBJECTS.—Sometimes a clause has one reflexive referring to the principal subject, and another referring to the subordinate subject :

Respondit neminem secum sine sua perniciie contendisse, He replied that no one had contended with him without (his) destruction. Caes.

Here *se* refers to the subject of *respondit* and *sua* to *neminem*, the subject of the subordinate clause.

II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

450. *Hic, Iste, Ille*, are often called respectively demonstratives of the First, Second, and Third Persons, as *hic* designates that which is near the speaker; *iste*, that which is near the person addressed, and *ille*, that which is remote from both, and near only to some third person.

Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city. Cic. Muta istam mentem, Change that purpose of yours. Cic. Si illos negligis, if you disregard those. Cic.

1. **HIC AND ILLE IN CONTRASTS.**—*Hic* designates an object conceived as near, and *ille* as remote, whether in space or time :

Non antiquo illo more, sed hoc nostro fuit eruditus, He was educated, not in that ancient, but in this our modern way. Cic.

2. **HIC AND ILLE, FORMER AND LATTER.**—In reference to two objects previously mentioned, (1) *Hic* generally follows *Ille* and refers to the latter object, while *Ille* refers to the former; but (2) *Hic* refers to the more important object, and *Ille* to the less important :

Ignavia, labor : illa, hic ; Indolence, labor : the former, the latter. Cels. Pax, victoria : haec (pax) in tua, illa in deorum potestate est ; Peace, victory : the former is in your power, the latter in the power of the gods. Liv.

3. *Hic* and *Ille* are often used of what immediately follows in discourse, and *Iste* sometimes indicates contempt : *haec verba*, these words, i. e., the following words ; *iste*, that man, such a one.

4. *Ille* is often used of what is well known, famous :

Mēdēa illa, that well-known Medea. Cic.

1) *Hic* with or without *homo*, is sometimes equivalent to *ego*. Alone it is sometimes equivalent to *meus* or *noster*.

2) *Hic, ille*, and *is* are sometimes redundant, especially with *quidē* : *Scipio non multum ille quidē dicebat, Scipio did not indeed say much. Cic. See 446. 1.*

3) A Demonstrative or Relative is sometimes equivalent to a Genitive or a Prep. with its case : *hic dolor* = *dolor hujus rei*, grief on account of this ; *haec cura* = *cura de hoc*, care concerning this.

451. *Is* and *Idem* refer to preceding nouns, or are the antecedents of relatives :

Diōnysius aufugit : is est in provincia, Dionysius has fled : he is in the province. Cic. Is qui satis habet, he who has enough. Cic. Eādem audire mālunt, They prefer to hear the same things. Liv.

1. *Is* is often omitted, especially before a relative or a genitive :

Flēbat pater de filii morte, de patris illius, The father wept over the death of the son, the son over (that) of the father. Cic. See also 445. 6.

2. *Is* or *Ipse* with a Conjunction is often used for emphasis, like the English *and that too, and that indeed* :

Unam rem explicābo eamque maximam, *One thing I will explain and that too a most important one.* Cic.

Id thus used often refers to a clause or to the general thought, and *et ipse* is often best rendered, *too* or *also*: Audire Cratippum, idque Athēnis, *to hear Cratippus, and that too at Athens.* Cic.

3. *Idem* is sometimes best rendered, *also, yet*:

Nihil ūtile, quod non *idem* honestum, *Nothing useful, which is not also honorable.* Cic. Quum dicat—nēgat *idem*, *Though he asserts—he yet denies* (the same denies). Cic.

4. *Is—qui* = he—who, such—as, such—that:

Si sūmus, qui esse debēmus, *We are such as we ought to be.* Cic. Ea est gens quae nesciat, *The race is such that it knows not.* Liv.

5. *Idem—qui*; *idem—ac, atque, quam, quāsi, ut, cum* with Abl. = the same—who, the same—as:

Idem mōres, qui, *The same manners which or as.* Cic. Est *idem* ac fuit, *He is the same as he was.* Ter.

6. *Is Reflexive.* See 448.

452. *Ipse* adds emphasis, generally rendered *self*:

Ipse Caesar, *Caesar himself.* Cic. Fac ut te ipsum custōdias, *See that you guard yourself.* Cic.

1. *IPSE WITH SUBJECT.*—*Ipse* belongs to the emphatic word, whether subject or object, but with a preference for the subject:

Me *ipse* consōlor, *I myself* (not another) *console myself.* Cic.

2. *IPSE, VERY.*—*Ipse* is often best rendered by *very*:

Ipse ille Gorgias, *that very Gorgias.* Cic.

3. With Numerals *Ipse* has the force of—*just so many, just*:

Trīginta dies ipsi, *just thirty days.* Cic.

4. *Ipse* in the Genitive with possessives has the force of *own, one's own*:

Nostra ipsōrum amicitia, *Our own friendship.* Cic. See 397. 3.

5. *Ipse Reflexive*, sometimes supplies the place of an emphatic *sui* or *suus*:

Lēgātos misit qui ipsi vitam pētērent, *He sent messengers to ask life for himself.* Sall.

III. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

453. The relative is often used where the English idiom requires a demonstrative or personal pronoun; sometimes even at the beginning of a sentence:

Res loquitur ipsa; quae semper valet; *The fact itself speaks, and this (which) ever has weight.* Cic. Qui proelium committunt, *They engage battle.* Caes. Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic.

1. *RELATIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.*—Relatives and Demonstratives are often correlatives to each other: *hic—qui, iste—qui*, etc. These combinations generally retain the ordinary force of the separate words, but see *is—qui, idem—qui*, 451. 4 and 5.

1) *Quicumque* and *Quisquis*, whoever, whatever, sometimes have the force of *every* by the ellipsis of *fieri pōtest*: *quicumque ratiōne*, in every way, *i. e.*, in whatever way it is possible.

2. A DEMONSTRATIVE may supply the place of a Relative when otherwise two relative clauses would be brought together :

Quae nec hăbērēmus nec his ūtērēmur, *Which we should neither have nor use.* Cic.

1) A Relative Clause with *is* is often equivalent to a substantive : *ii qui audiunt* = *auditores, hearers.*

3. Two RELATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause :

Artes quas qui tēnent, *arts, whose possessors* (which, who possess). Cic.

4. A RELATIVE CLAUSE is sometimes equivalent to *Pro* with the Abl. :

Quae tua prŭdentia est = qua es prŭdentia = pro tua prŭdentia = *such is your prudence, or you are of such prudence, or in accordance with your prudence, etc.* : Spēro, quae tua prŭdentia est, te vālĕre, *I hope you are well, such is your prudence* (which is, etc.).

5. RELATIVE WITH ADJECTIVE.—Adjectives belonging in sense to the antecedent, sometimes stand in the relative clause in agreement with the relative, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals :

Vāsa, quae pulcherrīma vidĕrat, *the most beautiful vessels which he had seen* (vessels, which the most beautiful he had seen). Cic. De servis suis, quem hăbuit fīdĕlissimum, mīsit, *He sent the most faithful of the slaves which he had.* Nep.

6. *Quod Expletive*, or apparently so, often stands at the beginning of a sentence, especially before *nī, nīsī, etsī*, and sometimes before *quīa, quōmīam, ūtīnam*, etc. In translating it is sometimes omitted, and sometimes rendered by *now, but, and* :

Quod si cēcīdĕrint, *if or but if they should fall.* Cic.

7. *Qui dīcitur, qui vōcātur*, or the corresponding active *quem dīcunt, quem vōcant*, are often used in the sense of *so called, the so called, what they or you call*, etc. :

Vestra quae dīcītur vīta, mors est, *Your so called life* (lit. *your, which is called life*) *is death.* Cic. Lex ista quam vōcas non est lex, *That law as you call it, is not a law.* Cic.

IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

454. The Interrogative *quis*, is used substantively ; *qui*, adjectively :

Quis ěgo sum, *Who am I?* Cic. Quid faciĕt, *What will he do?* Cic. Qui vir fuit, *What kind of a man was he?* Cic.

1. QUIS AND QUI.—Occasionally *quis* is used adjectively and *qui* substantively : Quis rex unquam fuit, *What king was there ever?* Cic. Qui sis, considĕra, *Consider who you are.* Cic.

2. QUID, *why, how is it that*, etc., is often used adverbially (380. 2), or stands apparently unconnected, by the ellipsis of *propter* or a verb : Quid ěnim, *why then?* what indeed (*est or dīcam*) ? Quid quod, *what of the fact that?*

3. Two INTERROGATIVES sometimes occur in the same clause :

Quis quem fraudāvit, *who defrauded, and whom did he defraud* (lit. *who defrauded whom*) ? Cic.

4. ATTRACTION.—The interrogative often agrees with the predicate noun :

Quam (for *quid*) dīcam vōluptātem vidĕtis, *You see what I call pleasure.* Cic.

V. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

455. *Aliquis, quis, qui, and quispiam*, are all indefinite, *some one, any one*:

Est *āliquis*, *there is some one*. Liv. Dixit *quis*, *some one said*. Cic. Si *quis rex*, *if any king*. Cic. Alia res *quaequam*, *any other thing*. Cic.

1. *Aliquis* is less indefinite than *quis, qui, and quispiam*.

2. *Quis* and *qui* are used chiefly after *si, nisi, ne, and num.* *Quis* is generally used substantively and *qui* adjectively. *Aliquis* after *si, etc.*, is emphatic.

456. *Quidam*, a certain one, is less indefinite than *aliquis*:

Quidam rhētor antiquus, *a certain ancient rhetorician*. Cic. Accurrit *quidam*, *A certain one runs up*. Hor.

1. *Quidam* with an Adjective is sometimes used to qualify or soften the statement:

Iustitia mirifica quaedam videtur, *Justice seems somewhat wonderful*. Cic.

2. *Quidam* with *quāsi* and sometimes without it, has the force of *a certain, a kind of, as it were*:

Quāsi alumna quaedam, *a certain foster child as it were*. Cic.

457. *Quisquam* and *ullus* are used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences, and in interrogative sentences implying a negative:

Neque me *quisquam* agnōvit, *Nor did any one recognize me*. Cic. Si *quisquam*, *if any one*. Cic. Num censes *ullum* animal esse, *do you think there is any animal?* Cic.

1. *Nemo* is the negative of *quisquam*, and like *quisquam* is generally used substantively, rarely adjectively:

Nēmīnem laesit, *He harmed no one*. Cic. *Nemo* poēta, *no poet*. Cic.

2. *Nullus* is the negative of *ullus*, and is generally used adjectively, but it sometimes supplies the Gen. and Abl. of *nemo*, which generally wants those cases:

Nullum animal, *no animal*. Cic. *Nullius* aures, *the ears of no one*. Cic.

3. *Nullus* for *non*.—*Nullus* and *nihil* are sometimes used for an emphatic *non*. *Nullus* vēnit, *He did not come*. Cic. *Mortui nulli* sunt, *The dead are not*. Cic.

458. *Quivis, Quilibet*, any one whatever, and *Quisque*, every one, each one, are general indefinites (191):

Quaelibet res, *any thing*. Cic. *Tuorum quisque* nēcessariōrum, *each one of your friends*. Cic.

1. *Quisque* with Superlatives and Ordinals is generally best rendered by *all* or by *ever, always*, with *primus* by *very, possible*:

Eplēūrēos doctissimus quisque contemnit, *All the most learned despise the Epicureans, or the most learned ever despise, etc.* Cic. *Primo quōque die*, *the earliest day possible, the very first*. Cic.

2. *Ut Quisque—ita* with the superlative in both clauses is often best rendered, *the more—the more*:

Ut quisque sibi plūrimū confidit, ita maxime excellit, *The more one confides in himself, the more he excels*. Cic.

459. *Alius* and *Alter* are often repeated: *ālius—ālius*, one—another; *alii—alii*, some—others; *alter—alter*, the one—the other; *altēri—altēri*, the one party—the other:

Alii glōriæ serviunt, ālii pēcūniæ, Some are slaves to glory, others to money. Cic. Altēri dīmicant, altēri timent, One party contends, the other fears. Cic.

1. *Alius* repeated in different cases often involves an ellipsis:

Alius ālia via civitātem auxerunt, They advanced the state, one in one way, another in another. Liv. So also with ālias or ālter: Aliter ālii vīvunt, Some live in one way, others in another. Cic.

2. After *Alius*, *Aliter*, and the like, *atque*, *ac*, and *et* often mean *than*:

Non ālius essem atque sum, I would not be other than I am. Cic.

3. *Alter* means *the one, the other* (of two), *the second*; *ālius*, *another, other*. When *alter—alter* refers to objects previously mentioned, the first *alter* usually refers to the latter object, but may refer to either:

Inimicus, compētitor, cum altēro—cum altēro, an enemy, a rival, with the latter—with the former. Cic.

4. *Uterque* means *both, each of two*, and in the Plu. *both, each of two parties*.

CHAPTER V.

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

SECTION I.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS.

RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON:

Deus mundum aedificāvit, God made the world. Cic. Ego rēges ejēci, vos tŷrannos intrōdūcītis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES agree with the subject according to 438. See also 301. 2 and 3:

Thēbāni accūsāti sunt, The Thebans were accused. Cic.

1) In the Infinitive, the Participle in *um* sometimes occurs without any reference to the gender or number of the subject:

Dīdīcentia fūtūrum quæ impērāvīset, from doubt that those things which he had commanded would take place. S&M.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 367. 2.

1) An Indefinite Subject is often denoted by the Second Pers. Sing., or by the First or Third Plur.: *dicas*, you (any one) may say; *dicimus*, we (people) say; *dicunt*, they say.

3. VERB OMITTED.—See 367. 3.

461. CONSTRUCTION ACCORDING TO SENSE.—Sometimes the Predicate is construed according to the *real meaning* of the subject without regard to grammatical gender or number. Thus

1. With Collective Nouns, *pars*, *multitudo*, and the like :

Multitudo abeunt, *The multitude depart*. Liv. *Pars per agros dilapsi*, *a part (some) dispersed through the fields*. Liv.

1) Here *multitudo* and *pars*, though Sing. and Fem. in form, are Plur. and Masc. in sense. See also 438. 6.

2) Conversely the Imperative Singular may be used in addressing a multitude individually: *Adde defectionem Siciliae*, *Add (to this, soldiers,) the revolt of Sicily*. Liv.

3) Of two verbs with the same collective noun, the former is often *Sing.*, and the latter *Plur.*: *Juventus ruit certantque*, *The youth rush forth and contend*. Virg.

2. With *Millia*, often masculine in sense:

Caesi sunt tria millia, *Three thousand men were slain*. Liv.

3. With *Quisque*, *Uterque*, *Alius—Alium*, *Alter—Altërum*, and the like :

Uterque educunt, *they each lead out*. Caes. *Alter altërum vidëmus*, *We see each other*. Cic.

4. With Singular Subjects accompanied by an Ablative with *cum* :

Dux cum principibus capiuntur, *The leader with his chiefs is taken*. Liv. See 438. 6.

5. With *Partim—Partim* in the sense of *pars—pars* :

Bonorum partim necessaria, partim non necessaria sunt, *Of good things some are necessary, others are not necessary*. Cic.

462. AGREEMENT WITH APPOSITIVE OR PREDICATE NOUN.—Sometimes the verb agrees, not with its subject, but with an Appositive or Predicate Noun :

Volsinii, oppidum Tuscorum, concrematum est, *Volsinii, a town of the Tuscans, was burned*. Plin. *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, *Not every error should be called folly*. Cic.

1. The Verb regularly agrees with the appositive when that is *urbs*, *oppidum*, or *civitas*, in apposition with plural names of places, as in the first example.

1) The verb sometimes agrees with a noun in a subordinate clause after *quam*, *nisi*, etc. : *Nihil aliud nisi pax quaesita est* (not *quaesitum*), *Nothing but peace was sought*. Cic.

2. The verb agrees with the predicate noun, when that is nearer or more emphatic than the subject, as in the second example.

463. AGREEMENT WITH COMPOUND SUBJECT.—With two or more subjects the verb agrees—

I. With one subject and is understood with the others :

Aut mōres spectāri aut fortūna sōlet, *Either character or fortune is wont to be regarded.* Cic. Hōmērus fuit et Hēsiodus ante Rōmam conditam, *Homer and Hesiod lived (were) before the founding of Rome.* Cic.

II. With all the subjects conjointly, and is accordingly in the Plural Number :

Lentūlus, Scīpio pēriērunt, *Lentulus and Scipio perished.* Cic. Ego et Cicēro vālēmus, *Cicero and I are well.* Cic. Tū et Tullia vālētis, *You and Tullia are well.* Cic.

1. PERSON.—With subjects differing in Person, the verb takes the First Person rather than the Second, and the Second rather than the Third, as in the examples just given.

2. PARTICIPLES.—See 439.

3. TWO SUBJECTS AS A UNIT.—Two singular subjects forming in sense a unit or whole, admit a singular verb :

Sēnātus pōpulusque intellīgit, *The senate and people (i. e., the state as a unit) understand.* Cic. Tempus nēcēssitasque postulat, *Time and necessity (i. e., the crisis) demand.* Cic.

4. SUBJECTS WITH AUT OR NEC.—With singular subjects connected by *aut, vel, nec, nēque* or *seu*, the verb generally agrees with the nearest subject, but with subjects differing in person, it is generally Plur. :

Aut Brūtus aut Cassius iudicāvit, *Either Brutus or Cassius judged.* Cic. Haec nēque ego nēque tu fēcimus, *Neither you nor I have done these things.* Ter.

SECTION II.

USE OF VOICES.

464. In a transitive verb, the Active voice represents the subject as acting upon some object, the Passive, as acted upon by some other person or thing :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. A Deo omnia facta sunt, *All things were made by God.* Cic.

465. ACTIVE AND PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.—With transitive verbs, a thought may at the pleasure of the writer be expressed either actively or passively. But

I. That which in the active construction would be the object must be the subject in the passive ; and

II. That which in the active would be the subject must be put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*, for persons, without it for things : (371.6) :

Deus omnia constituit, *God ordained all things*, or: A Deo omnia constituta sunt, *All things were ordained by God*. Cic. Dei providentia mundum administrat, *The providence of God rules the world*, or: Dei providentia mundus administratur, *The world is ruled by the providence of God*. Cic.

1. The PASSIVE VOICE is sometimes equivalent to the Act. with a reflexive pronoun, like the Greek Middle:

Lavantur in fluminibus, *They bathe* (wash themselves) *in the rivers*. Caes.

2. INTRANSITIVE VERBS (193) have regularly only the active voice, but they are sometimes used impersonally in the passive:

Curritur ad praetorium, *They run to the praetorium* (it is run to). Cic.

3. DEPONENT VERBS, though Passive in form, are in signification transitive or intransitive:

Illud mirabar, *I admired that*. Cic. Ab urbe proficisci, *to set out from the city*. Caes.

4. SEMI-DEPONENTS (271, 3) have some of the Active forms and some of the Passive, without change of meaning.

SECTION III.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

I. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

466. The Present Indicative represents the action of the verb as taking place at the present time:

Ego et Cicero valēmus, *Cicero and I are well*. Cic. Hoc te rogo, *I ask you for this*. Cic.

467. Hence the Present Tense is used,

I. Of actions and events which are actually taking place at the present time, as in the above examples.

II. Of actions and events which, as belonging to all time, belong of course to the present, as *general truths* and *customs*:

Nihil est amabilius virtute, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue*. Cic. Fortes fortuna adjuvat, *Fortune helps the brave*. Ter.

III. Of past actions and events which the writer wishes, for effect, to picture before the reader as present. The Present, when so used, is called the Historical Present:

Jugurtha vallo moenia circumdat, *Jugurtha surrounds the city with a rampart*. Sall.

1. HISTORICAL PRESENT.—The historical present may sometimes be best rendered by the English Imperfect, and sometimes by the English Present, as that has a similar historical use.

2. PRESENT WITH JAMDIU, JAMDUDUM.—The Present is often used of a *present* action which has been going on for some time, rendered *have*, especially after *jamdiu*, *jamdūdum*, etc.

Jamdiu ignōro quid āgas, I have not known for a long time what you are doing. Cic.

1) The Imperfect is used in the same way of a *past* action which had been going on for some time. Thus in the example above, *Jamdiu ignōrābam*, would mean, *I had not known for a long time.*

2) The Present in the Infinitive and Participle is used in the same way of an action which has been or had been going on for some time.

3. PRESENT APPLIED TO AUTHORS.—The Present in Latin, as in English, may be used of authors whose works are extant :

Xēnōphon fācit Socrātem dispūtāntem, Xenophon represents Socrates discussing. Cic.

4. PRESENT WITH DUM.—With *dum*, in the sense of *while*, the Present is generally used, even of past actions :

Dum ea pārānt, Sāguntum oppugnābātur, While they were (are) making these preparations, Saguntum was attacked. Liv.

5. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Present is sometimes used of an action really future, especially in conditions :

Si vincīmus, omnia tūta ērunt, If we conquer, all things will be safe. Sall.

II. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

468. The Imperfect Indicative represents the action as taking place in past time :

Stābant nōbīlissīmi jūvēnes, There stood (were standing) most noble youths. Liv. *Colles oppīdum cingēbant, Hills encompassed the town.* Caes.

469. Hence the Imperfect is used especially

I. In *lively description*, whether of scenes or events :

Ante oppīdum plānities pātēbat, Before the town extended a plain. Caes. *Fulgentes glādios vīdēbant, They saw (were seeing) the gleaming swords.* Cic.

II. Of *customary* or *repeated* actions and events, often rendered by *was wont*, etc. :

Pausānias ēpūlābātur mōre Persārum, Pausanias was wont to banquet in the Persian style. Nep.

1. IMPERFECT OF ATTEMPTED ACTION.—The Imperfect is sometimes used of an attempted or intended action :

Sēdābant tūmultus, They attempted to quell the seditions. Liv.

2. IMPERFECT IN LETTERS.—See 472. 1.

III. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

470. The Future Indicative represents the action as one which will take place in future time :

Scribam ad te, *I will write to you.* Cic. Nunquam aberrābimus, *We shall never go astray.* Cic.

1. FUTURE WITH IMPERATIVE FORCE.—In Latin as in English, the Future Indicative sometimes has the force of an Imperative :

Cūrābis et scribes, *You will take care and write.* Cic.

2. LATIN FUTURE FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—Actions which really belong to future time are almost invariably expressed by the Future Tense, though sometimes put in the present in English :

Nātūram si sēquēmur, nunquam aberrābimus, *If we follow nature, we shall never go astray.* Cic.

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE WITH MELIUS.—With *mēlius* the Future Indicative has often the force of the Subjunctive :

Mēlius pēribimur, *We would perish rather, or it would be better for us to perish.* Liv.

IV. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

471. The Perfect Indicative has two distinct uses :

I. As the PRESENT PERFECT or PERFECT DEFINITE, it represents the action as at present completed, and is rendered by our Perfect with *have* :

De gēnere belli dixi, *I have spoken of the character of the war.* Cic.

II. As the HISTORICAL PERFECT or PERFECT INDEFINITE, it represents the action as a simple historical fact :

Miltiādes est accūsātus, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

1. PERFECT OF WHAT HAS CEASED TO BE.—The Perfect is sometimes used where the emphasis rests particularly on the *completion* of the action, implying that what was true of the past, is not true of the present :

Hābuit, non hābet, *He had, but has not.* Cic. Fuit Ilium, *Ilium was.* Virg.

2. PERFECT INDICATIVE WITH PAENE, PROPE.—The Perfect Indicative with *paene*, *prope*, may often be rendered by *might*, *would*, or by the Pluperfect Indicative :

Brūtum non mīnus āmo, *paene dixi*, quam te, *I love Brutus not less, I might almost say, or I had almost said, than I do you.* Cic.

3. PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT.—The Latin sometimes employs the Perfect and Pluperfect where the English uses the Present and Imperfect, especially in repeated actions, and in verbs which want the Present (297).

Mēmīnit praetērītōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic. Quum ad viliam vēni, hoc me dēlectat, *When I come (have come) to a villa, this pleases me.* Cic. Mēmīnēram Paulum, *I remembered Paulus.* Cic.

4. PERFECT WITH POSTQUAM.—*Postquam, ut, ut primum*, etc., in the sense of *as soon as*, are usually followed by the Perfect; sometimes by the Imperfect or Historical Present. But the Pluperfect is generally used of repeated actions; also after *postquam* when a long or definite interval intervenes:

Postquam cēcīdit Ilium, *after (as soon as) Ilium fell.* Virg. Anno tertio postquam prōfūgerat, *in the third year after he had fled.* Nep.

1) As a Rare Exception the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive occur after *postquam* (*posteaquam*): *Posteaquam aedificasset classes, after he had built fleets.* Cic.

V. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

472. The Pluperfect Indicative represents the action as completed at some definite past time:

Cōpias quas pro castris collōcāvērāt, rēduxit, *He led back the forces which he had stationed before the camp.* Caes.

1. TENSES.—In letters the writer often adapts the tense to the time of the reader, using the Imperfect or Perfect for the Present, and the Pluperfect for the Imperfect or Perfect:

Nihil hābēbam quod scribērem: ad tuas omnes ēpistōlas rescripsēram, *I have (had) nothing to write: I have already replied to all your letters* (I had replied, i. e., before writing this). Cic.

1) The Perfect is sometimes used of Future actions, as events which happen after the writing of the letter but before the receipt of it will be *Future* to the writer but *Past* to the reader.

2. PLUPERFECT FOR ENGLISH IMPERFECT.—See 471. 3.

3. PLUPERFECT TO DENOTE RAPIDITY.—The Pluperfect sometimes denotes rapidity or completeness of action:

Urbem luctu complēvērant, *They (had) filled the city with mourning.* Curt.

VI. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

473. The Future Perfect Indicative represents the action as one which will be completed at some future time:

Rōmam quum vēnēro, scribam ad te, *When I shall have reached Rome, I will write to you.* Cic. Dum tu haec lēges, ego illum fortasse convēnēro, *When you read this, I shall perhaps have already met him.* Cic.

1. FUTURE PERFECT TO DENOTE CERTAINTY.—The Future Perfect is sometimes used to denote the *speedy* or *complete* accomplishment of the work:

Ego meum officiū praestitēro. *I will surely discharge my duty.* Caes.

2. The FUTURE PERFECT FOR ENGLISH PRESENT OR FUTURE is rare, but occurs in conditional clauses :

Si interpretāri pōtuerō, his verbis ūtītur, *If I can (shall have been able to) understand him, he uses these words.* Cic.

SECTION IV.

USE OF THE INDICATIVE.

RULE XXXVI.—Indicative.

474. The Indicative is used in treating of facts :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic. Nonne expulsus est patria, *Was he not banished from his country?* Cic. Hec fēci, dum licuit, *I did this as long as it was permitted.* Cic.

475. SPECIAL USES.—The Indicative is sometimes used where our idiom would suggest the Subjunctive :

1. The *Indicative* of the *Periphrastic Conjugations* is often so used in the historical tenses, especially in conditional sentences (512. 2) :

Haec conditio non accipiēda fuit, *This condition should not have been accepted.* Cic.

2. The *Historical Tenses* of the *Indicative*, particularly the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used for *Effect*, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so :

Vicērāmus, nīsi rēcēpisset Antōnium, *We should have (lit. had) conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic. See 511. 2.

3. *Pronouns* and *Relative Adverbs*, made general by being doubled or by assuming the suffix *cunque* (187. 4), take the Indicative :

Quisquis est, is est sapiens, *Whoever he is, he is wise.* Cic. Hoc ultimum, utcunque initum est, proelium fuit, *This, however it was commenced, was the last battle.* Liv.

4. In *Expressions of Duty, Necessity, Ability*, and the like, the Latin often uses the Indicative where the English does not :

Tardius quam debuerat, *more slowly than he should have done.* Cic.

1) So also in *sum* with *aequum, par, justum, melius, utilius, longum, difficile*, and the like: Longum est persēqui utilitātes, *It would be tedious (is a long task) to enumerate the uses.* Cic.

SECTION V.

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

476. Tense in the Subjunctive does not designate the time of the action as definitely as in the Indicative, but it marks with great exactness its continuance or completion.

477. The Present and Imperfect express *Incomplete* action:

Văleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Utinam vĕra invēnīre possem, *O that I were able to find the truth.* Cic.

478. The Perfect and Pluperfect express *Completed* action:

Oblitus es quid dixĕrim, *You have forgotten what I said.* Cic. Thēmistocles, quum Graeciam libĕrasset, expulsus est, *Themistocles was banished, though he had liberated Greece.* Cic.

479. The Future Tenses are wanting in the Subjunctive: the mood itself—used only of that which is merely *conceived* and *uncertain*—is so nearly related to the Future, that those tenses are seldom needed. Their place is however supplied, when necessary, by the periphrastic forms in *rus* (481. III. 1).

480. SEQUENCE OF TENSES.—The Subjunctive Tenses in their use conform to the following

RULE XXXVII.—Sequence of Tenses.

Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical upon Historical:

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Nemo erit qui censeat, *There will be no one who will think.* Cic. Quaesieras nonne putarem, *You had asked, whether I did not think.* Cic.

481. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In accordance with this rule,

I. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Principal tense—*present, present perfect, future, future perfect*—is put,

1. In the Present for Incomplete Action:

Vĭdeo quid āgas,	<i>I see what you are doing.</i>
Vĭdi quid agas,	<i>I have seen what you are doing.</i>
Vĭdĕbo quid agas,	<i>I shall see what you do.</i>
Vĭdĕro quid agas,	<i>I shall have seen what you do.</i>

2. In the Perfect for Completed Action:

Vĭdeo quid ēgeris,	<i>I see what you have done.</i>
Vĭdi quid egeris,	<i>I have seen what you have done.</i>
Vĭdĕbo quid egeris,	<i>I shall see what you have done.</i>
Vĭdĕro quid egeris,	<i>I shall have seen what you have done.</i>

II. The Subjunctive dependent upon a Historical tense—*imperfect, historical perfect, pluperfect*—is put,

1. In the Imperfect for Incomplete Action :

Vidēbam quid āgēres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidi quid ageres,	<i>I saw what you were doing.</i>
Vidēram quid ageres,	<i>I had seen what you were doing.</i>

2. In the Pluperfect for Completed Action :

Vidēbam quid ēgisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidi quid egisses,	<i>I saw what you had done.</i>
Vidēram quid egisses,	<i>I had seen what you had done.</i>

III. The Periphrastic Forms in *rus* conform to the rule :

Video quid actūrus sis,	<i>I see what you are going to do.</i>
Vidēbam quid actūrus esses,	<i>I saw what you were going to do.</i>

1. FUTURE SUPPLIED.—The Future is supplied when necessary (479), (1) by the Present¹ or Imperfect Subjunctive of the periphrastic forms in *rus*, or (2) by *fūtūrum sit ut*,² with the regular Present, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the regular Imperfect. The first method is confined to the Active, the second occurs in both voices :

Incertum est quam longa vīta fūtūra sit, *It is uncertain how long life will continue.* Cic. Incertum erat quo missūri classem fōrent, *It was uncertain whither they would send the fleet.* Liv.

2. FUTURE PERFECT SUPPLIED.—The Future Perfect is supplied, when necessary, by *fūtūrum sit ut*, with the Perfect, and *fūtūrum esset ut*, with the Pluperfect. But this circumlocution is rarely necessary. In the Passive it is sometimes abridged to *fūtūrus sim* and *fūtūrus essem*, with the Perfect participle :

Non dubīto quin confecta jam res fūtūra sit, *I do not doubt that the thing will have been already accomplished.* Cic.

IV. The HISTORICAL PRESENT is treated sometimes as a Principal tense, as it really is in Form, and sometimes as a Historical tense, as it really is in Sense :

1. As Principal tense according to its Form :

Ubiī orant, ut sibi parcat, *The Ubiī implore him to spare them.* Caes.

2. As Historical tense according to its Sense :

Persuādet Castīco ut regnum occūpāret, *He persuaded Castīcus to seize the government.* Caes.

V. The IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE often refers to *present* time, especially in conditional sentences (510. 1); accordingly, when thus used, it is treated as a Principal tense :

¹ The Present, of course, after Principal tenses, and the Imperfect after Historical tenses, according to 480.

² *Fūtūrum sit*, etc., after Principal tenses, and *fūtūrum esset*, etc., after Historical tenses.

Mēmōrāre possem quibus in locis hostes fūdērit, *I might (now) state in what places he routed the enemy.* Sall.

VI. The PRESENT AND FUTURE INFINITIVES, Present and Future PARTICIPLES, as also GERUNDS and SUPINES, share the tense of the verb on which they depend, as they express only *relative* time (540. 571):

Spēro fōre¹ ut contingat, *I hope it will happen* (I hope it will be that it may happen). Cic. Non spērāverat fōre ut ad se dēficerent, *He had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv.

482. PECULIARITIES IN SEQUENCE.—The following peculiarities in the sequence of tenses deserve notice:

1. AFTER PERFECT TENSE.—The Latin Perfect is sometimes treated as a Historical tense, even when rendered with *have*, and thus admits the *Imperfect* or *Pluperfect*:

Quōniam quae subsidia hābēres expōsui,² nunc dicam, *Since I have shown what aids you have (or had), I will now speak.* Cic.

2. AFTER HISTORICAL TENSES.—Conversely Historical tenses, when followed by clauses denoting *consequence* or *result*, often conform to the law of sequence for Principal tenses, and thus admit the *Present* or *Perfect*:

Epāmīondas fīde sic ūsus est, ut possit iūdicāri, *Epaminondas used such fidelity that it may be judged.* Nep. Adeo excellēbat Aristides abstinētia, ut Justus sit appellātus, *Aristides so excelled in self-control, that he has been called the Just.* Nep.

This peculiarity arises from the fact that the *Result* of a *past* action may itself be *present* and may thus be expressed by a Principal tense. When the result belongs to the present time, the Present is used: *possit iūdicāri*, may be judged now; when it is represented as at present completed, the Perfect is used: *sit appellātus*, has been called i. e. even to the present day; but when it is represented as simultaneous with the action on which it depends, the Imperfect is used in accordance with the general rule of sequence (480).

3. IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, ORATIO OBLIQUA.—In indirect discourse (528. and 533. 1) dependent upon a Historical tense, the narrator often uses the Principal tenses to give a lively effect to his narrative; occasionally also in direct discourse:

Exitus fuit orationis: Nēque ullos vācāre agros, qui dāri possint; *The close of the oration was, that there were (are) not any lands unoccupied which could (can) be given.* Caes.

¹ Here *fōre* shares the tense of *spēro*, and is accordingly followed by the Present *contingat*, but below it shares the tense of *spērāverat*, and is accordingly followed by the Imperfect *dēficerent*.

² *Expōsui*, though best rendered by our Perf. Def. with *have*, is in the Latin treated as the Historical Perf. The thought is as follows: *Since in the preceding topics I set forth the aids which you had, I will now speak, &c.*

SECTION VI.

USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

483. The Subjunctive represents the action of the verb, not as an actual fact, but as something supposed or conceived. It may denote that the action is conceived,

1. As Possible, Potential.
2. As Desirable.
3. As a Purpose or Result.
4. As a Condition.
5. As a Concession.
6. As a Cause or Reason.
7. As an Indirect Question.
8. As dependent upon another subordinate action: (1) By Attraction after another Subjunctive, (2) In Indirect Discourse.

484. VARIETIES.—The Subjunctive in its various uses may accordingly be characterized as follows:

- I. The Potential Subjunctive.
- II. The Subjunctive of Desire.
- III. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result
- IV. The Subjunctive of Condition.
- V. The Subjunctive of Concession.
- VI. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason.
- VII. The Subjunctive in Indirect Questions.
- VIII. The Subjunctive by Attraction.
- IX. The Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

I. THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

RULE XXXVIII.—Potential Subjunctive.

485. The Potential Subjunctive represents the action not as real, but as *possible*:

Forsitan quaerātis, *Perhaps you may inquire*. Cic. Hoc nemo dixit, *No one would say this*. Cic. Huic cēdāmus, *hujus conditiones audiamus, Shall we yield to him, shall we listen to his terms?* Cic. Quis dūbitet (= nemo dūbitat), *Who would doubt, or who doubts (= no one doubts)?* Cic. Quid faciērem, *What was I to do, or what should I have done?* Virg.

486. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—In the Potential sense, the Subjunctive is used,

I. In *Declarative Sentences*, to express an affirmation *doubtfully* or *conditionally*, as in the first and second examples.

II. In *Questions of Appeal*,¹ to ask not what is, but what *may be* or *should be*, generally implying a negative answer, as in the last example under the rule.

III. In *Subordinate Clauses*, whatever the connective, to represent the action as *possible* rather than *real*:

Quamquam ēpūlis cāreat sēnectus, *though old age may be without its feasts*. Cic. Quōniam non possent, *since they would not be able*. Caes. Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might demand*. Liv.

Here the Subjunctive after *quamquam*, *quōniam*, and *ūbi*, is entirely independent of those conjunctions. In this way many conjunctions which do not require the Subjunctive, admit that mood whenever the thought requires it.

1. USE OF THE POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE.—This Subjunctive, it will be observed, has a wide application, and is used in almost all kinds of sentences and clauses, whether declarative or interrogative, principal or subordinate, whether introduced by conjunctions or relatives.

2. *How rendered*.—The Potential Subjunctive is generally best rendered by our Potential signs—*may, can, must, might, etc.*, or by *shall* or *will*.

3. INCLINATION.—The Subjunctive sometimes denotes inclination:

Ego censeam, *I should think, or I am inclined to think*. Liv.

4. IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.—In the Potential sense, the Imperfect is often used where we should expect the Pluperfect: *dicēres*, you would have said; *crēdēres, pūtāres*, you would have thought; *vidēres, cernēres*, you would have seen:

Moesti, *crēdēres* victos, rēdeunt in castra, *Sad, vanquished you would have thought them, they returned to the camp*. Liv.

5. SUBJUNCTIVE OF REPEATED ACTION.—Subordinate clauses in narration sometimes take the Subjunctive to denote that the action is *often* or *indefinitely repeated*. Thus with *ūbi*, whenever, *quōties*, as often as, *quicunque*, whoever, *ut quisque*, as each one, and the like:

Id fētiālis ūbi dixisset, hastam mittēbat, *The fetial priest was wont to hurl a spear whenever (i. e., every time) he had said this*. Liv.

6. PRESENT AND PERFECT.—In the Potential Subjunctive the Perfect often has nearly the same force as the Present:

Tu Plātōnem laudāvēris, *You would praise Plato*. Cic.

1) The Perfect with the force of the Present occurs also in some of the other uses of the Subjunctive.

7. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.—The Subjunctive in the conclusion of conditional sentences is the Potential Subjunctive, but conditional sentences will be best treated by themselves. See 502.

¹ These are also variously called *Deliberative*, *Doubting*, or *Rhetorical Questions*.

II. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE.

RULE XXXIX.—Desire, Command.

487. The Subjunctive of Desire represents the action not as real, but as *desired* :

Văleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic. Amēmus patriam, *Let us love our country.* Cic. Rōbore ūtare, *Use your strength.* Cic. Scribere ne pigrere, *Do not neglect to write.* Cic.

488. APPLICATION OF THE RULE.—The Subjunctive of Desire is used,

I. To express a WISH, as in *prayers, exhortations, and entreaties*, as in the first and second examples.

II. To express a COMMAND mildly, as in *admonitions, precepts, and warnings*, as in the third and fourth examples.

1. WITH UTINAM.—The Subjunctive of *Desire* is often accompanied by *utinam*, and sometimes—especially in the poets, by *ut, si, o si* :

Utinam cōnata effīcere possim, *May I be able to accomplish my endeavors.* Cic.

2. FORCE OF TENSES.—The Present and Perfect imply that the wish may be fulfilled ; the Imperfect and Pluperfect, that it cannot be fulfilled :

Sint beāti, *May they be happy.* Cic. Ne transiēris Ibērum, *Do not cross the Ebro.* Liv. Utinam possem, ūtinam pōtuissem, *Would that I were able, would that I had been able.* Cic. See also 486. 6. 1).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect may often be best rendered, *should have been, ought to have been* :

Hoc dicēret, *He should have said this.* Cic. Mortem oppētīlisses, *You should have met death.* Cic.

3. NEGATIVE NE.—With this Subjunctive the negative is *ne*, rarely *non* :
Ne audeant, *Let them not dare.* Cic. Non recēdāmus, *Let us not recede.* Cic.

4. IN ASSEVERATIONS.—The first person of the subjunctive is often found in earnest or solemn affirmations or asseverations :

Mōriar, si pūto, *May I die, if I think.* Cic. Ne sim salvus, si scribo, *May I not be safe, if I write.* Cic.

So with *ita* and *sic* : Sollicītat, ita vivam, *As I live, it troubles me.* Cic.

Here *ita vivam* means literally, *may I so live*, i. e., may I live only in case this is true.

5. IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—The Subjunctive of desire is sometimes used in relative clauses :

Quod faustum sit, rēgem creāte, *Elect a king, and may it be an auspicious event (may which be auspicious).* Liv. Sēnectus, ad quam ūtinam pervēniātis, *old age, to which may you attain.* Cic.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT.

RULE XL.—Purpose or Result.

489. The Subjunctive of Purpose or Result is used,

I. With *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, *quōmīnus* :

PURPOSE.—*Enītūtur ut vincat*, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.
Pūnit ne peccētur, *He punishes that crime may not be committed.* Sen.

RESULT.—*Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset cārissīmus*, *He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep.

II. With *qui* = *ut is*, *ut ēgo*, *tu*, etc. :

PURPOSE.—*Missi sunt, qui (ut ii) consūlērent Apollīnem*, *They were sent to consult Apollo (who should or that they should).* Nep.

RESULT.—*Non is sum qui (ut ego) his ūtar*, *I am not such an one as to use these things.* Cic.

1. *Ut* with the Subjunctive sometimes forms with *fācio*, or *ēgo*, rarely with *est* a circumlocution for the Indicative : *fācio ut dicam* = *dīco*; *fācio ut scribam* = *scribo*: *Invītus fācio ut rēcorder*, *I unwillingly recall.* Cic.

Conjunctions of Purpose or Result.

490. *UT* AND *NE*.—*Ut* and *ne* are the regular conjunctions in clauses denoting Purpose or Result. *Ut* and *ne* denote Purpose; *ut* and *ut non*, Result.

1. With connective *ne* becomes *nēve*, *neu*, rarely *nēque*. *Nēve*, *neu*, = *aut ne* or *et ne*: *Lēgem tūlit nēquis accūsārētur nēve multārētur*, *He proposed a law that no one should be accused or punished.* Nep.

491. PURE PURPOSE.—*Ut* and *ne*—*that*, *in order that*, *that not*, *in order that not*, *lest*, etc.—are used after verbs of a great variety of significations to express simply the Purpose of the action. A correlative—*īdeo*, *īdcirco*, etc.—may or may not precede :

Lēgum īdcirco servi sūmus, ut libēri esse possīmus, *We are servants of the law for this reason, that we may be free.* Cic. See also the examples under the Rule.

492. MIXED PURPOSE.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ne* are used to denote a Purpose which partakes more or less of the character of a *Direct Object*, sometimes of a *Subject*, *Predicate* or *Appositive*—Mixed Purpose. Thus with verbs and expressions denoting

1. EFFORT.—striving for a purpose; attaining a purpose :

nītor, *contendo*, *stūdeo*,—*cūro*, *id ēgo*, *ōpēram do*, etc., *fācio*, *effīcio*, *impetro*, *consēquor*, etc. :

Contendit, ut vincat, *He strives to conquer*. Cic. Cūrāvi ut bēne vivērem, *I took care to lead a good life*. Sen. Effēcit ut impērātor mittērētur, *He caused a commander to be sent* (attained his purpose). Nep. But see 495.

2. EXHORTATION, IMPULSE—urging one to effort :

admōneo, mōneo, hortor,—cūgo, impello, mōveo,—ōro, rōgo,—impēro, praecīpio, etc. :

Te hortor ut lēgas, *I exhort you to read*. Cic. Mōvēmur ut bōni sīmus, *We are influenced to be good*. Cic. Te rōgo ut eum jūves, *I ask you to aid him*. Cic. See also 551. II. 1 and 2 ; 558. VI.

3. DESIRE AND ITS EXPRESSION : hence *decision, decree*, etc. :

opto, postūlo,—censeo, dēcerno, stātuo, constituo, etc.—rarely vōlo, nōlo, mālo :

Opto ut id audiātis, *I desire (pray) that you may hear this*. Cic. Sēnātus censuērat, ūti Aeduos dēfendēret, *The senate had decreed that he should defend the Aedui*. Caes. See 551. II. and 558. II. and VI.

4. FEAR, DANGER :

mētuo, tīmeo, vēreor,—pēricūlum est, cūra est, etc. :

Tīmeo, ut sustīneas, *I fear you will not endure them*. Cic. Vēreor ne lābōrem augeam, *I fear that I shall increase the labor*. Cic.

1) By a Difference of Idiom *ut* must here be rendered *that not*, and *ne* by *that* or *lest*. The Latin treats the clause as a wish, a desired purpose.

2) After verbs of fearing *ne non* is sometimes used for *ut*, regularly so after negative clauses: Vēreor ne non possit, *I fear that he will not be able*. Cic.

3) After verbs of fearing, especially *vēreor*, the infinitive is sometimes used: Vēreor laudāre, *I fear (hesitate) to praise*. Cic.

493. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Purpose present the following peculiarities :

1. *Ut ne*, rarely *ut non*, is sometimes used for *ne* :

Praedixit, ut ne lēgātos dimittērent, *He charged them not to* (that they should not) *release the delegates*. Nep. Ut plūra non dīcam, *not to say more*, i. e., that I may not. Cic.

2. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, especially with *vōlo*, *nōlo*, *mālo*, *fūcio*, and verbs of directing, urging, etc. *Ne* is often omitted with *cūve* :

Tu vēlim sis, *I desire that you may be*. Cic. Fac hābeas, *see (make) that you have*. Cic. Sēnātus decrēvit, dārent ōpēram consūles, *The senate decreed that the consuls should see to it*. Sall. See also 535. 1, 2).

3. Clauses with *Ut* and *Ne* may depend upon a noun or upon a verb omitted :

Fēcit pācem his condītiōnibus, ne qui affīcērētur exsīlio, *He made peace on these terms, that none should be punished with exile*. Nep. Ut ita dīcam, *so to speak* (that I may speak thus). Cic. This is often inserted in a sentence, like the English *so to speak*.

4. *Nēdum* and *Ne* in the sense of *much less, not to say*, are used with the Subjunctive :

Vix in tectis frigus vitātur, nēdum in māri sit faciē, The cold is avoided with difficulty in our houses, much less is it easy (to avoid it) on the sea. Cic.

494. PURE RESULT.—*Ut* and *ut non*—*so that, so that not*—are often used with the Subjunctive, to express simply a *Result* or a *Consequence* :

Ita vixit ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus, He so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians. Nep. *Ita laudo, ut non pertimescam, I so praise as not to fear.* Cic.

A correlative—*ita* in these examples—generally precedes: thus, *ita, sic, tam, adeo, tantopere, tālis, tantus, ejusmodi.*

495. MIXED RESULT.—In their less obvious applications, *ut* and *ut non* are used with the Subjunctive to denote a *Result* which partakes of the character of a *Direct Object, Subject, Predicate, or Appositive*: Thus

1. Clauses as **OBJECT AND RESULT** occur with *fācio, effīcio*, of the action of irrational forces :

Sol efficit ut omnia flōreant, The sun causes all things to bloom, i. e., produces that result. Cic. See 492. 1.

2. Clauses as **SUBJECT AND RESULT** occur with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, remains, follows, is distant*, etc. :

accidit, contingit, ēvenit, fit, restat, —sequitur, —ābest, etc.

Fit ut quisque dēlectētur, The result is (it happens) that every one is delighted. Cic. *Sequitur ut falsum sit, It follows that it is false.* Cic.

1) The Subjunctive is sometimes, though rarely, used when the predicate is a Noun or Adjective with the copula *sum* :

Mos est ut nōlint, It is their custom not to be willing (that they are unwilling). Cic. *Proximum est, ut dōceam, The next point is, that I show.* Cic. See 556. I. 1 and 2.

2) Subjunctive Clauses with *ut*, in the form of questions expressive of surprise, sometimes stand alone, by the omission of some predicate, as *crēdendum est, vērissimile est*, is it to be credited, is it probable?

Tu ut unquam te corrīgas, that you should ever reform? i. e., Is it to be supposed that you will ever reform? Cic.

3) See also 556 with its subdivisions.

3. Clauses as **APPOSITIVE AND RESULT, OR PREDICATE AND RESULT**, occur with Demonstratives and a few Nouns :

Hābet hoc virtus ut dēlectet, Virtue has this advantage, that it delights. Cic. *Est hoc vitium, ut invidia glōriae cōmes sit, There is this fault, that envy is the companion of glory.* Nep.

496. PECULIARITIES.—Expressions of Result present the following peculiarities :

1. *Ut* is sometimes omitted, regularly so with *oportet*, generally with *opus est* and *necesse est* :

Te *oportet* virtus trāhat, *It is necessary that virtue should attract you.*

Cic. Causam hābeat *necesse est*, *It is necessary that it should have a cause.*
Cic.

2. The Subjunctive occurs with *Quam*—with or without *ut* :

Liberalius quam ut posset, *too freely to be able* (more freely than so as to be able). Nep. Impōnēbat amplius quam ferre possent, *He imposed more than they were able to bear.*

3. *Tantum ābest*.—After *tantum ābest ut*, denoting result, a second *ut* of result sometimes occurs :

Philōsōphia, tantum ābest, ut laudētur ut etiam vitūpērētur, *So far is it from the truth (so much is wanting), that philosophy is praised that it is even censured.* Cic.

497. QUO.—*Quo*, *by which, that*, is sometimes used for *ut*, especially with comparatives :

Mēdico dāre quo sit stūdiōsior, *to give to the physician, that* (by this means) *he may be more attentive.* Cic.

For *non quo* of Cause, see 520. 3.

498. QUIN.—*Quin* (*quī* and *ne*), *by which not, that not*, is often used to introduce a Purpose or Result after negatives and interrogatives implying a negative. Thus

1. *Quin* is often used in the ordinary sense of *ne* and *ut non* :

Rētīnēri non pōtērant, quin tēla conjicērent, *They could not be restrained from hurling (that they might not) their weapons.* Caes. Nihil est tam diffīcile quin (*ut non*) investigāri possit, *Nothing is so difficult that it may not be investigated.* Ter.

After verbs of *hindering, opposing*, and the like, *quin* has the force of *ne*.

2. *Quin* is often used after *Nemo, Nullus, Nihil, Quis?*

Adest nēmo, quin vīdeat, *There is no one present who does not see.* Cic. Quis est quin cernat, *Who is there who does not perceive?* Cic.

Is or *id* is sometimes expressed after *quin* :

Nihil est quin id intēreat, *There is nothing which does not perish.* Cic.

3. *Quin* is often used in the sense of *that, but that, without* with a participial noun, especially after negative expressions, implying *doubt, uncertainty, omission*, and the like :

Non est dūbium quin bēnēficiū sit, *There is no doubt that it is a benefit.* Sen. Nullum intērmisi diem quin aliquid dārem, *I allowed no day to*

pass, without giving something. Cic. *Făcère non possum quin littēras mit-tam, I cannot but send a letter.* Cic.

1) Such expressions are: non dūbīto, non dūbium est—non multum ābest, pau-lum ābest, nihil ābest, quid ābest?—non, vix, aegre abstinēo; mihi non tempēro; non, nihil praetermitto—făcère non possum, fiēri non pōtest.

2) The Infinitive, for *Quin* with the Subjunctive, occurs with verbs of doubting: Quis dūbitat pătēre Eurōpam, *Who doubts that Europe is exposed?* Curt.

3) *Non Quin* of Cause. See 520. 3.

4) *Quin* is used in questions in the sense of *why not?* and with the Imperative in the sense of *well, but*: Quin āgite, *but come.* Virg. It occasionally means *nay, even, rather.*

499. QUOMINUS.—Quōmīnus (quo and mīnus), *that thus the less, that not*, is sometimes used for *ne* and *ut non*, after verbs of hindering, opposing, and the like:

Non dēterret sāpientem mors quōmīnus reipublicae consūlat, *Death does not deter a wise man from deliberating for the republic.* Cic. Non rēcūsāvit, quomīnus poenam sūbīret, *He did not refuse to submit to punishment.* Nep. Per eum stētit quōmīnus dīmīcārētur, *It was owing to him (stood through him), that the engagement was not made.* Caes.

1. Expressions of *hindering*, etc., are: dēterreo, impēdio, prōhībeo,—obsto, oblstō, officio,—rēcūso, per me stat, etc.

2. Verbs of *hindering* admit a variety of constructions: the Infinitive, the Subjunctive with *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, or *quōmīnus*.

Relative of Purpose or Result.

500. A Relative Clause denoting a Purpose or a Result is equivalent to a clause with *ut*, denoting purpose or result, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason. The relative is then equivalent to *ut* with a pronoun: *qui* = *ut* *ēgo*, *ut tu*, *ut is*, etc.:

PURPOSE.—Missi sunt qui (ut ii) consūlērent Apollīnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo* (who should, or that they should). Nep. Missi sunt dēlecti qui Thermōpŷlas occūpārent, *Picked men were sent to take possession of Thermopylae.* Nep.

RESULT.—Non is sum qui (= *ut* *ēgo*) his ūtar, *I am not such a one as to use these things.* Cic. Innōcentia est affectio tālis ānīmī, quae (= *ut* *ea*) nō-ceat nēmīni, *Innocence is such a state of mind as injures no one, or as to in-jure no one.* Cic.

1. **RELATIVE PARTICLES.**—The subjunctive is used in the same way in clauses introduced by *relative particles*; *ūbi*, *unde*, etc.:

Dōmum ūbi hābitāret, lēgit, *He selected a house that he might dwell in it* (where he might dwell). Cic.

2. **PURPOSE AND RESULT.**—Relative clauses denoting purpose are readily recognized; those denoting result are used, in their more obvious applications, after such words as *tam*, so; *tālis*, is, *ejusmodi*, such, as in the above examples; but see also 501.

3. **INDICATIVE AFTER TALIS, ETC.**—In a relative clause after *tālis*, is, etc., the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*:

Mihi causa tālis oblāta est, in qua ōrātiō deesse nēmīni pōtest, *Such a cause has been offered me, (one) in which no one can fail of an oration.* Cic.

501. Relative clauses of Result, in their less obvious applications, include,

I. Relative clauses after *Indefinite* and *General antecedents*. Here *tam*, *tālis*, or some such word, may often be supplied:

Nunc dīcis āliquid (*ejusmodi*, or *tāle*) quod ad rem pertīneat, *Now you state something which belongs to the subject* (i. e., something of such a character as to belong, etc.). Cic. Sunt qui pūtent, *there are some who think.* Cic. Nēmo est qui non cūpiat, *there is no one who does not desire*, i. e., such as not to desire. Cic.

1. In the same way *quod*, or a relative particle, *ubi*, *unde*, *quo*, *cur*, etc., with the *Subjunctive*, is used after *est*, there is reason, *non est*, *nihil est*, there is no reason, *quid est*, what reason is there? *non hābeo*, *nihil hābeo*, I have no reason:

Est quod gaudeas, *There is reason why you should rejoice, or so that you may.* Plaut. Non est quod crēdas, *There is no reason why you should believe.* Sen. Nihil hābeo, quod incūsem sēnecutēm, *I have no reason why I should accuse old age.* Cic.

2. **INDICATIVE AFTER INDEFINITE ANTECEDENT.**—A Relative clause after an indefinite antecedent also takes the Indicative, when the fact itself is to be made prominent:

Sunt qui non audent dīcere, *There are some who (actually) do not dare to speak.* Cic. Multa sunt, quae dīci possunt, *There are many things which may be said.* Cic. So also clauses with Rel. particles. See 1 above.

In poetry and late prose the Indicative often follows *sunt qui*:

Sunt quos jūvat, *there are some whom it delights.* Hor.

3. **RESTRICTIVE CLAUSES** with *quod*, as *quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod meminērim*, as far as I remember, etc., take the subjunctive.

II. Relative clauses after *Unus*, *Sōlus*, and the like, take the subjunctive:

Sāpientia est ūna, quae moestītiā pellat, *Wisdom is the only thing which dispels sadness* (such as to dispel). Cic. Sōli centum ērant qui creāri possent, *There were only one hundred who could be appointed* (such that they could be). Liv.

III. Relative clauses after *Dignus*, *Indignus*, *Idōneus*, and *Ap-tus* take the subjunctive:

Fābulae dignae sunt, quae lēgantur, *The fables are worthy to be read* (that they should be read). Cic. Rūfum Caesar idōneum jūdicāverat quem mittēret, *Caesar had judged Rufus a suitable person to send* (whom he might send). Caes.

IV. Relative clauses after Comparatives with *Quam* take the subjunctive :

Damna majōra sunt quam quae (= ut ea) aestīmāri possint, The losses are too great to be estimated (greater than so that they can be). Liv.

IV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION.

502. Every conditional sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or understood,—the *Condition* and the *Conclusion* :

Si nēgem, mentiar, If I should deny it, I should speak falsely. Cic.
Here *si nēgem* is the condition, and *mentiar*, the conclusion.

RULE XLI.—Subjunctive of Condition.

503. The Subjunctive of Condition is used,

I. With *dum, mōdo, dummōdo* :

Mānent ingēnia, mōdo permāneat industria, Mental powers remain, if only industry remains. Cic.

II. With *ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vĕlut, vĕlut si* :

Crūdēlītatem, vĕlut si ādesset, horrēbant, They shuddered at his cruelty, as if he were present. Caes.

III. Sometimes with *si, nīsi, nī, sin, qui = si is, si quis* :

Dies dēficiat, si vĕlim nūmērāre, The day would fail me, if I should wish to recount. Cic. Imprōbe fēcēris, nīsi mōnuēris, You would do wrong, if you should not give warning. Cic. Si vōluisset, dimīcasset, If he had wished, he would have fought. Nep.

1. *SI OMITTED*.—Two clauses without any conjunction sometimes have the force of a conditional sentence :

Nēgat quis, nēgō, Does any one deny, I deny. Ter. Rōges me, nihil respondeam, Should you ask me, I should make no reply. Cic. See also Imperative, 535. 2.

2. *CONDITION SUPPLIED*.—The condition may be supplied,

1) By *Participles* : *Non pōtestis, vōluptātē omnia dirīgētes (si dirīgētis), rētīnēre virtūtem, You cannot retain your manhood, if you arrange all things with reference to pleasure. Cic.*

2) By *Oblique Cases* : *Nēmo sīne spe (nīsi spem hābēret) se offerret ad mortem, No one without a hope (if he had not a hope) would expose himself to death. Cic.*

3. **IRONY.**—The condition is sometimes ironical, especially with *nisi* *vĕro*, *nisi forte* with the Indicative, and with *quāsi*, *quāsi vĕro* with the Present or Perfect Subjunctive :

Nisi forte insānit, unless perhaps he is insane. Cic. Quāsi vĕro nĕcesse sit, as if indeed it were necessary. Caes.

4. **ITA—SI, ETC.**—*Ita—si*, so—if, means *only—if* *Si quīdem*, if indeed, sometimes has nearly the force of *since*.

5. **ET OMITTED.**—See 587. I. 6.

504. FORCE OF TENSES.—In conditional sentences the Present and Perfect tenses represent the supposition as not at all improbable, the Imperfect and Pluperfect represent it as contrary to the fact. See examples above. See also 476 to 478.

1. **PRESENT FOR IMPERFECT.**—The Present Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Imperfect, when a condition, in itself contrary to reality, is still conceived of as possible :

Tu si hic sis, ālīter sentias, If you were the one (or, should be), you would think differently. Ter.

2. **IMPERFECT FOR PLUPERFECT.**—The Imperfect Subjunctive is sometimes used for the Pluperfect, with the nice distinction that it contemplates the supposed action as *going on*, not as completed :

Num Opīmiū, si tum esses, tēmĕrāriū civem pūtāres? Would you think Opimius an audacious citizen, if you were living at that time (Pluperf. would you have thought—if you had lived)? Cic.

505. DUM, MŌDO, DUMMŌDO.—*Dum*, *mōdo*, and *dummōdo*, in conditions, have the force of—*if only, provided that*, or with *ne*, *if only not, provided that not* :

Dum res māneant, verba fingant, Let them make words, if only the facts remain. Cic. Mōdo permāneat industria, if only industry remains. Cic. Dummōdo rĕpellat pĕricūlum, provided he may avert danger. Cic. Mōdo ne laudārent, if only they did not praise. Cic.

When not used in conditions, these conjunctions often admit the indicative :

Dum lĕges vigĕbant, while the laws were in force. Cic.

506. AC SI, UT SI, QUĀSI, ETC.—*Ac si*, *ut si*, *quam si*, *quāsi*, *tanquam*, *tanquam si*, *vĕlut*, *vĕlut si*, involve an ellipsis of the real conclusion :

Misĕrior es, quam si ōcūlos non hābĕres, You are more unhappy than (esses, you would be) if you had not eyes. Cic. Crūdĕlītātē, vĕlut si adēsset, horrĕbant, They shuddered at his cruelty as (they would) if he were present. Caes. Ut si in suam rem āliĕna convertant, as if they should appropriate others' possessions to their own use. Cic. Tanquam audiant, as if they may hear. Sen.

Ceu and *Sicūti* are sometimes used in the same way :

Ceu bella fōrent, as if there were wars. Virg. Sicūti audiri possent, as if they could be heard. Sall.

507. SI, NISI, NI, SIN, QUI.—The Latin distinguishes three distinct forms of the conditional sentence with *si*, *nisi*, *ni*, *sin*:

- I. Indicative in both Clauses.
- II. Subjunctive, Present or Perfect, in both Clauses.
- III. Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect, in both Clauses.

508. First Form.—*Indicative in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *real*, basing upon it any statement which would be admissible, if it were a known fact:

Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, *If this is a state, I am a citizen.* Cic. Si non licēbat, non necesse erat, *If it was not lawful, it was not necessary.* Cic. Dölōrem si non pötēro frangēre, occultābo, *If I shall not be able to overcome sorrow, I will conceal it.* Cic. Parvi sunt fōris arma, nisi est consilium dōmi, *Arms are of little value abroad, unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic.

1. **CONDITION.**—The condition is introduced, when affirmative, by *si*, with or without other particles, as *quidem*, *mōdo*, etc., and when negative, by *si non*, *nisi*, *ni*. The time may be either *present*, *past*, or *future*. See examples above.

2. **CONCLUSION.**—The conclusion may take the form of a command:

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic.

3. **SI NON, NISI.**—*Si non* and *nisi* are often used without any perceptible difference of meaning; but strictly *si non* introduces the negative condition on which the conclusion depends, while *nisi* introduces a qualification or an exception. Thus in the second example above the meaning is, *If it was not lawful*, it follows that *it was not necessary*, while in the fourth the meaning is, *Arms are of little value abroad, except when there is wisdom at home.*

509. Second Form.—*Subjunctive Present or Perfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the condition as possible:

Haec si tēcum patria lōquātur, nonne impetrāre dēbeat, *If your country should speak thus with you, ought she not to obtain her request?* Cic. Impŕobe fēcēris, nīsi mōnuēris, *You would do wrong, if you should not give warning.* Cic. See also examples under the Rule, 503; also 486. 7.

1. When dependent upon a Historical tense, the Present and Perfect are of course generally changed to the Imperfect and Pluperfect, by the law for Sequence of tenses (480).

Mētuit ne, si iret, retrāhērētur, *He feared lest if he should go, he might be brought back.* Liv.

510. Third Form.—*Subjunctive Imperfect or Pluperfect in both Clauses.*—This form assumes the supposed case as *contrary to the reality*, and simply states what would have been the result, if the condition had been fulfilled:

Săpientia non expetēretur, si nihil efficeret, *Wisdom would not be sought (as it is), if it accomplished nothing.* Cic. Si optima tēnere possēmus, haud sâne consilio ēgērēmus, *If we were able to secure the highest good, we should not indeed need counsel.* Cic. Si vōluisset, dīmīcasset, *If he had wished, he would have fought.* Nep. Nunquam ābisset, nisi sibi viam mūnīvisset, *He would never have gone, if he had not prepared for himself a way.* Cic. See also 486. 7.

1. Here the *Imperfect* relates to Present time, as in the first and second examples: the *Pluperfect* to Past time, as in the third and fourth examples.

2. In the Periphrastic forms in *rus* and *dus* and in expressions of *Duty*, *Necessity*, and *Ability*, the *Perfect* and *Imperfect Indicative* sometimes occur in the conclusion.

Quid fūtūrum fuit, si plebs āgītāri coepta esset, *What would have been the result, if the plebeians had begun to be agitated?* Liv. See also 512. 2.

1) When the context, irrespective of the condition, requires the Subjunctive, the tense remains unchanged without reference to the tense of the principal verb:

Adeo est inōpia coactus ut, nisi timuisset, Galliam rēpētītūrus fuērit, *He was so pressed by want that if he had not feared, he would have returned to Gaul.* Liv.

Here *rēpētītūrus fuērit* is in the Subj. not because it is in a conditional sentence, but because it is the Subj. of Result with *ut*; but it is in the Perfect, because, if it were not dependent, the Perfect Indicative would have been used.

511. MIXED FORMS.—The Latin sometimes unites a condition belonging to one of the three regular forms with a conclusion belonging to another, thus producing certain Mixed Forms.

I. The Indicative sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Subjunctive in the Conclusion, but here the Subjunctive is generally dependent not upon the condition, but upon the very nature of the thought:

Peream, si pōtērunt, *May I perish (subj. of desire, 487), if they shall be able.* Cic. Quid timeam, si beātus fūtūrus sum, *Why should I fear (486. II.), if I am to be happy?* Cic.

II. The Subjunctive sometimes occurs in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion. Here the Indicative often gives the effect of reality to the conclusion, even though in fact dependent upon contingencies; but see also 512:

Dies deficiet, si vēlim causam defendere, *The day would (will) fail me, if I should wish to defend the cause.* Cic. Vicēramus nisi rēcēpisset Antōnium, *We had conquered, had he not received Antony.* Cic.

1. The *Future Indicative* is often thus used in consequence of its near relationship in force to the Subjunctive, as whatever is Future is more or less contingent. See first example.

2. The *Historical tenses*, especially the *Pluperfect*, are sometimes used, for effect, to represent as an actual fact something which is shown by the context never to have become fully so, as in the last example.

3. Conditional sentences made up partly of the *second form* (509) and partly of the *third* are rare.

512. SUBJUNCTIVE AND INDICATIVE.—The combination of the Subjunctive in the Condition with the Indicative in the Conclusion is often only apparent. Thus

1. When the truth of the conclusion is not in reality affected by the condition, as when *si* has the force of *even if, although* :

Si hoc plăceat, tămen vőlunt, Even if (although) this pleases them, they still wish. Cic.

2. When that which stands as the conclusion is such only in appearance, the real conclusion being understood. This occurs

1) With the Indicative of *Dēbeo, Possum*, and the like :

Quem, si ulla in te piētās esset, cőlőre dēbēbas, Whom you ought to have honored (and would have honored), if there were any filial affection in you. Cic. *Dělēri exercītus pőtuit, si persēcūti victōres essent, The army might have been destroyed (and would have been), if the victors had pursued.* Liv.

2) With the Imperfect and Perfect Indicative of other verbs, especially if in a periphrastic conjugation or accompanied by *Paene* or *Prőpe* :

Rēlictūri agros ērant, nīsi littēras mīsisset, They were about to leave their lands (and would have done so), had he not sent a letter. Cic. *Pons īter paene hostībūs dēdit, nī ūnus vir fuisset, The bridge almost furnished a passage to the enemy (and would have done so), had there not been one man.* Liv.

513. RELATIVE INVOLVING CONDITION.—The relative takes the subjunctive when it is equivalent to *si* or *dum* with the subjunctive :

Errat longe, qui crēdat, etc., He greatly errs who supposes, etc., i. e., if or provided any one supposes, he greatly errs. Ter. *Haec qui vīdeat, cőgātur, If any one should see these things, he would be compelled.* Cic.

V. SUBJUNCTIVE IN CONCESSIONS.

514. A concessive clause is one which concedes or admits something, generally introduced in English by *though* or *although* :

Quamquam intelligunt, though they understand. Cic.

RULE XLII.—Subjunctive of Concession.

515. The Subjunctive of Concession is used,

I. With *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum* (although):

Licet irrideat, plus tamen ratio vālebit, *Though he may deride, reason will yet avail more.* Cic. *Ut* dēsint vīres, tamen est laudanda vōluntas, *Though the strength fails, still the will should be approved.* Ovid.

II. With *qui* = *quum* (*licet*) *is*, *quum* *ēgo*, etc., though he:

Absolvite Verrem, *qui* (*quum is*) se fāteātur pēcūnias cēpisse, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses (who may confess) that he has accepted money.* Cic.

III. Generally with *etsi*, *tāmet*, *ētiā* *si*:

Quod sentiunt, *etsi* optimum sit, tamen non audent dicere, *They do not dare to state what they think, even if (though) it be most excellent.* Cic.

516. Concessive Clauses may be divided into three classes:

I. Concessive Clauses with *quamquam* in the best prose generally take the Indicative:

Quamquam intelligunt, tamen nunquam dicunt, *Though they understand, they never speak.* Cic.

1. The Subjunctive may of course follow *quamquam*, whenever the thought itself, irrespective of the concessive character of the clause, requires that mood (485).

2. The Subjunctive, even in the best prose, sometimes occurs with *quamquam* where we should expect the Indicative: *Quamquam ne id quidem suspiciōnem habuerit, Though not even that gave rise to any suspicion.* Cic.

3. In poetry and some of the later prose, the subjunctive with *quamquam* is not uncommon. In Tacitus it is the prevailing construction.

4. *Quamquam* and *etsi* sometimes have the force of *yet, but yet, and yet*: *Quamquam quid loquor, And yet what do I say?* Cic.

II. Concessive Clauses with *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*,—*ut*, *ne*, *quum* (although);—*qui* = *quum* (or *licet*) *is*, *ego*, *tu*, etc., take the Subjunctive:

Non tu possis, quantumvis excellas, *You would not be able, however much (although) you excel.* Cic. *Ne* sit summum mālum dōlor, mālum certe est, *Though pain may not be the greatest evil, it is certainly an evil.* Cic. See 518.

I. *UT* AND *NE*.—This concessive use of *ut* and *ne* may readily be explained by supplying some verb like *fac* or *sine*: thus, *ut dēsint vīres* (515 I.) = *fac* or *sine ut dēsint vīres*, *make or grant that strength fails.* See 489.

The Concessive Particle is sometimes omitted:

Sed hābeat, tamen, *But grant that it has it, yet.* Cic.

UT—*sic* or *ita*, *as—so, though—yet*, does not require the subjunctive.

2. **QUAMVIS AND QUANTUMVIS.**—These are strictly adverbs, in the sense of *however much*, but they generally give to the clause the force of a concession. When used with their simple adverbial force to qualify adjectives, they do not affect the mood of the clause: *quamvis multi*, however many.

3. **MOOD WITH QUAMVIS.**—In Cicero and the best prose, *quamvis* takes the Subjunctive almost without exception, generally also in Livy and Nepos; but in the poets and later prose writers it often admits the Indicative:

Erat dignitate regia, quamvis carebat nomine, *He was of royal dignity, though he was without the name.* Nep.

4. **RELATIVE IN CONCESSIONS.**—The relative denoting concession is equivalent to *licet*, or *quum*, in the sense of *though*, with a Demonstrative or Personal pronoun, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason: *qui* = *licet* (*quum*) *is*, *licet ego, tu*, etc. See examples under the Rule, 515.

III. Concessive Clauses with the compounds of *si*: *etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi* in the use of Moods and Tenses conform to the rule for conditional clauses with *si*:

Etsi nihil habeat in se gloria, tamen virtutem sequitur, *Though glory may not possess anything in itself, yet it follows virtue.* Cic. Etiamsi mors optenda esset, *even if death ought to be met.* Cic.

VI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE AND TIME.

RULE XLIII.—Subjunctive of Cause.

517. The Subjunctive of Cause or Reason is used,

I. With **quum** (*cum*), since; **qui** = **quum is**, etc.:

Quum vita metus plena sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic. Quae quum ita sint, perge, *Since these things are so, proceed.* Cic. O vis veritatis, quae (*quum ea*) se defendat, *O the force of truth, since it defends itself.* Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumpere juvenutem. *Socrates was accused, because (on the alleged ground that) he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

Causal Clauses with Quum and Qui.

518. **QUUM.**—*Quum* takes the Subjunctive when it denotes,

I. **CAUSE OR CONCESSION:**

Quum sint in nobis ratio, prudentia, *since there is in us reason and prudence.* Cic. Phocion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset, *Phocion was poor, though he might have been very rich.* Nep. See also 515.

II. TIME with the accessory notion of CAUSE or CONCESSION :

Quum dimicāret, occisus est, *When he engaged battle, he was slain.* Nep. Zēnōnem, quum Athēnis essem, audiēbam frēquenter, *I often heard Zeno, when I was at Athens.* Cic.

1. QUUM IN NARRATION.—*Quum* with the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive is very frequent in narration even in temporal clauses. See examples under II. above.

This use of *Quum* with the Subjunctive may in most instances be readily explained by the fact that it involves *Cause* as well as *Time*. Thus *quum dimicāret*, in the first example, not only states the *time* of the action—*occisus est*, but also its *cause* or *occasion*: the engagement was the *occasion* of his death. So with *quum essem*, as presence in Athens was an indispensable condition of hearing Zeno. But in some instances the notion of *Cause* or *Concession* is not at all apparent.

2. QUUM WITH TEMPUS, ETC.—*Quum* with the Subjunctive is sometimes used to characterize a period :

Id saeculum quum plēna Graecia poētārum esset, *that age when* (such that) *Greece was full of poets.* Cic. Erit tempus, quum dēsīdēres, *the time will come, when you will desire.* Cic. So without *tempus*, etc. : Fuit quum arbitrārer, *there was* (a time) *when I thought.* Cic.

3. QUUM WITH INDICATIVE.—*Quum* denoting time merely, with perhaps a few exceptions in narration, takes the Indicative :

Quum quiescunt, prōbant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Pārui, quum nēcesse erat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic.

519. QUI, CAUSE OR REASON.—A Relative clause denoting cause or reason, is equivalent to a Causal clause with *Quum*, and takes the Subjunctive for the same reason :

O fortunāte ādōlescens, qui (*quum tu*) tuae virtūtis Hōmērum praecōnem invēnēris, *O fortunate youth, since you* (lit. who) *have obtained Homer as the herald of your valor.* Cic.

1. EQUIVALENTS.—In such clauses, *qui* is equivalent to *quum ego*, *quum tu*, *quum is*, etc.

2. INDICATIVE.—When the statement is to be viewed as a *fact* rather than as a *reason*, the Indicative is used :

Hābeo sēnectūti grātiam, quae mihi sermōnis āviditātē auxit, *I cherish gratitude to old age, which has increased my love of conversation.* Cic.

3. QUI WITH CONJUNCTIONS.—When a conjunction accompanies the relative, the mood varies with the conjunction. Thus,

1) The Subjunctive is generally used with *quum*, *quippe*, *ut*, *utpōte* :

Quae quum ita sint, *since these things are so.* Cic. Quippe qui blandiātur, *since he flatters.* Cic. Ut qui cōlōni essent, *since they were colonists.* Cic.

But the Indicative is sometimes used to give prominence to the *fact*.

2) The Indicative is generally used with *quia*, *quōniam* :

Quae quia certa esse non possunt, *since these things cannot be sure.* Cic. Qui quōniam intelligi nōluit, *since he did not wish to be understood.* Cic.

Causal Clauses with Quod, Quia, Quoniam, Quando.

520. *Quod, quia, quoniam, and quando* generally take,

I. The INDICATIVE to assign a reason *positively on one's own authority*:

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, *since a thanksgiving has been decreed.*
Cic. Gaude quod spectant te, *Rejoice that (because) they behold you.* Hor.

II. The SUBJUNCTIVE to assign a reason *doubtfully, or on another's authority*:

Aristides nonne expulsus est patria, quod justus esset, *Was not Aristides banished because (on the alleged ground that) he was just?* Cic.

1. QUOD WITH DICO, ETC.—*Dico* and *puto* are often in the Subjunctive instead of the verb depending upon them:

Quod se bellum gesturos dicerent = quod bellum gesturi essent, ut dicebant, *because they were about, as they said, to wage war.* Caes.

2. CLAUSES WITH QUOD UNCONNECTED. See 554. IV.

3. NON QUO, ETC.—*Non quo, non quod, non quin*, rarely *non quia*, also *quam quod*, etc., are used with the Subjunctive to denote that something was *not* the true reason:

Non quo habere quod scriberem, *not because (that) I had anything to write.* Cic. Non quod doleant, *not because they are pained.* Cic. Quia nesciverat quam quod ignoraret, *because he had been unable, rather than because he did not know.* Liv.

4. POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE. See 485 and 486.

RULE XLIV.—Time with Cause.

521. The Subjunctive of Time with the accessory notion of Cause or Purpose is used,

I. With **dum, donec, quoad**, until:

Exspectas dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks*, i. e., that he may speak. Cic. Ea continebis quoad te videam, *You will keep them till I see you.* Cic.

II. With **antequam, priusquam**, before, before that:

Antequam de re publica dicam, exponam consilium, *I will set forth my plan before I (can) speak of the republic*, i. e., preparatory to speaking of the republic. Cic. Priusquam incipias, *before you begin.* Sall.

1. EXPLANATION.—Here the temporal clause involves *purpose* as well as *time*: *dum dicat* is nearly equivalent to *ut dicat*, which is also often used after *expecto*. *Antequam dicam* is nearly equivalent to *ut postea dicam*: *I will set forth my views, that I may afterwards speak of the republic.*

2. **WITH OTHER CONJUNCTIONS.**—The Subjunctive may of course be used in any temporal clause, when the thought, irrespective of the temporal particle, requires that mood ; see 486. III.

Ubi res poscēret, *whenever the case might require.* Liv.

522. DUM, DONEC, and QUOAD take

I. The *Indicative*,—(1) in the sense of *while*, *as long as*, and (2) in the sense of *until*, if the action is viewed as an *actual fact* :

Dum lēges vīgēbant, *as long as the laws were in force.* Cic. Quoad rēnuntiātum est, *until it was (actually) announced.* Nep.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when the action is viewed not so much as a fact as something *desired* or *proposed* :

Diffērant, dum dēfervescat ira, *Let them defer it, till their anger cools,* i. e., that it may cool. Cic. See also examples under the rule.

1. **DONEC**, in **TACITUS**, generally takes the Subjunctive :

Rhēnus servat viōlentiam cursus, dōnec Oceāno misceātur, *The Rhine preserves the rapidity of its current, till it mingles with the ocean.* Tac.

2. **DONEC**, in **LIVY**, occurs with the Subjunctive even in the sense of *while*, but with the accessory notion of *cause* :

Nihil trēpīdābant dōnce ponte āgrentur, *They did not fear at all while (and because) they were driven on the bridge.* Liv.

523. ANTEQUAM and PRIUSQUAM generally take,

I. The *Indicative*, when they denote mere priority of time :

Priusquam lūcet, adsunt, *They are present before it is light.* Cic. Antēquam in Siciliam vēni, *before I came into Sicily.* Cic.

II. The *Subjunctive*, when they denote a dependence of one event upon another. Thus,

1. In *any Tense*, when the accessory notion of *purpose* or *cause* is involved :

Priusquam incēpias, consulto ōpus est, *Before you begin there is need of deliberation,* i. e., as preparatory to your beginning. Sall. Tempestas minātur, antēquam surgat, *The tempest threatens, before it rises,* i. e., the threatening of the tempest naturally precedes its rising. Sen.

2. In the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*, as the regular construction in *narration*, because the one event is generally treated as the occasion or natural antecedent of the other. See also 471. 4.

Antēquam urbem cāpērent, *before they took the city.* Liv. Priusquam de meo adventu audire pōtuisent, in Mācēdōniam perrexi, *Before they were able to hear of my approach, I went into Macedonia.* Cic.

3. *Prīdie quam* takes the same moods as *Priusquam*.

1) INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—With *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the Indicative and Subjunctive are sometimes used without any apparent difference of meaning, but the Subjunctive probably denotes a closer connection between the two events:

Ante de incommōdis dico, pauca dicenda, *Before I (actually) speak of disadvantages, a few things should be mentioned.* Cic. Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, expōnam consiliū, *Before I speak of the republic, I will set forth my plan.* Cic.

2) ANTE—QUAM, PRIUS—QUAM.—The two parts of which *antēquam*, *priusquam*, and *postquam* are compounded are often separated, so that *ante*, *prius*, or *post* stands in the principal clause and *quam* in the subordinate clause:

Paucis ante diēbus, quam Syracūsae capērentur, *a few days before Syracuse was taken.* Liv. See *Timesis*, 704. IV. 3.

VII. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

524. A clause which involves a question without directly asking it, is called an indirect or dependent question.

RULE XLV.—Indirect Questions.

525. The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Questions:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic. Queritur, cur doctissimi hōmīnes dissentiant, *It is a question, why the most learned men disagree.* Cic. Quaesiēras, nonne pūtārem, *you had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. Quālis sit ānīmus, ānīmus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic.

1. WITH INTERROGATIVES.—Indirect or Dependent questions, like those not dependent, are introduced by interrogative words: *quid*, *cur*, *nonne*, *quālis*, etc.; rarely by *si*, *sive*, *seu*, whether; *ut*, how. See examples above.

2. SUBSTANTIVE FORCE.—Indirect questions are used *substantively*, and generally, though not always, supply the place of subjects or objects of verbs. But an Accusative, referring to the same person or thing as the subject of the question, is sometimes inserted after the leading verb.

Ego illum nescio qui fuērit, *I do not know (him), who he was.* Ter.

3. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—An *indirect* question may be readily changed to a *direct* or *independent* question.

Thus the direct question involved in the first example is: *Quid dies fēret*, What will a day bring forth? So in the second: *Cur doctissimi hōmīnes dissentiunt*, Why do the most learned men disagree?

4. SUBJUNCTIVE OMITTED.—After *nescio quis*, I know not who = *quīdam*, some one; *nescio quōmodo*, I know not how, etc., as also after *mīrum quantum*, it is wonderful how much = wonderfully much, very much, there is an ellipsis of the Subjunctive:

Nescio quid ānīmus praesāgit, *The mind forebodes, I know not what (it forebodes, praesāgiat, understood).* Ter. Id mīrum quantum prōfuit, *This profited, it is wonderful how much, i. e., it wonderfully profited.* Liv.

5. **INDIRECT QUESTIONS DISTINGUISHED.**—Indirect Questions must be carefully distinguished from certain similar forms. Thus,

1) *From Relative Clauses.*—Clauses introduced by Relative Pronouns or Relative Adverbs always have an antecedent or correlative expressed or understood, and are never, as a whole, the subject or object of a verb, while Indirect Questions are generally so used :

Dicam quod sentio (*rel. clause*). *I will tell that which (id quod) I think.*

Cic. Dicam quid intelligam (*indirect question*), *I will tell what I know.*

Cic. Quaerāmus ūbi mālēficium est, *Let us seek there (ibi) where the crime is.* Cic.

In the first and third examples, *quod sentio* and *ūbi—est* are not questions, but relative clauses; *id* is understood as the antecedent of *quod*, and *ibi* as the antecedent or correlative of *ūbi*; but in the second example, *quid intelligam* is an indirect question and the object of *dicam*: *I will tell (what?) what I know*, i. e., will answer that question.

2) *From Direct Questions and Exclamations* :

Quid āgendum est? Nescio, *What is to be done? I know not.* Cic.

Vide! quam conversa res est, *See! how changed is the case.* Cic.

6. **INDICATIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.**—The Indicative in Indirect Questions is sometimes used in the poets; especially in *Plautus* and *Terence* :

Si mēmōrāre vēlim, quam fidēli ānimo fui, possum, *If I wish to mention how much fidelity I showed, I am able.* Ter.

7. **QUESTIONS IN THE ORATIO OBLIQUA.** See 530. II. 2.

526. **SINGLE AND DOUBLE QUESTIONS.**—Indirect questions, like those which are direct (346. II.), may be either single or double.

I. An Indirect Single Question is generally introduced by some interrogative word—either a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the particles *ne*, *nonne*, *num*. Here *num* does not imply negation :

Rōgāt qui vir esset (481. IV.), *He asked who he was.* Liv. Epāminondas quaesivit, salvusne esset clipeus, *Epaminondas inquired whether his shield was safe.* Cic. Dūbīto num dēbeam, *I doubt whether I ought.* Plin. See also the examples under the Rule, 525.

II. An Indirect Double Question (*whether—or*) admits of two constructions :

1. It generally takes *utrum* or *ne* in the first member, and *an* in the second :

Quaeritur, virtus suamne propter dignitatem, an propter fructus aliquos expetatur, *It is asked whether virtue is sought for its own worth, or for certain advantages.* Cic.

2. But sometimes it omits the particle in the first member, and takes *an* or *ne* in the second. Other forms are rare :

Quaeritur, nātūra an doctrīna possit effici virtus, *It is asked whether virtue can be secured by nature or by education.* Cic. See also 346. 1. 1).

1) In the second member, *ne*, sometimes *an non*, is used in the sense of *or not*: *Sāpientia beātos efficiat necne, quaestio est, Whether or not wisdom makes men happy, is a question.* Cic.

2) *An*, in the sense of *whether not*, implying an affirmative, is used after verbs and expressions of doubt and uncertainty: *dūbīto an, nescio an, haud scio an*, I doubt whether not, I know not whether not = I am inclined to think; *dūbium est an, incertum est an*, it is uncertain whether not = it is probable:

Dūbīto an Thrāsýbulum primum omnium pōnam, I doubt whether I should not place Thrasybulus first of all, i. e., I am inclined to think I should. Nep.

3) *An* sometimes has the force of *aut*, perhaps by the omission of *incertum est*, as used above:

Simōnides an quis ālius, Simonides or some other one. Cic.

VIII. SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION.

RULE XLVI.—Attraction.

527. The Subjunctive by Attraction is often used in clauses dependent upon the Subjunctive:

Vēreor, ne, dum mīnuēre vēlim lābōrem, augeam, I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it. Cic. *Tempus est hujusmōdi, ut, ūbi quisque sit, ibi esse mīnime vēlit, The time is of such a character that every one wishes to be least of all where he is.* Cic. *Mos est, ut dicat sententiam, qui vēlit, The custom is that he who wishes expresses his opinion.* Cic.

1. APPLICATION.—This rule is applicable to clauses introduced by conjunctions, adverbs, or relatives. Thus, in the examples, the clauses introduced by *dum*, *ubi*, and *qui*, take the subjunctive, because they are dependent upon clauses which have the subjunctive.

2. INDICATIVE OR SUBJUNCTIVE.—Such clauses generally take,

1) The *Indicative*, when they are in a measure *parenthetical* or give special prominence to the *fact* stated:

Mīlites mīsit, ut eos qui fūgērant persēquērentur, He sent soldiers to pursue those who had fled, i. e., the fugitives. Caes. *Tanta vis prōbitātis est, ut eam, vel in iis quos nunquam vidīmus, dīlīgāmus, Such is the force of integrity that we love it even in those whom we have never seen.* Cic.

The Indicative with *dum* is very common, especially in the poets and historians:

Fuēre quī, dum dūbitat Scaevīnus, hortārentur Pīsōnem, There were those who exhorted Piso, while Scaevinus hesitated. Tac. See also 467. 4.

2) The *Subjunctive*, when the clauses are essential to the general thought of the sentence, as in the examples under the rule.

3. AFTER INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—The principle just stated (2) applies also to the use of Moods in clauses dependent upon the Infinitive. This

often explains the Subjunctive in a condition belonging to an Infinitive, especially with *non possum* :

Nec bōnitas esse pōtest, si non per se expētātur, *Nor can goodness exist (= it is not possible that), if it is not sought for itself.* Cic.

But clauses dependent upon the Infinitive are found most frequently in the *Oratio Oblīqua* and are accordingly provided for by 529.

IX. SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE,—

Oratio Oblīqua.

528. When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any other form than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Oblīqua* :

Plātōnem fērunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy.* Cic. Respondeo te dōlōrem ferre mōdērāte, *I reply that you bear the affliction with moderation.* Cic. Utilem arbitror esse scientiam, *I think that knowledge is useful.* Cic.

1. DIRECT AND INDIRECT.—In distinction from the Indirect Discourse—*Oratio Oblīqua*, the original words of the author are said to be in the Direct Discourse—*Oratio Recta*. Thus in the first example, *Plātōnem in Itāliam vēnisse* is in the indirect discourse ; in the direct, i. e., in the original words of those who made the statement, it would be : *Plātō in Itāliam vēnit.*

2. QUOTATION.—Words quoted without change belong of course to the Direct Discourse :

Rex “duumvīros” inquit “sēcundum lēgem fācio,” *The king said, “I appoint duumvirs according to law.”* Liv.

RULE XLVII.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.

529. The Subjunctive is generally used in the Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the *Oratio Oblīqua* :

Ad postūlātā Caesāris respondit, cur vēnīret (*direct* : cur vēnis ?), *To the demands of Caesar he replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēno cum lēgiōne vēniat (*direct* : cum lēgiōne vēni), *He writes to Labienus to come (that he should come) with a legion.* Caes. Hippias glōriātus est, annūlum quem hābēret (*direct* : hābeo) se sua mānu confēcisse, *Hippias boasted that he had made with his own hand the ring which he wore.* Cic.

NOTE.—For convenience of reference the following outline of the use of Moods, Tenses, Pronouns, etc. in the *Oratio Oblīqua* is here inserted.

530. MOODS IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES.—The Principal clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, undergo the following changes of Mood :

I. When *Declarative*, they take the Infinitive (551) :

Dicēbat ānimos esse dīvīnos (direct : *ānīmi sunt divīni*), *He was wont to say that souls were divine.* Cic. Plātōnem Tārentum vēnisse rēpērio (*Plāto Tārentum vēnit*), *I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Cāto mīrāri se (*mīror*) āiēbat, *Cato was wont to say that he wondered.* Cic.

II. When *Interrogative* or *Imperative*, they generally take the Subjunctive according to Rule XLVII.

1. VERB OMITTED.—The verb on which the Infinitive depends is often omitted, or only implied in some preceding verb or expression ; especially after the Subjunctive of Purpose :

Pŷthia praecepit ut Miltiādem impērātōrem sūmērent ; incepta prospēra fūtūra, *Pythia commanded that they should take Miltiades as their commander, (telling them) that their efforts would be successful.* Nep.

2. RHETORICAL QUESTIONS.—Questions which are such only in form, requiring no answer, are generally construed, according to sense, in the Infinitive. They are sometimes called Rhetorical questions, as they are often used for Rhetorical effect instead of assertions : thus *num possit*, can he ? for *non pōtest*, he can not ; *quid sit turpius*, what is more base ? for *nihil est turpius*, nothing is more base.

Here belong many questions which in the direct form have the verb in the first or third person :

Respondit num mēmōriam dēpōnēre posse, *He replied, could he lay aside the recollection.* Caes. Here the direct question would be : Num mēmōriam dēpōnēre possim ?

3. IMPERATIVE CLAUSES WITH THE INFINITIVE. See 551. II. 1.

531. MOODS IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Subordinate clauses of the Direct discourse, on becoming Indirect, put their finite verbs in the Subjunctive :

Orābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret quod prēmērentur (direct : *nōbis auxilium fer, quod prēmimur*), *They prayed that he would bring them help, because they were oppressed.* Caes.

1. INFINITIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES.—It must be remembered (453), that Relative clauses, though subordinate in form, sometimes have the force of Principal clauses. When thus used in the Oratio Oblīqua, they may be construed with the Infinitive :

Ad eum dēfertur, esse cīvem Rōmānum qui quērērētur : quem (= *et eum*) asservātum esse, *It was reported to him that there was a Roman citizen who made a complaint, and that he had been placed under guard.* Cic. So also comparisons : Te suspīcōr iisdem, quībus me ipsum, commōvēri, *I suspect that you are moved by the same things as I am.* Cic.

2. **INFINITIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.**—The Infinitive occurs, especially in Livy and Tacitus, even in clauses after *quia*, *quum*, *quamquam*, and some other conjunctions :

Dicit, se moenibus inclusos tenere eos ; quia per agros vagari, He says that he keeps them shut up within the walls, because (otherwise) they would wander through the fields. Liv. See also 551. I. 5 and 6.

3. **INDICATIVE IN PARENTHETICAL CLAUSES.**—Clauses may be introduced parenthetically in the oratio obliqua without strictly forming a part of it, and may accordingly take the Indicative :

Rēferunt silvam esse, quae appellatur Baccenis, They report that there is a forest which is called Bacenis. Caes.

4. **INDICATIVE IN CLAUSES NOT PARENTHETICAL.**—Sometimes clauses not parenthetical take the Indicative to give prominence to the *fact* stated. This occurs most frequently in Relative clauses :

Certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes discessisse, He was informed that all had withdrawn from that part of the village which he had assigned to the Gauls. Caes.

532. TENSES.—Tenses in the Oratio Obliqua generally conform to the ordinary rules for Infinitive and Subjunctive Tenses (480, 540), but the law of Sequence of Tenses admits of certain qualifications :

1. The Present and Perfect may be used even after a Historical tense, to impart a more lively effect to the narrative :

Caesar respondit, si obsides sibi dentur, sese pacem esse facturum, Caesar replied, that if hostages should be given him, he would make peace. Caes.

2. In Conditional sentences of the third form (510),

1) The condition retains the Imperfect or Pluperfect without reference to the tense of the Principal verb ;

2) The Conclusion changes the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive into the Periphrastic Infinitive in *rus* (or *dus*) *esse* or *fuisse* :

Censes Pompeium laetaturum fuisse, si sciret, Do you think Pompey would have rejoiced, if he had known ? Cic. *Clamitabat, si ille adesset, venturos esse, He cried out that they would come, if he were present.* Caes.

But the Regular Infinitive, instead of the periphrastic forms, sometimes occurs in this construction, especially in expressions of *Duty*, etc. (475. 4).

3. In Conditional Sentences of the second form (509), the Condition generally conforms to the Rule for Sequence of Tenses (480), but the Conclusion changes the Subjunctive to the Future Infinitive :

Respondit, si Aeduis satisficiant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum, He replied that if they would satisfy the Aeduans, he would make peace with them. Caes. *Legatos mittit, si ita fecisset, amicitiam futuram, He sent messengers saying that, if he would do thus, there would be friendship.* Caes.

Here *mittit* is the Historical Present. See 467. III.

4. The Future Perfect in a Subordinate clause of the Direct discourse is changed in the Indirect into the Perfect Subjunctive after a Principal tense, and into the Pluperfect Subjunctive after a Historical tense :

Agunt ut dimicent ; ibi imp̄rium fōre, unde victōria fuērit, *They arrange that they shall fight ; that the sovereignty shall be on the side which shall win the victory* (whence the victory may have been). Liv. Appārēbat regnātūrum, qui vīcisset, *It was evident that he would be king who should conquer.* Liv.

533. PRONOUNS, ADVERBS, ETC.—Pronouns and adverbs, as also the persons of the verbs, are often changed in passing from the *Direct* discourse to the *Indirect* :

Glōriātus est annūlum se sua mǎnu confēcisse (*direct*: annūlum ego mea mǎnu confēcī), *He boasted that he had made the ring with his own hand.* Cic.

1. Pronouns of first and second persons are often changed to the third. Thus above *ego* in the direct discourse becomes *se*, and *mea* becomes *sua*. In the same way *hic* and *iste* are often changed to *ille*.

2. Adverbs meaning *here* or *now* are often changed to those meaning *there* or *then* ; *nunc* to *tum* ; *hic* to *illic*.

3. In the use of pronouns observe

1) That references to the **SPEAKER** whose words are reported are made, if of the 1st Pers. by *ego*, *meus*, *noster*, etc., if of the 2d Pers. by *tu*, *tuus*, etc., and if of the 3d Pers. by *sui*, *suus*, *ipse*, etc., though sometimes by *hic*, *is*, *ille*.

2) That references to the **REPORTER**, or **Author**, are made by *ego*, *meus*, etc.

3) That references to the **PERSON ADDRESSED** by the reporter are made by *tu*, *tuus*, etc.

Ariovistus respondit nos esse inīquos qui se interpellārēmus (*direct*: vos estis inīqui qui me, etc.), *Ariovistus replied that we were unjust who interrupted him.* Caes.

Here *nos* refers to the *Reporter*, Caesar, *we Romans*. *Se* refers to the *Speaker*, Ariovistus. In the second example under 523, *te* refers to the *Person Addressed*.

SECTION VII.

IMPERATIVE.

I. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

534. The Imperative has but two Tenses :

I. The **PRESENT** has only the Second person, and corresponds to the English Imperative :

Justitiam cōle, *Practise justice.* Cic. Perge, Cātīlina, *Go,* Catiline. Cic.

II. The Future has the Second and Third persons, and corresponds to the imperative use of the English Future with *shall*, or to the Imperative *let* :

Si consules appellantur, *They shall be called consuls*, or *let them be called consuls*. Cic. Quod dixero, facitote, *You shall do what I say* (shall have said). Ter.

1. FUTURE FOR PRESENT.—The Future Imperative is sometimes used where we should expect the Present :

Quoniam supplicatio decreta est, celebratote illos dies, *Since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days*. Cic.

This is particularly common in certain verbs : thus *scio* has only the forms of the Future in common use.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Imperative Present is often used in poetry, and sometimes in prose, of an action which belongs entirely to the future :

Ubi aciem videris, tum ordines dissipa, *When you shall see the line of battle, then scatter the ranks*. Liv.

II. USE OF THE IMPERATIVE.

RULE XLVIII.—Imperative.

535. The Imperative is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties :

Iustitiam cole, *Practise justice*. Cic. Tu ne cede malis, *Do not yield to misfortunes*. Virg. Si quid in te peccavi, ignosce, *If I have sinned against you, pardon me*. Cic.

1. CIRCUMLOCUTIONS.—Instead of the simple Imperative, several circumlocutions are common :

1) *Cura ut, fac ut, fac*, each with the Subjunctive :

Cura ut venias, *See that you come*. Cic. See 489.

2) *Fac ne, cave ne, cave*, with the Subjunctive :

Cave facias, *Beware of doing it*, or *see that you do not do it*. Cic.

3) *Noli, nolite*, with the Infinitive :

Noli imitari, *do not imitate*. Cic. See 538. 2.

2. IMPERATIVE CLAUSE FOR CONDITION.—An Imperative clause may be used instead of a Conditional clause :

Lacesse; jam videris furem, *Provoke him* (i. e., if you provoke him), *you will at once see him frantic*. Cic.

3. IMPERATIVE SUPPLIED.—The place of the Imperative may be variously supplied :

1) By the Subjunctive of Desire (487) :

Sint beati, *Let them be happy*. Cic. Impii ne audeant, *Let not the impious dare*. Cic.

2) By the Indicative Future :

Quod optimum vidēbitur, facies, *You will do (for Imper. do) what shall seem best.* Cic.

536. The Imperative Present, like the English Imperative, is used in commands, exhortations, and entreaties. See examples under the Rule.

537. The Imperative Future is used,

I. In commands involving future rather than present action :

Rem penditōte, *You shall consider the subject.* Cic. Cras pētito; dābitur, *Ask to-morrow; it shall be granted.* Plaut.

II. In laws, orders, precepts, etc. :

Consūles nēmīni pārento, *The consuls shall be subject to no one.* Cic. Sālus pōpūli suprema lex esto, *The safety of the people shall be the supreme law.* Cic.

538. IMPERATIVE IN PROHIBITIONS.—In prohibitions or negative commands,

1. The negative *ne*, rarely *non*, accompanies the Imperative, and if a connective is required, *nēve*, or *neu*, is generally used, rarely *nēque* :

Tu ne cēde mālīs, *Do not yield to misfortunes.* Virg. Hōmīnem mortuum in urbe ne sēpēlito, *nēve ūrito, Thou shalt not bury or burn a dead body in the city.* Cic.

2. Instead of *ne* with the Present Imperative, the best prose writers generally use *nōli* and *nōlite* with the Infinitive :

Nōlite pūtāre (*for ne pūtāte*), *do not think (be unwilling to think).* Cic.

SECTION VIII.

INFINITIVE.

539. The treatment of the Latin Infinitive embraces four topics :

I. The Tenses of the Infinitive.

II. The Subject of the Infinitive.

III. The Predicate after the Infinitive.

IV. The Construction of the Infinitive.

I. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

540. The Infinitive has three tenses, *Present*, *Perfect*, and *Future*. They express however not absolute, but *relative* time, denoting respectively Present, Past, or Future time, relatively to the Principal verb.

1. PECULIARITIES.—These tenses present the leading peculiarities specified under these tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

541. The PRESENT INFINITIVE represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Cūpio me esse clēmentem, *I desire to be mild*. Cic. Māluit se dilīgi quam mētui, *He preferred to be loved rather than feared*. Nep.

1. REAL TIME.—Hence the real time denoted by the Present Infinitive is the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. PRESENT FOR FUTURE.—The Present is sometimes used for the Future and sometimes has little or no reference to time :

Cras argentum dāre dixit, *He said he would give the silver to-morrow*. Ter.

3. PRESENT WITH DEBEO, POSSUM, ETC.—After the past tenses of *dēbeo*, *oportet*, *possum*, and the like, the Present Infinitive is used where our idiom would lead us to expect the Perfect; sometimes also after *mēmīni*, and the like :

Dēbuit officiōsior esse, *He ought to have been more attentive*. Cic. Id pōtuit faciēre, *He might have done this*. Cic.

542. The PERFECT INFINITIVE represents the action as completed at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Plātōnem fēerunt in Itāliam vēnisse, *They say that Plato came into Italy*. Cic. Consciūs mihī ēram, nihil a me commissum esse, *I was conscious to myself that no offence had been committed by me*. Cic.

1. REAL TIME.—Hence the real time denoted by the Perfect Infinitive is that of the Perfect tense, if dependent upon the Present, and that of the Pluperfect, if dependent upon a Historical tense, as in the examples.

2. PERFECT FOR PRESENT.—In the poets the Perfect Infinitive is sometimes used for the Present, rarely in prose :

Tētigisse timent poētā, *They fear to touch (to have touched) the poet*. Hor.

3. PASSIVE INFINITIVE.—The Passive Infinitive with *esse* sometimes denotes the result of the action: *victus esse*, to have been vanquished, and so, to be a vanquished man. *Fuisse* for *esse* emphasizes the completeness of the action: *victus fuisse*, to have been vanquished. See 575. 1.

543. The FUTURE INFINITIVE represents the action as about to take place in time subsequent to that of the principal verb :

Brūtum visum iri a me pūto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me*. Cic. Orācūlum dātum ērat victrīces Athēnas fōre, *An oracle had been given, that Athens would be victorious*. Cic.

Hence after a Principal tense the real time of the Future Infinitive is Future, but after a Historical tense the real time can be determined only by the context.

544. CIRCUMLOCUTION FOR FUTURE INFINITIVE.—Instead of the regular Future Infinitive, the circumlocution *fütürum esse ut*, or *före ut*, with the Subjunctive,—Present after a Principal tense, and Imperfect after a Historical tense,—is frequently used:

Spëro före ut contingat id nōbis, I hope this will fall to our lot (I hope it will come to pass that this may happen to us). *Cic. Non spërävërat Hannibal, före ut ad se dëficërent, Hannibal had not hoped that they would revolt to him.* Liv. See 556. II. 1.

1. **CIRCUMLOCUTION NECESSARY.**—*Fütürum esse ut*, or *före ut*, with the Subjunctive, for the Future Infinitive, is common in the Passive, and is moreover necessary in both voices in all verbs which want the Supine and the Participle in *rus*.

2. **FORE UT WITH PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.**—Sometimes *före ut* with the Subjunctive, Perfect or Pluperfect, is used with the force of a Future Perfect; and in Passive and Deponent verbs, *före* with the Perfect Participle may be used with the same force:

Dico me sätis ädeptum före, I say that I shall have obtained enough. Cic.

3. **FUTURUM FUISSE UT WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.**—*Fütürum fuisse ut* with the Subjunctive may be used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of the third form when made dependent:

Nisi nuntii essent alläti, existimäbant fütürum fuisse, ut oppidum ämittërëtur, They thought that the town would have been lost, if tidings had not been brought. Caes. See 533. 2.

II. SUBJECT OF INFINITIVE.

RULE XLIX.—Subject.

545. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

Sentimus cälëre ignem, We perceive that fire is hot. Cic. *Plätönem Tärentum vënisse rëpërio, I find that Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic.

1. **HISTORICAL INFINITIVE.**—In lively description the Infinitive is sometimes used for the Indicative Imperfect. It is then called the Historical Infinitive, and, like a finite verb, has its subject in the Nominative:

Hostes gaesa conjicëre, The enemy hurled their javelins. Caes.

The Historical Infinitive may often be explained by supplying *coepit* or *coepërunt*; but in most instances it is better to treat it simply as an *idiom* of the language.

2. **SUBJECT OMITTED.**—The Subject of an Infinitive may be omitted:

1) When it denotes the same person or thing as the subject of the principal clause, or may be readily supplied from the context:

Magna nëgötia völnnt ägëre, They wish to accomplish great undertakings. Cic. *Peccäre licet nëmïni, It is not lawful for any one to sin.* Cic.

2) When it is indefinite or general :

Diligi jucundum est, *It is pleasant to be loved.* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE OMITTED.—*Esse* and *fuisse* are often omitted in the compound forms of the Infinitive and with predicate adjectives, other infinitives less frequently (551. 5) :

Audīvi sōlītum Fabricium, *I have heard that Fabricius was wont.* Cic.
Spērāmus nōbis prōfūtūros, *We hope to benefit you.* Cic.

III. PREDICATE AFTER INFINITIVE.

546. A Predicate Noun or Adjective after an Infinitive regularly agrees with the Subject, expressed or understood (362.3) :

Ego me Phīdīam esse malle, *I should prefer to be Phidias.* Cic. Trādītum est, Hōmērum caecum fuisse, *It has been handed down by tradition that Homer was blind.* Cic. Jūgurtha omnībus cārus esse (*historical infinitive*), *Jugurtha was dear to all.* Sall.

547. A Predicate Noun or Adjective, after an Infinitive whose Subject is omitted, is often attracted into the Nominative or Dative :

I. It is attracted into the Nominative to agree with the Subject of the principal verb, when the latter is the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

Nōlo esse laudātor, *I am unwilling to be an eulogist.* Cic. Beātus esse vīr virtūte nēmo pōtest, *No one can be happy without virtue.* Cic.

1. This occurs most frequently (1) after verbs of *duty, ability, courage, custom, desire, beginning, continuing, ending*, and the like—*dēbeo, possum, audeo, sōleo, cūpio, vōlo, mālo, nōlo, incīpio, pergo, dēsīno*, etc., and (2) after various Passive verbs of *saying, thinking, finding, seeming*, and the like—*dicor, trādor, fēror—crēdor, existīmor, pūtor—rēpērior—vīdeor*, etc.:

Quis scientior esse dēbuit, *Who ought to have been more learned?* Cic. Pārens dīci pōtest, *He can be called a parent.* Cic. Stoīcus esse vōluit, *He wished to be a Stoic.* Cic. Dēsīnant esse tīmīdi, *Let them cease to be timid.* Cic. Inventor esse dīcitur, *He is said to be the inventor.* Cic. Prūdēns esse pūtābātur, *He was thought to be prudent.* Cic.

2. Participles in the compound tenses of the Infinitive are also attracted :

Pollicītus esse dīcitur, *He is said to have promised.* Cic.

II. The Predicate Noun or Adjective is sometimes attracted into the Dative to agree with a Dative in the principal clause, when the latter denotes the same person or thing as the omitted Subject :

Patrīcio tribūno plēbis fīrī nō licēbat, *It was not lawful for a patrician to be made tribune of the people.* Cic. Mihi negligēti esse nō licuit, *It was not permitted me to be negligent.* Cic.

1. This is rare, but is the regular construction after *licet*, and sometimes occurs after *nēcesse est*, when used after *licet*, and occasionally in other connections :

Illis timidis licet esse, nobis nēcesse est fortibus viris esse, *It is permitted them to be timid, it is necessary for us to be brave men.* Liv. But,

2. Even with *Licet* the attraction does not always take place :

Ei consulem fieri licet, *It is lawful for him to be made consul.* Caes.

IV. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

548. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, has in general the construction of a Noun in the Nominative or Accusative, and is used,

I. As a Nominative—Subject of a Verb.

II. As an Accusative—Object of a Verb.

III. In Special Constructions.

I. Infinitive as Subject.

549. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as a Nominative, and is thus made the Subject of a sentence, according to Rule III.:

WITH SUBJECT.—Faciūsus est vinciri civem Rōmānum, *That a Roman citizen should be bound is a crime.* Cic. Certum est liberos amari, *It is certain that children are loved.* Quint. Legem brevem esse oportet, *It is necessary that a law be brief.* Sen.

WITHOUT SUBJECT.—Ars est difficilis rem publicam regere, *To rule a state is a difficult art.* Cic. Carum esse jucundum est, *It is pleasant to be held dear.* Cic. Haec scire juvat, *To know these things affords pleasure.* Sen. Peccare licet nemini, *To sin is not lawful for any one.* Cic.

1. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT.—When the subject is an Infinitive, the Predicate is either (1) a Noun or Adjective with *Sum*, or (2) an Impersonal verb or a verb used Impersonally. See the examples above.

1) *Tempus* = tempestivum is thus used with the Infinitive :

Tempus est dicere, *It is time to speak.* Cic.

2. INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OF AN INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may be the subject of another Infinitive :

Intelligi nēcesse est esse deos, *It must be understood that there are gods.* Cic. *Esse deos* is the subject of *intelligi*, and *intelligi esse deos* of *nēcesse est*.

3. INFINITIVE WITH DEMONSTRATIVE.—The Infinitive sometimes takes a Demonstrative as an attributive in agreement with it :

Quibusdam hoc displicet philosophari, *This philosophizing (this to philosophize) displeases some persons.* Cic. Vivere ipsum turpe est nobis, *To live is itself ignoble for us.* Cic.

4. PERSONAL CONSTRUCTION FOR IMPERSONAL.—With Passive verbs, instead of the Infinitive with a subject accusative, a Personal construction is

common, by which the Subject Accusative becomes the Subject Nominative of the leading verb :

Aristides justissimus fuisse traditur (for *Aristidem justissimum fuisse traditur*), *Aristides is said to have been most just.* Cic.

1) The Personal Construction is used, (1) regularly with *videor, jubeor, vëtor*, and the Simple Tenses of many verbs of saying, thinking, and the like—*dicor, trador, feror, perhibeor, putor, existimor*, etc., also with *coeptus sum* and *desitus sum* with a Passive Infinitive, and (2) sometimes with other verbs of *saying, showing, perceiving, finding*, and the like.

Solem e mundo tollere videntur, *They seem to remove the sun from the world.* Cic. *Plätönem audivisse dicitur*, *He is said to have heard Plato.* Cic. *Dii beati esse intelliguntur*, *The gods are understood to be happy.* Cic.

2) In successive clauses the Personal construction is often followed by the Impersonal.

3) *Videor* with or without a Dative often means *to fancy, think*: *mihi videor* or *videor*, *I fancy*; *ut videmur*, *as we fancy.*

II. Infinitive as Object.

550. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is often used as an Accusative, and is thus made the object of a verb, according to Rule V.:

Te dicunt esse sapientem, *They say that you are wise.* Cic. *Haec vitare cupimus*, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. *Mänere decrëvit*, *He decided to remain.* Nep.

551. INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as object with a great variety of verbs. Thus,

I. With Verbs of Perceiving and Declaring,—*Verba Sentiendi et Declärandi.*

II. With Verbs of Wishing and Desiring.

III. With Verbs of Emotion and Feeling.

I. WITH VERBS OF PERCEIVING AND DECLARING.—*Sentimus calere ignem*, *We perceive that fire is hot.* Cic. *Mihi narravit te sollicitum esse*, *He told me that you were troubled.* Cic. *Scripserunt Themistoclem in Asiam transisse*, *They wrote that Themistocles had gone over to Asia.* Nep.

1. VERBA SENTIENDI.—*Verbs of Perceiving* include those which involve (1) the exercise of the senses: *audio, video, sentio*, etc., and (2) the exercise of the mind: thinking, believing, knowing, *cogito, puto, existimo, credo, përo,—intelligo, scio*, etc.

2. VERBA DECLARANDI.—*Verbs of Declaring* are such as state or communicate facts or thoughts: *dico, narro, nuntio, doceo, ostendo, prömitto*, etc.

3. EXPRESSIONS WITH THE FORCE OF VERBS.—The Infinitive with a subject may be used with expressions equivalent to verbs of perceiving and declaring. Thus:

With *fama fert*, report says, *testis sum*, I am a witness = I testify; *conscius mihi sum*, I am conscious, I know:

Nullam mihi rēlātā esse grātiā, tu es testis, You are a witness (can testify) that no grateful return has been made to me. Cic.

4. PARTICIPLE FOR INFINITIVE.—Verbs of Perceiving take the Accusative with the Present Participle, when the object is to be represented as actually seen, heard, etc., while engaged in a given action:

Cātōnem vīdi in bibliōthēca sēdentem, I saw Cato sitting in the library. Cic.

5. SUBJECTS COMPARED.—When two subjects with the same predicate are compared by means of *quam*, *idem—qui*, etc.; if the Accusative with the Infinitive is used in the first clause, the Accusative with its Infinitive omitted may follow in the second:

Plātōnem fērunt idem sensisse, quod Pŷthāgōram, They say that Plato held the same opinion as Pythagoras. Cic.

6. PREDICATES COMPARED.—When two predicates with the same subject are compared and the Infinitive with a Subject is used in the first clause, the Infinitive with its subject omitted often follows in the second:

Num pŷtātis, dixisse Antōnium mīnācius quam factŷrum fuisse, Do you think Antony spoke more threateningly than he would have acted? Cic.

But the second clause may take the subjunctive, with or without *ut*:

Audeo dicere ipsos pŷtōres agrŷrum fŷre quam ut cŷli prohibeant, I dare say that they will themselves become tillers of the fields rather than prevent them from being tilled. Liv.

II. WITH VERBS OF WISHING AND DESIRING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Wishing* and *Desiring*:

Te tua frui virtute cŷpimus, We desire that you should enjoy your virtue. Cic. Pontem jŷbet rescindi, He orders the bridge to be broken down (that the bridge should be broken down). Caes. Lex eum nēcāri vŷtuit, The law forbade that he should be put to death. Liv.

1. VERBS OF WISHING.—The Infinitive is thus used not only with verbs which directly express a wish, *cŷpio*, *vŷlo*, *nŷlo*, *mālo*, etc., but also with many which involve a wish or command: *pŷtior*, *sŷno*, to permit; *impŷro*, *jŷbeo*, to command; *prohibeo*, *vŷto*, to forbid. See also 558. II.

2. SUBJUNCTIVE FOR INFINITIVE.—Several verbs involving a wish or command admit the Subjunctive:

1) Opto. See 492. 3.

2) *Vŷlo*, *mālo*, *nŷlo*, *impŷro*, and *jŷbeo* admit the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Vŷlo ut respondeas, I wish you would reply. Cic. Mālo te hostis mŷtuat, I prefer that the enemy should fear you. Cic.

3) *Concēdo*, *permitto*, rarely *pŷtior* and *sŷno*, admit the Subjunctive with *ut*:
Concēdo ut haec apta sint, I admit that these things are suitable. Cic.

III. WITH VERBS OF EMOTION OR FEELING.—The Infinitive with Subject Accusative is also used with verbs of *Emotion* or *Feeling*:

Gaudeo, te mihi suādēre, *I rejoice that you advise me.* Cic. Mirāmur, te laetāri, *We wonder that you rejoice.* Cic.

Verbs of emotion are *gaudeo, dōleo, mīror, quēror*, and the like; also *aegro fēro, graviter fēro*, etc.

552. INFINITIVE WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE.—This is used as Object with many verbs:

Vincēre scis, *You know how to conquer* (you know to conquer). Liv. Crēdūli esse coepērunt, *They began to be credulous.* Cic. Haec vitāre cūpimus, *We desire to avoid these things.* Cic. Sōlent cōgitāre, *They are accustomed to think.* Cic. Nēmo mortem effūgēre pōtest, *No one is able to escape death.* Cic.

1. VERBS WITH THE INFINITIVE.—The Infinitive may depend upon verbs signifying to *dare, desire, determine—begin, continue, end—know, learn, neglect—owe, promise*, etc., also to *be able, be accustomed, be wont*, etc.

2. INFINITIVE AS A SECOND OBJECT.—With a few verbs—*dōceo, cōgo, assuefūcio, arguo*, etc.—the Infinitive is used in connection with a direct object; see 374. 4:

Te sāpēre dōcet, *He teaches you to be wise.* Cic. Nātiōnes pārēre assuefēcit, *He accustomed the nations to obey.* Cic.

In the Passive these verbs of course retain the Infinitive:

Num sum Graece lōqui dōcendus, *Must I be taught to speak Greek?* Cic.

3. INFINITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.—By a construction according to sense, the Infinitive is used after adjectives in the sense of participles or verbs with the Infinitive:

Est pārātus (*vult*) audīre, *He is prepared to hear* (is willing to hear). Cic.

Pēlides cēdēre nescius (= nesciens), *Pelides not knowing how to yield.* Hor. Avīdi committēre pugnam, *eager to engage battle.* Ovid.

This construction is rare in good prose, but common in poetry.

4. INFINITIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS.—The Infinitive regarded as a noun in the accusative, sometimes depends upon a preposition:

Multum intērest inter dāre et accīpēre, *There is a great difference between giving and receiving.* Sen.

III. Infinitive in Special Constructions.

553. The Infinitive, with or without a Subject, is generally used as the Subject or Object of a verb, but sometimes occurs in other relations. It is thus used,

I. As Predicate; see 362:

Exītus fuit ōrātiōnis: sibi nullam cum his āmicītiā, *The close of his oration was that he had no friendship with these.* Caes. Vivēre est cōgitāre, *To live is to think.* Cic.

Here *sibi—āmicītiā* is used substantively, and is the Predicate Nominative after *fuit*, according to Rule I. *Cōgitāre* is in the same construction after *est*.

II. As Appositive ; see 363 :

Orācŭlum dātum ērat victrīces Athēnas fōre, *The oracle that Athens would be victorious had been given.* Cic. Illud sōleo mīrārī non me accīpēre tuas littēras, *I am accustomed to wonder at this, that I do not receive your letter.* Cic.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a subject accusative, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—In the examples, the clause *victrīces Athēnas fōre* is in apposition with *illud*, and the clause *non me accīpēre tuas littēras*, in apposition with *illud*.

III. In Exclamations ; see 381 :

Te sic vexārī, *that you should be thus troubled!* Cic. Mēne incepto dē-sistēre victam, *that I vanquished should abandon my undertaking!* Virg.

1. WITH SUBJECT.—In this construction the Infinitive takes a Subject, as in the examples.

2. EXPLANATION.—This use of the Infinitive conforms, it will be observed, to the use of Accusative and Nominative in exclamations (381, 381. 3). It may often be explained as an Accus. by supplying some verb, as *dōleo*, etc., or as a Nom. by supplying *crēdendum est* or *crēdībile est*. Thus the first example becomes: *I grieve (dōleo) that you, etc.,* and the second becomes: *Is it to be supposed (crēdendum est) that I vanquished, etc.*

3. IMPASSIONED QUESTIONS.—This construction is most frequent in impassioned questions, as in the second example.

IV. As Ablative Absolute. See 431. 4.

V. To express Purpose :

Pēcus ēgit altos vīsere montes, *He drove his herd to visit the lofty mountains.* Hor. Non pōpŭlāre pēnātes vēnimus, *We have not come to lay waste your homes.* Virg.

This construction is confined to poetry.

VI. Poetic Infinitive for Gerund. See 563. 6.

SECTION IX.

SUBJECT AND OBJECT CLAUSES.

554. Subject and Object Clauses, in which, as we have just seen (549 and 550), the Infinitive is so freely used, assume four distinct forms :

I. INDIRECT QUESTIONS.—These represent the Subject or Object as *Interrogative* in character :

Quaeritur, cur dissentiant, *It is asked why they disagree.* Cic. Quid āgendum sit, nescio, *I do not know what ought to be done.* Cic. See 525.

II. INFINITIVE CLAUSES.—These have simply the force of Nouns, merely supplying the place of the Nominative, or the Accusative :

Antēcellēre contigit, *It was his good fortune to excel* (to excel happened).
Cic. Magna nēgōtia vōluit āgēre, *He wished to achieve great undertakings.*
Cic. See 549, 550.

III. SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.—These clauses introduced by *ut*, *ne*, etc., are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then involve Purpose or Result :

Contigit ut patriam vindicāret, *It was his good fortune to save his country.* Nep. Vōlo ut mihi respondeas, *I wish you would answer me.* Cic. See 492, 495.

Here *ut—vindicāret* is at once subject and result : it was his good fortune to save his country, or his good fortune was such that he saved his country. In the second example, *ut—respondeas* expresses not only the object desired, but also the purpose of the desire.

IV. CLAUSES WITH QUOD.—These again are only occasionally used as subject or object, and even then either give prominence to the fact stated, or present it as a Ground or Reason :

Bēnēficiū est quod nēcesse est mōri, *It is a blessing that it is necessary to die.* Sen. Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, *I rejoice that (because) I have interrupted you.* Cic. See 520.

Clauses with *quod* sometimes stand at the beginning of sentences to announce the subject of remark :

Quod me Agāmēmnōnem aemulāri pūtas, fallēris, *As to the fact that you think I emulate Agamemnon, you are mistaken.* Nep.

I. FORMS OF SUBJECT CLAUSES.

555. INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are interrogative in character, of course take the form of indirect questions. See 525. 2 and 554. I.

556. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Subject clauses which are not interrogative, with some predicates take the form of Infinitive clauses, or clauses with *quod* ; while with other predicates they take the form of Subjunctive clauses with *ut*, *ne*, etc. Thus,

I. With most impersonal verbs and with predicates consisting of *est* with a Noun or Adjective, the Subject may be supplied (1) by the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative, or, (2) if

the fact is to be made prominent or adduced as a reason, by a clause with *quod*:

Me poenitet vixisse, I regret that I have lived. Cic. *Quod te offendi me poenitet, I regret that (or because) I have offended you.* Cic.

1. SUBSTANTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Mos est, mōris est, consuetudo est, consuetudinis est, It is a custom, etc.,* admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Mos est hōmīnum ut nōlint, It is a custom of men that they are not willing. Cic.

2. ADJECTIVE PREDICATES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE.—*Rēliquum est, proximum est, extrēmum est—vērum est, vērissimile est, falsum est—glōriōsum est, mīrum est, optimū est, etc.,* admit the Subjunctive for the Infinitive:

Rēliquum est ut certēmus, it remains that we contend. Cic. *Vērum est ut bōnos diligant, It is true that they love the good.* Cic.

II. With Impersonal verbs signifying to *happen*—*accidit, contingit, ēvenit, fit—ut, ut non,* with the Subjunctive, is generally used (495. 2):

Thrāsŷbūlo contigit, ut patriam vindicāret, It was the good fortune of Thrasybulus (happened to him) to deliver his country. Nep.

1. Here belong *accēdit ut, est ut, fūtūrum esse ut, or fore ut.* See 544.

2. Clauses with *quod* also occur with verbs of happening.

III. With Impersonal verbs signifying *it follows, remains, is distant,* and the like, the Subjunctive clause with *ut* is generally used:

Rēlinquītur, ut quiescāmus, It remains that we should submit. Cic. See 495. 2.

IV. Subjunctive clause standing alone. See 495. 2. 2).

II. FORMS OF OBJECT CLAUSES.

557. INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are interrogative in character, of course, take the form of indirect questions. See 554. I.

558. NOT INTERROGATIVE.—Object clauses which are not interrogative in character, supplying the place of direct objects after transitive verbs, sometimes take the form of Infinitive clauses, sometimes of Subjunctive clauses, and sometimes of clauses with *quod*. Thus,

I. Verbs of DECLARING take,

1. Regularly the Infinitive with Subject Accusative. See 551. I.

2. But the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, when they involve a command:

Dolābellae dixit, ut ad me scriberet ut in Italiā venirem, He told Dola-bella to write to me to come into Italy. Cic. See 492. 2.

II. Verbs of DETERMINING, *stātuo, constituo, decerno*, and the like, take,

1. Generally the Infinitive, when the subject is the same as that of the principal verb, rarely the Subjunctive:

Mānere decrēvit, He determined to remain. Nep. *Stātuerunt, ut libertātem dēfenderent, They determined to defend liberty.* Cic. See 551. II.

2. The Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne* (expressed or understood), when a new subject is introduced:

Constituerat, ut tribūnus quērērētur, He had arranged that the tribune should enter the complaint. Sall. *Sēnātus decrēvit, dārent op̄eram consules, The senate decreed that the consuls should attend to it.* Sall. See 492. 3.

Stātuo, decerno, etc., when they mean *to think, deem, suppose*, etc., become *verba sentiendi* (551. I. 1), and of course take the infinitive:

Laudem sapiētiāe stātuo esse maximam, I deem it to be the highest praise of wisdom. Cic.

III. Verbs of STRIVING, ENDEAVORING, take the Subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*. See 492. 1. But *contendo, nitor, stūdeo*, and *tento*, generally take the Infinitive when the subject is the same:

Lōcum oppugnāre contendit, He proceeds to storm the city. Caes. *Tentābo de hoc dicere, I will attempt to speak of this.* Quint. See 552.

IV. Verbs of CAUSING, MAKING, ACCOMPLISHING, take the Subjunctive with *ut, ne, ut non*. See 492, 495.

1. EXAMPLES.—*Fācio, effīcio, perfīcio*—*ādīpiscor, impetro*—*assēquor, cōsequor*, and sometimes *fēro*, are examples of verbs of this class.

2. FACIO AND EFFICIO.—*Fācio* in the sense of *assume, suppose*, takes the Infinitive; *effīcio* in the sense of *prove, show*, either the Infinitive or the Subjunctive with *ut*, etc.:

Fac ānimos non rēmānere post mortem, Assume that souls do not survive after death. Cic. *Vult effīcere ānimos esse mortāles, He wishes to show that souls are mortal.* Cic.

V. Verbs of EMOTION or FEELING, whether of joy or sorrow, take,

1. The Infinitive with Subject Accusative, to express the Object in view of which the feeling is exercised. See 551. III.

2. Clauses with *quod*, to make more prominent the Reason for the feeling:

Gaudeo quod te interpellāvi, I rejoice that (or because) I have interrupted you. Cic. *Dolēbam quod socium amiseram, I was grieving because I had lost a companion.* Cic. See 520. I.

For VERBS OF DESIRING, see 551. II. 2.

VI. Verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, ADVISING, WARNING, COM-

MANDING, and the like, take the Subjunctive, generally with *ut* or *ne*:

Oro ut hōmīnes mīseros conserves, *I implore that you would preserve the unhappy men.* Cic. Postūlant ut signum detur, *They demand that the signal be given.* Liv. See 492. 2.

1. EXAMPLES.—Verbs of this class are numerous—the following are examples: oro, rōgo, pēto, prēcō, obsēcō—flāgito, postūlo, praeipio—hortor, mōneo, suādeo, persuādeo—impello, incito, mōveo, commōveo.

2. USED AS VERBA DECLARANDI.—Some of these verbs in particular significations become *verba declarandi* (551. 2), and accordingly take the Infinitive with Subject Accusative: thus *mōneo*, in the sense of *remind* and *persuādeo* in the sense of *convince*.

3. INFINITIVE.—Even in their ordinary significations some of these verbs, especially *hortor*, *mōneo*, and *postūlo*, sometimes take the Infinitive with or without a Subject Accusative:

Postūlat se absolvi, *He demands that he should be acquitted.* Cic. See 551. II. 1 and 2.

The Infinitive is much more common in poetry than in prose.

SECTION X.

GERUND.

559. The Gerund is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases and takes adverbial modifiers, as a noun it is itself governed.

560. The Gerund has four cases: Genitive, Dative, Accusative, and Ablative, governed like nouns in the same situation:

Beāte vīvendi cūpīdītate incensi sūmus, *We are animated with the desire of living happily.* Cic. Charta inūtīlis scribendo, *paper unfit for writing.* Plin. Ad āgendum nātus, *born for action.* Cic. In āgendo, *in acting.* Cic.

1. ACCUSATIVE.—The Accusative of the Gerund is used only after Prepositions.

2. GERUND AND INFINITIVE.—The gerund and the infinitive are kindred forms, expressing the meaning of the verb in the form of a noun (196. II.). They are also complements of each other, the one supplying the parts which are wanting in the other. Thus the infinitive supplies the nominative and the accusative after verbs (548); the gerund supplies the genitive, dative, and ablative, and the accusative after prepositions.

561. Gerunds with Direct Objects are regularly used only in the Genitive and in the Ablative without a preposition:

Jus vōcandi sēnātum, *the right of summoning the senate.* Liv. Injūrias fōrendo laudem mērēbēris, *You will merit praise by bearing wrongs.* Cic.

562. GERUNDIVE.—The place of the Gerund with a Direct Object is supplied by putting that object in the case of the Gerund and changing the latter into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with it. The participle is then called a *Gerundive*:

Inīta sunt consilia urbis dēlendae = *urbem dēlendi*, *Plans have been formed for destroying the city* (of the city to be destroyed). Cic. *Nūma sacerdōtibus creandis ānimum adjēcit*, *Numa gave his attention to the appointment of priests*. Liv.

1. EXPLANATION.—With the Gerund, the first example would be: *Inīta sunt consilia urbem dēlendi*, in which *dēlendi* is governed by *consilia*, and *urbem* by *dēlendi*. In changing this to the Gerundive construction,

1) *Urbem*, the object, is changed into *urbis*, the case of the gerund, and is governed by *consilia*.

2) *Dēlendi*, the gerund, is changed into *dēlendae*, the gerundive, in agreement with *urbis*.

2. GERUNDIVE.—For the sake of brevity, the term *Gerundive* is used not only to designate the *Participle*, but also the *Construction as a whole*, including both the participle and the noun with which it agrees.

3. USE OF GERUNDIVE.—The Gerundive may be used for the Gerund with a Direct Object, and is almost invariably so used when the Gerund would be in the Dative or would depend upon a preposition. But see 563. 2.

But in a few instances the Gerund with a Direct Object occurs in the Dative or dependent upon a preposition. See 564. 1; 565. 2; and 566. 2.

4. GERUNDIVES OF UTOR, FRUOR, ETC.—In general only the gerundives of transitive verbs are used with their nouns as equivalents for Gerunds with Direct Objects; but the gerundives of *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *pōtior*, and *vescor*, originally transitive verbs, admit this construction:

Ad mūnus fungendum, *for discharging the duty*. Cic. *Spes pōtiundōrum castrōrum*, *the hope of getting possession of the camp*. Caes.

5. PASSIVE SENSE.—In a few instances, the Gerund has in appearance a passive sense:

Nēque hābent propriam percipiendi nōtam, *Nor have they any proper mark of distinction*, i. e., to distinguish them. Cic.

I. GENITIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

563. The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with nouns and adjectives:

GERUND.—*Ars vivendi*, *the art of living*. Cic. *Stūdiōsus erat audiendi*, *He was desirous of hearing*. Nep. *Jus vōcandi sēnātum*, *the right of summoning the senate*. Liv. *Cūpīdus te audiendi*, *desirous of hearing you*. Cic.

GERUNDIVE.—*Lībīdo ejus vīdendi*, *the desire of seeing him*. Cic. *Plātōnis stūdiōsus audiendi fuit*, *He was fond of hearing Plato*. Cic.

1. The genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive occurs most frequently—

1) With *ars, scientia, consuetudo, cupiditas, libido, studium, consilium, voluntas, spes, potestas, facultas, difficultas, occasio, tempus, genus, modus, ratio, causa, gratia, etc.*

2) With adjectives denoting *desire, knowledge, skill, recollection*, and their *opposites*: *avidus, cupidus, studiosus—consciens, gnarus, ignarus—peritus, imperitus, insuetus, etc.*

2. GERUND PREFERRED.—A gerund with a neuter pronoun or adjective as object should not be changed to the participial construction, because the latter could not distinguish the gender:

Artem vera ac falsa diiudicandi, the art of distinguishing true things from the false. Cic.

3. GERUND WITH GENITIVE.—The Gerund in the Genitive sometimes assumes so completely the force of a noun as to govern the Genitive instead of the Accusative:

Rejiciendi iudicum potestas, the power of challenging (of) the judges. Cic.

Here *rejiciendi* may be governed by *potestas*, and may itself by its substantive force govern *iudicum*, the challenging of the judges, etc. But these and similar forms in *di* are sometimes explained not as Gerunds but as Gerundives, like Gerundives with *mei, nostri, etc.* See 4 below.

4. PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTION WITH *MEI, NOSTRI, ETC.*—With the Genitive of personal pronouns—*mei, nostri, tui, vestri, sui*—the participle ends in *di* without reference to Number or Gender:

Copia placandi tui (of a woman), an opportunity of appeasing you. Ov. Sui conservandi causa, for the purpose of preserving themselves. Cic. Vestri adhortandi causa, for the purpose of exhorting you. Liv.

This apparent irregularity may be accounted for by the fact that these genitives, though used as Personal Pronouns, are all strictly in form in the neuter singular of the Possessives *meum, tuum, suum, etc.*, hence the participle in *di* agrees with them perfectly.

5. PURPOSE.—The Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is sometimes used to express Purpose or Tendency:

Haec tradendae Hannibali victoriae sunt, These things are for the purpose of giving victory to Hannibal. Liv. Leges pellendi claros viros, laws for driving away illustrious men. Tac. Proficiscitur cognoscendae antiquitatis, He sets out for the purpose of studying antiquity. Tac.

This genitive is sometimes best explained as Predicate Genitive (401), as in the first example; sometimes as dependent upon a noun, as *pellendi* dependent upon *leges* in the second example; and sometimes simply as a Genitive of Cause (393, 409. 4), as in the third example; though in such cases, especially in the second and third, *causa* may be supplied.

6. INFINITIVE FOR GERUND.—The Infinitive for the Genitive of the Gerund or Gerundive is often used in the poets with nouns and adjectives, sometimes even in prose:

Cupido Stygios innare lacus, the desire to sail upon the Stygian lakes. Virg. Avidus committere pugnam, eager to engage battle. Ovid.

II. DATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

564. The Dative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used with a few verbs and adjectives which regularly govern the Dative :

GERUND.—*Quum solvendo non essent, Since they were not able to pay.* Cic. *Aqua utilis est bibendo, Water is useful for drinking.* Plin.

GERUNDIVE.—*Lŏcum oppido condendo cēperunt, They selected a place for founding a city.* Liv. *Tempora dēmētendis fructibus accommodāta, seasons suitable for gathering fruits.* Cic.

1. GERUND.—The Dative of the Gerund is rare and confined mostly to late writers; with an object it is almost without example.

2. GERUNDIVE OF PURPOSE.—In Livy, Tacitus, and late writers, the Dative of the Gerundive often denotes purpose :

Firmandae vālētūdini in Campāniam concessit, He withdrew into Campania to confirm his health. Tac.

3. GERUNDIVE WITH OFFICIAL NAMES.—The Dative of the Gerundive also stands after certain official names, as *dēcemvīri, triumvīri, comitia* :

Dēcemvīros lēgibus scribendis creāvīmus, We have appointed a committee of ten to prepare laws. Liv. But the Dative is perhaps best explained as dependent upon the verb.

III. ACCUSATIVE OF GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

565. The Accusative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used after a few prepositions :

GERUND.—*Ad discendum prōpensi sūmus, We are inclined to learn (to learning).* Cic. *Inter lūdendum, in or during play.* Quint.

GERUNDIVE.—*Ad cōlendos agros, for cultivating the fields.* Cic. *Ante condendam urbem, before the founding of the city.* Liv.

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The Accusative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *ad*; sometimes after *inter* and *ob*; very rarely after *ante*, *circa*, and *in*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—The accusative of a gerund with a direct object sometimes occurs, but is rare :

Ad plācandum deos pertinet, It tends to appease the gods. Cic.

3. PURPOSE.—With verbs of *giving, permitting, leaving, taking*, etc., the purpose of the action is sometimes denoted by the Gerund with *ad*, or by the Gerundive in agreement with a noun :

Ad imitandum mihi prōpōsitum exemplar illud, That model has been set before me for imitation. Cic. *Attribuit Itāliam vastandam (for ad vastandum) Cātīlinæ, He assigned Italy to Catiline to ravage (to be ravaged).* Cic.

IV. ABLATIVE OF GERUNDS OR GERUNDIVES.

566. The Ablative of the Gerund or Gerundive is used,

I. As Ablative of Means or Instrument:

GERUND.—*Mens discendo alitur, The mind is nourished by learning. Cic.*
Sālūtē hōmīnībūs dādo, by giving safety to men. Cic.

GERUNDIVE.—*Lēgendis ōrātōrībūs, by reading the orators. Cic.*

II. With Prepositions:

GERUND.—*Virtūtes cernuntur in āgēdo, Virtues are seen in action. Cic.*
Dēterrēre a scribēdo, to deter from writing. Cic.

GERUNDIVE.—*Brūtus in libēranda patria est interfectus, Brutus was slain in liberating his country. Cic.*

1. PREPOSITIONS.—The ablative of the gerund or gerundive is used most frequently after *in*; sometimes after *a* (*ab*), *de*, *ex* (*e*); very rarely after *cum* and *pro*.

2. WITH OBJECT.—After prepositions, the ablative of the gerund with a direct object is exceedingly rare:

In tribuēdo suum cuique, in giving every one his own. Cic.

3. WITHOUT A PREPOSITION, the ablative of the gerund or gerundive denotes in a few instances some other relation than that of means, as *time*, *separation*, etc.:

Incipiēdo rēfūgi, I drew back in the very beginning. Cic.

SECTION XI.

SUPINE.

567. The Supine, like the Gerund, is a verb in force, but a noun in form and inflection. As a verb it governs oblique cases, as a noun it is itself governed.

568. The Supine has but two cases: the Accusative in *um* and the Ablative in *u*.

RULE L.—Supine in *Um*.

569. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE:

Lēgātī vēnērunt res rēpētītum, Deputies came to demand restitution. Liv.
Ad Caesārem congrātulātum convēnērunt, They came to Caesar to congratulate him. Caes.

1. The Supine in *um* occurs in a few instances after verbs which do not directly express motion:

Filiam Agrippæ nuptum dedit, *He gave his daughter in marriage to Agrippa.* Suet.

2. The Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is equivalent to the forms of the first Periphrastic Conjugation, and may often be rendered literally :

Bonos omnes perditum eunt, *They are going to destroy all the good.* Sall.

But in subordinate clauses the Supine in *um* with the verb *eo* is often used for the simple verb :

Ultum ire, (= ulcisci) injurias festinat, *He hastens to avenge the injuries.* Sall.

3. The Supine in *um* with *iri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*, forms, it will be remembered (215, III. 1), the Future Passive Infinitive :

Brutum visum iri a me puto, *I think Brutus will be seen by me.* Cic.

4. The Supine in *um* as an expression of purpose is not very common, its place is often supplied even after verbs of motion by other constructions :

1) By *ut* or *qui* with the Subjunctive. See 489.

2) By *Gerunds* or *Gerundives*. See 563. 5 ; 564. 2 ; 565. 3.

3) By *Participles*. See 578. V.

570. The Supine in *u* is generally used as an Ablative of Specification (429) :

Quid est tam jucundum auditu, *What is so agreeable to hear* (in hearing) ? Cic. Difficile dictu est, *It is difficult to tell.* Cic.

1. The Supine in *u* is used chiefly with—jucundus, optimus—facilis, proclivis, difficilis—incredibilis, memorabilis—honestus, turpis, fas, nefas—dignus, indignus—opus est.

2. The Supine in *u* is very rare, and does not occur with an object. The only examples in common use are : *auditu, cognitu, dictu, and factu.*

3. As the Supine in *u* is little used, its place is supplied by other constructions :

1) By *ad* with the Gerund : Verba ad audiendum jucunda, *words agreeable to hear.* Cic.

2) By the Infinitive : Facile est vincere, *It is easy to conquer.* Cic.

3) By a Finite Mood with an adverb : Non facile dijudicatur amor fictus, *Pretended love is not easy to detect* (is not easily detected). Cic.

SECTION XII.

PARTICIPLES.

I. TENSES OF PARTICIPLES.

571. Participles, like Infinitives, express only relative time, and represent the action as Present, Past, or Future, relatively to the principal verb.

PECULIARITIES.—Tenses in Participles present the leading peculiarities specified under the corresponding tenses in the Indicative. See 467. 2.

572. PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—The present participle represents the action as taking place at the time denoted by the principal verb :

Oculus se non videns alia cernit, *The eye, though it does not see itself* (not

seeing itself), *discerns other things*. Cic. Plāto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing*. Cic.

573. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.—The future active participle represents the action as about to take place, in time subsequent to that of the principal verb :

Sāpiens bōna semper plācītūra laudat, *The wise man praises blessings which will always please* (being about to please). Sen.

But the Future Passive generally loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is often best rendered by a verbal noun. See 562 and 580.

574. PERFECT PARTICIPLE.—The perfect participle represents the action as completed at the time of the principal verb.

Uva mātūrāta dulcescit, *The grape, when it has ripened* (having ripened), *becomes sweet*. Cic.

1. The Perfect Participle, both in Deponent and in Passive verbs, is sometimes used of present time, and sometimes in Passive verbs it loses in a great degree its force as a tense, and is best rendered by a verbal noun. See 580.

2. For the Participle with *habeo*, see 388. 1 2).

II. USE OF PARTICIPLES.

575. Participles are verbs in force, but Adjectives in form and inflection. As verbs they govern oblique cases, as adjectives they agree with nouns :

Animus se non vīdens ālia cernit, *The mind, though it does not see itself, discerns other things*. Cic.

1. Participles in the Present or Perfect, rarely in the Future, may be used as adjectives or nouns : *scripta epistōla*, a written letter ; *mortui*, the dead. Participles with the force of adjectives may be used as predicate adjectives with *sum* : *occūpāti erant*, they were occupied ; as a verb, *had been occupied*.

576. Participles are used to abridge or shorten discourse by supplying the place of finite verbs with relatives or conjunctions. They are used with much greater freedom in Latin than in English.

577. PARTICIPLE FOR RELATIVE CLAUSE.—In abridged sentences, the Participle often supplies the place of a Relative Clause :

Omnes aliud agentes, aliud simulantés impröbi sunt, *All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest.* Cic.

578. FOR OTHER SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.—The Participle often supplies the place of a subordinate clause with a conjunction. It may express,

I. Time :

Pläto scribens mortuus est, *Plato died while writing.* Cic. Itüri in proelium cänunt, *They sing when about to go into battle.* Tac.

II. Cause, Manner, Means :

Sol öriens diem conficit, *The sun by its rising causes the day.* Cic. Millites rönuntiant, se perfidiam vëritös rëvertisse, *The soldiers report that they returned because they feared perfidy (having feared).* Caes.

III. Condition :

Mendäci hömïni ne vërum quïdem dicenti crëdëre non sölëmus, *We are not wont to believe a liar, even if he speaks the truth.* Cic. Rëluctante nätüra, irrïtus läbor est, *If nature opposes, effort is vain.* Sen.

IV. Concession :

Scripta tua jam diu expectans, non audeo tämen flägītäre, *Though I have been long expecting your work, yet I do not dare to ask for it.* Cic.

V. Purpose :

Perseus rëdiit, belli cäsüm tentätürus, *Perseus returned to try (about to try) the fortune of war.* Liv. Attribuit nos trücidandos Cëthëgo, *He assigned us to Cethegus to slaughter.* Cic.

579. PARTICIPLE FOR PRINCIPAL CLAUSE.—The Participle sometimes supplies the place of a principal or coördinate clause, and may accordingly be best rendered by a finite verb with *and* or *but* :

Classem dëvictam cëpit, *He conquered and took the fleet (took the fleet conquered).* Nep. Re consentientes vöcäbülis diffërebant, *They agreed in fact, but differed in words.* Cic.

580. PARTICIPLE FOR VERBAL NOUN.—The Passive Participle is often used in Latin where the English idiom requires a participial noun, or a verbal noun with *of* :

In ämïcis ëllëgendis, *in selecting friends.* Cic. Hömërus fuit ante Rö-mam conditam, *Homer lived (was) before the founding of Rome (before Rome founded).* Cic.

581. PARTICIPLE WITH NEGATIVE.—The Participle

with a negative, as *non*, *nihil*, is often best rendered by a participial noun and the preposition *without* :

Misērum est, nihil prōficiētem angī, It is sad to be troubled without accomplishing anything. Cic. Non ērūbescens, without blushing. Cic.

CHAPTER VI

SYNTAX OF PARTICLES.

RULE LI.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS :

Sāpientes fēliciter vivunt, The wise live happily. Cic. Fācile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. Haud ālīter, not otherwise. Virg.

583. Adverbs are sometimes used with nouns :

1. When the nouns are used with the force of adjectives or participles :
Mīnime largītor dux, a leader by no means liberal. Liv. Pōpulus lāte rex, a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively). Virg.

2. When in sense a participle or verb may be supplied :

Mārius, plāne vir, Marius, truly a man. Cic. Omnes circa pōpūli, all the surrounding peoples. Liv. See also 353. 2.

584. The Common Negative Particles are : *non*, *ne*, *haud*.

1. *Non* is the usual negative, *ne* is used in prohibitions, wishes and purposes (489), and *haud*, in *haud scio an* and with adjectives and adverbs ; *haud mirābile*, not wonderful ; *haud ālīter*, not otherwise. *Ni* for *ne* is rare. *Ne non* after *vīde* is often best rendered *whether*.

2. In *non mōdo non* and in *non solum non*, the second *non* is generally omitted before *sed*, or *vērūm*, followed by *ne—quīdem* or *vix* (rarely *etiam*), when the verb of the second clause belongs also to the first :

Assentātio non mōdo āmīco, sed ne libēro quīdem digna est. Flattery is not only not worthy of a friend, but not even of a free man. Cic.

3. *Minus* often has nearly the force of *non* ; *si minus* = *si non*. *Sin ālīter* has nearly the same force as *si minus*.

585. Two Negatives are generally equivalent to an affirmative, as in English :

Nihil non arröget, *Let him claim everything.* Hor. Nöque hoc Zöno non videt, *Nor did Zeno overlook this.* Cic.

1. *Non* before a general negative gives it the force of an indefinite affirmative, but after such negative the force of a general affirmative :

Nonnömo, *some one* ; nonnihil, *something* ; nonnunquam, *sometimes.*

Nömo non, *every one* ; nihil non, *every thing* ; nunquam non, *always.*

2. After a general negative, *ne—quidem* gives emphasis to the negation, and *nöque—nöque, növe—növe*, and the like, repeat the negation distributively :

Non practöreundum est ne id quidem, *We must not pass by even this.* Cic. Nömo unquam nöque poöta nöque örätor fuit, *No one was ever either a poet or orator.* Cic.

3. *Sic* and *ita* mean *so, thus.* *Ita* has also a limiting sense *in so far* which does not belong to *sic*, as in *ita—si* (503. 4). *Adeo*, to such a degree or result ; *tam, tantöpöre*, so much, *tam* used mostly before adjectives and adverbs, and *tantöpöre* before verba.

586. For the use of Prepositions, see 432 to 437.

587. Coördinate Conjunctions unite similar constructions (309). They comprise five classes :

I. Copulative Conjunctions denote union :

Castor et Pollux, *Castor and Pollux.* Cic. Sönätus pöpulusque, *the senate and people.* Cic. Nec örat diffícile, *Nor was it difficult.* Liv.

1. LIST. See 310. 1.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Et* simply connects ; *que* implies a more intimate relationship ; *atque* generally gives prominence to what follows, especially at the beginning of a sentence ; *ac*, abbreviated from *atque*, has generally the force of *et*. *Nöque* and *nec* have the force of *et non*. *Et* and *ötiam* sometimes mean *even*.

Atque and *ac* generally mean *as, than* after adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness ; *similis*, *dissimilis*, *similiter*, *par*, *päriter*, *aeque*, *älus*, *äliter*, *söcus* : *aeque ac*, equally as ; *äliter atque*, otherwise than. See also 451. 5.

3. QUE, AC, ATQUE.—*Que* is an enclitic, i. e., is always appended to some other word. *Ac* in the best prose is used only before consonants ; *atque*, either before vowels or consonants.

4. ETIAM, QUOQUE, ADEO, and the like, are sometimes associated with *et, atque, ac*, and *que*, and sometimes even supply their place. *Quöque* follows the word which it connects : *is quöque*, he also. *Etiäm*, also, further, even, is more comprehensive than *quöque* and often adds a new circumstance.

5. CORRELATIVES.—Sometimes two copulatives are used : *et (que)—et (que), tum—tum, quum—tum, both—and* ; but *quum—tum* gives prominence to the second word or clause ; *non sölum (non mödo, or non tantum)—sed ötiam (vörum ötiam), not only—but also* ; *nöque (nec)—nöque (nec), neither—nor* ; *nöque (nec)—et (que), not—but (and)* ; *et—nöque (nec), (both)—and not*.

6. OMITTED.—Between two words connected copulatively the conjunction is generally expressed, though sometimes omitted, especially between the names of two colleagues. Between several words it is in the best prose generally repeated or

omitted altogether, though *que* may be used with the last even when the conjunction is omitted between the others: *pax et tranquillitas et concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordia*, or *pax, tranquillitas, concordiaque*.

Et is often omitted between conditional clauses, except before *non*.

II. Disjunctive Conjunctions denote separation :

Aut vestra aut sua culpa, either your fault, or his own. Liv. *Duābus tribusve hōris, in two or three hours.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 2.

2. *AUT, VEL, VE.*—*Aut* denotes a stronger antithesis than *vel*, and must be used if the one supposition excludes the other: *aut verum aut falsum*, either true or false. *Vel* implies a difference in the expression rather than in the thing. It is generally corrective and is often followed by *pōtius. etiam* or *dīcam*: *laudātur vel etiam amātur*, he is praised, or even (rather) loved. It sometimes means *even* and sometimes *for example*. *Velut* often means *for example*. *Ve* for *vel* is appended as an enclitic.

In negative clauses *aut* and *ve* often continue the negation: *non hōnor aut virtus*, neither (not) honor nor virtue.

3. *SIVE (si—ve)* does not imply any real difference or opposition; it often connects different names of the same object: *Pallas sive Minerva*, Pallas or Minerva (another name of the same goddess).

III. Adversative Conjunctions denote opposition or contrast :

Cūpio me esse clēmentem, sed me inertiae condemnō, I wish to be mild, but I condemn myself for inaction. Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 3.

2. DIFFERENCE IN FORCE.—*Sed* and *verum* mark a direct opposition; *autem* and *vero* only a transition; *at* emphasizes the opposition; *atqui* often introduces an objection; *ceterum*, but still, as to the rest; *tamen*, yet.

3. COMPOUNDS OF *TAMEN* are: *attamen, sedtamen, veruntamen*, but yet.

4. *AUTEM* and *VERO* follow the words which they connect: *hic autem, hic vero*, but this one. They are often omitted, especially before *non*. They are admissible with *qui* only when it is followed by its antecedent.

IV. Illative Conjunctions denote inference :

In umbra igitur pugnābimus, We shall therefore fight in the shade. Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 4.

2. OTHER WORDS.—Certain other words, sometimes classed with adverbs and sometimes with conjunctions, are also illatives: *eo, ideo, idcirco, propterea, quāobrem, quāpropter, quāre, quōdēre*.

3. *IGITUR*.—This generally follows the word which it connects: *hic igitur*, this one therefore. After a digression *igitur, sed, sed tamen, verum, verum tamen*, etc., are often used to resume an interrupted thought or construction. They may often be rendered *I say*: *Sed si quis*; if any one, I say.

V. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Difficile est consilium: sum enim solus, Counsel is difficult, for I am alone. Cic. *Et enim jus amant, For they love the right.* Cic.

1. LIST. See 310. 5.

2. ETENIM and NAMQUE denote a closer connection than *enim* and *nam*.

3. ENIM follows its word.

588. Subordinate Conjunctions connect subordinate with principal constructions (309. II.). They comprise eight classes.

I. Temporal Conjunctions denote time :

Pāruit quum nēcesse ērat, *He obeyed when it was necessary.* Cic. Dum ego in Sicilia sum, *while I am in Sicily.* Cic. See also 311. 1 ; 521-523.

1. DUM added to a negative means *yet*; *nondum*, not yet; *vixdum*, scarcely yet.

II. Comparative Conjunctions denote comparison :

Ut optasti, ita est, *It is as you desired.* Cic. Vēlut si ādesset, *as if he were present.* Caes. See also 311. 2 ; 503, 506.

1. CORRELATIVES are often used: Tam—quam, *as, so—as, as much as*; tam—quam quod maxīme, *as much as possible*; non minus—quam, *not less than*; non māgis—quam, *not more than*.

Tam—quam and ut—ita with a superlative are sometimes best rendered by *the* with the comparative : *ut maxīme—ita maxīme*, the more—the more.

III. Conditional Conjunctions denote condition :

Si peccāvi, ignosce, *If I have erred, pardon me.* Cic. Nisi est concilium dōmi, *unless there is wisdom at home.* Cic. See also 311. 3 ; 503, 507.

1. Nisi, if not, in negative sentences often means *except*, and *nisi quod*, except that, may be used even in affirmative sentences. Nisi may mean *than*. Nihil aliud nisi = nothing further (more, except); nihil aliud quam = nothing else (other than).

IV. Concessive Conjunctions denote concession :

Quamquam intelligunt, *though they understand.* Cic. Etsi nihil hābeat, *although he has nothing.* Cic. See also 311. 4 ; 515, 516.

V. Final Conjunctions denote purpose :

Esse oportet, ut vivas, *It is necessary to eat, that you may live.* Cic. See also 311. 5 ; 489-499.

VI. Consecutive Conjunctions denote consequence or result :

Atticus ita vixit, ut Athēniensibus esset cārissimus, *Atticus so lived that he was very dear to the Athenians.* Nep. See also 311. 6 ; 489-499.

VII. Causal Conjunctions denote cause :

Quae quum ita sint, *Since these things are so.* Cic. See also 311. 7 ; 517, 518.

VIII. Interrogative Conjunctions or Particles denote inquiry or question :

Quaesieras, nonne putārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic. See also 311. 8 ; 346. II., 525, 526.

IV. INTERJECTIONS.

589. Interjections are sometimes used entirely alone, as *heu*, alas! and sometimes with certain cases of nouns. See 381 and 381. 3.

590. Various parts of speech, and even oaths and imprecations, sometimes have the force of interjections. Thus:

Pax (*peace*), *be still!* *miserum*, *miserabile*, *sad*, *lamentable!* *oro*, *pray!* *age*, *age*, *come, well!* *mehercules*, *by Hercules!* *per deum fidem*, *in the name of the gods!* *sodes* = *si audes* (*for audies*), *if you will hear!*



CHAPTER VII.

RULES OF SYNTAX.

591. For convenience of reference, the principal Rules of Syntax are here introduced in a body. The enclosed numerals refer to the various articles in the work where the several topics are more fully discussed.

NOUNS.

AGREEMENT.

I. A PREDICATE NOUN denoting the same person or thing as its Subject, agrees with it in CASE (362):

Ego sum nuntius, *I am a messenger.* Liv.

II. An APPOSITIVE agrees with its Subject in CASE (363):

Cluilius rex moritur, *Cluilius the king dies.* Liv.

NOMINATIVE.

III. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative (367):

Servius regnavit, *Servius reigned.* Liv.

VOCATIVE.

IV. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative (369):

Perge, Laeli, *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic.

ACCUSATIVE.

V. The DIRECT OBJECT of an action is put in the Accusative (371):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

VI. Verbs of MAKING, CHOOSING, CALLING, REGARDING, SHOWING, and the like, admit two Accusatives of the same person or thing (373):

Hāmilcārem impērātōrem fēcērunt, *They made Hamilcar commander.* Nep.

VII. Some verbs of ASKING, DEMANDING, TEACHING, and CONCEALING, admit two Accusatives in the Active, and one in the Passive (374):

Me sententiam rōgāvit, *He asked me my opinion.* Cic.

VIII. DURATION OF TIME AND EXTENT OF SPACE are expressed by the Accusative (378):

Septem et trīginta regnāvit annos, *He reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv.
Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *to walk five miles.* Cic.

IX. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative (379):

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv.

X. A Verb or Adjective may take an Adverbial Accusative to define its application (380):

Cāpita velāmur, *We have our heads veiled.* Virg. Nūbe hūmēros
āmicтус, *with his shoulders enveloped in a cloud.* Hor.

XI. The Accusative, either with or without an Interjection, may be used in Exclamations (381):

Heu me mīšerum, *Ah me unhappy!* Cic.

DATIVE.

XII. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative (384):

Tempōri cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic.

Dative of Advantage and Disadvantage (385).

Dative with Compounds (386).

Dative of Possessor (387).

Dative of Apparent Agent (388).

Ethical Dative (389).

XIII. Two Datives—the OBJECT TO WHICH and the OBJECT FOR WHICH—occur with a few verbs (390):

Mālo est hōmīnībus āvāritia, *Avarice is (for) an evil to men.* Cic.

XIV. With Adjectives the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative (391):

Omnībus cārum est, *It is dear to all.* Cic.

XV. A few Derivative Nouns and Adverbs take the Dative after the analogy of their primitives (392):

Obtemperātio lēgibus, *obedience to the laws.* Cic. Congruenter nātūrae, *agreeably to nature.* Cic.

GENITIVE.

XVI. Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive (395):

Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations.* Cic.

XVII. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning (399):

Avidus laudis, *desirous of praise.* Cic.

XVIII. A Predicate Noun denoting a different person or thing from its Subject, is put in the Genitive (401):

Omnia hostium erant, *All things belonged to (were of) the enemy.* Liv.

XIX. The Genitive is used (406),

I. With **mīsēreor** and **mīsēresco**:

Mīsērere lābōrum, *pity the labors.* Virg.

II. With **rēcorder**, **mēmīni**, **rēmīniscor**, and **oblīviscor**:

Mēmīnit praetērītōrum, *He remembers the past.* Cic.

III. With **rēfert** and **intērest**:

Intērest omnium, *It is the interest of all.* Cic.

XX. A few verbs take the Accusative of the Person and the Genitive of the Thing (410):

I. Verbs of *Reminding, Admonishing*:

Te āmīcītae commōnēfācit, *He reminds you of friendship.* Cic.

II. Verbs of *Accusing, Convicting, Acquitting*:

Vīros scēlēris arguis, *You accuse men of crime.* Cic.

III. *Mīsēret, Poenitet, Pūdet, Taedet, and Pīget*:

Eōrum nos mīsēret, *We pity them.* Cic.

For the *Genitive of Place*, see Rule XXVI.

ABLATIVE.

XXI. CAUSE, MANNER, and MEANS are denoted by the Ablative (414):

Utilitāte laudātur, *It is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic.

XXII. PRICE is generally denoted by the Ablative (416):

Vendidit auro patriam, *He sold his country for gold.* Virg.

XXIII. Comparatives without **QUAM** are followed by the Ablative (417):

Nihil est amābilius virtūte, *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.

XXIV. The MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE is denoted by the Ablative (418):

Uno die longior, *longer by one day.* Cic.

XXV. The Ablative is used (419),

I. With **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **pētor**, **vescor**, and their compounds:

Plūrimis rebus fruimur, *We enjoy very many things.* Cic.

II. With **fido**, **confido**, **nitor**, **innitor**:

Sālus veritate nititur, *Safety rests upon truth.* Cic.

III. With **VERBS** and **ADJECTIVES OF PLENTY** and **WANT**:

Non ēgeo medicīna, *I do not need a remedy.* Cic.

IV. With **dignus**, **indignus**, **contentus**, and **frētus**:

Digni sunt amicitia, *They are worthy of friendship.* Cic.

V. With **opus** and **usus**:

Auctoritate tua nobis opus est, *We need your authority.* Cic.

XXVI. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the **PLACE FROM WHICH** are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. **NAMES OF TOWNS** drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the **PLACE IN WHICH** by the Locative (421):

In Itālia fuit, *He was in Italy.* Nep. Ex Afrīca, *from Africa.* Liv. Athēnis fuit, *He was at Athens.* Cic. Rōmae fuit, *He was at Rome.* Cic.

XXVII. SOURCE and **SEPARATION** are denoted by the Ablative, generally with a preposition (425):

Oriundi ab Săbīnis, *descended from the Sabines*. Liv. Caedem a vōbis dēpello, *I ward off slaughter from you*. Cic.

XXVIII. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative (426):

Octōgēsīmo anno est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year*. Cic.

XXIX. The Ablative with an adjective may be used to characterize a person or thing (428):

Summa virtūte ādōlescens, *a youth of the highest virtue*. Caes.

XXX. The Ablative may be used with a word to define its application (429):

Nōmīne, non pōtestāte fuit rex, *He was king in name, not in power*. Nep.

XXXI. The Ablative is used as the CASE ABSOLUTE (431):

Servio regnante, *in the reign of Servius* (Servius reigning). Cic.

CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

XXXII. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions (432):

Ad āmicum, *to a friend*. Cic. In Itālia, *in Italy*. Nep.

ADJECTIVES.

XXXIII. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE (438):

Fortūna caeca est, *Fortune is blind*. Cic.

PRONOUNS.

XXXIV. A Pronoun agrees with its Antecedent in GENDER, NUMBER, and PERSON (445):

Animā, quod sanguinem hābet, *an animal which has blood*. Cic.

VERBS.

AGREEMENT.

XXXV. A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON (460):

Ego rēges ejēcī, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

XXXVI. The Indicative is used in treating of facts (474):

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES.

XXXVII. Principal tenses depend upon Principal tenses: Historical, upon Historical (480):

Nititur ut vincat, *He strives to conquer.* Cic. Quaesiēras nonne pūtārem, *You had asked whether I did not think.* Cic.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

XXXVIII. The POTENTIAL SUBJUNCTIVE represents the action not as real, but as *possible* (485):

Forsitan quaerātis, *perhaps you may inquire.* Cic.

XXXIX. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF DESIRE represents the action not as real, but as *desired* (487):

Vāleant cives, *May the citizens be well.* Cic.

XL. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE OR RESULT is used (489),

I. With **ut, ne, quo, quin, quōmīnus**:

Enītitur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic.

II. With **qui = ut is, ut ēgo, tu, etc.**:

Missi sunt, qui (*ut ii*) consūlērent Apollīnem, *They were sent to consult Apollo.* Nep.

XLI. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONDITION is used (503),

I. With **dum, mōdo, dummōdo**:

Mōdo permāneat industria, *if only industry remains.* Cic.

II. With **ac si, ut si, quāsi, quam si, tanquam, tanquam si, vēlut, vēlut si**:

Vēlut si ādesset, *as if he were present.* Caes.

III. Sometimes with **si, nīsi, nī, sin, qui = si is, si quis**:

Sī vēlim nūmērāre, *if I should wish to recount.* Cic.

XLII. The SUBJUNCTIVE OF CONCESSION is used (515),

I. With **licet, quamvis, quantumvis, ut, ne, quum**, although:

Līcet irrīdeat, *though he may deride.* Cic.

II. With **qui** = **quum** (licet) **is**, **quum** **ěgo**, etc., though he:
 Absolvite Verrem, qui (*quum is*) fāteātur, *Acquit Verres, though he confesses.* Cic.

III. Generally with **etsi**, **tāmeti**, **ětiamsi**:

Etsi optimum sit, *even if (though) it be most excellent.* Cic.

XLIII. The **SUBJUNCTIVE OF CAUSE OR REASON** is used (517),

I. With **quum** (cum), since; **qui** = **quum is**, etc.

Quum vita mētus plēna sit, *since life is full of fear.* Cic.

II. With **quod**, **quia**, **quōniam**, **quando**, to introduce a reason on another's authority:

Quod corrumpēret jūventūtem, *because (on the ground that) he corrupted the youth.* Quint.

XLIV. The **SUBJUNCTIVE OF TIME** with the accessory notion of **CAUSE OR PURPOSE** is used (521),

I. With **dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, until:

Exspectas, dum dicat, *You are waiting till he speaks, i. e., that he may speak.* Cic.

II. With **antēquam**, **priusquam**, before:

Antēquam de re pūblica dicam, *before I (can) speak of the republic.* Cic.

XLV. The **Subjunctive** is used in **INDIRECT QUESTIONS** (525):

Quid dies fērat, incertum est, *What a day may bring forth is uncertain.* Cic.

XLVI. The **Subjunctive by Attraction** is often used in clauses dependent upon the **Subjunctive** (527):

Vēreor, ne, dum mīnuēre vēlim lābōrem, augeam, *I fear I shall increase the labor, while I wish to diminish it.* Cic.

XLVII. The **Subjunctive** is generally used in the **Interrogative, Imperative, and Subordinate clauses of the Oratio Obliqua** (529):

Respondit, cur vēnīret, *He replied, why did he come.* Caes. Scribit Lābiēno vēniat, *He writes to Labienus to come.* Caes.

IMPERATIVE.

XLVIII. The **Imperative** is used in **commands, exhortations, and entreaties** (535):

Justitiam cōle, *Practise justice.* Cic.

INFINITIVE.

XLIX. The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative (545):

Sentimus cālēre ignem, We perceive that fire is hot. Cic.

PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

Participles are construed as adjectives (575), Gerunds and Supines as nouns (559, 567). But

L. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion to express PURPOSE (569):

Vēnērunt res rēpētītum, They came to demand restitution. Liv.

PARTICLES.

LI. Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS (582):

Sāpientes fēliciter vīvunt, The wise live happily. Cic.

1. For PREPOSITIONS, see Rule XXXII.

2. CONJUNCTIONS are mere connectives. See 587 and 588.

3. INTERJECTIONS are expressions of emotion or mere marks of address.

See 589.

CHAPTER VIII.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS AND CLAUSES.

SECTION I.

ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

592. The Latin admits of great variety in the arrangement of the different parts of the sentence, thus affording peculiar facilities both for securing proper emphasis and for imparting to its periods that harmonious flow which characterizes the Latin classics. But with all this freedom and variety, there are certain general laws of arrangement which it will be useful to notice.

I. GENERAL RULES.

593. The Subject followed by its modifiers occupies the first place in the sentence, and the Predicate preceded by its modifiers the last place :

Sol oriens diem conficit, *The sun rising makes the day.* Cic. Anīmus aeger semper errat, *A diseased mind always errs.* Cic. Miltiādes Athēnas libēravit, *Miltiades liberated Athens.* Nep.

594. Emphasis and euphony often affect the arrangement of words :

I. BEGINNING.—Any word, except the subject, may be made *emphatic* by being placed at the beginning of the sentence :

Silent lēges inter arma, *Laws are silent in war.* Cic. Nūmītōri Rēmus dēditur, *Remus is delivered to Numitor.* Liv. Igni āger vastābātur, *The field was ravaged with fire.* Sall.

II. END.—Any word, except the predicate, may be rendered *emphatic* by being placed at the end of the sentence :

Nōbis non sātisfācit ipse Dēmōsthēnes, *Even Demosthenes does not satisfy us.* Cic. Consulātum pētīvit nunquam, *He never sought the consulship.* Cic. Exsistit quaedam quaestio subdīfīcīlis, *There arises a question somewhat difficult.* Cic.

III. SEPARATION.—Two words naturally connected, as a noun and its adjective, or a noun and its genitive, are sometimes made *emphatic* by separation :

Objurgātiōnes nonnunquam incidunt nēcessāriāe, *Sometimes necessary reproofs occur.* Cic. Justītiāe fungātur officiis, *Let him discharge the duties of justice.* Cic.

595. CONTRASTED GROUPS.—When two groups of words are contrasted, the order of the first is often reversed in the second :

Frāgīle corpus ānīmus sempiternus mōvet, *The imperishable soul moves the perishable body.* Cic.

596. KINDRED WORDS.—Different forms of the same word, or different words of the same derivation, are generally placed near each other :

Ad sēnem sēnex de sēnectūte scripsi, *I, an old man, wrote to an old man on the subject of old age.* Cic. Inter se āliis ālii prōsunt, *They mutually benefit each other.* Cic.

597. WORDS WITH A COMMON RELATION.—A word which has a common relation to two other words connected by conjunctions, is placed,

I. Generally before or after both :

Pācis et artes et glōria, both the arts and the glory of peace. Liv. *Bellī pācisque artes, the arts of war and of peace.* Liv.

A Genitive or Adjective following two nouns may qualify both, but it more frequently qualifies only the latter :

Haec percunctatio ac dēnuntiatio bellī, this inquiry and this declaration of war. Liv.

II. Sometimes directly after the first before the conjunction :

Hōnōris certāmen et glōriae, a struggle for honor and glory. Cic. *Agri omnes et mǎria, all lands and seas.* Cic.

II. SPECIAL RULES.

598. MODIFIERS OF NOUNS.—The modifiers of a noun generally follow it. They may be either adjectives or nouns :

Pōpulus Rōmānus dēcrēvit, The Roman people decreed. Cic. *Hērōdōtus, pāter histōriae, Herodotus, the father of history.* Cic. *Līber de officiis, the book on duties.* Cic.

1. **NOUN.**—A noun as modifier of another noun is generally an appositive, a genitive, or a case with a preposition, as in the examples.

2. **WITH EMPHASIS.**—Modifiers when emphatic are placed before their nouns :

Tuscus āger Rōmāno adjacet, The Tuscan territory borders on the Roman. Liv. *Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, Cato's orations.* Cic.

3. **ADJECTIVE AND GENITIVE.**—When a noun is modified both by an adjective and by a genitive, the usual order is, *adjective—genitive—noun* :

Magna cīvium pēnūria, a great scarcity of citizens. Cic.

599. MODIFIERS OF ADJECTIVES.—The modifiers of the adjective generally precede it, but, if not adverbs, they may follow it :

Facile doctissimus, unquestionably the most learned. Cic. *Omni aetāti commūnis, common to every age.* Cic. *Avīdus laudis, desirous of praise.* Cic.

600. MODIFIERS OF VERBS.—The modifiers of the verb generally precede it :

Glōria virtūtem sēquītur, Glory follows virtue. Cic. *Mundus deo pāret, The world is subject to God.* Cic. *Vehēmenter dixit, He spoke vehemently.* Cic. *Glōria dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic.

1. **AFTER THE VERB.**—When the verb is placed for the sake of emphasis at the beginning of the sentence, the modifiers, of course, follow. See first example under 594. I.

2. **EMPHASIS.**—An emphatic modifier may of course stand at the beginning or at the end of the sentence (594):

Fācillīme cognoscuntur ādōlescentes, Most easily are the young men recognized. Cic.

3. **TWO OR MORE MODIFIERS.**—Of two or more modifiers belonging to the same verb, that which in thought is most intimately connected with the verb stands next to it, while the others are arranged as emphasis and euphony may require:

Rex Scythia bellum intulit, The king waged war against the Scythians.
Nep. Mors propter brevitatē vitae nunquam longe ābest, Death is never far distant, in consequence of the shortness of life. Cic.

601. MODIFIERS OF ADVERBS.—The modifiers of the adverb generally precede it, but a Dative often follows it:

Valde vehēmenter dixit, He spoke very vehemently. Cic. *Congruenter nātūrae vivit, He lives agreeably to nature.* Cic.

602. SPECIAL WORDS.—Some words have a favorite place in the sentence, which they seldom leave. Thus,

I. The *Demonstrative* generally precedes its noun:

Custos hujus urbis, the guardian of this city. Cic.

1. *Ille* in the sense of well-known (450. 5) generally follows its noun, if not accompanied by an adjective:

Mēdēa illa, that well-known Medea. Cic.

2. *Quisque*, the indefinite pronoun, follows some other word:

Iustitia suum cuique tribuit, Justice gives to every man his due (his own). Cic.

II. *Prepositions* generally stand directly before their cases, but *tēnus* and *versus* follow their cases:

In Asiam prōfūgit, He fled into Asia. Cic. *Collo tēnus, up to the neck.* Ov.

1. **AFTER A PRONOUN.**—The preposition frequently follows the relative, sometimes other pronouns, and sometimes even nouns, especially in poetry:

Res qua de āgitur, the subject of which we are treating. Cic. *Itāliam contra, over against Italy.* Virg.

2. **CUM APPENDED.**—See 184, 9 and 187, 3.

3. **INTERVENING WORDS.**—Genitives, adverbs, and a few other words sometimes stand between the preposition and its case. In adjurations *per* is usually separated from its case by the Acc. of the object adjured, or by some other word; and sometimes the verb *ōro* is omitted:

Post Alexandri magni mortem, after the death of Alexander the Great. Cic. *Ad bēne vivendum, for living well.* Cic. *Per te deos ōro, I pray you in the name of the gods.* Ter. *Per ēgo vos deos = per deos ēgo vos ōro* (*ōro* understood). *I pray you in the name of the gods.* Curt.

III. *Conjunctions* and *Relatives*, when they introduce clauses, generally

stand at the beginning of such clauses; but *autem*, *enim*, *quidem*, *quoque*, *vēro*, and generally *igitur*, follow some other word:

Si peccāvi, ignosce, If I have erred, pardon me. Cic. *Ii qui sup̄eriōres sunt, those who are superior.* Cic. *Ipsē autem omnia vidēbat, But he himself saw all things.* Cic.

1. EMPHATIC WORDS and RELATIVES often precede the conjunction.

Id ut audivit, as he heard this. Nep. *Quae quum ita sint, since these things are so.* Cic.

2. *NE—QUIDEM* takes the emphatic word or words between the two parts:

Ne in oppidīs quidem, not even in the towns. Cic.

3. *Quidem* often follows pronouns, superlatives, and ordinals:

Ex me quidem nihil audiet, He will hear nothing from me. Cic.

4. *Que, ve, ne*, introducing a clause or phrase, are generally appended to the first word, but if that word is a monosyllabic preposition, they are often appended to the next word: *ad plēbemve*, for *adve*, etc., or to the people; *in fōrōque* = *inque fōro*, and in the forum. *Apud quosque*, and before whom, occurs for euphony.

IV. *Non*, when it qualifies some single word, stands directly before that word, but when it is particularly emphatic, or qualifies the entire clause, it generally stands at the beginning of the clause:

Hac villa cārēre non possunt, They are not able to do without this villa. Cic. *Non fuit Jūpiter mētendus, Jupiter was not to be feared.* Cic.

V. *Inquam*, sometimes *Aio*, introducing a quotation, follows one or more of the words quoted. The subject, if expressed, generally follows its verb:

Nihil, inquit Brūtus, quod dicam, Nothing which I shall state, said Brutus. Cic.

VI. The Vocative rarely stands at the beginning of a sentence. It usually follows an emphatic word:

Perge, Laeli, Proceed, Laelius. Cic.

SECTION II.

ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

I. IN COMPLEX SENTENCES.

603. SUBJECT OR PREDICATE.—A clause used as the subject of a complex sentence (357) generally stands at the beginning of the sentence, and a clause used as the predicate at the end:

Quid dies fērat incertum est, What a day may bring forth is uncertain. Cic. *Exītus fuit orātīōnis: sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse, The close of the oration was, that he had no friendship with these men.* Caes.

1. This arrangement is the same as that of the simple sentence. See 593.

2. Emphasis and euphony often have the same effect upon the arrangement of clauses as of words. See 594.

604. SUBORDINATE ELEMENTS.—Clauses used as the subordinate elements of complex sentences, admit three different arrangements :

I. They are generally inserted within the principal clause, like the subordinate elements of a simple sentence :

Hostes, ūbi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt, *The enemy, as soon as they saw our cavalry, quickly put our men to route.* Caes. Sententia, quae tutissima videbatur, vicit, *The opinion which seemed the safest prevailed.* Liv.

II. They are often placed before the principal clause :

Quum quiescunt, probant, *While they are quiet, they approve.* Cic. Quālis sit animus, animus nescit, *The soul knows not what the soul is.* Cic. Si haec civitas est, civis sum ego, *If this is a state I am a citizen.* Cic.

This arrangement is especially common when the subordinate clause either refers back to the preceding sentence, or is preparatory to the thought of the principal clause. Hence *temporal, conditional, and concessive* clauses often precede the principal clause. Hence also, in sentences composed of correlative clauses with *is—qui, talis—qualis, tantus—quantus, tum—quum, ita—ut*, etc., the relative member, i. e., the clause with *qui, qualis, quantus, quum, ut*, etc., generally precedes.

III. They sometimes follow the principal clause :

Enititur ut vincat, *He strives that he may conquer.* Cic. Sol efficit ut omnia floreat, *The sun causes all things to bloom.* Cic.

This arrangement is common when the subordinate clause is either intimately connected in thought with the following sentence or is explanatory of the principal clause. Hence clauses of *Purpose* and *Result* generally follow the principal clause, as in the examples. See also examples under articles 489–499.

605. LATIN PERIOD.—A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is inserted within the principal clause, as under I., is called a Period in the strict sense of the word.

In a freer sense the same term is also applied to any sentence in which the clauses are so arranged as not to make complete sense before the end of the sentence. In this sense the examples under II. are periods.

II. IN COMPOUND SENTENCES.

606. Clauses connected by coordinate conjunctions (587) generally follow each other in the natural order of the thought, as in English :

Sol ruit et montes umbrantur, *The sun descends and the mountains are shaded.* Virg. Gyges a nullo videbatur, ipse autem omnia videbat, *Gyges was seen by no one, but he himself saw all things.* Cic.

PART FOURTH.

P R O S O D Y.

607. Prosody treats of Quantity and Versification.

CHAPTER I.

QUANTITY.

608. The time occupied in pronouncing a syllable in poetry is called its quantity. Syllables are accordingly characterized as *long*, *short*, or *common*.¹

609. The quantity of syllables is determined by poetic usage. But this usage conforms in many cases to general laws, while in other cases it seems somewhat arbitrary.

1. Syllables whose quantity conforms to known rules are said to be long or short by *rule*.

2. Syllables whose quantity does not conform to known rules are said to be long or short by *authority*.

3. The rules for quantity are either *general*, i. e., applicable to most syllables, or *special*, i. e., applicable to particular syllables.

SECTION I.

GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

610. RULE I.—Diphthongs and Contracted syllables are LONG :

Haec, coena, aura ; ālius *for* āliius, cōgo *for* coīgo, occīdo *for* occae-do, nil *for* nihil.

1. *Prae* in composition is usually short before a vowel : *praěăcūtus*, *pražustus*.

2. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, are not strictly diphthongs, and accordingly do not come under this rule.

¹ Sometimes long and sometimes short.

611. RULE II.—A vowel is LONG BY POSITION before *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants :¹

Mājor, rēxi, gāza, mēnsa, servus.

1. But one of the consonants at least must belong to the same word as the vowel : *āb rūpe, pēr saxa.*

1) A final vowel is not usually affected by consonants at the beginning of the following word, except before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, and *st*, where a short vowel is rare.

2) *H* and *U* must never be treated as consonants under this rule,² except in rare instances where *u* is so used by Synaeresis. See 669. II.

2. Before a mute followed by *L* or *R*, a vowel naturally short becomes common : *dūplex, āgri, pātres.*

1) In Greek words a vowel is also common before a mute with *M* or *N* : *Tēcmessa, cŕcnus.*

2) A mute at the end of the first part of a compound before a liquid at the beginning of the second part makes the preceding vowel long by position : *āb-rumpo, ōb-rōgo.*

3) A vowel naturally long, of course, remains long before a Mute and Liquid : *ācer, ācris.*

3. Compounds of *jūgum* retain the short vowel before *j* : *bijūgus, quadrījūgus.*

612. RULE III.—A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is SHORT BY POSITION :

Pūs, pīae, dōcēo, trāho.

No account is taken of the breathing *h*; hence *a* in *traho* is treated as a vowel before another vowel.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are long before a vowel :

1. **A,**—(1) in the genitive ending *āi* of Dec. I. : *aulāi*,—(2) in proper names in *aius* : *Cāius* (Cajus),—(3) before *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iu*, in the verb *aio*.

2. **E,**—(1) in the ending *ēi* of Dec. V. when preceded by a vowel : *dīēi*; and sometimes in *fīdēi, rēi, spēi*,—(2) in proper names in *eius* : *Pompēius*,—(3) in *ēheu*.

3. **I,**—(1) in the verb *fio*, when not followed by *er* : *fīam, fīebam*, but *fīēri*,—(2) in the genitive *āiūs*. In other genitives *i* in *iūs* is common in poetry, though long in prose, but the *i* in *altērīūs* is short,—(3) in *dīūs, a, um*, for *dīvūs, a, um*,—(4) sometimes in *Dīāna*.

4. **O,**—is common in *ōhe*.

¹ Strictly speaking, the syllable, and not the vowel, is lengthened, but the language of convenience refers the quantity of the syllable to the vowel.

² *Qu, gu, and su*, when *u* has the sound of *wo*, are treated as single consonants.

5. In Greek words vowels are often long before a vowel, because long in the original: *āer*, *Aenēas*, *Brīsēis*, *Mēnēlāus*, *Trōes*.

This often occurs in proper names in—*ēa*, *ia*, *ēus*, *ius*, *don*, *ion*, *dis*, *ōis*, *ōius*: *Mēdēa*, *Alexandria*, *Pēnēus*, *Dārius*, *Orion*.

SECTION II.

SPECIAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

I. QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

I. Monosyllables.

613. RULE IV.—Monosyllables are long:

ā, *dā*, *tē*, *sē*, *dē*, *sī*, *quī*, *dō*, *prō*, *tū*, *dōs*, *pēs*, *sīs*, *bōs*, *sūs*, *pār*, *sōl*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are short:

1. Enclitics: *quē*, *vē*, *nē*, *cē*, *tē*, *psē*, *ptē*.

2. Monosyllables in **b**, **d**, **l**, **m**, **t**: *āb*, *ād*, *fil*, *sūm*, *ēt*; except *sāl*, *sōl*.

3. *An*, *bis*, *cis*, *cōr*, *ēs*, *fāc*, *fēr*, *in*, *is*, *nēc*, *ōs* (ossis), *pēr*, *tēr*, *quā* (indefinite), *quīs*, *vīr*; probably also *vās* (*vādis*), and sometimes *hēc* and *hēc* as Nom. or Acc. forms.

II. Polysyllables.

1. FINAL VOWELS.

614. RULE V.—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **a**, **e**, and **y** are short; **i** and **u**, long; **o**, common:

Viā, *māriā*, *mārē*, *mīšy*; *mārī*, *audī*, *fructū*, *cornū*; *āmō*, *sermō*.

615. **A** final is short: *mensā*, *templā*, *bōnā*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* final is long,

1. In the Ablative: *mensā*, *bōnā*, *illā*.

2. In the Vocative of Greek nouns in *as* (rarely *es*): *Aenēā*, *Pallā*.

3. In Verbs and Indeclinable words: *āmā*, *cūrā*; *circā*, *juxtā*, *antēā*, *frustrā*. Except *itā*, *quā*, *ejā*, and *pūtā* used adverbially.

616. **E** final is short: *servē*, *urbē*, *rēgē*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* final is long,

1. In Dec. I. and V.: *ēpītōmē*, *rē*, *diē*. Hence in the compounds—*hōdiz*, *prīdiz*, *postrīdiz*, *quārē*.

2. In Greek plurals of Dec. III.: *Tempē*, *mēlē*.

3. In the Sing. Imperative Act. of Conj. II. : *mõnẽ, dõcẽ*. But *e* is sometimes short in *cãvẽ*.

4. In *fẽrẽ, fẽrmẽ, ohẽ*, and in Adverbs from adjectives of Dec. II. : *doctẽ, rectẽ*. Except *bẽnẽ, mãlẽ, infernẽ, internẽ, sũpernẽ*.

617. **Y** *final* is short : *mĩsỹ, mĩlỹ, cõtỹ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are, of course, long : *mĩsỹ = mĩsyĩ*.

618. **I** *final* is long : *servĩ, bõnĩ, audĩ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* *final* is,

1. COMMON in *mihĩ, tibĩ, sibĩ, ibĩ, ũbĩ*. But

Observe compounds *ũbidem, ũbique, ũbique, ũbĩnam, ũbĩvĩs, ũbĩcunque, nẽcũbĩ, sicũbĩ*.

2. SHORT,—(1) in *nĩsĩ, quĩsĩ, cui* (when a dissyllable),—(2) in the Greek ending *sĩ* of Dat. and Abl. Plur. : *Troũsĩ*,—(3) in the Dat. and Voc. Sing., which end short in the Greek : *Alexĩ, Pãrĩdĩ*.

Uti follows the rule, but not the compounds, *ũĩnam, ũĩique, sicũĩĩ*.

619. **U** *final* is long : *fructũ, cornũ, dictũ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Indũ* for *in*, and *nẽnũ* for *non*.

620. **O** *final* is common : *ãmõ, sermõ, virgõ*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* *final* is,

1. LONG,—(1) in Datives and Ablatives : *servõ, illõ, quõ*,—(2) in Greek words, when it represents a long Greek vowel : *ẽchõ, Argõ*,—(3) in Adverbs : *falsõ, multõ, ergõ, quandõ, omnĩnõ*; except those mentioned under 2 below.

2. SHORT in *duõ, ẽgõ, octõ*, and the adverbs *cũtõ, illĩcõ, immõ, mõdõ*, and its compounds, *dummõdõ, quõmõdõ*, etc.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES IN MUTES OR LIQUIDS,—

C, D, L, M, N, R, T.

621. RULE VI.—In words of more than one syllable,

Final syllables in **c** are long ;

Final syllables in **d, l, m, n, r, t**, are short :

ālẽc, illũc ; *illũd, consũl, ãmẽm, carmẽn, ãmõr, cãpũt*.

EXCEPTIONS.—The following occur,

1. *Dõnẽc* and *liẽn*.

2. *M* *final* with the preceding vowel is generally elided before a vowel.

See 669. I.

3. In Greek words,—(1) **en** is long; often also *an, in, on, yn*: *Hymēn, Anchīsēn, Tītān, Delphīn, Actaeōn, Phorcyn*,—(2) **er** is long in *aēr, aethēr, crātēr*, and a few other words with long ending in the original.

4. This rule does not, of course, apply to syllables long by previous rules.

3. FINAL SYLLABLES IN S.

622. **RULE VII.**—In words of more than one syllable, the endings **as, es, and os** are long; **is, us, ys**, short:

āmās, mensās, mōnēs, nūbēs, hōs, servōs; āvis, urbīs, bōnūs, servūs, chlāmŷs.

623. **As final** is long: *Aeneās, bōnās, illās.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*As final* is short,

1. In *anās* and in a few Greek nouns in **ās**: *Arcās, lampās.*

2. In Greek Accusatives of Dec. III.: *Arcādās, hērōās.*

624. **Es final** is long: *nūbēs, mōnēs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Es final* is short,

1. In Nominatives Singular of Dec. III., which increase short in the Gen.: *mīlēs* (Itis), *obsēs* (Idis), *interprēs* (ētis). Except *ābēs, āriēs, pāriēs, Cērēs*, and compounds of *pēs*; as *bipēs, tripēs*, etc.

2. In *pēnēs* and the compounds of *ēs*; as *ādēs, pōtēs.*

3. In Greek words,—(1) in the plural of those which increase in the Gen.: *Arcādēs, Troādes*,—(2) in a few neuters in **es**: *Hippōmēnēs*,—(3) in a few Vocatives singular: *Dēmōsthēnēs.*

625. **Os final** is long: *custōs, vīrōs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Os final* is short,

1. In *compōs, impōs, exōs.*

2. In Greek words with the ending short in the Greek: *Delōs, mēlōs.*

626. **Is final** is short: *āvis, cānīs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*Is final* is long,

1. In Plural Cases: *mensīs, servīs, vōbīs.*

Hence *fōris, grātīs, ingrātīs.*

2. In Nominatives of Dec. III., increasing long in the Gen.: *Quīrīs* (Itis), *Sālāmīs* (Inis).

3. In the Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of Conj. IV.: *audīs.*

Māvīs, quīvīs, ūtervīs follow the quantity of *vīs.*

4. In the Sing. Pres. Subjunct. Act.: *possīs, vėlīs, nōlīs, mālīs.*

5. Sometimes in the Sing. of the Fut. Perf. and of the Perf. Subj.: *āmācēris, dōcuēris.*

627. Us final is short: *servūs, bōnūs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*Us final* is long,

1. In Nominatives of Dec. III. increasing long in the Gen.: *virtūs* (ūtis), *tellūs* (ūris).

But *pālūs* (u short) occurs in Horace. Ars P. 65.

2. In Dec. IV., in the Gen. Sing., and in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Plur. *fructūs*.

3. In Greek words ending long in the original: *Panthūs, Sapphūs, triphūs*.

But we have *Oedipūs* and *pōlyphūs*.

628. Ys final is short: *chlāmŷs, chēlŷs*.

EXCEPTIONS.—Contracted endings are of course long: *Erynnŷs* for *Erynnyes*.

II. QUANTITY IN INCREMENTS.

629. A word is said to *increase* in declension, when it has in any case more syllables than in the nominative singular, and to have as many *increments of declension* as it has additional syllables: *sermo, sermōnis, sermōnibus*.

Sermōnis, having one syllable more than *sermo*, has one increment, while *sermōnibus* has two increments.

630. A verb is said to *increase* in conjugation, when it has in any part more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active, and to have as many *increments of conjugation* as it has additional syllables: *āmās, amātis, amabātis*.

Amātis has one increment, *amabātis* two.

631. If there is but one increment, it is uniformly the penult, if there are more than one, they are the penult with the requisite number of syllables before it. The increment nearest the beginning of the word is called the *first* increment, and those following this are called successively the *second, third, and fourth* increments. Thus

In *ser¹mon²-i³-bus*, the first increment is *mon*, the second *i*; and in *mon¹-e²-ra³-mus*, the first is *u*, the second *e*, the third *ra*.

I. Increments of Declension.

632. RULE VIII.—In the Increments of Declension, **a** and **o** are long; **e, i, u,** and **y**, short:

aetas, aetātis, aetātibus; sermo, sermōnis; puer, puēri, puērōrum;

fulgur, fulgūris; chlāmys, chlamýdis; bōnus, bonārum, bonōrum; ille, illārum, illōrum; mīser, misēri; supplex, supplicis; sātur, satūri.

Vowels long or short by position are of course excepted.

633. A in the increments of declension is long: *pax, pācis; bōnus, bonārum; duo, duābūs.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment,

1. Of masculines in **al** and **ar**: *Hannībal, Hannibālis; Caesar, Caesāris.* Except *Car* and *Nar*.

2. Of nouns in **s** preceded by a consonant: *daps, dāpis; Arabs, Arābis.*

3. Of Greek nouns in **a** and **ās**: *poēma, poēmātis; Pallas, Pullādis.*

4. Of the following:—(1) *baccar, hēpar, jūbar, lar, nectar, par* and its compounds,—(2) *ūnas, mas, vas* (vādis),—(3) *sal, fax*, and a few rare Greek words in *ax*.

634. O in the increments of declension is long: *hōnor, honōris; bōnus, bonōrum; duo, duōbus.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*O* is short in the first increment,

1. Of Neuters in Decl. III.: *aequor, aequōris; tempus, tempōris.* Except *os* (ōris), *ādor* (adōris), and comparatives.

2. Of words in **s** preceded by a consonant; *īnops, īnōpis.* Except *Cyclops* and *hydrops*.

3. Of *arbor, bos, lēpus*,—*compos, impos, mēmor, immēmor*,—*Allōbrox, Cappādox, praecox*.

4. Of most Patrials: *Mācēdo, Macedōnis.*

5. Of many Greek nouns,—(1) those in **or**: *rhētor, Hector*,—(2) many in **o** and **on** increasing short in Greek: *aēdon, aedōnis*,—(3) in Greek compounds in **pus**: *trīpus* (ōdis), *Oedīpus*.

635. E in the increments of declension is short: *puer, puērī; liber, libērī.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is long in the first increment,

1. Of Decl. V., except in the forms *fīdēi, rēi*, and *spēi*; as *diēi, diērum, diēbus, rēbus*.

2. Of nouns in **ēn**, mostly Greek: *liēn, liēnis; Sīrēn, Sīrēnis.* So *Anio, Aniēnis*.

3. Of *Celtīber, Iber, ver*,—*hēres, lōcūples, merces, quies, inquiet, rēquies, plebs*,—*lex, rex, ālec, ālex, vervex*.

4. Of a few Greek words in **es** and **er**, except *aēr* and *aether*; as *lēbes, lebētis; crāter, cratēris*.

636. I in the increments of declension is short: *mīles, militis, militibus; anceps, ancipītis.*

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long in the first increment,

1. Of most words in **ix**: *rādix, radicis; fēlix, felicis.*

But short in: *appendix, cālix, Cūlix, fūlix, fornix, nix, pix, sūlix, strix*, and a few others, chiefly proper names.

2. Of *dis, glis, lis, vis, Quīris, Samnis*.
3. Of *delphin* and a few rare Greek words.
4. For quantity of the ending *ius*, see 612. 3.

637. U in the increments of declension is short: *dux, dūcis; arcus, arcūbus; sātūr, satūri*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the first increment,

1. Of nouns in **us** with the genitive in **uris, utis, udis**: *jus, jūris; sālus, salūtis; pālus, palūdis*. Except *intercus, Līgus, pēcus*.
2. Of *fur, frux, lux, plus, Pollux*.

638. Y in the increments of declension is short: *chlāmys, chlamydis*.

EXCEPTIONS.—This increment occurs only in Greek words, and is long in those in *yn, ŷnis*, and in a few others.

II. Increments of Conjugation.

639. RULE IX.—In the Increments of Conjugation (630), **a, e, and o** are long; **i and u** short:

āmāmus, amēmus, amātōte, rēgīmus, sūmus.

1. In ascertaining the increments of the irregular verbs, *fēro, vōlo*, and their compounds, the full form of the second person, *feris, volis*, etc., must be used. Thus in *fērēbam* and *vōlēbam*, the increments are *re* and *le*.

2. In ascertaining the increments of reduplicated forms (254), the reduplication is not counted. Thus *dēdīmus* has but one increment *dī*.

640. A in the increments of conjugation is long: *āmāre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*A* is short in the first increment of **do**: *dāre, dābam, circumdābam*.

641. E in the increments of conjugation is long: *mōnēre*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*E* is short before **r**,

1. In the tenses in **ram, rim, ro**: *āmāvērām, amavērīm, amavēro; rexerat, rexerit*.

2. In first increment of the Present and Imperfect of Conj. III.: *rēgēre, regērīs, regērem, regērer*.

3. In the Fut. ending **bēris, bēre**: *āmābēris, or -ēre, mōnēbēris*.

4. Rarely in the Perf. ending **erunt**: *stētērunt* for *steterunt*. See 235, also *Systole*, 669. IV.

642. O in the increments of conjugation is long without exception: *mōnētōte, rēgītōte*.

643. I in the increments of conjugation is short : *rēgītis, reximus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*I* is long, except before a vowel,

1. In the first increment of Conj. IV., except *imus* of the Perf. : *audire, audivi, auditum* ; *sentio, sentimus, sensimus* (perf.).

2. In Conj. III. in the first increment of perfects and supines in **ivi** and **itum** (276. III.) and of the parts derived from them (except *imus* of Perf. ; *trivimus*) : *cūpīvi, cupivērat, cupitus* ; *pētīvi, petitus* ; *cāpessīvi, capessitūrus*. *Gāvīsus* from *gaudeo* follows the same analogy.

3. In the endings **imus** and **itis** of Pres. Subj. : *simus, sitis* ; *velimus, velitis* (289. 8).

4. In *nōlīte, nolīto, nolītōte*, and in the different persons of *ībam, ībo*, from *eo* (295).

5. Sometimes in the endings **rimus** and **ritis** of the Fut. Perf. and Perf. Subj. : *āmāvērimus, amāvēritis*.

644. U in the increments of conjugation is short : *vōlūmus*.

EXCEPTIONS.—*U* is long in the Supine and the parts formed from it : *vōlūtum, volūtūrus, amātūrus*.

III. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE ENDINGS.

645. RULE X.—The following derivative endings have the penult long :

I. **ābrum, ācrum, ātrum** :

flābrum, simūlācrum, ārātrum.

II. **ēdo, ido, ūdo** ; **āgo, igo, ūgo** :

dulcēdo, cūpido, solītūdo ; *vōrāgo, ōrigo, aerūgo*.

III. **āis, eis, ōis, ōtis, ine, ōne**—*in patronymics* :

Ptōlēmāis, Chrȳsēis, Minōis, Icāriōtis, Nērīne, Acrīsiōne.

Except *Dānāis, Phōcāis, Thēbdāis, Nērēis*.

IV. **ēla, ile** ; **ālis, ēlis, ūlis** :

quērēla, ōvile ; *mortalis, fidēlis, cūrōlis*.

V. **ānus, ēnus, ōnus, ūnus** ; **āna, ēna, ōna, ūna** :

urbānus, ēgēnus, patrōnus, tribūnus ; *membrāna, hābēna, annōna, lācūna*.

Except *galbānus*.

VI. **āris, ārus** ; **ōrus, ōsus** ; **āvus, ivus** :

sālūtāris, āvārus ; *cānōrus, ānīmōsus* ; *octāvus, aestīvus*.

VII. ātus, itus, ūtus ; ātim, itim, ūtim ; ētum, ēta .

ālātus, turritus, cornūtus ; singulātim, vīritim, trībūtim, quercētum, mōnēta.

Except (1) *ānhēlitus, fortuītus, grātuitus, hālītus, hospītus, servītus, spīritus*, (2) *affūtim, stātīm*, and adverbs in *ītus*, as *divīnītus* ; and (3) participles provided for by 639.

VIII. ēni, ini, ōni,—in distributives :

septēni, quīni, octōni.

646. RULE XI.—The following derivative endings have the penult short :

I. ādes, iādes, īdes,—in patronymics :

Aenēādes, Lāertiādes, Tantalīdes.

Except (1) those in *īdes* from nouns in *eus* and *es* ; as, *Pēlīdes* (Peleus), *Neoclīdes* (Neocles), and (2) *Amphiḍrāīdes, Amḡclīdes, Bēlīdes, Cōrōnīdes, Lŷcurgīdes*.

II. iācus, īcus, īdus :

Cōrinthiācus, mōdīcus, cūpīdus.

Except *āmīcus, anticus, aprīcus, mendīcus, postīcus, pūdīcus*.

III. ōlus, ōla, ōlum ; ūlus, ūla, ūlum ; cūlus, cūla, cūlum,—in diminutives :

filiōlus, filiōla, atriōlum ; hortūlus, virgūla, oppīdūlum ; floscūlus, partīcūla, mūnuscūlum.

IV. ētas, itas,—in nouns ; iter, itus,—in adverbs :

piētas, vēritas ; fortīter, divīnītus.

V. ātilis, ilis, bīlis,—in verbals ; īnus,—in adjectives denoting material or time :

versātilis, dōcīlis, āmābīlis ; āḍāmantīnus, cedrīnus, crastīnus, diūtīnus.

Except *mātūtīnus, rēpentīnus, vespertīnus*.

1. **Ilis** in adjectives from nouns usually has the penult long : *cīvilis, hostilis, puērīlis, vīrīlis*.

2. **Inus** denoting characteristic (325) usually has the penult long : *cānīnus, ēquīnus, mārīnus*.

647. RULE XII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult long :

I. āceus, ūceus, āneus, ārius, ārium, ōrius :

rōsāceus, pannūceus, sūbītāneus, cībārius, cōlumbārium, censōrius.

II. ābīlis, ātilis, ātīcus :

āmābīlis, versātilis, āquātīcus.

III. *āginta, iginti, ēsīmus*,—*in numerals*:

nōnāginta, vīginti, centēsīmus.

648. RULE XIII.—The following derivative endings have the antepenult short:

I. *ībīlis, itūdo, ōlentus, ūlentus.*

crēdībīlis, sōlītūdo, vīnōlentus, ōpūlentus.

II. *ūrīo*,—*in desideratives*:

ēsūrīo, emptūrīo, partūrīo.

IV. QUANTITY OF STEM SYLLABLES.

I. In Primitives.

649. The quantity of stem-syllables in primitive words, when not determined by the General Rules (Sec. I.), is in most cases best referred to authority. Thus,

In *māter, cēdo, scribo, dōno, ūtor*, the first syllable is *long by authority*, while in *pāter, tēgo, mīco, sōno, ūter*, it is *short by authority*.

650. RULE XIV.—The quantity of stem-syllables remains unchanged in inflection:

In DECLENSION,—*āvis, āvem; nūbes, nūbium.*

In COMPARISON,—*lēvis, lēvior, lēvissīmus.*

In CONJUGATION,—*mōneo, mōnēbam, mōnui.*

1. Position may however affect the quantity: *āger, āgri* (611, 612); *possum, pōtui; solvo, sōlūtum; volvo, vōlūtum.*

Here *ā* becomes *ā* before *gr*. The *o* in *possum, solvo*, and *volvo*, long only by position, becomes short before a single consonant.

2. *Gigno* gives *gēnui, gēnūtum*, and *pōno, pōsui, pōsūtum.*

3. See also 651, 652.

651. Dissyllabic Perfects and Supines have the first syllable long, unless short by position:

jūvo, jūvi, jūtum; fōveo, fōvi, fōtum.

1. These Perfects and Supines, if formed from Presents with the first syllable short, are exceptions to 650.

2. Seven Perfects have the first syllable short:

bībi, dēdi, fīdi, scīdi, stēti, stīti, tūli.

3. Ten Supines have the first syllable short :

*cĭtum, dĕtum, ĭtum, lĭtum, qŭitum, rĕtum, rŭtum, sĕtum, sĭtum, stĕtum.*¹

652. In trisyllabic Reduplicated Perfects the first two syllables are short :

cĕdo, cĕcĭdi ; *cĕno, cĕcĭni* ; *disco, dĭdici*.

1. *Caedo* has *cĕcĭdi* in distinction from *cĕcĭdi* from *cĕdo*.

2. The second syllable may be made long by position : *cŭcŭrri, mŏmordi*.

II. In Derivatives.

653. RULE XV.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives :

bŏnus, bŏnĭtas ; *tĭmeo, tĭmor* ; *ĭnimus, ĭnimŏsus* ; *cĭvis, cĭvĭcus* ; *cŭra, cŭro*.

1. Frequentatives in *ito*, have *i* short : *clāmĭto*. See 332. I.

2. In a few Derivatives the short vowel of the primitive is lengthened :

<i>hŏmo,</i>	<i>hŭmānus,</i>	<i>rĕgo,</i>	<i>rĕx, rĕgis, rĕgŭla,</i>
<i>lĕteo,</i>	<i>lĕterna,</i>	<i>sĕcus,</i>	<i>sĕcius,</i>
<i>lĕgo,</i>	<i>lĕx, lĕgis,</i>	<i>sĕdeo,</i>	<i>sĕdes, sĕdŭlus,</i>
<i>mĕcer,</i>	<i>mĕcĕro,</i>	<i>sĕro,</i>	<i>sĕmen,</i>
<i>mŏveo,</i>	<i>mŏbĭlis,</i>	<i>suspĭcor,</i>	<i>suspĭcio,</i>
<i>persŏno,</i>	<i>persŏna,</i>	<i>tĕgo,</i>	<i>tĕgŭla.</i>

3. In a few Derivatives the long vowel of the primitive is shortened :

<i>ācer,</i>	<i>ācerbus,</i>	<i>nŏtum,</i>	<i>nŏta,</i>
<i>dĭco,</i>	<i>dĭcax,</i>	<i>ŏdi,</i>	<i>ŏdium,</i>
<i>dŭco,</i>	<i>dux, dŭcis,</i>	<i>sŏpio,</i>	<i>sŏpor,</i>
<i>fĭdo,</i>	<i>fĭdes,</i>	<i>vĕdo,</i>	<i>vĕdum,</i>
<i>lŭceo,</i>	<i>lŭcerna,</i>	<i>vŏx, vŏcis,</i>	<i>vŏco.</i>
<i>mŏles,</i>	<i>mŏlestus,</i>		

This change of quantity in some instances is the result of contraction : *mŏvĭbĭlis, mŏvĭbĭlis, mŏvĭlis*, and in others it serves to distinguish words of the same orthography : as the verbs *lĕgis, lĕges, rĕgis, rĕges, sĕdes*, from the nouns *lĕgis, lĕges, rĕgis, rĕges, sĕdes*, or the verbs *dŭcis, dŭces, fĭdes*, from the nouns *dŭcis, dŭces, fĭdes*.

III. In Compounds.

654. RULE XVI.—Compounds generally retain the quantity of their elements :

antĕ-fĕro, dĕ-fĕro, dĕ-dŭco, ĭn-aequĕlis, prŏ-dŭco.

1. The change of a vowel or diphthong does not affect the quantity :

dĕ-lĭgo (lĕgo), oc-cĭdo (cĕdo), oc-cĭdo (caedo).

¹ From *sisto*, but *stĕtum* from *sto*.

2. INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.—**Di**, **sē**, and **vē** are long, **rē** short : **ne** sometimes long and sometimes short :

didūco, sēdūco, vēcors, rēdūco, nēdum, nēfas :

1) *Di* is short in *dīrimo, dīsertus*.

2) *Ne* is long in *nēdum, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquūtia*, and *nēre*. In other words it is short.

3) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in a few words: *rēligio, rēliquia, rēpērit, rēpūlit, rētūlit*, etc.

3. CHANGE OF QUANTITY.—In a few words the quantity of the second element is changed. Thus

Dico gives *-dīcus ; jūro, -jēro ; nōtus, -nītus ; nūbo, nūba : mā'ē-dīcus, de-jēro, cog-nītus, prō-nūba*.

4. PRO.—*Pro* is short in the following words :

Prōcella, prōcul, prōfānus, prōfāri, prōfecto, prōfestus, prōficiscor, prōfiteor, prōfugio, prōfugus, prōfundus, prōnēpos, prōneptis, prōtervus, and most Greek words, as *prōphēta*, generally in *prōfundo, prōpāgo, prōpīno*, rarely in *prōcūro, prōpello*.

5. STEM.—When the first element is the stem of a word (338. III.), it is often followed by a short connecting vowel :

cāl-ē-fācio, lāb-ē-fācio, bell-ī-gēro, acd-ī-fīco, art-ī-fex, ampl-ī-fīco, lōc-ū-ples.

Before *fācio* in a few compounds *e* is sometimes lengthened : *liquēfācio, pātēfācio, putrēfācio, tēpēfācio*. The first *e* in *vidēlicet* is long.

6. I LONG.—*I* is long,—(1) in the first part of compounds of *dies* : *mēridies, prīdie, postrīdie, quōtīdie, trīduum*, and (2) in the contracted forms, *bigae, trigae, quadrigae, ilīcet, scīlīcet, tībīcen* for *tībīicēn*.

But *i* is short in *līduum* and *quātrīduum*.

7. O LONG.—*O* is long in *contrō-, intrō-, retrō-*, and *quandō-* in composition ; as : *contrōversia, intrōdūco, retrōverto, quandōque*, but *quandōquidem*.

8. SPECIAL WORDS.—*Hōdie, quīsi, quōque, and sīquīdem*, have the first syllable short.

CHAPTER II.

VERSIFICATION.

SECTION I.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SUBJECT

655. Latin Versification is based upon Quantity and Accent. Syllables are combined into certain metrical groups called Feet, and feet, singly or in pairs, are combined into Verses.

I. METRICAL FEET.

656. Feet are either simple or compound. For convenience of reference we add the following list:

I. Simple Feet.

DISSYLLABIC FEET.

Spondee,	<i>two long syllables,</i>	— —	Lēgēs.
Trochee, ¹	<i>a long and a short,</i>	— ∪	Lēgīs.
Iambus,	<i>a short and a long,</i>	∪ —	Pārēns.
Pyrrhic,	<i>two short,</i>	∪ ∪	Pātēr.

TRISYLLABIC FEET.

Dactyl,	<i>a long and two short,</i>	— ∪ ∪	cārminā.
Anapaest,	<i>two short and a long,</i>	∪ ∪ —	bōnītās.
Tribrach,	<i>three short,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪	dōmīnūs.
Molossus,	<i>three long,</i>	— — —	libērtās.
Amphibrach,	<i>a short, a long, and a short,</i>	∪ — ∪	āmicūs.
Amphimacer, ²	<i>a long, a short, and a long,</i>	— ∪ —	mīlītēs.
Bacchius,	<i>a short and two long,</i>	∪ — —	dōlōrēs.
Antibacchius,	<i>two long and a short,</i>	— — ∪	pāstōrīs.

II. Compound Feet.

These are only compounds of the dissyllabic feet, and all have four syllables.

¹ Sometimes called *Choree*.

² Also called *Cretic*.

Dispondeæ,	<i>double spondee,</i>	— — — —	præcēptōrēs.
Ditrochee,	<i>double trochee,</i>	— ∪ — ∪	cīvītātīs.
Diiambus,	<i>double iambus,</i>	∪ — ∪ —	āmoēnītās.
Proceleusmatic,	<i>double pyrrhic,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪	mēmōriā.
Greater Ionic,	<i>spondee and pyrrhic,</i>	— — ∪ ∪	sēntēntiā.
Lesser Ionic,	<i>pyrrhic and spondee,</i>	∪ ∪ — —	ādōlēscēns.
Choriambus,	<i>trochee (choree), and iambus,</i>	— ∪ ∪ —	impātīēns.
Antispast,	<i>iambus and trochee,</i>	∪ — — ∪	vērēcūndūs.
First Epitrite,	<i>iambus and spondee,</i>	∪ — — —	āmāvērūt.
Second Epitrite,	<i>trochee and spondee,</i>	— ∪ — —	cūndītōrēs.
Third Epitrite,	<i>spondee and iambus,</i>	— — ∪ —	auctōrītās.
Fourth Epitrite,	<i>spondee and trochee,</i>	— — — ∪	ōrnāmēntā.
First Paeon,	<i>trochee and pyrrhic,</i>	— ∪ ∪ ∪	hīstōriā.
Second Paeon,	<i>iambus and pyrrhic,</i>	∪ — ∪ ∪	āmābīlīs.
Third Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and trochee,</i>	∪ ∪ — ∪	pūērīlīs.
Fourth Paeon,	<i>pyrrhic and iambus,</i>	∪ ∪ ∪ —	cēlērītās.

1. COMMON FEET.—The feet of most frequent occurrence in the best Latin poets are,

1) The *Dactyl* and *Spondee*, used in the Heroic Hexameter.

2) Less frequent the *Iambus*, *Trochee*, *Tribrach*, *Anapaest*, and *Choriambus*.

2. GROUPS.—A *Dipody* is a group of two feet; a *Tripody*, of three; a *Tetrapody*, of four, etc. A *Triemimēris* is a group of three half feet, i. e., a foot and a half; *Penthemimēris*, of two and a half; *Heptthemimēris*, of three and a half, etc.

657. METRICAL EQUIVALENTS.—A long syllable may often be resolved into two short ones, as equivalent to it in quantity, or two short ones may be contracted into a long one. The forms thus produced are metrical equivalents of the original forms. Thus,

The *Dactyl* becomes a *Spondee* by contracting the two short syllables into one long syllable; the *Spondee* becomes a *Dactyl* by resolving the second syllable, or an *Anapaest* by resolving the first. Accordingly the *Dactyl*, the *Spondee*, and the *Anapaest* are metrical equivalents. In like manner the *Iambus*, the *Trochee*, and the *Tribrach* are metrical equivalents.

658. METRICAL SUBSTITUTES.—In certain kinds of verse, feet are sometimes substituted for those which are not their metrical equivalents. Thus,

The *Spondee* is often substituted for the *Iambus* or the *Trochee*, though not equivalent to either. See 679, 682.

659. ICTUS OR RHYTHMIC ACCENT.—As in the pronunciation of a word one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called accent, so in the pronunciation of a metrical foot one or more syllables receive a special stress of voice called Rhythmic Accent or *Ictus*.

1. **SIMPLE FEET.**—Feet consisting of both long and short syllables have the ictus uniformly on the long syllables, unless used for other feet. Thus,

The Dactyl and the Trochee have the ictus on the first syllable; the Anapaest and the Iambus on the last.

2. **EQUIVALENTS AND SUBSTITUTES.**—These take the ictus of the feet for which they are used. Thus,

The Spondee, when used for the Dactyl, takes the ictus of the Dactyl, i. e., on the first syllable; but when used for the Anapaest, it takes the ictus of the Anapaest, i. e., on the last syllable.

1) Feet consisting entirely of long or entirely of short syllables are generally equivalents or substitutes, and are accented accordingly.

2) When two short syllables of an equivalent take the place of an accented long syllable of the original foot, the ictus rests chiefly on the first of these two. Thus the Dactyl used for the Anapaest takes the ictus on the first short syllable.

3. **COMPOUND FEET.**—These take the ictus of the feet of which they are composed. Thus,

The *Choriambus* (trochee and iambus) takes the ictus of the trochee on the first syllable and that of the iambus on the last.

But *Ionic* feet are generally read with the ictus on the first long syllable.

660. **ARSIS AND THESIS.**—The accented part of each foot is called the Arsis (*raising*); and the unaccented part, Thesis (*lowering*).

II. VERSES.

661. A verse is a line of poetry, and is either simple or compound.

I. A Simple verse has one characteristic or fundamental foot, which determines the ictus for the whole verse. Thus,

Every Dactylic Verse has the ictus on the first syllable, because the Dactyl, its characteristic foot, has it on that syllable.

II. A Compound verse has a characteristic foot for each member. See 692.

662. **CAESURAL PAUSE.**—Most verses are divided into two nearly equal parts by a pause or rest called the caesura¹ or caesural pause. See 673, 674.

663. **METRICAL NAMES OF VERSES.**—The metrical name of a verse designates,

I. The Characteristic foot. Thus,

¹ Caesura (from *caedo*, to cut) means a cutting; it cuts or divides the verse into parts.

Dactylic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses have respectively the Dactyl, the Trochee, and the Iambus as the characteristic foot.

II. The Number of Feet or Measures.¹ Thus,

1. Dactylic Hexameter is Dactylic verse of six measures.
2. A verse consisting of one measure is *Monometer*; of two, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*.

III. The Completeness or Incompleteness of the measures. Thus,

1. A verse is termed *Acatalectic*, when its last measure is complete; *Catalectic*, when it is incomplete.

1) A *Catalectic* verse is said to be *catalectic in syllabam*, *in disyllabum*, or *in trisyllabum*, according as the incomplete foot has one, two, or three syllables.

2) A *Brachycatalectic* verse wants the closing foot of the last Dipody.

3) An *Acephalous* verse wants the first syllable of the first foot.

4) A *Hypercatalectic* verse, also called *Hypermeter*, has an excess of syllables.

2. The full metrical name combines the three particulars enumerated under I. II. and III., as *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, *Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic*, etc.

1) But for the sake of brevity the term *Acatalectic* is often omitted when it can be done without ambiguity.

2) Verses are sometimes known by names which merely designate the number of feet or measures. Thus *Hexameter* (six measures) sometimes designates the *Dactylic Hexameter Acatalectic*, and *Senarius* (six feet), the *Iambic Trimeter Acatalectic*.

664. SPECIAL NAMES OF VERSES.—Many verses are often designated by names derived from celebrated poets. Thus,

Alcaic from Alcaeus, *Archilochian* from Archilochus, *Sapphic* from Sappho, *Glyconic*, from Glycon, etc.

Verses sometimes receive a name from the kind of subjects to which they were applied: as *Heroic*, applied to heroic subjects; *Paroemiac*, to proverbs, etc.

665. FINAL SYLLABLE.—The final syllable of a verse may generally be either long or short.

666. STANZA.—A stanza is a combination of two or more verses of different metres into one metrical whole. See 699, 700.

A stanza of two lines is called a *Distich*; of three, a *Tristich*; of four, a *Tetrastich*.

¹ A measure is a single foot, except in Anapaestic, Trochaic, and Iambic verses, where it is a Dipody or Pair of feet.

667. METRE.—Metre signifies *measure*, and is used to designate,

1. A Foot or Dipody, as the measure, or metrical element of a verse.

2. A Verse or Stanza, as the measure of a poem.

668. SCANNING.—Scanning consists in separating a poem, or verse, into the feet of which it is composed.

III. FIGURES OF PROSODY.

669. The ancient poets sometimes allowed themselves, in the use of letters and syllables, certain liberties generally termed Figures of Prosody. These are,

I. SYNALOEPHA.—This is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong, or of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, before a word beginning with a vowel:

Monstr' horrend' inform' ingens, *for* Monstrum horrendum informe ingens. *Virg.*

1. No account is taken of *h*, as it is only a breathing (2. 2). Hence *horrendum* is treated as a word beginning with a vowel.

2. Interjections, *o*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, etc., are not elided, but in other words the elision generally takes place in the best poets. But see *Virg. Aen.* III. 74.

3. Final *e* in the interrogative *ne* is sometimes elided before a consonant: Pyrrhîn' connûbia servas? *for* Pyrrhîne connûbia servas? *Virg.*

4. The elision of *s* occurs in the early poets:

Ex omñibu' rēbus, *for* Ex omnibus rēbus. *Lucr.*

5. *Synaloepha* may occur at the end of a line when the next line begins with a vowel. It is then called *Synapheia*.

II. SYNAERESIS.—This is the contraction of two syllables into one:

aurēā, dēinde, dēinceps, ñdem, ñsdem.

1. Synaeresis is of frequent application. It may unite

1) Two successive vowels, as in the examples above.

2) A vowel and a diphthong: *ēādem*.

3) Two vowels separated by *h*, as only a breathing: *prohibeat*, pronounced *proi-beat*.

2. In the different parts of *dēsum*, *ee* is generally pronounced as one syllable: *dēesse*, *dēest*, *dēerat*, *dēerit*, etc.: so *ei* in the verb *anteo*: *antēre*, *antērem*, *antēis*, *antēt*.

3. *I* and *u* before vowels are sometimes used as consonants with the sound of *y* and *w*: Thus, *ābīētē* and *āriētē*, become *ābyētē* and *āryētē*; *gēnūā* and *tēnūēs* become *gēnyūā* and *tēnyūēs*.

672. VARIETIES.—The scale of dactylic hexameters admits sixteen varieties, produced by varying the relative number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

1. ILLUSTRATION.—Thus a verse may contain,

1) Five dactyls and one spondee, as in the first example above.

2) Four dactyls and two spondees. These again admit four different arrangements.

3) Three dactyls and three spondees, as in the second and third examples above. But these again admit six different arrangements.

4) Two dactyls and four spondees. These admit four different arrangements.

5) One dactyl and five spondees, as in the fourth example.

2. EFFECT OF DACTYLS.—Dactyls produce a rapid movement and are adapted to lively subjects. Spondees produce a slow movement and are adapted to grave subjects. But generally the best effect is produced in successive lines by variety in the number and arrangement of dactyls and spondees.

3. SPONDAIC LINE.—The Hexameter sometimes takes a spondee in the fifth place. It is then called Spondaic, and generally has a dactyl as its fourth foot:

Cārā dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs māg- | num Jōvis | incē- | mēntum. *Virg.*

673. CAESURAL PAUSE.—The favorite caesural pause of the Hexameter is *after the arsis*, or *in the thesis*, of the third foot:

Armā- | tī tēn- | dūnt; || it | clāmōr ēt | āgmīnē | fāctō. *Virg.*

Infān- | dūm, rē- | gīnā, || jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrem. *Virg.*

In the first line the caesural pause, marked ||, is after *tendunt*, after the arsis of the third foot; and in the second line after *regina*, in the thesis (*nā jū*) of the third foot.

1. RARE CAESURAL PAUSE.—The caesural pause is sometimes in the fourth foot, and then an additional pause is often introduced in the second foot. Sometimes indeed this last becomes the principal pause:

Crēdīdē- | rīm; || vēr | illūd ē- | rāt, || vēr | māgnūs ā- | gēbat. *Virg.*

2. BUCOLIC CAESURA.—A pause between the fourth and fifth feet is generally called the *bucolic caesura*, because often used in pastoral poetry:

Ingēn- | tem coe- | lō sōnī- | tūm dēdīt; || indē sē- | cūtus. *Virg.*

3. FAULTY CAESURA.—A caesural pause at the end of the third foot is regarded as a blemish in the verse:

Pūlvērū- | lēntūs ē- | quīs fūrīt; || ōmnēs | ārmā rē- | quīrunt. *Virg.*

674. CAESURA AND CAESURAL PAUSE.—The ending of a word within a foot always produces a *caesura*. A line may therefore have several caesuras, but generally only one of these (sometimes two) is marked by the caesural pause:

Armă vî- | rumpe că- | nō, || Trō- | jaē quī | primūs āb | ōris. *Virg.*

1. Here there is a caesura in every foot except the last, but only one of these, that after *cāno*, has the caesural pause.

2. In determining which caesura is to be marked by the pause the reader must be guided by the sense, introducing the pause where there is a pause of sense, or where at least it will not interfere with the sense.

3. The caesura, with or without the pause, is an important feature in every hexameter. A line without it is prosaic in the extreme:

Rōmaē | moēnīā | tērrūt | impīgēr | Hānnībāl | ārmis. *Enn.*

675. LAST WORD OF THE HEXAMETER.—The last word of the Hexameter should be either a dissyllable or a trisyllable. See examples above.

1. Two monosyllables are not particularly objectionable, and sometimes even produce a happy effect:

Praecipī- | tant cū- | rae, || tūr- | bātāquē | fūnērē | mēns est. *Virg.*

Est is indeed often used even when not preceded by another monosyllable.

2. A single monosyllable, except *est*, is not often used at the end of the line, except for the purpose of emphasis or humor:

Pārtūrī- | ūnt mōu- | tēs, || nas- | cētūr | rīdīcū- | lūs mus. *Hor.*

II. Dactylic Pentameter.

676. The Dactylic Pentameter consists of two parts separated by the caesural pause. Each part consists of two Dactyls and the arsis of a third. The Spondee may take the place of the Dactyl in the first part, but not in the second:

$\begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \text{—} \parallel \begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \begin{array}{c} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \text{—} \end{array} \mid \begin{array}{c} \text{—} \\ \text{—} \end{array}$

Admōnī- | tū coe- | pī || fōrtiōr | ēssē tū- | ō. *Ovid.*

1. **PENTAMETER.**—The name *Pentameter* is founded on the ancient division of the line into five feet; the first and second being dactyls or spondees; the third, a spondee; the fourth and fifth, anapaests.

2. **ELEGIAC DISTICH.**—The Dactylic Pentameter is seldom, if ever, used, except in the Elegiac Distich, which consists of the Hexameter followed by the Pentameter:

Sēmīsē- | pūltā vī- | rūm || cūr- | vīs fērī- | ūntūr ā- | rātris
Ossā, rū- | īnō- | sās || ōccūlīt | hērbā dō- | mūs. *Ov.*

III. Other Dactylic Verses.

677. The other varieties of dactylic verse are less important, but the following deserve mention:

I. DACTYLIC TETRAMETER.—This consists of the last four feet of the Hexameter :

Ibīmūs | O sōcī- | ī, cōmī- | tēsque. *Hor.*

In compound verses, as the Greater Archilochian, the tetrameter in composition with other metres, has a dactyl in the fourth place. See 691. I.

II. DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Lesser Archilochian, and is identical with the second half of the Dactylic Pentameter :

Arbōrī- | būsquē cō- | mae. *Hor.*

III. DACTYLIC DIMETER.—This is the Adonic, and consists of a Dactyl and Spondee :

Mōntīs ī- | mājō. *Hor.*

II. ANAPAESTIC VERSE.

678. Anapaestic verses consist of Anapaestic dipodies.

An Anapaestic dipody consists of two Anapaests, but admits Spondees or Dactyls as equivalents.

I. ANAPAESTIC DIMETER consists of two dipodies :

Vēniēt : ānnīs || saeculā : sērīs.¹ *Sen.*

This is sometimes catalectic (663. III. 1), and has only a long syllable in place of the last foot. It is then called *Paroemiac*.

II. ANAPAESTIC MONOMETER consists of one dipody :

Dātā rēs : pātriāe. *Auson.*

1. In Anapaestic verse Dactyls are used sparingly, and are generally followed by Spondees. Each dipody generally ends with a word.

2. The last syllable is not common, as in most kinds of verse (665), but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity.

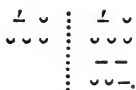
3. Anapaestic verse does not occur in the best Latin Poets.

III. TROCHAIC VERSE.

679. Trochaic verses consist of Trochaic dipodies.

A Trochaic dipody consists of two Trochees, or of a Trochee and a Spondee ; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Trochee, and the Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second :

¹ In verses measured by dipodies, a dotted line is placed between the feet, a single line between the dipodies, and a double line in the place of the caesural pause.



I. Trochaic Tetrameter Catalectic.

680. This consists of four Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. The caesural pause is at the end of the fourth foot, and the incomplete dipody admits no equivalents:

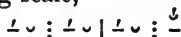


Nŭllă : vŏx hŭ- | mănă : cōnstăt || ābsquē : sēptēm | lītē- : ris,
Rītē : vŏcă- | lēs vŏ- : cāvīt || quās mă- : gīstră | Graeċī- : a. *Ter. Mau.*

1. In *Proper Names*, a dactyl may be introduced in any foot except the fourth and seventh.
2. The *Proceleusmatic* for the Spondee sometimes occurs.
3. In *Comedy* the Spondee and its equivalents occur in the odd feet, as well as in the even, except in the last dipody.
4. The *Trochaic Tetrameter* also occurs in the earlier poets in its complete form, i. e., with eight full feet:

II. Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic.

681. This consists of two Trochaic Dipodies with the last foot incomplete. In Horace it admits no equivalents and has the following scale,



Aulă : dīvī- | tēm mă- : net. *Hor.*

1. This is sometimes called *Iambic Dimeter Acephalous*, i. e., an Iambic Dimeter with the first syllable wanting.
2. A *Trochaic Tripody*,—three Trochees—technically called a *Trochaic Dimeter Brachycatalectic*, or an *Ithyphalicus*, occurs in the Greater Archilochian. See 691. I.
3. For *Sapphic Verse*, see 691. IV.
4. For *Phalæcian*, see 691. V.

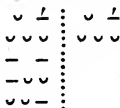
IV. IAMBIC VERSE.

682. Iambic verses consist of Iambic dipodies.

An Iambic dipody consists of two Iambi, or of a Spondee and an Iambus; but it admits the Tribrach as the equivalent of the Iambus, and sometimes the Dactyl or the

Anapaest, of the Spondee. The first foot has a heavier ictus than the second.

In its full form it has the following scale:



I. Iambic Trimeter.

683. This verse, also called *Senarius*, consists of three Iambic Dipodies.

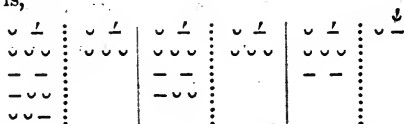
I. The first dipody has the full form.

II. The second admits no Anapaest.

III. The third admits no Anapaest or Dactyl, and in its second foot, no equivalent whatever.

IV. The Caesural Pause is usually in the third foot, but may be in the fourth.

The scale is,



Quīd ōb- : sērā- | tīs || au- : rībūs | fūndīs : prēces? *Hor.*

Nēptū- : nūs āl- | tō || tūn- : dīt hī- | bērnūs : sālo. *Hor.*

Hās in- : tēr ōpū- | lās || ūt : jūvāt | pāstās : ōves. *Hor.*

1. PROPER NAMES.—In proper names an Anapaest is admissible in any foot, except the last, but must be in a single word.

2. HORACE.—In Horace the only feet freely admitted are the Iambus and the Spondee; their equivalents, the Tribrach, the Dactyl and Anapaest, are used very sparingly. The Tribrach never occurs in the fifth foot and only once in the first. The Anapaest occurs only twice in all.

3. COMEDY.—In Comedy great liberty is taken, and the Spondee and its equivalents are freely admitted in any foot except the last.

4. CHOLIAMBUS.—This is a variety of *Iambic Trimeter* with a Spondee in the sixth foot and an Iambus in the fifth:

Misēr : Cātūl- | lē dē- : sīnās | Inēp- : tīre. *Catūl.*

Choliambus means *lame* or *limping Iambus*, and is so called from its limping movement. It is sometimes called *Seazon* for the same reason, and sometimes *Hipponactēan*, from Hipponax, its reputed inventor.

684. IAMBIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC.—This is the Iambic Trimeter with the last foot incomplete. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tri-

brach in the second foot and the Spondee in the first and third:

$$\begin{array}{c|c|c|c} \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} \\ \hline \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 2 \end{array} \end{array}$$

Vốcā. : tũs āt- | quẽ nōn : vốcā- | tũs au- : dit. *Hor.*

II. Iambic Dimeter.

685. This verse consists of two Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. But in Horace the only feet admissible besides the Iambus are the Tribrach in the second place, the Spondee in the first and third, and the Dactyl in the first :

[illegible]

Quērūn- : tūr in | sīlvīs : āves. *Hor.*

Imbrēs : nīvēs- | quē cōm- : pārat. *Hor.*

Ast ěgŏ : vĭcĭs- | sĭm rĭ- : sĕro. *Hor.*

1. IAMBIC DIMETER HYPERMETER occurs in Horace with the following scale:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{C} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{C} \\ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{C} \\ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{C} \\ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \text{C} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{C} \quad \text{C} \\ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$$

Pŭēr | quīs ēx | aulā | căpīl- | lis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called the Alcaic Enneasyllabic verse and forms the third line in the Alcaic Stanza. See 700. I.

2. IAMBIC DIMETER CATALECTIC does not occur in the pure Latin poets.
Its scale is,

$$\begin{array}{c} \cup \\ - \end{array} \frac{1}{-} : \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ - \end{array} \frac{1}{-} \mid \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ - \end{array} \frac{1}{-} : \begin{array}{c} \cup \\ - \end{array} \frac{1}{-}$$

Mănū : pŭēr | lŏquā- : ci. *Pet. Arb.*

3. IAMBIC DIMETER ACEPHALOUS.—This name is sometimes given to the Trochaic Dimeter Catalectic (681), which is then treated as Iambic Dimeter without the first syllable. Thus

Au- : lă dī- | vītēm : mănet. *Hor.*

III. Iambic Tetrameter.

686. The Iambic Tetrameter is little used in Latin except in Comedy. It consists of four Iambic Dipodies with their usual equivalents. The caesural pause is usually after the fourth foot:

Quāntum in- : tellēx- | ī mōdō : sēnīs || sēntēn- : tīām) de nūp- :
tūis. Ter.

The *Iambic Tetrameter Catalectic* belongs mostly to comedy, but occurs also in Catullus:

Quōt cōm- : mōdās | rēs āt- : tūlī? || quōt au- : tem ādē- | mī cū- : rās. *Ter.*

V. IONIC VERSE.

687. The Ionic a Minore consists entirely of Lesser Ionics. It may be either Tetrameter or Dimeter:

$\cup \cup \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—}$
 $\cup \cup \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—}$

Sīmūl ānclūs | Tībērīnīs | hūmērōs lā- | vīt īn ūndīs. *Hor.*

Nēquē sēgnī | pēdē victus. *Hor.*

1. Horace has this metre only in one short ode (III. 12). In some editions this ode consists entirely of Tetrameters; but in others it is arranged in stanzas of three lines; the first two, Tetrameters, and the third, a Dimeter.

2. In this verse the last syllable is not common, but subject to the ordinary rules of quantity, as in the Anapaestic verse. See 678. 2.

3. The Ionic a Majore, *Sotadēan Verse*, scarcely occurs in Latin, except in Comedy. In its pure state it consists of three Greater Ionic feet and a Spondee, but in Martial the third foot is a Ditrochee:

$\text{—} - \cup \cup | \text{—} - \cup \cup | \text{—} - \cup \cup | \text{—} \overset{\cup}{-}$
 $- \cup - \cup |$

Hās cūm gēmī- | nā cōmpēdē | dēdīcāt cā- | tēnēs. *Mart.*

VI. CHORIAMBIC VERSE.

688. Choriambic verses begin with a Spondee followed by one, two, or three Choriambi, and end with an Iambus.

In Horace the Choriambic verse uniformly begins with the Spondee, but in some of the other poets the Trochee, the Anapaest, or the Iambus occasionally takes the place of the Spondee.

689. A Choriambic verse with one Choriambus is called the *Glyconic*; or, if catalectic, the *Pherecratean*; with two, the *Asclepiadēan*; with three, the Greater *Asclepiadēan*.

I. The GLYCONIC has the following scale:

$\text{—} - | \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} | \cup \overset{\cup}{-}$

Dōnēc | grātūs ērām | tībi. *Hor.*

II. The PHERECRATEAN is catalectic, but otherwise identical with the Glyconic. Its scale is,

$\text{—} - | \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} | \overset{\cup}{-}$

Vix dū- | rārē cārī- | nae. *Hor.*

III. The ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

$$\text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$$

Maecē- | nās ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg- | ūbus. *Hor.*

IV. The GREATER ASCLEPIADĒAN has the following scale:

$$\text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—}$$

Seu plū- | rēs hīēmēs, || seu trībūt || Jūpītēr ūl- | tīmam. *Hor.*

This is sometimes called *Choriambic Pentameter* and sometimes *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

Epichoriambic Verse.

690. When a verse begins with a Second Epitrite followed by one or two Choriambi, and ends with a Bacchius, it is called Epichoriambic. Of this there are two important varieties:

I. THE SAPPHIC VERSE.—This consists of a Second Epitrite, a Choriambus and a Bacchius:

$$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$$

Nāmqūē mē sīl- | vā || lūpūs In | Sābīna. *Hor.*

1. But the Sapphic verse may also be measured as a Trochaic Dipody followed by an Aristophanic verse, i. e., as composed of a Trochee, a Spondee, a Dactyl, and two Trochees. See 691. IV.

2. The Caesural Pause usually occurs after the fifth syllable, as in the example, but sometimes after the sixth.

3. Catullus admits two Trochees in place of the Epitrite.

II. THE GREATER SAPPHIC VERSE.—This differs from the Sapphic proper only in introducing a second Choriambus before the Bacchius:

$$\text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} || \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} \text{—}$$

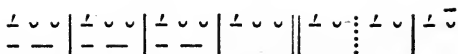
Intēr aequā- | lēs ēquītāt, || Gāllicā nēc | lūpātis. *Hor.*

This is sometimes improperly called *Choriambic Tetrameter*.

VII. LOGAOEDIC VERSE.

691. Logaoedic verses consist of Dactyls, or their equivalents, followed by Trochees.

I. GREATER ARCHILOCHIAN.—This consists of a Dactylic Tetrameter (677. I.) followed by a Trochaic Tripody. The first three feet are either Dactyls or Spondees; the fourth, a Dactyl; and the last three, Trochees:



Vitaē | sūmmā brē- | vīs spēm | nōs vētāt, || Inchō- : ārē | lōngam. *Hor.*
The caesural pause is between the two members.

II. ALCAIC VERSE.—This consists of two Dactyls followed by two Trochees:



Purpūrē- | ō vārī- | ūs cō- : lōre. *Hor.*

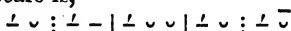
III. ARISTOPHANIC VERSE.—This consists of a Dactyl followed by two Trochees:



Cūr nēquē | mīlī- : tāris. *Hor.*

This verse is variously named, *Aristophanic*, *Choriambic Dimeter*, and *Choriambic Dimeter Catalectic*.

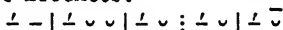
IV. SAPPHIC VERSE.—This prefixes to the Aristophanic a Trochaic Dipody consisting of a Trochee and a Spondee (690. I.). The scale is,



Nāmquē : mē sīl- | vā lūpūs | īn Să- : bīna. *Hor.*

Sapphic verse may be classed at pleasure either with the *Logaoedic* verses, as here, or with the *Epichoriambic* verses, as in article 690. I.

V. PHALAECIAN VERSE.—This consists of a Spondee, a Dactyl, and three Trochees:

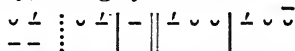


Nōn ēst | vīvērē, || sēd vā- : lērē | vīta. *Mart.*

This verse is sometimes called, from the number of its syllables, *Hendecasyllabic*, of eleven syllables. It does not occur in Horace. In Catullus it sometimes has a Trochee, or an Iambus, in the first place.

VIII. MISCELLANEOUS VERSES.

692. GREATER ALCAIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Penthemimeris* and a pure *Dactylic Dimeter*, i. e., an Iambic Dipody, a long syllable and two Dactyls:



Vīdēs : ūt āl- | tā || stēt nīvē | cāndīdum

Sōrāc- : tē nēc | jān || sūstīnē- | ānt ōnūs. *Hor.*

1. The Caesural Pause is usually between the two members.

2. In Horace the first foot is generally a Spondee.

3. This verse forms the first and second lines of the Alcaic Stanza. See

693. DACTYLICO-IAMBIC VERSE.—This consists of a pure *Dactylic Penthemimeris* (656. 2) and an *Iambic Dimeter* (685):

[illegible]

Jussūs āb- | īrē dō- | mūm, || fērē- : bār īn- | cērtō : pēde. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Elegiambus*.
2. This verse and the following compounds—the *Iambico-Dactylic* and the *Præpetian*—have the peculiarity that the two members of each may be treated as separate lines, as the last syllable of the first member is common, as at the end of a line.

694. IAMBICO-DACTYLIC VERSE.—This consists of an *Iambic Dimeter* and a *Dactylic Penthemimeris*, i. e., of the same parts as the preceding, but in an inverted order:

[illegible]

Nivēs- : quē dē- | dūcūnt : Jōrēm : || nūnc mārē, | nūnc sīlū- | ae. *Hor.*

1. This verse is sometimes called *Iambelegus*.
2. For the final syllable of the first member, see 693. 2.

695. PRIAPEIAN VERSE.—This consists of a *Glyconic* and a *Pherecratēan* (C89. I. II.):

[illegible]

Quercus | ăridă rūs- | tică || cōnfōr- | mătă sēcū- | ri. *Catul.*

1. In this verse, as it appears in Catullus, the Glyconic and the Pherecrætean appear with such variations as are allowed in that poet (638). Hence the Trochee *quercūs* for the Spondee, in the example.
2. For the final syllable of the first member. see 633. 2.

SECTION III.

THE VERSIFICATION OF VIRGIL, HORACE, OVID, AND JUVENAL.

696. VIRGIL AND JUVENAL.—Virgil in his Eclogues, Georgics, and Aeneid, and Juvenal in his Satires use only the Dactylic Hexameter. See 671.

697. OVID.—Ovid uses the Hexameter in his *Metamorphoses*, but the Elegiac Distich in his *Epistles* and other works. See 676. 2.

698. HORACE.—Horace uses the Hexameter in his Epistles and Satires, but in his Lyries, i. e., in his Odes and Epodes, he uses a great variety of Metre.

699. LYRICS OF HORACE.—Most of the Odes and Epodes consist of Stanzas of two, three, or four verses; but a few of them consist entirely of a single kind of verse.

LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

700. For convenience of reference the following outline of the Lyric metres of Horace is here inserted.

A. Stanzas of Four Verses.

I. ALCAIC STANZA.—First and second verses, Greater Alcaics (692); third, Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter (685. I.); fourth, Alcaic (691. II.).

1. } $\cup \text{ — } \vdots \cup \text{ — } | - || \text{ — } \cup \cup | \text{ — } \cup \text{ — }$
2. } $- - \vdots \cup \text{ — } | - || \text{ — } \cup \cup | \text{ — } \cup \text{ — }$
3. } $\cup \text{ — } \vdots \cup \text{ — } | - \text{ — } \vdots \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — }$
4. } $\text{ — } \cup \cup | \text{ — } \cup \cup | \text{ — } \cup \cup : \text{ — } \text{ — }$

In thirty-seven Odes: I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37; II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20; III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29; IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.

II. SAPPHIC AND ADONIC.—The first three verses, Sapphics (691. IV.); the fourth, Adonic (677. III.).

1. } $\text{ — } \cup : \text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup | \text{ — } \cup : \text{ — } \text{ — }$
2. } $\text{ — } \cup : \text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup | \text{ — } \cup : \text{ — } \text{ — }$
3. } $\text{ — } \cup \cup | \text{ — } \text{ — }$
4. } $\text{ — } \cup \cup | \text{ — } \text{ — }$

In Twenty-six Odes: I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38; II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16; III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27; IV. 2, 6, 11, and Sec. Hymn.

III. ASCLEPIADĒAN AND GLYCONIC.—The first three verses, Asclepiadēans (689. III.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).

1. } $\text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — }$
2. } $\text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — }$
3. } $\text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — }$
4. } $\text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — }$

In nine Odes: I. 6, 15, 24, 33; II. 12; III. 10, 16; IV. 5, 12.

IV. ASCLEPIADĒAN, PHERECRATĒAN, AND GLYCONIC.—The first two verses, Asclepiadēans (689. III.); the third, Pherecratēan (689. II.); the fourth, Glyconic (689. I.).

1. } $\text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — }$
2. } $\text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — }$
3. } $\text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — }$
4. } $\text{ — } - | \text{ — } \cup \cup \text{ — } | \text{ — } \text{ — }$

In seven Odes: I. 5, 14, 21, 23; III. 7, 13; IV. 13.

B. *Stanzas of Three Verses.*

V. IONIC A MINORE (687).—The first two verses, Tetrameters: the third, Dimeter.

1. } $\cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—}$
2. }
3. $\cup \cup \text{—} \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—} \text{—}$

In Ode III. 12.

C. *Stanzas of Two Verses.*

VI. IAMBIC TRIMETER AND IAMBIC DIMETER (683, 685).

1. $\cup \text{—} : \cup \text{—} | \cup \text{—} : \cup \text{—} | \cup \text{—} : \cup \text{—}$
 $\cup \cup \cup : \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup : \cup \cup \cup | \text{—} \text{—} : \text{—} \text{—}$
 $\text{—} \text{—} : \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} : \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} : \text{—} \text{—}$
 $\cup \cup \text{—} : \cup \cup \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—} : \cup \cup \text{—} | \cup \cup \text{—} : \cup \cup \text{—}$
2. $\cup \text{—} : \cup \text{—} | \cup \text{—} : \cup \text{—}$
 $\text{—} \text{—} : \text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \text{—} : \text{—} \text{—}$
 $\cup \cup \cup : \cup \cup \cup | \cup \cup \cup : \cup \cup \cup$

In the first ten Epodes.

VII. GLYCONIC AND ASCLEPIADÆAN (689. I., III.).

1. $\text{—} \text{—} | \text{—} \cup \cup \text{—} | \cup \text{—}$
2. See IV. 1.

In twelve Odes: I. 3, 13, 19, 36; III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28; IV. 1, 3.

VIII. HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC TETRAMETER (671; 677. I.).

1. $\text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \text{—}$
2. $\text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \text{—}$

In two Odes: I. 7, 23, and Epode 12.

IX. HEXAMETER AND DACTYLIC TRIMETER CATALECTIC (671; 677. II.).

1. See VIII. 1.
2. $\text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—} \cup \cup | \text{—}$

In Ode IV. 7.

X. HEXAMETER AND IAMBIC TRIMETER (671, 683).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 1.

In Epode 16.

XI. HEXAMETER AND IAMBIC DIMETER (671, 685).

See VIII. 1 and VI. 2.

In Epodes 14 and 15.

701. INDEX TO THE LYRIC METRES OF HORACE.

The Roman numerals refer to articles in the preceding outline, 700.

BOOK I.		Odes.	Metres.	Odes.	Metres.
Odes.	Metres.	4,	II.	26,	I.
1,	XVII.	5,	I.	27,	II.
2,	II.	6,	II.	28,	VII.
3,	VII.	7,	I.	29,	I.
4,	XV.	8,	II.	30,	XVII.
5,	IV.	9,	I.		
6,	III.	10,	II.	BOOK IV.	
7,	VIII.	11,	I.	1,	VII.
8,	XVI.	12,	III.	2,	II.
9,	I.	13,	I.	3,	VII.
10,	II.	14,	I.	4,	I.
11,	XVIII.	15,	I.	5,	III.
12,	II.	16,	II.	6,	II.
13,	VII.	17,	I.	7,	IX.
14,	IV.	18,	XIV.	8,	XVII.
15,	III.	19,	I.	9,	I.
16,	I.	20,	I.	10,	XVIII.
17,	I.			11,	II.
18,	XVIII.	BOOK III.		12,	III.
19,	VII.	1,	I.	13,	IV.
20,	II.	2,	I.	14,	I.
21,	IV.	3,	I.	15,	I.
22,	II.	4,	I.		
23,	IV.	5,	I.	EPODES.	
24,	III.	6,	I.	Epodes.	Metres.
25,	II.	7,	IV.	1,	VI.
26,	I.	8,	II.	2,	VI.
27,	I.	9,	VII.	3,	VI.
28,	VIII.	10,	III.	4,	VI.
29,	I.	11,	II.	5,	VI.
30,	II.	12,	V.	6,	VI.
31,	I.	13,	IV.	7,	VI.
32,	II.	14,	II.	8,	VI.
33,	III.	15,	VII.	9,	VI.
34,	I.	16,	III.	10,	VI.
35,	I.	17,	I.	11,	XIII.
36,	VII.	18,	II.	12,	VIII.
37,	I.	19,	VII.	13,	XII.
38,	II.	20,	II.	14,	XI.
		21,	I.	15,	XI.
BOOK II.		22,	II.	16,	X.
1,	I.	23,	I.	17,	XIX.
2,	II.	24,	VII.	SECULAR HYMN,	
3,	I.	25,	VII.		II.

A P P E N D I X.

I. FIGURES OF SPEECH.

702. A Figure is a deviation from the ordinary *form*, *construction*, or *signification* of words.

Deviations from the ordinary forms are called *Figures of Etymology*; from the ordinary constructions, *Figures of Syntax*, and from the ordinary significations, *Figures of Rhetoric*.

703. The Figures of Etymology are the following :

1. Aphaeresis takes a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word: 'et for *est*.
 2. Syncope takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word: *virum* for *virōrum*, *dixē* for *dixisse*.
 3. Apocope takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word: *tūn'* for *tūne*.
 4. Prosthesis prefixes a letter or syllable to a word: *tētūli* for *tūli*.
 5. Epenthesis inserts a letter or syllable in a word: *Alcūmēna* for *Alcēna*, *ālītuum* for *ālītum*.
 6. Paragoge adds a letter or syllable to a word: *dicier* for *dici*.
 7. Metathesis transposes letters or syllables: *pistris* for *priestis*.
 8. Antithesis substitutes one letter for another: *volnus* for *vulnus*, *olli* for *illi*.
- See also Figures of Prosody, 669.

704. The Figures of Syntax are the following :

I. ELLIPSIS is the omission of one or more words of a sentence :

Hābītābat ad Jōvis (*sc. templum*), *He dwelt near the temple of Jupiter*.
Liv. Abiit, ēvāsit (*et*), *He has gone, has escaped*. Cic.

1. ASYNDETON is an ellipsis of a conjunction. See 587. I. 6; 587. III. 4.
2. ZEUGMA is an ellipsis which employs a single verb with two subjects or objects, though strictly applicable to only one:
Pācem an bellum gērens, whether at peace (āgens) or waging war. Sall.
3. APOSIOPESIS, also called *Reticentia*, used for rhetorical effect, is an ellipsis which leaves the sentence unfinished:
Quos ego — sed mōtos praestat compōnere fluctus. Whom I — but it is better to calm the troubled waves. Virg.
4. PROVERBS are often elliptical.
5. ELLIPSIS OF FACIO, DICO, ORO. See 460. 3; 602. II. 3.

II. PLEONASM is the use of superfluous words :

Erant Itinēra duo, quibus Itinēribus exire possent, *There were two ways by which ways they might depart*. Caes. Eurusque Nōtusque ruunt, *Both Eurus and Notus rush forth*. Virg.

1. POLYSYNDETON is a pleonasm in the use of conjunctions, as in the last example.
2. HENDIADYS is the use of two nouns with a conjunction, instead of a noun with an adjective or genitive:

Armis virisque, for viris armatis, with armed men. Tac.

8. **ANAPHORA** is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses :
Me cuncta Itālia, me ūniversa civitas consulem dēclārāvīt, Me all Italy, me the whole state declared consul. Cic.

4. **EPITHORA** is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses :
Laelius nāvus erat, doctus erat, Laelius was diligent, was learned. Cic.

5. Monosyllabic prepositions are often repeated before successive nouns, regularly so with *et—et* :

Et in bellicis et in civilibus officiis, both in military and in civil offices. Cic.
 Other prepositions are sometimes repeated.

6. A demonstrative, pronoun or adverb, *id, hoc, illud, sic, ita*, is often used somewhat redundantly to represent a subsequent clause. So also *quid*, in *quid censes* with a clause :

Illud te ōro ut diligens sis, I ask you (that thing) to be (that you be) diligent. Cic.

7. Pronouns redundant with *quidē*. See 446. 1.

8. Pleonasm often occurs with *licet* :

Ut liceat permittitur = licet, It is lawful (is permitted that it is, &c.). Cic.

9. A word is often repeated for emphasis.

10. Circumlocutions with *res, genus, modus*, and *ratio* are common.

III. ENALLAGE is the substitution of one part of speech for another, or of one grammatical form for another :

Pōpulus lāte rex (for regnans), a people of extensive sway (ruling extensively). Virg. *Sērus (sēro) in coelum rēdeas, May you return late to heaven.* Hor. *Vina cādīs (vinis cādōs) ōnērāre, to fill the flasks with wine.* Virg.

1. **ANTIMERIA** is the use of one part of speech for another, as in the first two examples.

2. **HYPALLAGE** is the use of one case for another, as in the last example.

3. **SYNESIS** is a construction according to sense, without regard to grammatical forms. See 438. 6 and 461.

4. **ANACOLUTHON** is a want of harmony in the construction of the different parts of a sentence :

Si, ut dicunt, omnes Græcos esse (Græci sunt), if, as they say, all are Greeks. Cic.

IV. HYPERBATON is a transposition of words or clauses :

Praeter arma nihil erat sūper (sūpererat), Nothing remained, except their arms. Nep. *Vālet atque vīvit (vīvit atque vālet), He is alive and well.* Ter.

1. **ANASTROPHE** is the transposition of words only, as in the first example.

2. **HYSTERON PROTERON** is a transposition of clauses, as in the second example.

3. **TMSIS** is the separation of a compound word. See 523. 2. 2).

705. Figures of Rhetoric, also called Tropes, comprise several varieties. The following are the most important.

I. METAPHOR.—This is an implied comparison, and assigns to one object the appropriate name, epithet or action of another :

Rei publicæ vulnus (for damnum), the wound of the republic. Cic. *Naufrāgium fortunæ, the wreck of fortune.* Cic.

II. METONYMY is the use of one name for another naturally suggested by it :

Aequo Marte (for *proelio*) pugnātum est, *They fought in an equal contest.* Liv. Fūrit Vulcānus (*ignis*), *The fire rages.* Virg.

By this figure the cause is often put for the effect and the effect for the cause; the property for the possessor, the place or age for the people, the sign for the thing signified, etc.: *Mars* for *bellum*, *Vulcānus* for *ignis*, *Bacchus* for *vinum*, *nōbilitas* for *nōbiles*, *Graecia* for *Graeci*, *laurea* for *victōria*, etc.

III. SYNECDOCHE is the use of a part for the whole, or of the whole for a part; of the special for the general, or of the general for the special:

In vestra tecta (*vestras dōmos*) discēdite, *Depart to your homes.* Cic. Statio mālē fida cārīnis (*nāvibus*), *a station unsafe for ships.* Virg.

IV. IRONY is the use of a word for its opposite:

Lēgātos bōnus (for *mālus*) impērātor vester non admīsit, *Your good commander did not admit the ambassadors.* Liv.

1. *Enim, etenim, scilicet, videlicet, nimirum, credo*, and the like, are often ironical. See 503. 3.

V. HYPERBOLE is an exaggeration:

Ventis et fulmīnis dīcior ālis, *swifter than the winds and the wings of the lightning.* Virg.

VI. LITOTES denies something instead of affirming the opposite:

Non opus est = pernīciōsum est, *It is not necessary.* Cic.

II. LATIN AUTHORS.

703. The history of Roman literature embraces about eight centuries, from 250 B. C. to 550 A. D., and has been divided by Dr. Freund into three principal periods:

I. The ANTE-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—From 250 to 81 B. C. The principal authors of this period are:

Ennius,	Plautus,	Terence,	Lucretius.
---------	----------	----------	------------

II. The CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Golden and the Silver age:

1. The *Golden Age*.—From 81 B. C. to 14 A. D. The principal authors are:

Cicero,	Nepos,	Horace,	Tibullus,
Caesar,	Livy,	Ovid,	Propertius.
Sallust,	Virgil,	Catullus,	

2. The *Silver Age*.—From 14 to 180 A. D. The principal authors are:

Phaedrus,	The Plinies,	Quintilian,	Persius,
Velleius,	Tacitus,	Suetonius,	Lucan,
The Senecas,	Curtius,	Juvenal,	Martial.

III. THE POST-CLASSICAL PERIOD.—This embraces the Brazen and the Iron Age:

1. The *Bruzen Age*.—From 180 to 476 A.D. The principal authors are:

Justin,	Eutropius,	Laetantius,	Claudian,
Victor,	Macrobius,	Ausonius,	Terentian.

2. The *Iron Age*.—From 476 to 550 A.D. The principal authors are:

Boëthius,	Cassiodorus,	Justinian,	Priscian.
-----------	--------------	------------	-----------

III. THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

707. The Julian Calendar of the Romans is the basis of our own, and is identical with it in the number of months in the year and in the number of days in the months.

708. PECULIARITIES.—The Roman calendar has the following peculiarities:

I. The days were not numbered from the beginning of the month, as with us, but from three different points in the month:

1. The Calends, the *first* of each month;

2. The Nones, the *fifth*,—but the *seventh* in March, May, July, and October;

3. The Ides, the *thirteenth*,—but the *fifteenth* in March, May, July, and October.

II. From these three points the days were numbered, not forward, but backward.

Hence after the *Ides* of each month, the days were numbered from the *Calends* of the following month.

III. In numbering backward from each of these points, the day before each was denoted by *pridie Cūlendas*, *Nōnas*, etc.; the second before each by *die tertio* (not *secundo*; third, not second) *ante Cūlendas*, etc., the third, by *die quarto*, etc., and so on through the month.

1. NUMERALS.—This peculiarity in the use of the numerals, designating the *second* day before the Calends, etc., as the *third*, and the *third* as the *fourth*, etc., arises from the fact that the Calends, etc., were themselves counted as the first. Thus *pridie ante Cūlendas* becomes the second before the Calends, *die tertio ante Cūlendas*, the third, etc.

2. NAME OF MONTH.—In dates the name of the month is added in the form of an adjective in agreement with *Cūlendas*, *Nōnas*, etc., as, *die quarto ante Nōnas Jānuāriās*, often shortened to, *quarto ante Nōnas Jan.* or *V. ante Nōnas Jan.* or without *ante*, as, *IV. Nōnas Jan.*, the second of January.

8. ANTE DIEM.—Instead of *die*—*ante*, *ante diem* is common, as, *ante diem quartum Nōnas Jan.* for *die quarto ante Nōnas Jan.*

4. AS INDECLINABLE NOUNS.—The expressions *ante diem*—*Cal.*, etc., *pridie Cal.*, etc., are often used as indeclinable nouns with a preposition, as, *ex ante diem V. Idus Oct.*, from the 11th of Oct. *Liv. Ad pridie Nōnas Maias*, till the 6th of May. *Cic.*

709. CALENDAR FOR THE YEAR.

Days of the Month.	March, May, July, Oct.	Jan. Aug. December.	April, June, Sept. Nov.	February.
1	CALENDIS. ¹	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.	CALENDIS.
2	VI. Nonas. ¹	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	III. "	NONIS.	NONIS.	NONIS.
6	Pridie Nonas.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	NONIS.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	III. "	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.	IDIBUS.
14	Pridie Idus.	XIX. Calend. ²	XVIII. Calend. ²	XVI. Calend. ²
15	IDIBUS.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Calend. ²	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. (VI.) ³ "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. (V.) "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. (IV.) "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Prid. Cal (III. Cal.)
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	(Prid. Cal.)
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Calend.	
31	Pridie Calend.	Pridie Calend.		

710. ENGLISH AND LATIN DATES.—The table (709) will furnish the learner with the English expression for any Latin date, or the Latin expression for any English date; but in translating Latin, it may be convenient also to have the following rule:

I. If the day is numbered from the Nones or Ides, subtract the number diminished by one from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall:

¹ To the Calends, Nones, etc., the name of the month must of course be added. Before Nonas, Idus, etc., *ante* is sometimes used and sometimes omitted (708. III. 2).

² The Calends of the following month are of course meant, as the 16th of March for instance is, *XVII. Calendas Apriles*.

³ The enclosed forms apply to *leap-year*.

VIII. ante Idus Jan. = $13 - (8 - 1) = 13 - 7 = 6$ th of January.

II. If the day is numbered from the Calends of the following month, subtract the number diminished by two from the number of days in the current month:

XVIII. ante Cal. Feb. = $31 - (18 - 2) = 31 - 16 = 15$ th of January.

In Leap-year the 24th and 25th February are both called the sixth before the Calends of March, *VI. Cal. Mart.* The days before the 24th are numbered precisely as if the month contained as usual only 28 days, but the days after the 25th are numbered regularly for a month of 29 days: *V., IV., III. Cal. Mart.*, and *pridie Cal. Mart.*

711. DIVISIONS OF DAY AND NIGHT.—The Roman day, from sun-rise to sun-set, and the night from sun-set to sun-rise, were each divided at all seasons of the year into twelve hours.

1. NIGHT WATCHES.—The night was also divided into four watches of three Roman hours each.

2. LENGTH OF ROMAN HOUR.—The hour, being uniformly $\frac{1}{12}$ of the day or of the night, of course varied in length, with the length of the day or night at different seasons of the year.

IV. ROMAN MONEY, WEIGHTS, AND MEASURES.

712. COINS.—The principal Roman coins were the *as*, of copper, the *sestertius*, *quinarius*, *dēnarius*, of silver, and the *aureus*, of gold. Their value in the classical period was as follows:

<i>As</i> ,	1 to 2 cents.
<i>Sestertius</i> ,	4 "
<i>Quinarius</i> ,	8 "
<i>Dēnarius</i> ,	16 "
<i>Aureus</i> = 25 <i>dēnarii</i> ,	\$4.00.

1. *AS*—THE UNIT OF MONEY.—The *As* was originally the unit of the Roman currency, and contained a pound of copper, but it was diminished from time to time in weight and value till at last it contained only $\frac{1}{24}$ of a pound.

But whatever its weight, $\frac{1}{12}$ of the *as* is always called an *uncia*, $\frac{2}{12}$ a *sextans*, $\frac{3}{12}$ a *quadrans*, $\frac{4}{12}$ a *triens*, $\frac{5}{12}$ a *quincunx*, $\frac{6}{12}$ a *semis*, $\frac{7}{12}$ a *septunx*, $\frac{8}{12}$ a *bes*, $\frac{9}{12}$ a *drans*, $\frac{10}{12}$ a *dextans*, $\frac{11}{12}$ a *deunx*.

2. *SESTERTIUS*, *QUINARIUS*, AND *DENARIUS*.—The *sestertius* contained originally 2½ asses, the *quinarius* 5, and the *dēnarius* 10; but as the *as* depreciated in value, the number of *asses* in these coins was increased.

3. *AS*—THE GENERAL UNIT OF COMPUTATION.—The *as* is also used as the unit in other things as well as in money. Thus

1) *In Weight*.—The *as* is then a pound, and the *uncia* an ounce.

2) *In Measure*.—the *as* is then a foot or a *jugērum* (718), and the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ of a foot or of a *jugērum*.

3) *In Interest*.—The *as* is then the unit of interest, which was one per cent. a month, i. e., twelve per year, the *uncia* is $\frac{1}{12}$ per month, i. e., 1 per year, and the *semiss* is $\frac{6}{12}$ per month, i. e., 6 per year, etc.

4) *In Inheritance*.—The *as* is then the whole estate, and the *uncia* $\frac{1}{12}$ of it: *hères ex asse*, heir of the whole estate; *hères ex dodrante*, heir of $\frac{3}{4}$.

713. COMPUTATION OF MONEY.—In all sums of money the common unit of computation was the *sestertius*, also called *nummus*; but four special points deserve notice:

I. In all sums of money, the units, tens, and hundreds are denoted by *sestertii* with the proper cardinals:

Quinque sestertii, 5 *sesterces*, vīginti sestertii, 20 *sesterces*, dūcenti sestertii, 200 *sesterces*.

II. One thousand sesterces are denoted by *mille sestertii*, or *mille sestertium*.

III. In sums less than 1,000,000 sesterces, the thousands are denoted either (1) by *millia sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or (2) by *sestertia*:

Duo millia sestertium, or duo sestertia, 2,000 *sesterces*; quinque millia sestertium, or quinque sestertia, 5,000 *sesterces*

With *sestertia* the distributives were generally used, as, *bīna sestertia*, for duo *sestertia*.

IV. In sums containing one or more millions of sesterces, *sestertium* with the value of 100,000 sesterces is used with the proper numeral adverb, *dēcies*, *vīcies*, etc. Thus

Dēcies sestertium, 1,000,000 ($10 \times 100,000$) sesterces; Vīcies sestertium, 2,000,000 ($20 \times 100,000$) sesterces.

1. **SESTERTIUM.**—In the examples under IV., *sestertium* is treated and declined as a neuter noun in the singular, though originally it was probably the genitive plur. of *sestertius*, and the full expression for 1,000,000 sesterces was *Dēcies centēna millia sestertium*. *Centēna millia* was afterward generally omitted, and finally *sestertium* lost its force as a genitive plural, and became a neuter noun in the singular, capable of declension

2. **SESTERTIUM OMITTED.**—Sometimes *sestertium* is omitted, leaving only the numeral adverb: as, *dēcies*, 1,000,000 sesterces.

3. **SIGN HS.**—The sign HS, is often used for *sestertii*, and sometimes for *sestertia*, or *sestertium*:

Decem HS = 10 *sesterces* (HS = sestertii). Dena HS = 10,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertia). Decies HS = 1,000,000 *sesterces* (HS = sestertium).

714. WEIGHT.—The basis of Roman weights is the *Libra*, also called *As* or *Pondo*, equal probably to about $11\frac{1}{2}$ ounces avoirdupois.

1. **OUNCES.**—The *Libra*, like the *as* in money, is divided into 12 parts called by the names given under 712. 1.

2. **FRACTIONS OF OUNCES.**—Parts of ounces also have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = *sēmiuncia*, $\frac{1}{3}$ = *duella*, $\frac{1}{4}$ = *stīcīlus*, $\frac{1}{6}$ = *sextūla*, $\frac{1}{8}$ = *drachma*, $\frac{1}{16}$ = *scrīpūlum*, $\frac{1}{32}$ = *obolus*.

715. DRY MEASURE.—The *Modius* is the basis, equal to about a peck.

1. **SEXTARIUS.**—This is $\frac{1}{16}$ of a modius.

2. **PARTS OF THE SEXTARIUS.**—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = hēmīna, $\frac{1}{4}$ = ācētābūlum, $\frac{1}{8}$ = cyāthus.

716. LIQUID MEASURE.—The *Amphōra* is the most convenient unit of the Roman liquid measure, and contained a Roman cubic foot, equivalent probably to about seven gallons, wine measure.

1. **CULEUS.**—Twenty *amphōrae* make one *Culeus*.

2. **PARTS OF AMPHORA.**—These have special names: $\frac{1}{2}$ = urna, $\frac{1}{4}$ = congius, $\frac{1}{8}$ = sextārius, $\frac{1}{16}$ = hēmīna, $\frac{1}{32}$ = quartārius, $\frac{1}{64}$ = ācētābūlum, $\frac{1}{128}$ = cyāthus.

717. LONG MEASURE.—The basis of this measure is the Roman foot, equivalent to about 11.6 inches.

1. **COMBINATIONS OF FEET.**—Palmipes = $1\frac{1}{2}$ Roman feet; cūbitus = $1\frac{1}{2}$; passus = 5; stādium = 625.

2. **PARTS OF FOOT.**—Palmus = $\frac{1}{4}$ foot; uncia = $\frac{1}{16}$; dīgītus = $\frac{1}{16}$.

718. SQUARE MEASURE.—The basis of this measure is the *Jūgērūm*, containing 28,800 Roman square feet, equivalent to about six tenths of an acre.

The parts of the *jūgērūm* have the same name as those of the *As*: uncia = $\frac{1}{16}$, sextans = $\frac{1}{24}$, etc. See 712. 1.

V. ABBREVIATIONS.

719. Names.

A. = Aulus.	L. = Lūcius.	Q. (Qu.) = Quintus.
Ap. = Appius.	M. = Marcus.	S. (Sex.) = Sextus.
C. (G.) = Caius (Gaius).	M'. = Mānius.	Ser. = Servius.
Cn. (Gn.) = Chaeus (Gnaeus).	Mam. = Māmercus.	Sp. = Spūrius.
D. = Dēcimus.	N. = Nūmērius.	T. = Tītus.
	P. = Publius.	Ti. (Tib.) = Tibērius.

720. Other Abbreviations.

A. D. = ante diem.	F. C. = faciendum cū- rāvit.	Proc. = prōconsul.
Aed. = aedilis.	Id. = Idus.	Q. B. F. F. Q. S. = quod bōnum, felix, faustumque sit.
A. U. C. = anno urbis conditae.	Imp. = impērātor.	Quir. = Quīrites.
Cal. (Kal.) = Cālendae.	Leg. = lēgātus.	Resp. = res publica.
Cos. = consul.	Non. = Nōnae.	S. = sēnātus.
Coss. = consules.	O. M. = optimus max- imus.	S. C. = sēnātus con- sultum.
D. = divus.	P. C. = patres conscrip- ti.	S. D. P. = sālūtem di- cit plūrīmam.
D. D. = dōno dedit.	Pont. Max. = pontifex maximus.	S. P. Q. R. = sēnātus pōpūlusque Rōmā- nus.
Des. = designātus.	P. R. = pōpūlus Rō- mānus.	Tr. Pl. = tribūnus plē- bis.
D. M. = diis mānibus.	Pr. = praetor.	
D. S. = de suo.	Praef. = praefectus.	
D. S. P. P. = de sua pēcūnia pōsuit.		
Eq. Rom. = Eques Rō- mānus.		
F. = filius.		

INDEX OF VERBS.

721. THIS Index contains an alphabetical list, not only of all the simple verbs in common use which involve any important irregularities, but also of such compounds as seem to require special mention.

But, in regard to compounds of prepositions, two important facts must be borne in mind:

1. That the elements—preposition and verb—often appear in the compound in a changed form. See 338, 2, and 341, 3.

2. That the stem-vowel is often changed in the Perfect and Supine. See 214.

A.

Abdo, ěre, dīdi, dītum, 273.
 Ab-ĭgo. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Ab-ĭcio. See *jācio*, 273, II.
 Ab-luo. See *luo*, 280.
 Ab-nuo. See *annuo*, 280.
 Abōleo, ěre, ēvi, ĭtum, 264, 1.
 Abōlesco, ěre, ōlēvi, ōlītum, 277.
 Ab-rĭpio. See *rāpio*, 275.
 Abs-con-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Ac-cendo, ěre, i, cenum, 273, III.
 Ac-cĭdo. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.
 Ac-cĭno. See *cāno*, 273.
 Ac-cĭpio. See *cāpio*, 273, II.
 Ac-cōlo. See *cōlo*, 274.
 Ac-cumbo, ěre, cūbui, cūbītum, 275.
 Acesco, ěre, ācui, —, 282.
 Ac-qui-ro. See *quaero*, 278, 2.
 Acuo, ěre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Ad-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Ad-imo. See *ēmo*, 273, II.
 Adĭpiscor, i, ādeptus sum, 283.
 Ad-ōlesco. See *ābōlesco*, 277.
 Ad-ōrior. See *ōrior*, 288.
 Ad-spĭcio. See *aspĭcio*, 272, I. 2.
 Ad-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Af-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.
 Agnosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.
 Ag-grĕdior. See *grādior*, 283.
 Ago, ěre, ēgi, actum, 273, II.
 Aio, *def.*, 297.
 Albeo, ěre, —, 267.
 Algeo, ěre, alsi, —, 263, I.
 Al-licio, ěre, lexi, lectum, 221, 2; 272, I. 2; 275.

Al-luo. See *luo*, 280.
 Alo, ěre, ālui, ālītum, altum, 274.
 Amb-ĭgo. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Ambio, 295, 3.
 Amĭcio, ěre, ui, tum, 285.
 Amo, 205.
 Amplector, i, amplexus sum, 283.
 An-go, ěre, anxi, —, 280.
 Annuo, ěre, i, —, 280.
 Apāge, *def.*, 297.
 Apĕrio, ěre, ui, tum, 285.
 Apiscor, i, aptus sum, 283.
 Ap-pāreo. See *pāreo*, 335; 301.
 Ap-pĕto. See *pĕto*, 278, 2.
 Ap-plĭco. See *plico*, 260.
 Ap-pōno. See *pōno*, 275.
 Arcesso, ěre, ivi, ĭtum, 278, 2.
 Ardeo, ěre, arsi, arsum, 269, I.
 Aresco, ěre, ārui, —, 282.
 Arguo, ěre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Ar-rĭpio. See *rāpio*, 275.
 A-scendo. See *scando*, 273, III.
 A-spergo. See *spargo*, 272, II.
 A-spĭcio, ěre, spexi, spectrum, 272, I. 2.
 As-sentior, ĭri, sonsus sum, 288.
 As-sĭdeo. See *sēdco*, 270, II.
 At-texo. See *texo*, 275.
 At-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 268.
 At-tingo. See *tango*, 273.
 At-tollo. See *tollo*, 273.
 Audeo, ěre, ausus sum, 271.
 Audio, 211.
 Au-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.
 Augeo, ěre, auxi, auctum, 269, II.
 Ave, *def.*, 297.

B.

Balbūtio, ĩre, —, 284, 2.
Bātuo, ěre, i, —, 280.
Bĭbo, ěre, i, —, 280.
Blandior, ĩri, Itus sum, 230.

C.

Cādo, ěre, cēcĭdi, cāsum, 273, I. 2.
Caecūtio, ĩre, —, 284, 2.
Caedo, ěre, cēcĭdi, caesum, 273, I. 2.
Cālesco, ěre, cālui, —, 282.
Calveo, ěre, —, 267.
Candeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
Cāneo, ěre, —, 267.
Cāno, ěre, cēcĭni, cantum, 273.
Cāpesso, ěre, ĩvi, ĩtum, 278, 2.
Cāpio, ěre, cēpi, captum, 222; 273, II.
Carpo, ěre, si, tum, 272.
Cāveo, ěre, cāvi, cautum, 270, II.
Cēdo, ěre, cessi, cessum, 272, II.
Cēdo, *def.*, 297.
Cello, *obs.* See *excello*, 274.
Cēno, 260, 2.
Censeo, ěre, ui, censum, 268.
Cerno, ěre, crēvi, crētum, 277.
Cĭeo, ěre, cĭvi, cĭtum, 269, 1.
Cingo, ěre, cĭnxi, cinctum, 272.
Circum-sisto. See *sisto*, 273.
Clango, ěre, —, 281.
Claudo, ěre, clausi, clausum, 272, II.
Claudo, ěre (*to be lame*), —, 281.
Co-ālesco, ěre, ālui, ālitum, 282.
Co-arguo. See *arguo*, 279.
Coepi, *def.*, 297.
Cognosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.
Cōgo, ěre, coēgi, coactum. See *āgo*, 273, II.
Col-lĭdo. See *laedo*, 272, II.
Col-lĭgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
Col-lūceo. See *lūceo*, 269.
Cōlo, ěre, ui, cultum, 274.
Com-ēdo. See *ēdo*, 291.
Commĭniscor, i, commentus sum, 283.
Com-mōveo. See *mōveo*, 279.
Com-parco (perco). See *parco*, 273, I. 2.
Compērio, ĩre, pēri, pertum, 287.
Compesco, ěre, pescui, —, 275.
Com-pingo. See *pango*, 273.

Com-plector, i, plexus sum, 283.
Com-pleo, ěre, ēvi, ētum, 264.
Com-prĭmo. See *prĕmo*, 272, II.
Com-pungo, ěre, punxi, punctum. See *pungo*, 273.
Con-cĭdo. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.
Con-cĭdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
Con-cĭno. See *cāno*, 273.
Con-clūdo. See *claudio*, 272, II.
Con-cūpisco, ěre, cūpĭvi, cūpitum, 282.
Con-cūtio. See *quātio*, 272, II.
Con-do. See *abdo*, 273.
Con-fercio. See *farcio*, 286.
Con-ficio. See *fācio*, 273, II.
Confit, *def.*, 297.
Con-fĭteor. See *fāteor*, 271.
Con-fringo. See *frango*, 273, II.
Congruo, ěre, i, —, 280.
Conĭveo, ěre, nĭvi, nĭxi, —, 269, I.
Con-sĕro. See *sĕro*, 276.
Con-sisto. See *sisto*, 273.
Con-spĭcio, ěre, spexi, spectrum, 221, 2.
Con-stĭtuo. See *stātuo*, 279.
Con-sto. See *sto*, 261.
Consuesco, 297, I. 2.
Consūlo, ěre, ui, tum, 274.
Con-temno. See *temno*, 281.
Con-texo. See *texo*, 275.
Con-tingo. See *tango*, 273; 301.
Con-vālesco, ěre, vālui, vālitum, 282.
Cōquo, ěre, coxi, coctum, 272.
Cor-ripio. See *rāpio*, 275.
Cor-ruo. See *ruo*, 279.
Crēbresco, ěre, crēbrui, —, 282, II.
Crēdo, ěre, credĭdi, credĭtum, 273.
Crēpo, āre, ui, ĩtum, 260.
Cresco, ěre, crēvi, crētum, 277.
Cūbo, āre, ui, ĩtum, 260.
Cūdo, ěre, cūdi, cūsum, 273, III.
Cumbo. See *accumbo*, 275.
Cūpio, ěre, ĩvi, ĩtum, 221; 278.
Curro, ěre, cūcurri, cursum, 273, I. 2.

D.

Dē-cerpo, ěre, si, tum, 272, I. 1.
Dēcet, *impers.*, 299.
Dē-do. See *abdo*, 273.
Dē-fendo, ěre, i, fensum, 273, III.
Dē-fĕtiscor. See *fātiscor*, 283.

Dē-fit, *def.*, 297.
 Dēgo, ěre, dēgi. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Dēleo, ěre, ēvi, ětum, 264.
 Dē-lġo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Dē-mico. See *mico*, 260.
 Dēmo, ěre, dempsi, demptum, 272.
 Dē-pango. See *pango*, 273.
 Dē-primo. See *prġno*, 272, II.
 Depso, ěre, ui, ětum, tum, 275.
 De-scendo. See *scando*, 273, III.
 Dē-silio. See *sālio*, 285.
 Dē-sipio. See *sāpio*, 278.
 Dē-tendo. See *tendo*, 273.
 Dē-tġneo. See *tġneo*, 268.
 Dē-vertor. See *verto*, 273, III.
 Dġco, ěre, dixi, dictum, 272; 237.
 Dif-fġro. See *fġro*, 292.
 Dignosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.
 Dġ-lġo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Dġ-mico. See *mico*, 260.
 Dġ-rġgo, ěre, rexi, rectum, 272, I. 1.
 Disco, ěre, didici, —, 273.
 Dis-crġpo. See *crġpo*, 260.
 Dis-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 275.
 Dis-pertior. See *partior*, 288.
 Dis-plġceo. See *plġceo*, 265.
 Dis-sġdeo. See *sġdeo*, 270, II.
 Di-stinguo. See *stġnguo*, 281.
 Di-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Dġtesco, ěre, —, 282, II.
 Dġvġdo, ěre, vġsi, vġsum, 272, II.
 Do, dāre, dġdi, dātum, 261.
 Dōceo, ěre, ui, tum, 268.
 Dōmo, āre, ui, ětum, 260.
 Dūco, ěre, duxi, ctum, 272; 237.
 Dulcesco, ěre, —, 282, II.
 Dūresco, ěre, dūrui, —, 282, II.

E.

Elo, ěre, ēdi, ěsum, 273, II.; 291.
 E-do, ěre, ēdidi, editum, 273.
 Ef-fġro. See *fġro*, 292.
 Egeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 E-lġcio, ěre, ui, ětum, 275.
 E-lġgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 E-mġco. See *mico*, 260.
 Emġneo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Emo, ěre, ēmi, emptum, 273, II.
 E-nġco, āre, ui, tum, 260.
 Eo, ěre, īvi, ětum, 295.
 Esūrġo, ěre, —, ětum, 284, 2.

E-vādo, ěre, vāsi, vāsum, 272, II.
 Evānesco, ěre, ēvānui, —, 282.
 Ex-ardesco, ěre, arsi, arsum, 282.
 Excello, ěre, ui (rare), —, 274.
 Ex-clūdo. See *claudo*, 272, II.
 Ex-curro. See *curro*, 273, I. 2.
 Ex-ōlesco. See *ābōlesco*, 277.
 Expġdit, *impers.*
 Expergiscor, i, experrectus sum, 283.
 Ex-pġrior, ěri, pertus sum, 288.
 Ex-pleo. See *complco*, 264.
 Ex-plġco. See *plġco*, 260.
 Ex-plōdo. See *plaudo*, 272, II.
 Ex-stinguo, ěre, stinx, stinctum, 272.
 Ex-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Ex-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Ex-tollo. See *tollo*, 273.

F.

Fācesso, ěre, īvi, i, ětum, 278, 2.
 Fācio, ěre, fġci, factum, 221; 273, II.; 237.
 Fallo, ěre, fġcelli, falsum, 273, I. 2.
 Farcġo, ěre, farsġi, fartum, farctum, 286.
 Fārġi, *def.*, 297.
 Fāteor, ēri, fassus sum, 271.
 Fātisco, ěre, —, 281.
 Fātiscor, i, —, 283.
 Fāveo, ěre, fāvi, fautum, 270, II.
 Fendo, *obs.* See *dġfendo*, 273, III.
 Fġrio, ěre, —, 284, 2.
 Fġro, ferre, tūli, lātum, 292.
 Fġrōcio, ěre, —, 284, 2.
 Ferveō, ěre, fervi, ferbui, —, 270, III.
 Fido, ěre, fġsus sum, 283.
 Fġgo, ěre, fixi, fixum, 272, II.
 Findo, ěre, fġdi, fissum, 273, III.
 Fingo, ěre, finxi, fictum, 272, I.
 Fġo, fiġri, factus sum, 294.
 Flāveo, ěre, —, 267.
 Flecto, ěre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Fleo, ěre, ēvi, ětum, 264.
 Flōreo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Flōresco, ěre, flōrui, —, 282.
 Fluo, ěre, fluxi, fluxum, 279, 1.
 Fōdio, ěre, fōdi, fossum, 221; 273, II.
 Fōrem, *def.*, 297, III. 2.
 Fōveo, ěre, fōvi, fōtum, 270, II.
 Frango, ěre, frġgi, fractum, 273, II.
 Frġmo, ěre, ui, ětum, 274.

Frendo, ěre, —, fressum, frĕsum, 272, II.

Frĭco, āre, uī, ātum, tum, 260.

Frĭgeo, ěre, frixi (rare), —, 269, I.

Frondeo, ěre, uī, —, 266.

Fruor, i, fructus, frūitus sum, 283.

Fŭgio, ěre, fŭgi, fŭgĭtum, 221; 273, II.

Fulcio, ĩre, fulsi, fultum, 286.

Fulgeo, ěre, fulsi, —, 269, I.

Fulminat, *impers.*, 300.

Fundo, ěre, fŭdi, fŭsum, 273, II.

Fungor, i, functus sum, 283.

Fŭro, ěre, uī, —, 274.

G.

Gannio, ĩre, —, 284, 2.

Gaudeo, ěre, gāvisus sum, 271.

Gĕmo, ěre, uī, ĭtum, 274.

Gĕro, ěre, gessi, gestum, 272.

Gigno, ěre, gĕnui, gĕnĭtum, 274.

Glisco, ěre, —, 281.

Grādior, i, gressus sum, 221; 283.

Grandesco, ěre, —, 282, II.

Grandinat, *impers.*, 300.

Grāvesco, ěre, —, 282, II.

H.

Hacreo, ěre, haesi, haesum, 269, I.

Haurio, ĩre, hausi, haustum, haustŭrus, hausŭrus, 286.

Hĕbeo, ěre, —, 267.

Hisco, ěre, —, 281.

Horreo, ěre, uī, —, 266.

Hortor, 226.

Hŭmco, ěre, —, 267.

I.

Ico, ěre, ĭci, ĭctum, 273, III.

Il-ĭcio, ěre, ĭxi, ĭctum, 221; 272, I. 2.

Il-ĭdo. See *laedo*, 272, II.

Imbuo, ěre, uī, ūtum, 279.

Immĭneo, ěre, —, 267.

Im-parco. See *parco*, 273, I. 2.

Im-pertior. See *partior*, 288.

Im-pingo. See *pango*, 273.

In-cendo. See *accendo*, 273, III.

Incesso, ěre, ĭvi, ĭ, —, 278, 2.

In-cĭdo. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.

In-cĭdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.

In-crĕpo. See *crĕpo*, 260.

In-cresco. See *cresco*, 277.

In-cumbo. See *accumbo*, 275.

In-eūtio. See *quātio*, 272, II.

Ind-ĭgeo, ěre, uī, —. See *ĕgeo*, 266.

Ind-ĭpiscor. See *āpiscor*, 283.

In-do. See *abdo*, 273.

Indulgeo, ěre, dŭlsi, dultum, 269, II.

Ineptio, ĩre, —, 284, 2.

Infit, *def.*, 297.

Ingruo, ěre, ĭ, —, 280.

In-nōtesco, ěre, nōtui, 282, II. 1.

In-ōlesco. See *ābōlesco*, 277.

Inquam, *def.*, 297.

In-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270, II.

In-spĭcio, ěre, spexi, spectum, 221.

In-sto. See *sto*, 261.

Intel-lĭgo. See *lĕgo*, 273, II.

Intĕrest, *impers.*, 301.

Inter-nosco. See *nosco*, 278, 3.

In-vĕtĕrasco, ěre, rāvi, rātum, 282.

Irascor, ĭ, —, 283.

Ir-ruo. See *ruo*, 279.

J.

Jācio, ěre, jĕci, jactum, 221; 273, II.

Jŭbeo, ěre, jussi, jussum, 269, I.

Jŭro, 260, 2.

Jŭvĕnesco, ěre, —, 282, II.

Jŭvo, āre, jŭvi, jŭtum, 262.

L.

Lābor, ĭ, lapsus sum, 283.

Lācesso, ěre, ĭvi, ĭtum, 278, 2.

Lācio, *obs.* See *allĭcio*, 272, I. 2.

Laeteo, ěre, —, 267.

Laedo, ěre, laesi, laesum, 272, II.

Lambo, ěre, ĭ, —, 280.

Langueo, ěre, ĭ, —, 270, III.

Lāpidat, *impers.*, 300.

Largior, ĩri, ĭtus sum, 288.

Lāteo, ěre, uī, —, 266.

Lāvo, āre, lāvi, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, 262.

Lĕgo, ěre, lĕgi, lectum, 273, II.

Lībet, *impers.*, 299.
 Līceor, ēri, ītus sum, 271.
 Līcet, *impers.*, 299.
 Līno, ēre, līvi, lēvi, lītum, 278.
 Linquo, ēre, līqui, —, 273, II.
 Līqueo, ēre, līqui (licui), 270, III.
 Līquet, *impers.*, 299.
 Līquor, i, —, 283.
 Lōquor, i, lōcūtus sum, 283.
 Lūceo, ēre, luxi, —, 269, I.
 Lūcescit, *impers.*, 300.
 Lūdo, ēre, lūsi, lūsum, 272, II.
 Lūgeo, ēre, luxi, —, 269, I.
 Luo, ēre, lui, —, 280.

M.

Mācresco, ēre, macrui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Mādeo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Mādesco, ēre, mādui, —, 282.
 Maereo, ēre, —, 267.
 Mālo, malle, mālui, —, 293.
 Mando, ēre, i, mansum, 273, III.
 Māneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 269, I.
 Mātūresco, ēre, mātūrui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Mēdeor, ēri, —, 271.
 Mēmīni, *def.*, 297.
 Mentior, īri, ītus sum, 288.
 Mēreor, ēri, ītus sum, 271.
 Mergo, ēre, mersi, mersum, 272, II.
 Mētor, īri, mensus sum, 288.
 Mēto, ēre, messui, messum, 275, II.
 Mētuo, ēre, ui, —, 280.
 Mīco, āre, ui, —, 260.
 Mīniscor, *obs.* See *commūniscor*, 283.
 Mīnuo, ēre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Misceo, ēre, miscui, mistum, mixtum, 268.
 Misēreor, ēri, ītus or tus sum, 271.
 Misēret, *impers.*, 299.
 Mītesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Mitto, ēre, mīsi, missum, 272, II.
 Mōlior, īri, ītus sum, 288.
 Mollesco, ēre, —, 282, II.
 Mōlo, ēre, ui, ītum, 274.
 Mōneo, ēre, ui, ītum, 207.
 Mordeo, ēre, mōmordi, morsum, 270.
 Mōrior, i (īri), mortuus sum, 221; 283.
 Mōveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 270, II.

Mulceo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269, I.
 Mulgeo, ēre, mulsi, mulsum, 269, I.

N.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum, 283.
 Nascor, i, nātus sum, 283.
 Necto, ēre, nexi, nexui, nexum, 272, II.; 275, II.
 Neg-līgo, ēre, lexi, lectum. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Neo, ēre, nēvi, nētum, 264.
 Nē-queo, īre, īvi, ītum, 296.
 Nigresco, ēre, nigrui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Ningo, ēre, ninxi, —, 280.
 Nīteo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Nītor, i, nīsus, nixus sum, 283.
 Nōlo, nolle, nōlui, —, 293.
 Nosco, ēre, nōvi, nōtum, 278, 3.
 Nūbo, ēre, nupsi, nuptum, 272.
 Nuo, *obs.* See *annuo*, 280.
 Nuptūrio, īre, īvi, —, 284, 2.

O.

Ob-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Ob-dormisco, ēre, dormīvi, dormītum, 282.
 Oblīvīscor, i, oblītus sum, 283.
 Ob-mūtesco, ēre, mūtui, —, 282, II. 1.
 Ob-sīdeo. See *sēdeo*, 270.
 Ob-sōlesco. See *abōlesco*, 277.
 Ob-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Ob-surdesco, ēre, surdui, —, 282.
 Ob-tīneo. See *tēneo*, 268.
 Oc-cīdo. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.
 Oc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Oc-cīno. See *cāno*, 273.
 Oc-cīpio. See *cāpio*, 273, II.
 Occūlo, ēre, ui, tum, 274.
 Odī, *def.*, 297.
 Of-fendo. See *dēfendo*, 273, III.
 Oleo, ēre, ui, —, 266.
 Olesco, *obsolete*. See *abōlesco*, 277.
 Opērio, īre, ui, tum, 285.
 Oportet, *impers.*, 299.
 Op-pērior, īri, pertus, perītus sum, 288.
 Ordior, īri, orsus sum, 288.
 Os-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Ovat, *def.*, 297.

P.

Păciscor, i, pactus sum, 283.
 Paenitet, *impers.*, 299.
 Palleo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Pando, ěre, i, pansum, passum, 273, III.
 Pango, ěre, pĕpĭgi, pactum, 273.
 Pango, ěre, panxi, pĕgi, panctum, pactum, 273.
 Părco, ěre, pĕperci (parsi), parsum, 273, I. 2.
 Păreo, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 265.
 Părio, ěre, pĕpĕri, partum, 221; 273.
 Partior, ĭri, ĭtus sum, 288.
 Partŭrio, ĭre, ĭvi, —, 284, 2.
 Pasco, ěre, pāvi, pastum, 276.
 Păteo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Pătior, i, passus sum, 229; 221; 283.
 Păveo, ěre, pāvi, —, 270, II.
 Pecto, ěre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Pel-licio, ěre, lexi, lectum, 221; 272, I. 2.
 Pello, ěre, pĕpŭli, pulsum, 273, I. 2.
 Pendco, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, 270.
 Pendo, ěre, pĕpendi, pensum, 273, I. 2.
 Per-cello. See *excello*, 274.
 Per-censeo. See *censeo*, 268.
 Per-do, ěre, dĭdi, dĭtum. See *abdo*, 273.
 Pergo (*for per-rĭgo*), ěre, perrexī, perrectum. See *rĕgo*, 272.
 Per-pĕtior. See *pătior*, 283.
 Per-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Per-tĭneo. See *tĕneo*, 268.
 Pessum-do. See *do*, 261.
 Pĕto, ěre, ĭvi, ĭtum, 278, 2.
 Pĭget, *impers.*, 299.
 Pingo, ěre, pinxi, pictum, 272, I.
 Pinso (pĭso), ěre, i, ui, pinsĭtum, pistum, pinsum, 273, III.
 Plaudo, ěre, si, sum, 272, II.
 Plecto, ěre, xi, xum, 272, II.
 Plector, *not used as Dep.* See *am-plector*, 283.
 Pleo, *obsolete*. See *compleo*, 264.
 Plŭco, āre, āvi, ui, ātum, ĭtum, 260.
 Pluo, ěre, i *or* vi, —, 280.
 Polleo, ěre, —, 267.
 Polliceor, ěri, ĭtus sum, 271.
 Pōno, ěre, pōsui, pōsĭtum, 275.
 Posco, ěre, pōposci, —, 273, I. 2.

Pos-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270, II.
 Possum, posse, pōtui, —, 290.
 Pōtior, ĭri, ĭtus sum, 288.
 Pōto, āre, āvi, ātum, um, 260, I and 2.
 Prae-cĭno. See *cĭno*, 273.
 Prae-curro. See *curro*, 273, I. 2.
 Prae-sĭdeo. See *sĕdeo*, 270, II.
 Prae-sto. See *sto*, 261.
 Prae-vertor. See *verto*, 273, III.
 Prandeo, ěre, i, pransum, 270, III.
 Prehendo, ěre, i, hensum, 273, III.
 Prĕmo, ěre, pressi, pressum, 272, II.
 Prōd-ĭgo. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Prō-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Prōfĭciscor, i, prōfectus sum, 283.
 Prō-fiteor. See *fāteor*, 271.
 Prōmo, ěre, prompsi, promptum, 272, I.
 Prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, —, 290, III.
 Prō-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Psallo, ěre, i, —, 280.
 Pŭdet, *impers.*, 299.
 Puĕrasco, ěre, —, 282, II.
 Pungo, ěre, pŭpŭgi, punctum, 273.

Q.

Quaero, ěre, quaesĭvi, quaesĭtum, 278, 2.
 Quaeso, *def.*, 297.
 Quătio, ěre, quassi, quassum, 221; 272, II.
 Queo, ĭre, ĭvi, ĭtum, 296.
 Quĕror, i, questus sum, 283.
 Quiesco, ěre, quiĕvi, quiĕtum, 277.

R.

Rădo, ěre, rāsi, rāsum, 272, II.
 Răpio, ěre, răpui, raptum, 221; 275.
 Raucio, ĭre, rausi, rausum, 286, II.
 Rĕ-censeo. See *censeo*, 268.
 Rĕ-cĭdo. See *cĭdo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rĕ-cĭdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rĕ-crŭdesco, ěre, crŭdŭi, 282, II. 1.
 Rĕd-arguo. See *arguo*, 279.
 Red-do. See *abdo*, 273.
 Rĕ-fello. See *fallo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rĕ-fĕro. See *fĕro*, 292.
 Rĕfert, *impers.*, 301.
 Rĕgo, ěre, rexi, rectum, 209; 272.

Rě-linguo. See *linguo*, 273, II.
 Rěmīscor, i, —, 283.
 Rěnīdeo, ěre, —, 267.
 Reor, rěri, rātus sum, 271.
 Rě-pango. See *pango*, 273.
 Rě-parco. See *parco*, 273, I. 2.
 Rě-pěrio, ěre, pěri, pertum, 287.
 Rě-sīdeo. See *sēdeo*, 270, II.
 Rě-sīpio. See *sāpio*, 278.
 Rě-sōno. See *sōno*, 260.
 Re-spergo. See *spargo*, 272, II.
 Rě-tendo. See *tendo*, 273, I. 2.
 Rě-tīnco. See *tēneo*, 268.
 Rě-vertor. See *verto*, 273, III.
 Rě-vīvisco, ěre, vixi, victum, 282.
 Rīdeo, ěre, rīsi, rīsum, 269, I.
 Rīngor, i, —, 283.
 Rōdo, ěre, rōsi, rōsum, 272, II.
 Rōrat, *impers.*, 300.
 Rūbeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Rūdo, ěre, īvi, ītum, 278, 2.
 Rumpo, ěre, rūpi, ruptum, 273, II.
 Ruo, ěre, rūi, rūtum, rūtūrus, 279.

S.

Sāgio, ěre, —, 284, 2.
 Sālio, ěre, ui (ii), tum, 285.
 Salve, *def.*, 297.
 Sancio, ěre, sanxi, sancitum, sanc-
 tum, 286.
 Sāpio, ěre, īvi, ui, —, 221; 278.
 Sarcio, ěre, sarsi, sartum, 286.
 Sāt-āgo. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Scābo, ěre, scābi, —, 273, II.
 Scando, ěre, di, sum, 273, III.
 Scindo, ěre, scīdi, scissum, 273, III.
 Scisco, ěre, scīvi, scitum, 282.
 Sēco, āre, ui, tum, 260.
 Sēdeo, ěre, sēdi, sessum, 270, II.
 Sē-līgo. See *lēgo*, 273, II.
 Sentio, ěre, sensi, sensum, 286.
 Sēpēlio, ěre, īvi, sepultum, 284.
 Sēpio, ěre, psi, ptum, 286.
 Sēquor, i, sēcūtus sum, 228.
 Sēro, ěre, sēvi, sātum, 276.
 Sēro, ěre, serui, sertum, 274.
 Sīdo, ěre, i, —, 280.
 Sīleo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Sīno, ěre, sīvi, sītum, 278.
 Sisto, ěre, stīti, stātum, 273.
 Sītio, ěre, īvi, —, 284.

Sōleo, ěre, solūtus sum, 271.
 Solvo, ěre, solvi, sōlūtum, 273, III.
 Sōno, āre, ui, ītum, 260.
 Sorbeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Sortior, ěre, ītus sum, 288.
 Spargo, ěre, sparsi, sparsum, 272, II.
 Spēcio, *obs.* See *aspicio*, 272.
 Sperno, ěre, sprēvi, sprētum, 277.
 Splendeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Spondeo, ěre, spōpondi, sponsum,
 270.
 Squāleo, ěre, —, 267.
 Stātuo, ěre, ui, ūtum, 279.
 Sterno, ěre, strāvi, strātum, 276.
 Sternuo, ěre, i, —, 280.
 Sterto, ěre, ui, —, 275.
 Stinguo, ěre, —, 281.
 Sto, āre, stēti, stātum, 261.
 Strēpo, ěre, ui, ītum, 275.
 Strīdeo, ěre, strīdi, —, 270, III.
 Strīdo, ěre, i, —, 280.
 Struo, ěre, struxi, structum, 279, 1.
 Stūdeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Stūpeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.
 Suādeo, ěre, si, sum, 269, I.
 Sub-do, ěre, didi, dītum. See *abdo*,
 273, I. 1.

Sūb-īgo. See *āgo*, 273, II.
 Sub-sīlio. See *sālio*, 285.
 Suc-cādo. See *cādo*, 272, II.
 Suc-cendo. See *accendo*, 273, III.
 Suc-censeo. See *censeo*, 268.
 Suc-cīdo. See *cādo*, 273, I. 2.
 Suc-cīdo. See *caedo*, 273, I. 2.
 Suc-cresco. See *cresco*, 277.
 Suesco, ěre, suēvi, suētum, 277.
 Suf-fēro. See *fēro*, 292.
 Suf-fīcio. See *fācio*, 273, II.
 Suf-fōdio. See *fōdio*, 273, II.
 Sug-gēro. See *gēro*, 272.
 Sum, esse, fui, —, 204.
 Sūmo, ěre, psi, ptum, 272.
 Sūperbio, ěre, —, 284, 2.
 Sup-pōno. See *pōno*, 275, I.
 Surgo (*for* sur-rīgo), ěre, surrexi
 surrectum. See *rēgo*, 273, I.

T.

Taedet, *impers.*, 299.
 Tango, ěre, tētīgi, tactum, 273.
 Temno, ěre, —, 281.

Tendo, ěre, tĕtendi, tentum, tensum,
273, I. 2.

Tĕneo, ěre, ui, tum, 268.

Tĕpesco, ěre, tĕpui, —, 282.

Tergeo, ěre, tersi, tersum, 269, I.

Tergo, ěre, tersi, tersum, 272, II.

Tĕro, ěre, trĕvi, trĕtum, 278.

Texo, ěre, ui, tum, 275.

Tĕmeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.

Tollo, ěre, sustŭli, sublĕtum, 273.

Tondeo, ěre, tŏtondi, tonsum, 270.

Tŏno, ěre, ui, (ĭtum), 260.

Torpeo, ěre, ui, —, 266.

Torqueo, ěre, torsi, tortum, 269, II.

Torreo, ěre, torrui, tostum, 268.

Trĕ-do. See *abdo*, 273.

Traho, ěre, traxi, tractum, 272.

Trĕmo, ěre, ui, —, 274.

Trĭbuo, ěre, ui, ŭtum, 279.

Trŭdo, ěre, trŭsi, trŭsum, 272, II.

Tueor, ěri, tuŭtus sum, 271.

Tundo, ěre, tŭtŭdi, tunsum, tŭsum,
273, I. 2.

Tuor, for *tueor*, 283.

Turgeo, ěre, tursi (*rare*), —, 269.

Tussio, ěre, —, 284, 2.

Ů.

Ulciscor, i, ultus sum, 283.

Urgeo, ěre, ursi, —, 269, I.

Uro, ěre, ussi, ustum, 272.

Utor, i, ŭsus sum, 283.

V.

Vĕdo, ěre, —, 281.

Vĕgio, ěre, ĭvi, —, 284.

Veho, ěre, vexi, vectum, 272.

Vello, ěre, velli (*vulsi*), vulsum, 273,
III.

Vendo, ěre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 273.

Vĕn-co. See *eo*, 295.

Vĕnio, ěre, vĕni, ventum, 287.

Vĕnum-do. See *do*, 261.

Vĕreor, ěri, verĭtus sum, 227; 271.

Vergo, ěre, —, 281.

Verro, ěre, verri, versum, 273, III.

Verto, ěre, ti, sum, 273, III.

Vertor. See *dĕvertor*, 273, III.

Vescor, i, —, 283.

Vespĕrascit, *impers.*, 300.

Vĕtĕrasco, ěre, rĕvi, —, 276.

Vĕto, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 260.

Vĭdeo, ěre, vĭdi, vĭsum, 270, II.

Vĭeo, ěre, —, ĕtum, 264, 2.

Vĭlesco, ěre, vĭlui, —, 282, II. 1.

Vĭncio, ěre, vĭnxi, vinctum, 286.

Vĭnco, ěre, vĭci, victum, 273, II.

Vĭreo, ěre, ui, —, 266.

Vĭresco, ěre, vĭrui, —, 282.

Vĭso, ěre, i, um, 273, III.

Vĭvo, ěre, vixi, victum, 272.

Vŏlo, velle, vŏlui, —, 293.

Volvo, ěre, volvi, vŏlŭtum, 273, III.

Vŏmo, ěre, ui, ĭtum, 274.

Vŏveo, ěre, vŏvi, vŏtum, 270, II.

INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

NOTE.—The numbers refer to *articles*, not to pages. *Constr.* = construction; *w.* = with; *ff.* = and the following; *compds.* = compounds; *gen.* or *genit.* = genitive; *gend.* = gender; *acc.* or *accus.* = accusative; *accs.* = accusatives; *loc.* or *locat.* = locative; *adjs.* = adjectives; *preps.* = prepositions, etc.

It has not been thought advisable to overload this index with such separate words as may be readily referred to classes, or to general rules, or even with such exceptions as may be readily found under their respective heads. Accordingly, the numerous exceptions in Dec. III., and in gender, are not inserted, as they may be best found under the respective endings, 53–115.

- A** SOUND of, 6 ff., 15. Nouns in *a*,—of 1st dec., 48; of 3d dec., 55; genitive of, 69; gender, 111; derivatives in *a*, 320, 6. *A*, in acc. sing., 68; changed in compds., 341, 3. *A*, quantity of,—final, 615; in increments of dec., 633; of conj., 640.
- A*, *ab*, *abs*, in compds., 338, 2; in compds., w. dat., 386, 2. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, w. abl., 434, of agent, 388, in personification, 414, 6.
- Abbreviations, 719.
- Abhinc*, 427.
- Ablative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 48, 49; in 2d dec. 51, 52; in 3d dec. 57 ff., 62 ff.; in 4th dec., 117; in adjs., 148 ff.
- Ablative, syntax of, 412–437. Of cause, manner, means, 414; agent, accompaniment, 414, 5 and 7. Of price, 416. W. comparatives, 417. Of differ., 418. In special constrs., 419; 385, 5; 386, 2; 434, 2; 414, 2. Of place, 420 ff. Of source, 425. Of time, 426. Of charac., 428. Of specification, 429. Abl. absol., 431; w. *quisque*, 431, 6. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds, etc., 566. Of supine, 570.
- Absolute, ablative, 430 ff.; infinitive or clause, 431, 4.
- Absque*, w. abl., 434.
- Abstineo*, w. acc. and abl., 425, 2; w. gen., 409, 4.
- Abstract nouns, 39; from adjs., 319; from verbs, 321, 3.
- Abunde*, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- abus*, for *is*, in 1st dec., 49.
- Ac*, for *quam*, 417, 4. *Ac si*, w. subj., 503, 506.
- Acatalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
- Accedit*, constr., 556, II. 1.
- Accentuation, 24 ff.
- Accedit*, constr., 556, II.
- Accingo*, constr., 374, 7.
- Accompaniment, abl. of, 414, 7.
- Accomplishing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
- Accusative, formation of,—in 3d dec., 57 ff.; in adjectives, 148 ff.
- Accusative, syntax of, 370–381.—Direct object, 371 ff.; cognate, 371, 1, 3); w. other cases, 371, 2; w. compds., 371, 4; w. verbal adjs. and nouns, 371, 7. Two accs., 373 ff.; other constrs. for, 374, 3; infin. or clause, 374, 4; poetic acc., 374, 7. Subj. of infin., 375. Agreement, 376. Adverbial acc., 377 ff. Acc. of time and space, 378. Of limit, 379, poetic dat. for, 379, 5. Of specification, 380. In exclam., 381. W. preps., 432 ff. Of gerunds and gerundives, 565. Of supine, 569.
- Accusing and acquitting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Acephalous verse, 663, III.
- aceus*, adjs. in, 324.

- Acquiesco*, 386, 2.
 Active voice, 195. Act. and pass. constr., 465.
Ad, in compds., 338, 2; in compds. w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *Ad*, w. acc., 433.
-ades, in patronymics, 316; quantity, 646, 1.
Adhuc locorum, 396, 2, 4) (4).
Adipiscor, w. gen., 409, 3.
 Adjective,—Decl. of, 147 ff. Comparison, 160 ff. Numerals, 172 ff.; decl. of, 175 ff. Derivation, 322 ff. Comp., 340. W. dat., 391. W. gen. 396, III. 2; 399. W. abl., 414, 419. Agreement, 438 ff. W. the force of nouns, clauses, adverbs, 441 ff. Use of comparison, 444.
Admisceo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Admōnco, constr., 410, 3.
 Admonishing, constr. of verbs of, 410.
Adolescens, compared, 168, 4.
 Adonic verse, 677, III.
Adulor, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
 Advantage, dat. of, 385.
 Adverbial acc., 377.
 Adverbs,—Numeral, 181. Classes of, 304. Compar., 305. Derivation, 333 ff. Composition, 342. For adjs., 352, 3. W. dat., 392. W. gen., 396, III. 4). As preps., 437. Use, 582; w. nouns, 583. Negatives, *non*, *ne*, *haud*, 584, two negatives, 585.
 Adversative conj., 310; 587, III.
 Adversative sentence, 360.
Adversus, w. accus., 433.
 Advising, constr. of verbs of, 558, VI.
Æ, sound of, 9, 16; changed to *i*, 341, 3.
Aedes, sing. and plur., 132.
Aeger, w. gen., 399, 3.
Aemulus, w. gen. or dat., 399, 2, 2).
Aeneas, decl. of, 50.
Aequi boni facere, 402, 3.
Ær, *aether*, acc. of, 93, 1, quantity of, 621, 3.
-æus, adjs. in, 326.
Affatim, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Afficio, w. abl. 414, 1, 1).
Affinis, w. gen., 399, (3).
 Age, expression of, 417, 3.
 Agent,—Abl. of, w. *a* or *ab*, 388, 2; Dat. of, 388.
 Agreement,—Of Pred. Noun, 362; in gend. and numb., 362, 1. Of Appositive, 363, in gend. and numb., 363, 1. Of Adject., 438; w. clause, 438, 3; constr. accord. to sense, 438, 6; w. pred. noun or appositive, 438, 7; w. two nouns, 439; 439, 2; w. part. gen. 396, 2, 3). Of Pronouns, 445; w. two antecedents, 445, 3; w. pred. noun or appositive, 445, 4; constr. accord. to sense, 445, 5; w. clause, 445, 7. Of Verb, 460; constr. accord. to sense, 461; agreement w. Appos. or Pred. noun, 462; w. comp. subject, 463.
-ai, for *ac*, 49, 2; quant. of, 612, 1.
-al, nouns in, 63.
 Alcaic verse, 664; 691, II.; greater, 692; stanza, 700, I.
Alieno, w. dat. 425, 2.
Alienus, w. dat., 391, 1; w. abl., 391, 2, 3); w. gen., 399, 3.
Aliquantus, *aliquis*, *aliquot*, 191; use of *aliquis*, 455.
-alis, adjs. in, 325.
Alius,—Decl. 151. W. abl., 417, 5; w. *atque*, *ac*, or *et*, 459, 2. *Alius—alius*, 459; *alius—alium*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
 Alphabet, 2 ff.
Alter,—Decl. 151. Indef., 191, 2; *alteruter*, 151, 4; *alter—alter*, 459; *alter—alterum*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Aliercor, w. dat., 385, 5.
Alvus, gender of, 53.
Ambi, *amb.*, 338, 3.
Ambo, decl. of, 175, 2.
 Amphora, 716.
Amplius without *quam*, 417, 3.
An, *annon*, 346, II. 2; 526, 2, 2).
An=aut, 526, 2, 3).
 Anacoluthon, 704, III. 4.
 Analysis of verbal endings, 241 ff. —Tense-signs, 242 ff.; mood-signs, 244 ff.; personal endings, 247.
 Anapaestic verse, 678.
 Anaphora, 704, II. 3.
 Anastrophe, 704, IV. 1.

- Animi*, constr., 399, 3, 4).
 Answers, 346, 3.
Ante, in compds., 338, 2; w. dat., 386. *Ante*, in expressions of time, 427; w. acc., 433.
 Antecedent, use of term, 445, 1; omitted, 445, 6; attracted, 445, 9. Clause as antecedent, 445, 7.
Antequam, w. indic. or subj., 523.
 Antimeria, 704, III. 1.
 Antithesis, 703, 8.
-anus, adjs. in, 325 ff.
Anxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
 Aphaeresis, 703, 1.
 Apocope, 703, 3.
 Aposiopesis, 704, I. 3.
 Appendix, 702-720.
 Appositive,—Agreement of, 363; in gen. and numb., 363, 1. Subject omitted, 363, 2. Force of, 363, 3.
Aptus, w. dat., 391, 1; *aptus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
Apud, w. acc., 433.
-ar, nouns in, 63.
Arceo, w. dat., 385, 4.
 Archilochian verse, 664; 677, II.; greater, 691, I.
Arenae, locat. of place, 424, 3.
-aris, adjs. in, 325.
 Aristophanic, 691, III.
-arium, nouns in, 317.
-arius, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 325.
 Arrangement,—Of Words, 592-602.
 —General rules, 593 ff. Effect of emphasis and euphony, 594. Contrasted groups, 595. Kindred words, 596. Words with common relation, 597. Special rules, 598 ff. Modifiers of nouns, 598; of adjs., 599; of verbs, 600; of adverbs, 601; of special words,—Demon. Prep. Conjunct. Rel. *Non*, 602. Of Clauses, 603-606,—Clause as Subj. or Pred., 603; as Subord. element, 604; in Latin Period, 605; in compd. sentence, 606.
 Arsis and Thesis, 660.
 As and its divisions, 712.
-as, nouns in, 1st dec., 50; 3d dec., 79; gen. of, 105.
-as, for *ae* in gen., 49; in Greek acc. plur., 68; in patronymics, 316; in adjs., 326; quantity of, 623.
 Asclepiadæan verse, 689, III.; greater, IV.
-asco, inceptives in, 332, II.
 Asking, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
Aspergo, constr., 384, 1.
 Aspirated letters, 4, 3.
-asso, **assim**, in fut. perf. and perf. subj., 239, 4.
Assuesco, w. abl. 386, 2.
 Asyndeton, 704, I. 1.
-atim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
Atque, for *quam*, 417, 4.
 Attraction, of pronoun, 445, 4; of antecedent, 445, 9; of pred. noun or adj. after an infin., 547. Subj. by attraction, 527.
 Attributive adj., 438, 2.
-atus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.
Au, 9, 16; changed, 341, 3.
Audio, w. Pred. Noun, 362, 2, (1).
Audiens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
Aureus, the coin, 712.
Autem, place of, 602, III.
 Authority, long or short by, 609, 2.
 Authors, Latin, 706.
Avidus, w. gen., 399, 2; w. dat., 399, 5; w. acc. and prep., 399, 5.
-ax, genit. of nouns in, 92; verbals in, 328; w. gen., 399, 2.
- B**, CHANGED to *p*, 258.
Being angry, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Being distant, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
Believing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Belli, constr., 424, 2.
Bene, compared, 305, 2; w. verbs of buying, 416, 3.
Benefiting, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Bibi, quantity of, 651, 2.
-bilis, verbals in, 328.
Bonus, decl., 148; compar., 165; *boni consulo*, 402, 3.
Bos, decl. of, 66.
 Brachycatalectic, 663, III.
 Brazen age, 706, III.
-brum, nouns in, 320.
-bs, genit. of nouns in, 86.
 Bucolic caesura, 673, 2.
-bulum, nouns in, 320.
-bundus, verbals in, 328; w. acc. 371, 7.

- C** SOUND of, 17 ff. Nouns in, 74; *gend.*, 111.
C, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Caelum, plur. *caeli*, 143, 1.
 Caesura, caesural pause, 662; in hexam., 673 ff.; in anapaestic verse, 678; in trochaic, 680; in iambic, 683, IV.; 686.
 Calendar, Roman, 707.
 Calends, 708, I. 1.
 Calling, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
Caput, decl. of, 58; w. verbs of condemning, 410, 5.
Carbasus, *gend.* of, 53.
 Cardinals, 172, 174; decl. of, 175 ff.
 Cases, etymology of,—Endings of, 46, 1; in 1st dec., 48; in 2d dec., 51, 2; in 3d dec., 57 ff.; in 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 120; general endings, 122. Greek cases, 50, 54, 68. Cases of adjs., 151–158.
 Cases, syntax of, 364–435,—characterized, 364; kindred, 365; nom., 364 ff.; voc., 369; accus., 370–381; dat., 382–392; gen., 393–411; abl., 412–431; w. prepositions, 432–437.
 Catalectic verse, 663, III. 1.
Causa, *gratia*, 414, 2, 3).
 Causal conjunctions, 310, 311; 587, V.; 588, VII.
 Causal sentences, 360.
 Cause, abl. of, 414.
 Cause, Subj. of, 517–523,—Rule, 517, 521; w. *quum*, 518; *qui*, 519; *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quando*, 520; *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, 522; *antequam*, *priusquam*, 523.
 Cause, denoted by part., 578, II.
 Causing, constr. of verbs of, 558, IV.
Cave, w. subj. for imperat., 535, I.
Caveo, constr., 385, 3.
 -*ce*, in pronouns, 186.
Celo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
 -*cen*, compounds in, 339, 2.
Certo, w. dat., 385, 5.
Certus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Ch, 4, 3; sound of, 11, 1.
 Changes, euphonic, 26 ff.; in vowels, 27 ff.; in consonants, 33 ff.; in stems, 258.
 Characteristic, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 428; gen. and abl. distinguished, 428, 4.
 Choliambus, 683, 4.
 Choosing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
 Choriambic verse, 689 ff.
Cingo, constr. of, 374, 7.
 -*cio*, derivatives in, 315, 5.
Circa, *circiter*, w. acc., 433.
Circum, in compds., 338, 2; compds., w. acc., 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Circumdo*, *circumfundo*, constr., 384, 1. *Circum*, w. acc., 433.
Cis, *citra*, w. acc., 433.
Citerior, compared, 166.
Citum, quantity of, 651, 3.
Clam, w. acc. or abl., 437, 3.
 Clauses, as nouns, gender of, 42. Prin. and sub. clauses, 345, 1 and 2. Clause as object, 371, 5; as abl. absol., 431, 4; as antecedent, 445, 7. Indirect questions, clauses w. infin., subj., and w. *quod*, compared, 554. Arrangement of, 603 ff.
 Cognate accus., 371, 1.
 Coins, Roman, 712.
 -*cola*, compounds in, 339, 2.
 Collective nouns, 39.
Colus, gender of, 53.
Com, *con* for *cum*, in compds., 338, 2; w. dat., 386.
 Combined objects, 354, 3.
Comitor, w. acc. or dat., 385, 3.
 Command, subj. of, 487 ff. Constr. of verbs of, 385; 558, VI.
 Common nouns, 39; com. quantity, 23.
Commonco, *commonefacio*, constr., 410, 3.
Communis, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.
Commuto, constr. of, 416, 2.
 Comparative conjs., 311; 588, II.
 Comparative degree, 160; wanting, 167; formed by *magis*, 170. Comparatives w. gen., 396, 2, 3) (2); w. abl., 417; w. *quam*, 417, 1; w. force of too, 444, 1; before and after *quam*, 444, 2; w. *quam* and the subj., 501, IV.
 Comparative view, of decl., 123; of conjugation, 240 ff.
 Comparison,—of adjs., 160; modes of, 161; terminational, 162 ff.; irreg., 163 ff.; defect., 166 ff.;

- adverbial, 170. Use of, 444 ; in adverbs, 444, 4.
- Compleo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Complex sentences, 345, 357 ; abridged, 358 ff. Comp. elements, 350 ; subject, 352 ; predicate, 354.
- Compos*, 157, 2 ; w. gen. or abl., 399, (3) ; 419, III.
- Composition of words, 313, 338 ff.
- Compound nouns,—decl. of, 125 ff. ; composition of, 339 ; comp. adjectives, 340 ; verbs, 341 ; prin. parts of, 214 ; comp. adverbs, 342. Comp. sentences, 345, 360 ; abridged, 361. Com. subject, predicate, modifier, 361, 1-3.
- Compounds of preps. w. acc., 371, 4 ; w. two accs., 374, 6.
- Computation of money, 713.
- Con*, see *com*.
- Concealing, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
- Concedo*, constr., 551, II. 2.
- Concession, subj. of, 514 ff. ; participle, 578, IV.
- Concessive conjunctions, 311 ; 588 IV.
- Condemning, constr. of verbs of, 410, 5.
- Condition,—conjunctions of, 311, 588. Subj. of, 502 ; force of tenses, 504 ; w. *dum*, *modo*, *dummodo*, 505 ; *ac si*, *ut si*, etc., 506 ; *si*, *nisi*, etc., 507 ff. ; *si* omitted, 503, 1 ; condition supplied, 503, 2 ; first form, 508 ; second, 509 ; third, 510 ; mixed forms, 511, 512. Condition in relative clauses, 513 ; in oratio obliqua, 532, 2 and 3 ; denoted by participle, 578, III.
- Conditional sentences, 502 ff.
- Confido*, w. dat., 385, 1 ; w. abl., 419.
- Conjugation, 200 ff. ; of *sum*, 204. First conj., 205 ff., 259 ff. ; second, 207 ff., 264 ff. ; third, 209 ff., 272 ff. ; fourth, 211 ff., 284 ff. ; of verbs in *io* of the 3d conj., 221. Periphrastic, 231 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234 ff. Comparative view of conj., 240. Conj. of irreg. verbs, 289 ff. ; of defect., 297 ; of impersonal, 298 ff.
- Conjunctions, 303 ; coördinate, use of, 587 ; subordinate, use of, 588. Place of, in sentence, 602, III.
- Consciūs*, w. gen., 399, (2) ; w. abl., 399, 5 ; w. gen. and dat., 399, 6.
- Consciūs mihi sum*, constr., 551, 3.
- Consecutive conjunctions, 311, 588.
- Consonants, 3, I. ; double, 4, 2 ; sounds of, 10 ff., 17. Changes in, 33 ff.
- Consors*, w. gen., 399 (3).
- Constituo*, constr., 558, II.
- Consuesco*, w. abl., 386, 2.
- Consuetudo*, *consuetudinis est*, constr., 556, I. 1.
- Consulo*, constr., 385, 3.
- Consultus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Contentus*, w. abl., 419, IV.
- Continental pronunciation, 19.
- Contingit*, constr., 556, II.
- Contra*, w. accus., 433.
- Contracted syllables, quantity of, 610.
- Contractions, in conj., 234 ff.
- Contrarius*, constr., 391, 2, 4).
- Convicting, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Coördinate conjunctions, 309.
- Copulative conjunctions, 310, 587.
- Copul. sentences, 360.
- Coram*, w. abl., 434.
- Countries, gender of names of, 42.
- crum**, nouns in, 320.
- Cuicuiusmodi*, 187, 6.
- Cujas*, 185, 3.
- Cujus*, 185, 3 ; *cujusmodi*, *cujuscumquemodi*, 187, 6.
- culum**, nouns in, 320.
- culus**, **cula**, **culum**, nouns in, 315 ; adjs. in, 327.
- Cum*, appended, 184, 9 ; 187, 3 ; *cum*, *com*, in compds., 338, 2.
- Cum*, w. abl., 434.
- cundus**, verbals in, 328.
- Cuncti*, *omnes*, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
- Cupidus*, w. gen., 399, 2.
- Cupiens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
- Cupio*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- D**, DROPPED before *s*, 36 ; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
- Dactylic verse, 670 ff. Dactylico-iambic, 693.

- Dama*, gend. of, 48, 5.
Damni infecti, w. verbs of promising, 409, 5.
 Dates, Lat. and Eng., 710.
 Dative, formation of,—in 1st dec., 49, 4; in 3d dec., 58, 2; in 4th dec., 117; in 5th dec., 120.
 Dative, syntax of, 382–392,—with verbs, 384 ff. Of advant. and dis-advant., 385. W. compds., 386. Of possessor, 387. Of agent, 388. Ethical dat., 389. Two dat., 390. W. adjs., 391. W. nouns and adv., 392. Of gerunds, etc., 564. W. verbs of Separ., 425, 2, 3).
Dātum, quantity of, 651, 3.
De, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2. *De* w. abl., 434.
Decerno, constr., 558, II.
Decipio, w. gen., 409, 4; 410, 7.
 Declarative sentence, 346.
 Declaring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
 Declension, 46; first, 48; second, 51; third, 55; fourth, 116; second and fourth, 119; fifth, 120. Comparative view of decl., 123. Decl. of compds., 125.
Dēdi, quantity of, 651, 2.
Dedocco, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
 Defective nouns, 120, 4; 129; def. adjs., 159; def. comparison, 166; def. verbs, 297.
 Deliberative questions, w. the subj., 486, II.
 Demanding, constr. of verbs of, 374; 558, VI.
 Demonstratives, 186; use of, 450.
Denarius, 712.
 Dentals, 3.
 Deponent verbs, 225; 465, 2.
 Derivation, 313; of nouns, 314 ff.; of adjs., 322 ff.; of verbs, 330 ff.; of adverbs, 333 ff.
 Derivatives, quantity of, 653; quantity of deriv. endings, 645 ff.
 Desideratives, 332, III.
Desino, w. gen., 409, 4.
 Desire, subj. of, 487 ff.; in asseverations, 488, 4; in relat. clauses, 488, 5.
 Desiring, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Desisto, w. gen., 409, 4.
Despero, w. acc., 371, 3.
Deterior, compared, 166.
Deterreo, constr., 499, 1, 2.
Deus, 51, 5.
 Diaeresis, 669, III.
Diana, quantity of, 612, 3.
 Diastole, 669, IV.
Dic for *dice*, 237.
 -*dicus*, compds. in compared, 164.
Dido, 68.
 Difference, abl. of, 418.
 Differing, dat. w. verbs of, 385, 4.
Differo, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dignor, constr., 419, 2.
Dignus, constr., 419; *dignus, qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
 Dimeter, 663, 2.
 Diminutive nouns, 315; dim. adjs., 327; dim. verbs, 332, IV.
 Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9, 16; quantity of, 610.
 Dipody, 656, 2.
 Direct object, 354, 1; 371.
Dis, di, 338, 3.
 Disadvantage, dat. of, 385.
Discrepo, w. dat., 385, 4.
 Disjunctive conjs., 310; 587; sentences, 360.
Dispar, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Displeasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Dissentio, w. dat., 385, 4.
Dissimilis, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Dissyllabic perfects and supines, quantity of, 651.
 Distance, abl. of, 378, 2.
 Distich, 666.
Disto, w. dat., 385, 4.
 Distributives, 172; 174; decl. of, 179.
Diu, compared, 305, 4.
Dius, quantity of, 612, 3.
Diversus, compared, 167.
Dives, compared, 165, 2.
Doceo, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Doleo, w. accus., 371, 3; w. clause, 558, V.; w. abl., 414, 2, 1).
Domus, decl. of, 119; gend., 118; constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
Donec, w. indic. or subj., 521 ff.
Dono, constr., 384, 1.
 Double constr. of a few verbs, 384, 1.
 Double consonants, 3.
Duc for *duce*, 237.
Dum, dummodo, w. subj., 503 ff.; w. ind. or subj., 521 ff.
Duo, decl. of, 175.

- E**, SOUND of, 6, 15. Nouns in
e,—1st dec., 50; 3d dec., 63;
 gencl., 111. *E* in Greek acc. plur.,
 68, 6; for *ei* in gen. and dat., 120,
 3; *E* in adverbs, 335; changed
 to *i*, 341, 3.
E, quantity of—in *ei*, 120, 2; final,
 616; in increments of decl., 635;
 of conjugation, 641.
E or *ex*, see *ex*.
Ecce with demonstratives, 186, 4; in
 exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.
Ecquis, 188, 3. *Ecquid*, 346, II. 2.
Eloco, constr., 374, 2 and 3.
Egenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3);
 419, III.
Ejeo, constr., 403, 1.
Ego, decl. of, 184.
Eheu, quantity of, 612, 2.
Ei, 9, 16. *Ei*, quantity of, 612, 2.
-ēis, in patronymics, 316.
-eius, quantity of, 612, 2.
Ejusmodi, 186, 5.
-ela, nouns in, 320, 7.
 Elegiac distich, 676, 2.
 Elegiambus, 693, 1.
 Elements of sentences, 347 ff.
 Ellipsis, 704; of *facio*, *oro*, 367, 3;
 602, II, 3.
-ellus, ella, ellum, nouns in, 315;
 adjs. in, 327, 1.
 Emotion, constr. of verbs of, 551;
 553, V.
 Emphas and euphony in the ar-
 rangement of words, 594.
-en, nouns in, 76; *en* in Greek acc.,
 50, 68; with demonstratives, 186,
 4; in exclamations, 367, 3; 381, 3.
 Enallage, 704, III.
 Enclitics, accent of, 25, 3; quantity
 of, 613, 1.
 Endeavoring, constr. of verbs of,
 553, III.
 Endings, 46; in 1st dec., 48; in 2d
 dec., 51, 2; in 3d dec., 57 ff; in
 4th dec., 116; in 5th dec., 120;
 in comparison, 162; in conjuga-
 tion, 241 ff.
 English pronunciation of Latin, 6 ff.
Enim, place of, 602, III.
-ensis, adjs. in, 325 ff.
-entior, entissimus, in compari-
 son, 164.
 Envyng, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Eo, w. gen., 396, 2, 4).
 Epenthesis, 703, 5.
 Epicene nouns, 43, 3.
 Epichoriambic verse, 690.
 Epiphora, 704, II. 4.
Epitome, dec. of, 50.
Epulum, plur., *epulae*, 143.
-er, gencl. of nouns in, 51, 99. Adjs.
 in, 153; comparison of, 163, 1.
 Adverbs in, 335.
-ere, for *erunt*, 235.
Erga, w. acc., 433.
Ergo, w. gen., 411.
-es, nouns in, 58, 64, 120; genitive
 of, 80, 81; gender of, 104, 109, 120.
-es, final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity
 of, 624.
-esco, inceptives in, 332, II.
-esso, essim, in fut., perf., and perf.
 subj., 239, 4; *esso*, verbs in, 232.
-ester, adjs. in, 325, 1.
-etas, nouns in, 319, 1.
 Ethical dative, 389.
Etiamsi, etsi, w. subj., 515, 516, III.
-etum, nouns in, 317.
 Etymology, 37–342.
Eu, sound of, 9.
 Euphonic changes, 26 ff.; in vowels,
 27 ff.; in consonants, 33 ff.; be-
 fore *si, sum, tum*, 258; in prep-
 ositions, 338, 2.
 Euphony, see *Emphasis*.
-eus, adjs. in, 324, 326.
Evenit, constr., 556, II.
-ex, genit. of nouns in, 93.
Ex, e, in compds. w. dat. 386, 2. *Ex*,
 w. abl., 434.
 Exchanging, constr. of verbs of,
 416, 2.
 Exclamatory sentences, 346, IV.;
 accus. in, 381; voc., nom., dat.
 in, 381, 3; infinitive in, 553, III.
Exoro, constr., 374, 2.
Expers, exors, w. gen., 399, (3).
Externus, compared, 163, 3.
Extra, w. acc., 433.
Extremum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Exuo, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.
FAC, for *face*, 237.
Facio, w. pred. gen., 403.
Facio ut, w. subj.=indic., 489, 1.
Falsum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Falsus, compared, 167.

Fames, abl. *famē*, 137, 2.
Familia, genitive of, 49, 1.
 Fearing, constr. of verbs of, 492, 4.
 Feeling, constr. of verbs of, 551; 558, V.
 Feet, metrical, 656 ff.
 Feminine, 42.
Fer, for *fcere*, 237.
Fertilis, w. gen., abl., or acc., 399, 2, (3) and 5.
-fex, compds. in, 339, 2.
-ficus, adjs. in, compared, 164.
Fido, w. dat., 385; w. abl., 419.
 Figures,—of prosody, 669; of etymology, 703; of syntax, 704; of Rhetoric, 705.
 Filling, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.
 Final conjcs., 311; 588, V.
 Final syllables, quantity of, 613 ff.; final syllable of the verse, 665.
 Finite, or definite moods, 196; finite verb, 196.
Fio, quantity of, 612, 3.
Fit, constr., 556, II.
Flagito, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
Foci, locat. of place, 424, 3.
 Following, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
 Formation,—of cases, 46; of parts of verbs, 201 ff.; of words, 313–342.
 Fractions, 174, 1.
 Freeing, constr. of verbs of, 410, 7.
Frenum, pl., *freni*, *frena*, 143.
 Frequentatives, 332.
Fretus, w. abl., 419, IV.
Frugi, indecl., 159; compared, 165.
Fruor, constr., 419.
Fungor, constr., 419.
Furor, w. dat., 425, 2.
 Future, 197; 215, I.; in indic., 470; w. force of imperat., 470, 1; for Eng. pres., 470, 2; w. *melius*, 470, 3. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 1. In imperat., 534, 537; fut. for pres., and pres. for fut., 534, 1 and 2. In infin., 543 ff.; circumlocution for, 544. In part., 573.
 Future Perfect, 197; 215, II.; in indic., 473; to denote certainty, 473, 1; for Eng. pres., 473, 2. Wanting in subj., 479; how supplied, 481, III. 2.

Futurum esse, fuisse, fore, ut, 544, 1–3.
Futurum sit ut, 481, III. 1 and 2.
G, SOUND of, 11 ff., 17; changed, 258.
Gaudeo, constr., 371, 3; 551, III.; 558, V.; 414, 2.
Gemo, w. accus., 371, 3.
 Gems, gender of names of, 53.
 Gender, 42 ff.; in 1st dec., 48; in 2d dec., 51, 53; in 3d dec., 99–115; in 4th dec., 118; in 5th dec., 121; general table of, 124.
 Genitive, endings of, 47; in 1st dec., 48; as for *ae*, *um* for *arum*, 49; in 2d dec., 51; *i* for *ii*, *um* for *orum*, 52; *o* or *on*, 54; in 3d dec., 69–98; in 4th dec., 116; *uis* for *us*, 117; in 5th dec., 120; *e* or *i* for *ei*, 120, 3. In adjectives, 151–158.
 Genitive, how rendered, 393, 393, 1.
 Genitive, syntax of, 393–411,—with nouns, 395; varieties, 396; peculiarities, 397; other constrs. for gen., 398. W. adjs., 399. W. verbs, 401 ff. Pred. gen., 401 ff.; other constrs. for, 404. In special constrs., 405 ff. Acc. and gen., 410. W. adverbs, 411. Gen. of gerunds and gerundives, 563.
Genitus, w. abl., 425, 3.
 Gentile nouns, 325, 3.
 Gerund,—Nature of, 559. Cases of, 560. Ger. and Infin., 560, 2. W. direct object, 561. Gerundive, 562; of *utor*, *fruor*, etc., 562, 4. Pass. sense of Ger., 562, 5. Genitive of ger. and gerundive, 563; ger. when preferred, 563, 2; gerundive with *mei*, *nostrī*, etc., 563, 4; of purpose, 563, 5; infin. for ger., 563, 6. Dat. of, 564; of purpose, with official names, 564, 2 and 3. Accus. of, 565; w. object, 565, 2; of purpose, 565, 3. Abl. of, 566.
Glorior, w. abl., 414, 2.
Gloriosum est, 556, I. 2.
 Glyconic verse, 664, 689.
Gnarus, w. gen., 399, (2).
 Golden age, 706.

Greek nouns,—in 1st dec., 50; in 2d dec., 54; in 3d dec., 68.
Gutturals, 3.

H, A BREATHING, 2.

H, *Hadria*, gender of, 48, 5.
Happening, constr. of verbs of, 556, II.

Haud, ne, non, 584.

Hendecasyllabic verse, 691, V.

Hendiadys, 704, II. 2.

Hephthemimeris, 656, 2.

Heroic verse, 664.

Heros, decl. of, 68.

Heteroclitics, 135 ff.

Heterogeneous nouns, 141 ff.

Hexameter verse, 663, 2 Dactylic, 671.

Hic, iste, ille, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

Hic and *ille*, redundant, 450, 4, 2).

Hic (adv.), w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Hipponactean, 683, 4.

Historical tenses, 198, 2; hist. present, 467, III.; hist. perfect, 471, II.

Hodie, quantity of, 654, 8.

Horace, versification of, 698 ff. Lyric metres of, 700. Index, 701.

Horreo, w. acc., 371, 3.

Huc, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

Hujusmodi, 186, 5.

Humus, gender of, 53; constr. of *humī*, 424, 2.

Hypallage, 704, III. 2.

Hyperbaton, 704, IV.

Hyperbole, 705, V.

Hypercatalectic verse, 663, III.

Hypermeter, 663, III.

Hypothetical sentences, see *Conditional* ditto.

Hysteron proteron, 704, IV. 2.

I, SUPPLIES the place of *j*, 2, 3; sound of, 6 ff.; 15; with the sound of *y*, 7; 4, 4); 15, 3; *i* for *ii*, *ie*, 52. Nouns in, 71; gender of, 111; *i*, final in abl., 62 ff.; for *ei*, 120, 3; in perfect, 247, 2. *I*, quantity of,—final, 618; in increments of decl., 636; of conjugation, 643.

-*ia*, nouns in, 319; in nom., acc., and voc. plur., 63.

-*iacus*, adjs. in, 326.

-*iades*, in patronymics, 316.

Iambelegus, 694, 1.

Iambic verse,—Dipody, 682. Trimeter, 683; choliambus, 683, 4; catalectic, 684. Dimeter, 685; hypermeter, 685, 1; catalectic, 685, 2; acephalous, 685, 3. Tetrameter, 686.

Iambico-dactylic verse, 694.

-*ianus*, adjs. in, 326.

-*ias*, in patronymics, 316.

-*ibam*, for *iebam*, 239, 1.

-*ibo*, *ibor*, for *iam*, *iar*, 239, 2.

-*icius*, adjs. in, 324.

Ictus, 659.

-*icus*, adjs. in, 325 ff.

Idem, decl., 186; w. dat., 391, 3; use of, 451. *Idem*—*qui*, *ac* or *atque*, 451, 5.

Ides, of the calendar, 708, I. 3.

-*ides*, in patronymics, 316.

-*ido*, nouns in, 320, 7.

Idoneus qui, w. subj., 501, III.

-*idus*, verbals in, 328.

-*iensis*, adjs. in, 326.

-*ier*, for *i* in infin., 239, 6.

Igitur, place in the clause, 602, III.

Ignarus, w. gen., 399, (2).

-*igo*, nouns in, 320, 7.

-*ile*, nouns in, 317.

-*ilis*, adjs. in, 325, 328; compared, 163, 2.

Illative conj., 310; 587, IV.; sentences, 360.

Ille, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

Illic for *ille*, 186, 3.

-*illo*, verbs in, 332, IV.

-*illus, illa, illum*, in nouns, 315, 3; in adjs., 327, 1.

-*im*, in acc. 62; for *am*, or *em* in pres. subj., 239, 3.

Immemor, w. gen., 399, 2.

-*imonia*, nouns in, 319.

Impedio, constr., 499, 1, 2.

Imperative, 196. Tenses, 534. Use, 535, ff.; pres., 536; fut., 537; in prohibitions, 538.

Imperative sentences, 346, III.

Imperfect tense, 197; 215, I.; w. *jamdiu*, etc. 467, 2. In indic., 468 ff.; in lively description, of customary or repeated action, 469; of attempted action, in letters, 469, 1 and 2. In Subj., 477; of present

- time, 481, V.; after Perf. Def., 482, 1; for Pluperf., 486, 4; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2.
- Imperitus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Impero*, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.
- Impersonal verbs, 298 ff.; subjects of, 556, I.-III.
- Impertio*, constr., 384, 1.
- Impleo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Inpos*, 157, 2; w. gen., 399, (3).
- Impotens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Imprudens*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- in**, in Greek accs., 68.
- In*, in compds., 338, 2; w. two accs., 374, 6; w. dat., 386. *In*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
- In loco*, or *in numero*, w. genit., 362, 2, (3).
- Inceptives, inchoatives, 332, II.
- Incertus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inclination, subj. of, 486, 3.
- Inclutus*, compared, 167.
- Increments, 629 ff.; quantity of, 632 ff., 639 ff.
- Indeclinable nouns, gender of, 42; examples, 128. Indecl. adjs., 159.
- Indefinite moods, 196.
- Indefinite pronouns, 189; use of, 455 ff.
- Index of verbs, 721.
- Indicative, 196; use of, 474 ff.; special uses, 475.
- Indigeo*, constr., 409, 1.
- Indignus*, w. abl., 419, IV.; *indignus qui*, w. subj., 501, III.
- Indirect discourse, distinguished from direct, 528. Subj. in, 529. Moods in prin. clause, 530; in sub. clause, 531. Tenses, 532; Pronouns, adverbs, etc., 533.
- Indirect object, 354, 2. Rule, 384: indirect w. direct, 384, II.
- Indirect questions, 524 ff.—Subj. in, 525. Indic. in, 525, 6; in orat. obliqua, 530, II. 2; sing. and double, 526.
- Induco*, constr., 374, 7.
- Indulging, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Induo*, constr., 374, 7; 384, 1.
- ine**, in patronymics, 316, 5.
- ineus**, adjs. in, 324.
- Inferus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Infinitive, 196, II. Tenses of, 540 ff. Subject of, 545; of Hist. infin., 545, 1. Predicate after, 546; attracted, 547. Construction of, 548 ff.; as Nom., 549; as Accus., 550 ff.; w. another acc., 552, 2; in relative clauses, 531, 1; after conjunctions, 531, 2; after adjs., 552, 3; after preps., 552, 4; in special constrs., 553; as pred., 553, I.; as appos., 553, II.; in exclam., 553, III.; as abl. abs., 553, IV.; of Purpose, 553, A.; for Gerund, 553, VI.
- Infra*, w. acc., 433.
- Ingenii*, w. adjs., 399, 3.
- Injuring, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Initor*, constr., 419.
- Inops*, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
- Inscius*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Inseparable preps., 307; 654, 2.
- Insperso*, constr., 384, 1.
- Instrument, abl. of, 414, 4.
- Insuesco*, w. abl., 386, 2.
- Insuctus*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. other constrs., 399, 5.
- Insuper*, w. acc., 437, 3.
- Integer*, w. gen., 399, 3.
- Inter*, in compds., 338, 2; w. dat., 386. *Inter*, w. acc., 433.
- Intercludo*, constr., 384, 1.
- Interest*, w. gen., 406, III.
- Interior*, compared, 166.
- Interjections, 312; w. voc., 369, 1; w. nom., acc., or dat., 381, 3; use of, 589 ff.
- Interrogative conjunctions, 311, 588.
- Interrogative pronouns, 188; use of, 454.
- Interrogative sentences.—Form, 346, II. Interrog., words, 346, II. 1. Double quest., 346, II. 2. Deliber. quest., 486, II. Answers, 346, II. 3. Indirect quest., 525; w. indic., 525, 6; single and double, 525. In indirect discourse, 529 ff.; rhetorical quest., 530, 2.
- Interrogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. acc. and abl., 374, 2, 3.
- Intra*, w. accus., 433.
- Intransitive verbs, 193; 371, 3; impersonal pass., 465, 1.
- inus**, adjs. in, 324 ff.
- Iavidus*, w. gen. or dat., 299, 2, 2).

Invitus, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
-io, verbs of 3d conj. in, 221 ff.;
 nouns in, 318, 321.

Ionic verse, 687.

-ior, in comparatives, 162.

Ipsē, decl. of, 186; use of, 452.

Ipsus, for *ipse*, 186, 4.

Iron age, 706.

Irony, 705, IV.; in condition, 503, 3.

Irregular nouns, 127 ff.; irreg. adjs.,
 159; irreg. comparison, 163 ff.

Irregular principal parts of verbs,
 259-288; irreg. verbs, 287 ff.

Is, decl. of, 186; use of, 451; re-
 flexive, 448; redundant, 450, 4.

Is—qui, 451, 4.

-is, in acc., dat., and abl. plur., of
 3d decl., 58, 2; 62. Nouns in *is*,
 82; gender of, 105.

-is, in patronymics, 316; quantity
 of *is* final, 626.

-isco, inceptives in, 332, II.

Islands, gend. of names of, 42; con-
 str. of names of, 424.

-issimus, in superlatives, 162.

-isso, verbs in, 332.

Iste, decl. of, 186; use of, 450.

Istic, *isthic*, for *iste*, 186, 2.

Ita-si, only if, 503, 4.

-itas, nouns in, 319.

-iter, adverbs in, 335.

Ithyphallicus, 681, 2.

-itia, nouns in, 319.

-itimus, adjs. in, 325, 1.

-itium, nouns in, 318.

-ito, frequentatives in, 332.

-itudo, nouns in, 319.

Itum, quantity of, 651, 3.

-itus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323;
 adverbs in, 334, 2.

-ium, in genit. plur., 62 ff.; nouns
 in, 318 ff.

-ius, adjs. in, 326; quantity of,
 612, 3.

-ix, genitive of nouns in, 94.

J, PLACE supplied by *i*, 2; length-
 ens preceding vowel, 611.

Jecur, genitive of, 77, IV.

Jocus, pl., *joci*, *joca*, 141.

Jobeo, constr., 551, II., 1 and 2.

Jugerum, decl. of, 136; use of, 718.

Jugum, quantity of compds. of, 611,
 3.

Jungo, w. dat., 385, 5.

Jupiter, genitive of, 66, 3.

Jusjurandum, decl. of, 126.

Juvenal, versification of, 696.

Juvenalis, abl. of, 62, IV. 1.

Juvenis, abl. of, 62, IV. 1; com-
 pared, 168, 3.

Juvo, w. accus., 385, 1.

Juxta, w. accus., 433.

K, RARE, 2.

Knowing, constr. of verbs of,
 551, I. 1.

L, NOUNS in, 63; genit. of, 75;
 gender, 111 ff.; quantity of
 final syllables in, 621.

Labials, 3.

Laboro, w. abl., 414, 2.

Lacrimo, w. accus., 371, 3.

Leado, w. accus., 385, 1.

Lar, quantity of genit., 633, 4.

Lassus, w. gen., 399, 3.

Latin authors, 706.

Latin grammar, 1.

Latin period, 605.

-lentus, adjs. in, 323.

Letters, classes of, 3; combinations
 of, 4; sounds of, 6 ff.

Libero, w. abl. or gen., 425, 3.

Libra, 714.

Licet, w. subj., 515.

Liquids, 3.

Litotes, 705, VI.

Litum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Locative, 45, 2; in 1st decl., 48, 4;
 in 2d decl., 51, 6; in 3d decl., 62,
 IV. 3. Syntax of, 421 ff.

Logaoedic verse, 691.

Longius, without *quam*, 417, 3.

-Is, genit. of nouns in, 89.

M, EUPHONIC changes of, 258,
 338, 2; quantity of final syl-
 lables in, 621; elided, 669, I.

-ma, dat. and abl. plur. of nouns in,
 58, 2.

Magis, *maxime*, in adverbial com-
 parison, 170.

Magnus, compared, 165.

Major, in expressions of age, 417, 3.

Making, verbs of, w. two accs., 373;
 w. subj., 558, IV.

Malo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2.

Malus, compared, 165.
Manifestus, w. gen., 399, 3.
 Manner, means, abl. of, 414; participle for, 578, II.
 Masculine, 42.
 Material nouns, 39, 1.
 Measure of difference, abl. of, 418; measure in prosody, 663, II.; Roman measure, 715 ff.
Med, for *me*, 184, 8.
Medeor, w. dat., 385, 2.
Medius, designating part, 441, 6.
Melius, w. indic. for subj., 475, 2-4.
Melos, plur. of, 68, 6.
Meme, 184, 7.
Memini, w. gen., 406, II.; w. acc., 407, 1.
Memor, w. gen., 399, 2).
-men, mentum, nouns in, 320.
Mensa, decl. of, 48.
Mepte, 184, 8.
-met, forms in, 184, 6; 185, 2.
 Metaphor, 705, I.
 Metathesis, 703, 7.
 Metonymy, 705, II.
 Metre, 667.
 Metrical equivalents and substitutes, 657, 658.
Metuo, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
Meus, decl., 185.
Mi for *mihi*, 184, 8.
Militia, constr., 424, 2.
Mille, decl. and use of, 174, 4; 178.
 Million, cardinal for, 174; symbol for, 180.
 Million sesterces, Latin for, 713, 4.
-mino, in imperatives, 239, 5.
Minor, *minus*, without *quam*, 417, 3.
Miror, w. accus., 371, 3; w. gen., 409, 4.
Mirum est, constr. of, 556, I. 2.
Mis for *mei*, 184, 8.
Misceo, w. dat., or abl., 385, 5.
Misereor, *miseresco*, w. gen., 406.
Miseret, constr., 410. *Miserescit*, *miseretur*, 410, 6.
Moderor, constr., 385, 3.
 Modifier, 348 ff.
Modius, 715.
Modo, w. subj., 503, 505.
Moerco, w. accus., 371, 3.
Monco, constr., 410, 3.
 Money, Roman, 712 ff.
 Monometer, 663, 2.

Monosyllables, quantity of, 613.
 Months, Roman, 707; division of, 708; gender of names of, 42.
 Moods, 196,—Indic., 474 ff. Subj., 483-533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infinitive, 539-553. Gerund, 559 ff. Supine, 567 ff. Part., 571 ff.
 Mood-signs, 244 ff.
Mos, moris est, constr., 556, I. 1.
-ms, gen. of nouns in, 87.
 Multiplicatives, 173.
Multus, comparison of, 165.
 Mutes, 3.
Mulo, constr., 416, 2.

N, NOUNS in, 60; genit. of, 76; gend. of, 111, 113; quantity of final syllables in, 621.
 Name, dat. of, 387, 1; gen. of, 387, 2.
 Names of towns, const., 423.
Natus, w. abl., 425, 3.
Ne, num, nonne, interrog. particles, 311, 8; in single questions, 346, II. 1; in double, 346, II. 2; in indirect questions, 526.
Ne, w. subj. of desire, 488, 3; of purpose, 489 ff.; of concession, 515.
Ne, non, haud, 584. *Neve*, 490, 1.
Necne, 346, II. 2, 3; 526, 2, 1).
Nedum, w. subj., 493, 4.
 Negatives, 584; force of two negatives, 585.
Nemo, 72; use of, 457, 1.
Nequam, indecl., 159; compared, 165, 2.
Ne—quidem, 585; 602, III. 2.
Nescio an, w. subj., 526, II. 2, 2).
Nescio quis, quomodo, etc., w. indic., 525, 4.
Nescius, w. gen., 399, (2).
-neus, adjs. in, 324.
Neuter, decl. of, 151.
 Neuter adjectives, as adverbs, 355, 4; as cognate accus., 371, 1, 3) (2); as a second accus., 374, 5; w. partitive genit., 396, III. 2, 3) (3); as predicate, 438, 4.
 Neuter nouns, nom., acc., and voc. of, 46, 2; neuter by signification, 42; by ending, in 2d dec., 51, 53; in 3d dec., 111 ff.; in 4th dec., 116.
Ni, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.

Nimis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Nisi, w. subj., 503, 507 ff.
Nisi and *si non*, meaning, 508, 3.
Nitor, constr., 419.
Nix, 66.
Nolo, constr., 551, II. 1 and 2; *noli*,
 -ito, in prohibitions, 535, 1, 3).
Nomen est, constr., 387, 1.
 Nominative, syntax of, 366 ff.; as
 subject, 367; agreement of, 368;
 for voc., 369, 2.
Non, *ne*, *haud*, 584; place of *non*,
 602, IV., omitted, 584, 2.
Non, w. *quo*, *quod*, *quin*, *quia*, w.
 subj., 520, 3.
 Nones in the Roman month, 708, I. 2.
Nonne, *non* = *nonne*, 346, II. 1.
Nos, for *ego*, 446, 2.
Noster, for *meus*, 446, 2.
Nostras, 185, 3.
Nostrum, 396, 1; 446, 3.
 Nouns, etymology of,—gender of,
 42 ff.; pers. and numb., 44;
 cases, 45; declensions, 48–126;
 indecl., 128; defect., 129; hetero-
 clites, 135 ff.; heterogeneous, 141.
 Nouns, syntax of, 362–437,—Agree-
 ment, 362 ff. Nom., 364 ff.;
 Voc., 369; Accus., 370–381;
 Dat., 382–392; Gen., 393–411;
 Abl., 412–431; w. preps., 432–
 437.
Novus, compared, 167.
Noxius, w. gen., 399, 3.
 -ns, genit. of nouns in, 90.
Nubo, w. dat., 385, 2.
Nullus, decl. of, 151; use of, 457;
 for *non*, 457, 3.
Num, *numquid*, 346, II. 1 and 2.
 Number, 44; in verbs, 199.
 Numerals, 171 ff.; adjs., 172 ff.;
 decl. of, 175 ff.; symbols, 180;
 adverbs, 181.
 -nus, adjectives in, 324.
Nusquam, w. gen., 396, III. 4).

O, SOUND of, 6 ff., 15; nouns in,
 60, 72; gend., 99, 100; de-
 rivatives in, 320, 6; 331.
O, quantity of,—final, 620; in in-
 crements, 634, 642; in compds.,
 654, 7.
Ob, in compds., 338, 2; in compds.
 w. dat., 386. *Ob*, w. acc., 433.

Obediens, w. two datives, 390, 3.
 Obeying, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
 Object, direct, indirect, combined,
 354; direct, 371; omit, 371, 1,
 (3); clause as an object, 371, 5;
 557 ff. See *Subject and object*
clauses.
 Objective genitive, 396, II.
 Oblique cases, 45, 1; use of, 370–
 437.
Obliviscor, w. gen., 406, II.; other
 constrs., 407.
Obsisto, *obsto*, constr., 499, 1, 2.
Ocior, compared, 166.
Oe, sound of, 9, 16.
Officio, constr., 499, 1, 2.
Ohe, quantity, 612, 4.
 -olentus, adjectives in, 323.
Oleo and *redoleo*, w. acc., 371, 3.
Ollus, for *ille*, 186, 4.
 -olus, *ola*, *olum*, in diminutives,—
 in nouns, 315, 2; in adjs., 327, 1.
Omnes, w. gen., 396, III. 2, 3).
 -on, in Greek gen. plur., 68, 4.
 -one, in patronymics, 316, 5.
Operam do, w. subj., 492, 1.
Optimum est, constr., 556, I. 2.
Opus, constr., 419.
 -or, gender of nouns in, 99, 101;
 derivation of, 320 ff.
 Oratio obliqua, see *Indirect dis-*
course.
 Ordinal numbers, 172, 174; decl.
 of, 179.
Oro, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj.
 or infin, 558, VI. 3.
Orpheus, 68.
 Orthography, 2–36.
Ortus, w. abl., 425, 3.
 -os, nouns in, 61; genit. of, 83;
 gend., 99, 102.
 -os, for *is* in the genitive, 68.
 -os final, sound of, 8, 1; quantity,
 625.
 -osus, adjs. in, 323.
 Ovid, versification of, 697.
 -ox, genit. of nouns in, 95.

PALAM, w. abl., 437, 2.
Panthus, voc. of, 54, 4.
Par and *dispar*, constr., 391, 2, 4).
 Paragoge, 703, 6.
 Pardoning, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
 Paroemiac verse, 664.

- Pars*, in fractions, 174, 1.
Particeps, genit. of, 158, 2; w. gen., 399, (3).
Participles, 196, II. 4; as predicate adjs. w. *sum*, 575, 1. Tenses, relative time, 571. Agreement and use, 438 and 575 ff. For rel. clause, 577. For sub. clause, —time, cause, manner, means, condition, concession, purpose, 578. For prin. clause, 579. For verbal noun, 580. W. negative, 581.
Particles, etymology of,—Adverbs, 303 ff.; preps., 306 ff.; conjuncts., 308 ff.; interjects., 312.
Particles, syntax of, 582–590,—Adverbs, 582 ff.; preps., 586, 432–437; conjuncts., 587 ff.; interjects., 589 ff.
Partim, w. gen., 396, III. 4). *Partim*—*partim*, for *pars*—*pars*, 461, 5.
Partitive genitive, 396, III.
Partitive appositive, 363, 4.
Parts of speech, 38.
Parum, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
Parvus, compared, 165.
Passive voice, 195; passive constr., 371, 6.
Paterfamilias, decl. of, 126.
Patior, constr., 551, II. 1, 2.
Patrials, 326, 2.
Patronymics, 316.
Pause, caesural, 662.
Peculiarities in conjug., 234 ff.
Pelagus, plur. and gend. of, 53, 54, 4.
Penes, w. accus., 433.
Pentameter, 663, 2.
Penthemimeris, 656, 2.
Penults, quantity of, 645 ff.
Per, in compds., 338, 2; 371, 4; *per*, w. acc., 433. *Per me stat*, 499, 1.
Pereceiving, constr. of verbs of, 551.
Percontor, w. two aces., 374, 2.
Perfect, 197; 215, 2; pres. and hist., or definite and indef., 198; wanting, 267, 281, 284, 2.
Perfect, syntax of,—in indic., 471; def. and indef., or pres. and hist., 471; of what has ceased to be, 471, 1; w. *paene*, *prope*, 471, 2; for Eng. pres., 471, 3; w. *postquam*, *ut*, *ut primum*, 471, 4. In subj., 478; in sequence, 480; after hist. tense, 482, 2; 533, 1; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 509; in orat. obl., 532 ff.; in infin., 542; for pres., 542, 2. In part., 574; for verbal noun, 580.
Perfect system, 215, 2.
Perfect stem, formation of, 252 ff.
Period, Latin, arrangement of, 605.
Periphrastic conjugation, 231 ff.
Peritus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Permisco, w. dat., 385, 5.
Permitto, constr., 551, II. 2.
Person, of nouns, 44; of verbs, 199.
Personal pronouns, 184; use of, 446; reflex. use of, 448.
Personal endings, 247; in perfect, 247, 2; in imperative, 247, 3.
Persuading, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Pertaedet, *pertacsum est*, 410, 6.
Peto, constr., 374, 3, 4).
Ph, 4.
Phalaeian verse, 691, V.
Pherecratean verse, 689, II.
Piget, constr., 410.
Place, abl. of, 421 ff.; locative, 421 ff.
Pleasing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
Plenty, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419, III.
Plenus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3); 419.
Pleonasm, 704, II.
Pluperfect, 197; 215, II.—in indic., 472; in letters, 472, 1; for Eng. imp., 472, 2. In subj., 478; sequence, 480; in desires and wishes, 488, 2; in condition, 510; after *antequam* and *priusquam*, 523, 2; in orat. obl., 532; 533, 2–4.
Plural, 44; wanting, 130; with change of meaning, 132.
Plus, without *quam*, 417, 3.
Paenitet, constr., 410.
Polysyndeton, 704, II. 1.
Pone, w. accus., 433.
Posco, w. two aces. or acc. and abl., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
Position, long by, 611; short, 612.
Positive, 160; wanting, 166.
Possessives, 185; w. gen., 397, 3; for gen., 398, 3; w. *refert* and

- interest*, 408, 1, 2); use of, 447; reflexive, 448.
- Possessor, dat. of, 387.
- Post*, sound of, 8, 1.
- Post*, in compds., 338, 2; in compds. w. dat., 386. *Post*, in expressions of time, 427; *post*, w. acc., 433.
- Posterus*, compared, 163, 3.
- Postremus*, force of, 442.
- Postridie*, w. gen., 411; w. accus., 437, 1.
- Postulo*, constr., 374, 3, 4).
- Potens*, w. gen., 399, (3).
- Potential subjunctive, 485 ff.; in declar. sentences, 486, I.; in deliberative questions, 486, II.; in sub. clauses, 486, III.; of repeated action, 486, 5.
- Potior*, w. gen., 409, 3; w. abl., 419; 419, 4.
- Prae*, in compds. w. dat., 386; *prae*, w. abl., 434.
- Praeditus*, w. abl., 419, 3.
- Praeter*, in compds., w. accus., 371, 4; *praeter*, w. accus., 433.
- Predicate, 347; simple, 353; complex, 354; compound, 361. Pred. nouns, 355, 362. Pred. adjs., 356; 438, 2. Pred. gen., 401; varieties of, 402; verbs with, 403; other constrs. for, 404. Pred. abl., 428, 1.
- Prepositions, 306; inseparable, 307; in compds., 338, 2. In expressions of time and space, 378, 1 and 2. W. names of places, 379, 1, 2, and 4. *Pro* with abl., 384, 2, 2). Compds. w. dat., 386. *A* or *ab* w. abl. of agent, 388, 1; 414, 5. Case w. prep. for the dat., 391, 2; for the gen., 398, 4; 399, 5; 407, 2; 410, 4. *Cum* w. abl. of accompaniment, 414, 7. *Quam pro*, 417, 6. W. abl. of place, 421; of source and separation, 425; of time, 426. Preps. w. cases, Rule, 432, 434 ff.; preps. as adverbs, 436.
- Present, 197; 215, I.—in indic., 466 ff.; w. *jamdiu*, etc., 467, 2; of general truths, customs, hist. pres., 467. In subj., 477. In imperat., 536. In infin., 541. Part., 572.
- Present perfect, 471, I.
- Present stem, formation of, 250 ff.
- Present system of forms, 215, I.
- Priapeian verse, 695.
- Price, gen. of, 396, IV.; abl. of, 416.
- Pridie*, w. gen., 411; w. acc., 437, 1.
- Primitives and derivatives, 313.
- Principal parts of verbs, 213 ff.; 259–288. Prin. clauses, 345, 2; in oratio obliqua, 530. Prin. elements, 349; tenses, 198, 2.
- Prior*, *primus*, 166; force of, 442, I.
- Priusquam*, w. indic. or subj., 521, 523.
- Pro*, in compds. w. dat., 386, 2; *pro*, w. abl. in defense of, 384, 2, 2); *pro*, w. abl., 434.
- Pro*, quantity of, in compds., 654, 4.
- Procul*, w. abl., 437, 2.
- Prohibeo*, constr., 499, 1; 551, II. 1.
- Pronouns, 182 ff.; pers., 184; pos-
ses., 185; demon., 186; relat.,
187; interrog., 188; indef., 189.
- Pronouns, syntax of, 445–459,—
Agreement, 445. Pers. and Pos-
ses., 446 ff. Reflex. use of, 448
ff. Demon., 450 ff. Rel., 453.
Interrog., 454. Indef., 455.
- Pronunciation of Latin, 5–25.
- Prope*, w. accus., 433.
- Proper nouns, 39.
- Propior*, *proximus*, 166; w. accus.,
391, 2, 2); 433.
- Propius*, w. accus., 437, 1.
- Proprius*, constr., 391, 2, 4); 399, 3.
- Propter*, w. accus., 433.
- Prosody, 607–701,—Quantity, 608–
654. Versification, 655–701.
- Prospicio*, constr., 385, 3.
- Prosthesis, 703, 4.
- Provideo*, constr., 385, 3.
- Providus*, w. gen., 399, (2).
- Proxime*, w. accus., 437, 1.
- Proximum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Proximus*, w. accus., 391, 2, 2); 433.
- Prudens*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl.,
399, 5.
- ps**, genit. of nouns in, 88.
- Pudet*, constr., 410.
- Punishment, w. verbs of condemn-
ing, 410, 5.
- Purgo*, constr., 410, 7.
- Purpose, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w.
conjuncts., 490; pure purpose,

491; mixed, 492; peculiarities, 493; in rel. clauses, 500 ff. In-
fin. of purpose, 553, V.; gerund,
563, 5; 564, 2; supine, 569;
participle, 578, V.

Pyrites, decl. of, 50.

QU, changed, 258.

Quaero, constr., 374, 3, 4).

Qualis, *qualiscumque*, *qualisqualis*,
187, 6; *qualis*, interrog., 188, 5.

Quality, characteristic, genit. of,
396, IV.; abl. of, 428.

Quam, w. comparatives, 417, 1; w.
superlatives, 170, 2. *Quam pro*,
w. abl., 417, 6. *Quam ut*, w.
subj., 496, 2. *Quam si*, w. subj.,
503, 506. *Quam quod*, w. subj.,
520, 3.

Quamquam, w. indic. or subj., 516, I.
Quamvis, *quantumvis*, w. subj., 515
ff.

Quando, w. indic. or subj., 520.

Quantity, 20 ff.; signs of, 23, 1.
General rules for, 610 ff. Special,
613-654; final syllables, 613 ff.;
increments, 629 ff.; deriv. end-
ings, 645 ff.; stem syllables, 649
ff.

Quantus, 187, 6; indefinite, 188, 5.

Quasi, w. subj., 503, 506.

Qui, rel., interrog., indef., 187 ff.;
for *quo*, *qua*, 187, 2; 188, 3. Use
of as rel., interrog., indef., 453 ff.
Qui, w. subj. of purpose or result,
439, 500 ff. *Qui dicitur*, *vocatur*,
453, 7. *Quicumque*, 187, 4.

Quia, w. indic. or subj., 520.

Quidam, indef., 191, 455.

Quidem, place in clause, 602, III.

Quilibet, 191; use of, 458.

Quin, w. subj., 489, 498.

Quinam, 188, 4.

Quinarius, 712.

Quippe, w. relative, 519, 3.

Quis, interrog., 188; indef. 189 ff.;
use of, 454 ff.

Quis, for *quibus*, 187, 2.

Quisnam, 188, 4.

Quispian, 191; use of, 455.

Quisquam, 191; use of, 457.

Quisque, 191; w. abl. absol., 431,
6; use of, 458; w. plur. verb,
461, 3.

Quisquis, 187, 4.

Quitum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Quivis, 191; use of, 458.

Quo, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. subj.
of purpose, 489, 497.

Quoad, w. gen., 396, III. 4); w. in-
dic. or sub., 521 ff.

Quod, expletive, 453, 6; w. subj.,
520; clause w. *quod* unconnected,
554, IV.; *quod* restrictive, 501, 3.

Quojus, *quoi*, for *cujus*, *cui*, 187, 2.

Quominus, w. subj., 499.

Quoniam, w. indic. or subj., 520.

Quoque, place in the clause, 602,
III.

Quot, *quotus*, 187, 6; 188, 5.

Quum, w. subj., 515, 517 ff.; w. in-
dic., 518, 3.

R, for *s*, 35; 258, I., 5. Nouns in,
55; genit. of, 77; gender,
101, 103, 111, 114.

R, quantity of final syllables in, 621.

Rastrum, plur. *rastri*, *rastra*, 143.

Ratum, quantity of, 651, 3.

Re, *red*, 338, 3.

-re, for *ris*, 236.

Reason, subj. of, 517 ff. See *Cause*.

Recordor, w. gen., 406, II.; w.
accus., 407, 1; w. abl. with *de*,
407, 2.

Recuso, constr., 499, 1, 2.

Reduplicated perfects, 261, 270,
273; quantity of, 652.

Refert, constr., 406, III.; 408.

Refertus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (2)
and 5.

Reflexive use of pronouns, 448 ff.

Regarding, verbs of, w. two accus.,
373.

Regno, w. gen., 409, 3.

Relative, 187; as adj., 445, 8; use
of, 453.

Relative clause, w. potential subj.,
486, 1; w. subj. of desire, 488, 5;
of purpose, result, 500; of result
after indefinite or general antec-
edents, after *unus*, *solus*, *dignus*,
indignus, *idoneus*, *aptus*, and com-
par. w. *quam*, 501, I.-IV.; w.
sub. of condition, 513; of conces-
sion, 515; of cause, reason, 517,
519; w. infin., 531, 1.

Reliquum est, constr., 556, I. 2.

- Remaining, constr. of verbs of, 556, III.
- Reminding, constr. of verbs of, 410.
- Reminiscor*, w. gen., 406, II.
- Repeated action, subj. of, 486, 5.
- Reposco*, with two accs., 374, 2.
- Resisting, verbs of, w. the dat., 385.
- Respublica*, decl. of, 126.
- Restat ut*, 495, 2.
- Result, subjunctive of, 489 ff.; w. conjuncts., 490 ff.; of pure result, 494; mixed, 495; peculiarities, 496. With relatives, 500. See *Relative clause*.
- Reticentia*, 704, I. 3.
- Rhetorical questions, 530, 2.
- Rhythmic accent, 659.
- Rideo*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Rivers, gender of names of, 42.
- Rogo*, w. two accs., 374, 2; w. subj., 558, VI.
- Roman pronunciation, 15 ff.
- rs*, genit. of nouns in, 91.
- Rudis*, w. gen., 399, (2); w. abl., 399, 5.
- Rules of Syntax, 591.
- Rus*, constr., 379, 3; 424, 2.
- Rutum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- S** SOUND of, 11 ff., 17 ff.; w. *c* 34, or *g* forms *x*, 33; dropped, 34; compared to *r*, 35. Nouns in, 61; genit. of, 79 ff.; gen., 99 ff.
- Sacer*, compared, 167; w. dat. or gen., 391; 399, 3, 3).
- Saepe*, compared, 305, 4.
- Sapio*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Sapphic verse, 664; 690, I.; 691, IV.; greater sapphic, 690, II.
- Satago*, *satagito*, w. gen., 409, 5.
- Satis, w. gen., 396, III. 4).
- Satisfacio*, w. dat., 385, 2.
- Satum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Scanning, 668.
- Scazon, 683, 4.
- Scidi*, quantity of, 651, 2.
- Secundum*, w. accus., 433.
- Sed*, *se*, 338, 3.
- Semi-deponents, 271, 3; 283; use of, 465, 3.
- Senex*, compared, 168, 3.
- Sentences, syntax of, 343-361; classification of, 345 ff.; simple, 347 ff.; complex, 357 ff.; compound, 360. See also *Declarative*, *Exclamatory*, *Imperative*, *Interrogative*.
- Separation, abl. of, 425.
- Sequence of tenses, 480 ff. Rule, 480. Application, 481; after hist. pres., 481, IV.; after imp. subj., 481, V.; after infin. or part., 481, VI. Exceptions, 482; after perf. def., 482, 1; hist. tense, 482, 2; in orat. obliqua, 482, 3.
- Sequitur*, w. subj. or infin., 495, 2; 549, 1.
- Serving, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Servus*, decl. of, 51.
- Sese*, 184, 7.
- Sestertius*, *sestertia*, *sestertium*, 712 ff.
- Sexcenti*, indefinite, 174, 4.
- Showing, verbs of, w. two accs., 373.
- si*, *sin*, in Greek datives, 68, 5.
- Si minus*, 584, 3.
- Si non*, and *nisi*, 508, 3.
- Silver age, 706.
- sim*, in perfect subj., 239, 4.
- Similis*, and its compds., constr., 391, 2, 4).
- Simple,—sentence, 347 ff.; elements, 350; subject, 351; predicate, 353; words, 313, 1.
- Simul*, w. abl., 437, 2.
- Sin*, w. subjunctive, 503, 507 ff.
- Sin aliter*, 584, 3.
- Sine*, w. abl., 434.
- Singular, 44; wanting, 131.
- Sino*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- Sitio*, w. accus., 371, 3.
- Situm*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- so*, in fut. perfect, 239, 4; in frequent., 332.
- Solus*, decl. of, 151; *solus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
- Source, abl. of, 425.
- Space, acc. of, 378.
- Sparing, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
- Specification, acc. of, 380; genit. of, 396, V.; abl. of, 429.
- Spirants, 3.
- Stanza, 666; stanzas of Horace, 699 ff.
- Statum*, quantity of, 651, 3.
- Statuo*, constr., 558, II.
- Stem, 46; in the five decls., 47 ff.,

123. Stems in *s*, 61; in *i*, 62 ff. Verb-stem, 201; Pres. stem, 249 ff.: Perf. stem, 252 ff.; supine stem, 256 ff.
 Stem-syllables, quantity in primitives, 649 ff.; in derivats., 653; in compds., 654.
Stēti, *stūti*, quantity of, 651, 2.
Sto, w. abl., 414, 2, 1).
 Striving, constr. of verbs of, 558, III.
Studiosus, w. gen., 399.
Sub, in compds., 338, 2; compds. w. dat., 386. *Sub* w. acc. or abl., 435.
 Subject,—Simple subject, 351; complex, 352; compound, 361. Subj. nom., 367; omitted, 367, 2. Subj. acc., 375, 545; omitted, 545, 2. Infin. as subj., 549. Clause as subj., 555 ff.
 Subject and object clauses, 554 ff.
 Indirect questions, infin. clauses, subjunctive clauses, and clauses with *quod*, compared, 554. Subject clauses, 555 ff.; interrog., 555; not interrog., 556. Object clauses, 557 ff.; interrog., 557; not. interrog., 558.
 Subjective genitive, 396, I.
 Subjunctive, 196; syntax of, 483–533,—Potential subj., 485 ff. Subj. of desire, 487 ff. Of purpose or result, 489–501; w. conjuncts., 489 ff.; w. relatives, 500 ff. Of condition, 502 ff. Of concession, 515 ff. Of cause and time, 517 ff. In indirect questions, 524 ff. By attraction, 527. In indirect discourse—*oratio obliqua*, 528.
 Subordinate,—clauses, 345, 2; in *oratio obliqua*, 531. Sub. conjuncts., 311, 588; elements, 349.
 Substantives, see *Nouns*.
Subter, in compds. w. acc., 371, 4. *Subter*, w. acc. or abl., 435.
Sui, decl. of, 184; use of, 448 ff.
Sum, w. dat., 387; w. pred. gen., 403.
Super, in compds. w. accus., 371, 4; in compds. with dat., 386.
Super, w. acc. or abl., 435.
 Superlative, 160; irreg., 163; want-

ing, 168 ff.; formed by *maxime*, 170; w. gen., 396, 2, 3), (2).
Supersedco, 386, 2.
Superus, compared, 163, 3.
 Supine, 196, II.; wanting, 266 ff., 280 ff.; 284, 2. Use of, 567 ff.
 Supine-stem, formation of, 256 ff.
 Supine system, 215.
Supplico, w. dat., 385, 2.
Supra, w. accus., 433.
Suspensus, w. gen., 399, (2).
Suus, decl. of, 185; use of, 448 ff.
 Syllables, 13, 18.
 Synacresis, 669, II.
 Synalocpha, *Synaphia*, 669, I. 5.
 Synecdoche, 705, III.
 Synesis, 704, III. 3.
 Synopsis of conjugation, 216–226.
 Synopsis of declension, 69–98.
 Syntax, 343–606,—of sentences, 343–361; of nouns, 362–437; of adjectives, 438–444; of pronouns, 445–459; of verbs, 460–581; of particles, 582–590. Rules of syntax, 591. Arrangement of words and clauses, 592–606.
 Systola, 669, IV.

T SOUND of, 10 ff., 17 ff.; nouns
T, in, 58, 78; gender, 111. *T'* dropped, 36, 258.
T, quantity of final syllables in, 621.
Tacet, constr., 410.
Talis, 186, 5.
Talpa, gender of, 48, 5.
Tametsi, w. subj., 515; 516, III.
Tanquam, *tanquam si*, w. subj., 503, 506.
Tantus, 186, 5; *tantum abest*, 496, 3.
 Teaching, verbs of, w. two accs., 374.
Ted for *te*, 184, 8.
Tempero, constr., 385, 3.
Templum, decl. of, 51.
 Temporal conjunctions, 311; 588, I.
 Tenses, 197; prin. and hist., 198; wanting, 198, 2. Use of, in indic., 466 ff.; in subj., 476 ff.; sequence of, 480 ff.; in imperat., 534; in infin., 540; in part., 571. Use of, in letters, 472, 1.
 Tense-signs, 242 ff.

- Tenus*, w. gen., 411; w. abl., 434; after its case, 434, 2.
-ter, adverbs in, 335.
Terrae, locative, 424, 3.
Testis sum, constr., 551, 3.
Tete, 184, 7.
 Tetrameter verse, 663, 2.
 Tetrapody, 656, 2.
 Tetrastich, 666.
 Th, 4.
 Thesis, 660.
 Threatening, verbs of, w. dat., 385.
-ticius, -ticus, -tivus, adjs. in, 325, 1; 328, 5.
-tim, adverbs in, 334, 2.
 Time, accus. of, 378; abl. of, 378, 2; 426; w. the prep. *in*, 423, 2; w. *abhinc*, 427. Time denoted by acc. or abl. w. *ante* or *post*, 427; by participle, 578, I.
 Time, with cause or purpose, subj. of, 521 ff.
Timeo, constr., 385, 3; 492, 4.
-tio, nouns in, 321.
Tis, for *tui*, 184, 8.
-to, for *tor*, in imperative, 239, 5.
-to, in frequen., 332.
-tor, nouns in, 321.
Tot, totus, 186, 5. *Totus*, decl. of, 151.
 Towns, gender of names of, 42; constr.—accus., 379; with *urbs* or *oppidum*, 379, 2; abl. or locative, 421, II.
Trans, in compds., 338, 2; in compds. w. accus. 371, 4; w. two accs., 374, 6. *Trans*, w. acc., 433.
 Transitive verbs, 193; 371, 3.
 Trees, gender of names of, 42.
 Trimeter, 663, 2.
 Tripody, 656, 2.
 Tristich, 666.
 Trochaic verse, 679 ff.
-trum, nouns in, 320.
-tum, nouns in, 317.
Tu, decl. of, 184.
Tuli, quantity of, 651, 2.
-tura, nouns in, 321.
-tus, nouns in, 318; adjs. in, 323.
Tuus, decl. of, 185.
- U**, SOUND of, 6 ff., 15; w. sound of *w*, 7, 5), 15, 4. Nouns in *u*, 116; gender of, 116, 118.
- U*, quantity of,—final, 619; in increments, 637, 644.
-u, for *ui* in dat., 117.
Ubi, w. genit., 396, 2, 4).
-ubus, in dat. and abl., 66, 117.
Ui, as diphthong, 9.
-uis, for *us*, in genit., 117.
-ula, nouns in, 320, 5.
-ulentus, adjs. in, 323.
-uleus, in derivatives, 315, 5.
Ullus, decl. of, 151; use of, 457.
Uterior, ultimus, 166; force of, 442, 1.
Ultra, w. accus., 433.
-ulus, ula, ulum, in nouns, 315; 320, 5; in adjs., 327 ff.
-um, for *arum*, 49; for *orum*, 52; in gen. plur. of 3d dec., 57.
-undus, undi, for *endus, endi*, 238.
Unus, decl. of, 151, 175; *unus qui*, w. subj., 501, II.
Unusquisque, 191, 5.
-ur, gen. of nouns in, 111, 114.
-urio, desideratives in, 332, III.
us, for *e* in voc. sing., 52; nouns in, 61, 116; gender, 111, 115 ff., 118. Derivatives in, 320, 6; 321; *us*, final quantity of, 627.
Usque, w. accus., 437, 1.
Usus, constr., 419.
-ut, nouns in, 58; gen., 111.
Ut, w. subj. of purpose or result, 489 ff.; omitted, 493, 2; w. *qui*, 519, 3.
Ut si, w. subj., 503, 506.
Ut quisque—ita, 458, 2.
Uter uterunque, 151.
Uterlibet, uterque, utervis, 151. *Uterque*, w. plur. verb, 461, 3.
Utinam, w. subj. of desire, 488, 1.
Utor, constr., 419; 419, 4.
Utpote, w. *qui*, 519, 3.
Utrum, 346, II. 2.
-utus, adjs. in, 323.
-uus, verbal adjs. in, 328, 5.
-ux, genitive of nouns in, 96.
- V**, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2; 258, II. 4.
Vacuus, w. gen. or abl., 399, (3) and 5.
 Value, genit. of, 396, IV.
Vannus, gender of, 53.
Velut, velut si, w. subj., 503, 506.

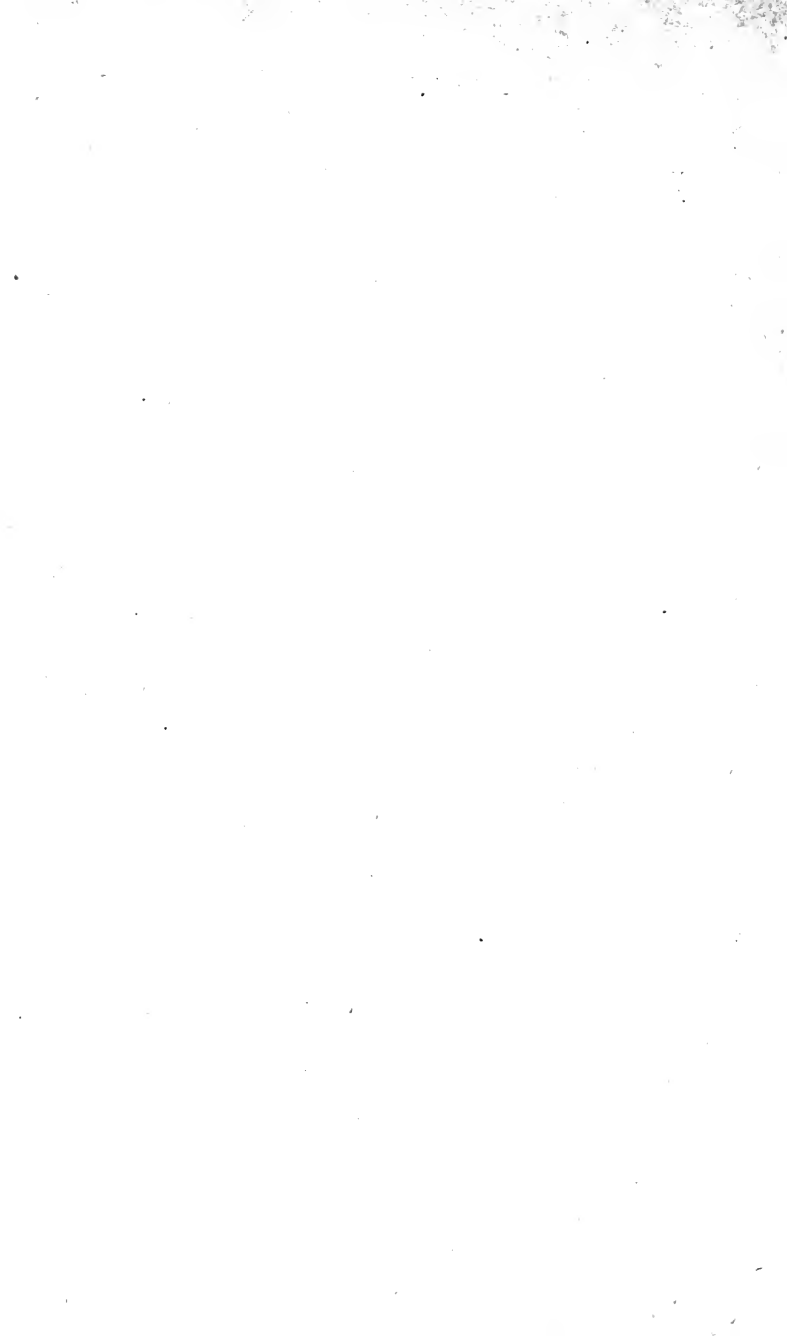
- Verbal inflections, table of, 213 ff.
 Verbs, etymology of — Classes, voices, moods, tenses, etc., 192–203. Paradigms, 204–214. Verbal inflections, 213 ff. Synopsis, 216–230. Periphrastic conj., 231 ff. Contractions and peculiarities, 234–239. Comparative view of conjs., 240. Analysis of verbal endings, 241 ff.; tense signs, 242 ff.; mood signs, 244 ff.; personal endings, 247. Formation of stems, 249 ff. Euphonic changes in stems, 258. Classification of verbs, 259–288. Irreg. verbs, 289–296. Defect., 297. Impers., 298–301. Deriv., 330 ff. Compound, 341. Irregularities of special verbs, 721. See also *Transitive, Intrans., Finite, Deponent, Semi-depon., Impersonal, Frequent., Incept., Desiderat., Diminutive.*
- Verbs, syntax of, 460, 581.—Agreement, 460 ff. Omitted, 367, 3; 460, 3. Voices, 464 ff. Tenses of Indic., 466 ff. Use of Indic., 474. Tenses of subj., 476 ff. Use of Subj., 483–533. Imperat., 534 ff. Infin., 539–553. Subject and object clauses, 554 ff. Gerund, 559–566. Supine, 567 ff. Participles, 571–581.
- Verb-stem, 201, 249.
- Vereor*, constr., 492, 4.
- Verisimile est, verum est*, constr., 556, I. 2.
- Vero*, place in clause, 602, III.
- Verses, 661; names of, 663 ff.
- Versification, 655.—Feet, 656 ff. Verses, 661 ff. Figures of prosody, 669. Varieties of verse, 670 ff.
- Vicinus*, w. accus., 433.
- Vescor*, constr., 419; 419, 4.
- Vestras*, 185, 3.
- Vestri, vestrum*, 396, III. 1; 446, 3.
- Velo*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- Vetus*, compared, 167.
- Vicinus*, w. dat. or gen., 391, 1; 399, 3.
- Vir*, decl. of, 51, 4.
- Virgil*, versification of, 696.
- Vocative, 52, 68, 3. Syntax of, 369.
- Voices, 195. See also under *Verbs, syntax of.*
- Volens*, idiomatic use of dat., 387, 3.
- Volo*, constr., 551, II. 1.
- volus**, compds. in, compared, 164.
- Voti damnari*, 410, 5 (1).
- Vowels, 3, I.; sounds of, 6 ff., 15 ff.; changes in, 27 ff. Variable vowels, 57, 2.
- W**, PLACE supplied by *u*, 2.
- W**, Want, constr. of verbs and adjs. of, 419.
- Warning, constr. of verbs of, 558.
- VI.**
- Weights, Roman, 714.
- Winds, gender of names of, 42.
- Wishing, constr. of verbs of, 551.
- Words, arrangement of, 592.
- X**, SOUND of, 11 ff.; nouns in, 59, 92 ff.; gender of, 105, 108.
- Y**, ONLY in Greek words, 2.
- Y**, Nouns in, 73; gender, 111.
- Y*, quantity of,—final, 617; in increments, 638.
- ys**, nouns in, 68, 2; gender of, 107; quantity of *ys* final, 628.
- yæ**, nouns in, 97.
- Z**, ONLY in Greek words, 2.
- Z**, Zeugma, 704, I. 2.

T A B L E

Showing the corresponding articles in the two editions.

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
1-12.....	1-12	64.....	75
13.....	—	65.....	76
14-16.....	19	66.....	77
17.....	13, 18	67.....	78
18, 19.....	14, 18	68.....	79
—.....	15-17	69.....	80
20-23.....	20-23	70.....	81
24.....	23, 1	71.....	82
25.....	—	72.....	83
26.....	24, 25	73.....	84
27.....	25, 4	74.....	85
28.....	25, 5	75.....	86-88
—.....	26-36	76.....	89-91
29.....	37	77.....	92
30.....	38	78.....	93
31.....	39	79.....	94
32.....	40	80.....	95
33.....	41	81.....	96
34.....	41, 1	82.....	97
35.....	42	83.....	98
36.....	43	84.....	67, 1
37.....	44	85, 87.....	62
38.....	45	86.....	68, 2
39.....	46	88.....	67
40.....	47	89.....	65
41.....	46, 1	90.....	67, 58, 2, 66, 68, 5
42.....	48	91-98.....	68
42, 3.....	49	99-104.....	99-104
43.....	50	—.....	105
44.....	48, 5	105.....	106
45.....	51	106, 107.....	107
45, 5.....	52	108-116.....	108-116
46.....	54	116, 4.....	117
47.....	53	117.....	119
48.....	55	118.....	118
49.....	56	119.....	120
50.....	57-59	120.....	121
50.....	63, 64	121-123.....	122, 123
51.....	60, 61	124-148.....	124-148
—.....	62, 66	148.....	149, 150
52-54.....	57, 63, 67	149.....	151
55-57.....	—	150.....	152
58.....	69	151.....	153
59.....	70	152.....	154
60.....	71	153.....	155
61.....	72	154-158.....	156-158
62.....	73	159-174.....	159-174
63.....	74	175.....	175, 176

OLD.	NEW.	OLD.	NEW.
176.....	175	255-258.....	256, 257
177-198.....	177-198	259, 260.....	214
199, 200.....	199	261.....	259
201.....	200	262.....	260
202.....	201	263.....	262
203.....	202	264.....	261
204.....	203, 204	265.....	263
205-212.....	205-212	266.....	264
213.....	221	266, II.....	265
214.....	222	266, III.....	268
215.....	223	267.....	266
216.....	217	268.....	267
217.....	218	269.....	269, 270, III.
218.....	219	270.....	270, II.
219.....	224	271.....	270, I.
220.....	220	272.....	271
221.....	225	273.....	272
222.....	226	273, II.....	279
223.....	227	273, III.....	272, II., 273, III.
224.....	228	274.....	280
225.....	229	275.....	281
226.....	230	276.....	274-278
227, 228, 230.....	231	277, 278.....	276, 278, 3
229, 231.....	232	279.....	273, II.
232, 233.....	233	280.....	273, I.
234-239.....	234-239	281.....	282
240.....	213	282.....	283
241.....	215	283.....	284
242-247.....	213, 216, 240	284.....	285, 286
.....	241-248	285.....	287
242.....	249-251	286.....	288
248.....	258	287.....	289
249.....	221	288-290.....	290
250.....	261, 1	291-721.....	291-721
251-254.....	252-255		







STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

- Arnold's Greek Reading Book**, containing the Substance of the Practical Introduction to Greek Construing and a Treatise on the Greek Particles; also, copious Selections from Greek Authors, with Critical and Explanatory English Notes, and a Lexicon. 12mo. 618 pages.
- Boise's Exercises in Greek Prose Composition.** Adapted to the First Book of Xenophon's Anabasis. By JAMES R. BOISE, Prof. of Greek in University of Michigan. 12mo. 185 pages.
- Champlin's Short and Comprehensive Greek Grammar.** By J. T. CHAMPLIN, Professor of Greek and Latin in Waterville College. 12mo. 208 pages.
- First Lessons in Greek;*** or, the Beginner's Companion-Book to Hadley's Grammar. By JAMES MORRIS WHITON, Rector of Hopkins's Grammar School, New Haven, Ct. 12mo.
- Hadley's Greek Grammar,*** for Schools and Colleges. By JAMES HADLEY, Professor in Yale College. 12mo. 366 pages.
- **Elements of the Greek Grammar.** 12mo.
- Herodotus, Selections from;** comprising mainly such portions as give a Connected History of the East, to the Fall of Babylon and the Death of Cyrus the Great. By HERMAN M. JOHNSON, D. D., 12mo. 185 pages.
- Homer's Iliad,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes, by JOHN J. OWEN, D. D., LL. D., Professor of the Latin and Greek Languages and Literature in the Free Academy of the City of New York. 1 vol., 12mo. 759 pages.
- **Odyssey,** according to the Text of WOLF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. Sixteenth Edition. 12mo.
- Kuhner's Greek Grammar.** Translated by Professors EDWARDS and TAYLOR. Large 12mo. 620 pages.
- Kendrick's Greek Ollendorff.*** Being a Progressive Exhibition of the Principles of the Greek Grammar. By ASAHEL C. KENDRICK, Prof. of Greek Language in the University of Rochester. 12mo. 371 pages.
- Owen's Xenophon's Anabasis.** A new and enlarged edition, with numerous references to Kuhner's, Crosby's, and Hadley's Grammars. 12mo.
- **Homer's Iliad.** 12mo. 759 pages.
- **Greek Reader.** 12mo.
- **Acts of the Apostles,** in Greek, with a Lexicon. 12mo.
- **Homer's Odyssey.** Tenth Edition. 12mo.
- **Thucydides.** With Map. 12mo. 700 pages.
- **Xenophon's Cyropædia.** Eighth Edition. 12mo.
- Plato's Apology and Crito.*** With Notes by W. S. TYLER, Graves Professor of Greek in Amherst College. 12mo. 180 pp.

YB 35653

STANDARD CLASSICAL WORKS.

Thucydides's History of the Peloponnesian War, according to the Text of L. DINDORF, with Notes by JOHN J. OWEN. With Maps. 12mo.

M577024

PA2087

H37

1874

Educ.

Lib.

PUBLISH UPWARD OF

300 SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS,

Including the Departments of English, Latin, Greek, French, Spanish, Italian, Hebrew, and Syriac; of which a complete

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE

Will be sent, free of postage, to those applying for it.

A single copy for *examination*, of any of the works marked thus *, will be transmitted by mail, postage prepaid, to any *Teacher* remitting one-half of its price. Any of the others will be sent by mail, *postage prepaid*, upon receipt of full retail price.

